



DISCOVERY SPORT  
OWNER'S HANDBOOK

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2019

© Publication Part No. LRL 10 02 63 201



## Introduction

### ABOUT THIS HANDBOOK

Please take the time to study all of the owner literature supplied with your vehicle as soon as possible.

### IMPORTANT

*The information contained in this handbook covers all vehicle derivatives and optional equipment, some of which may not be fitted to your vehicle. Due to printing cycles, this handbook may include descriptions of options before they become generally available.*


**Images used in this publication are for illustrative purposes only and may not reflect exactly what is fitted to your vehicle.**


*The vehicle options, hardware and software, are designed for the market in which the vehicle is intended for original sale. If the vehicle is to be registered or used in another geographical area, it may need modifications to suit local requirements. Jaguar Land Rover Limited is not responsible for the cost of any modifications. Warranty conditions may be affected.*

The information contained in this publication was correct when it went to print. Subsequent vehicle design changes may result in a supplement being added to the literature pack. The digital handbook can be viewed at: [www.ownerinfo.landrover.com](http://www.ownerinfo.landrover.com) and is updated with the latest available information.

In the interest of development, the right is reserved to change specifications, design or equipment, at any time, without notice and without incurring any obligations. This publication, or part thereof, may not be reproduced nor translated without our approval. Errors and omissions excepted.

### SYMBOLS USED IN THIS HANDBOOK

 **Safety warnings indicate either a procedure which must be followed precisely, or information that should be considered with great care, in order to avoid the possibility of personal injury.**

 Cautions indicate either a procedure which must be followed precisely, or information that should be considered with great care, in order to avoid the possibility of damage to your vehicle.



The recycling symbol identifies those items that must be disposed of safely in order to prevent unnecessary damage to the environment.



The disposal symbol identifies those items that must be disposed of correctly, as they contain harmful substances. Seek advice on disposal from your retailer/authorised repairer or your local authority.



The personalisation symbol identifies those features that can be adjusted, disabled, or enabled by your retailer/authorised repairer.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2019.



## Introduction

All rights reserved.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2019



© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2019



## Contents

Introduction.....	2	Driving programs.....	191
Controls overview.....	7	4x4i.....	198
Entering the vehicle.....	9	Driving aids.....	204
Exiting the vehicle.....	22	Touchscreen home.....	209
Front seats.....	29	Touchscreen extra features.....	219
Rear seats.....	34	Touchscreen settings.....	221
Head restraints.....	41	Media.....	223
Steering wheel.....	44	AM/FM radio.....	230
Seat belts.....	46	DAB radio.....	233
Child safety.....	50	Portable media.....	236
Airbags.....	60	Television.....	246
Instrument panel.....	67	Climate and comfort.....	249
Warning and information lamps.....	75	Parking features.....	264
Exterior lights.....	84	Cameras.....	275
Interior lights.....	91	Phone.....	280
Wipers and washers.....	93	Bluetooth®.....	289
Mirrors.....	97	Navigation.....	290
Garage door opener.....	100	Voice control.....	307
Windows.....	104	InControl.....	309
Storage compartments.....	106	Connectivity.....	320
Load carrying.....	111	Fuel and refuelling.....	325
Towing.....	116	Maintenance.....	335
Starting the engine.....	138	Vehicle cleaning.....	344
Auto stop/start.....	142	Fluid level checks.....	349
Transmission.....	145	Vehicle battery.....	355
Suspension.....	148	Fuses.....	361
Brakes.....	149	Tyres.....	369
Stability control.....	152	Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS).....	380
Traction control.....	154	Tyre repair system.....	384
Hill Descent Control (HDC)....	155	Wheel changing.....	391
Speed limiter.....	158	Vehicle recovery.....	401
Cruise control.....	162	After a collision.....	404
Adaptive cruise control.....	164	Vehicle labels.....	407
Collision avoidance.....	173	Technical specifications.....	409
All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC).....	186	Service.....	423
		Warranty.....	427



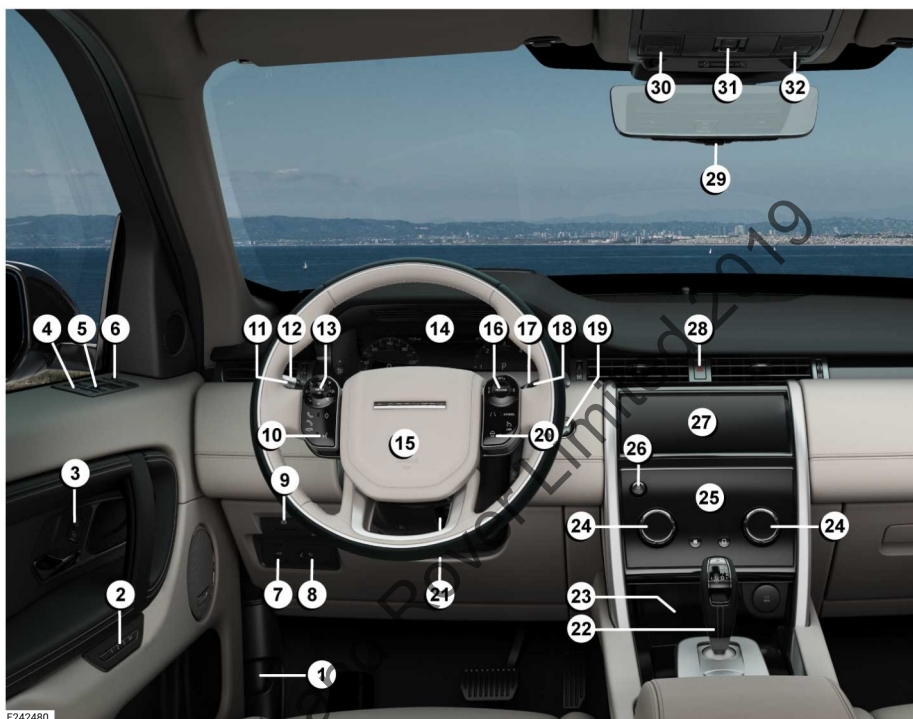
## Contents

Roadside assistance.....	434
Index.....	437
Type approval.....	462

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2019

## Controls overview

### DRIVER CONTROLS



For further information on the numbered item, refer to the page number.

1. Bonnet release (340).
2. Driver's seat position memory (33).
3. Doors lock and unlock (25).
4. Rear window isolator and child safety locks (52).
5. Window controls (104).
6. Mirror adjustment and power-folding mirrors (97).
7. Tailgate release (16).
8. Interior illumination control (92), and headlight levelling (88).
9. Electric Parking Brake (EPB) (150).
10. Phone (285), and voice controls (307).
11. Exterior lights (85), and trip computer (71).
12. Gearshift paddle - Down (145).
13. Instrument panel menu (69), and audio controls (225).
14. Instrument panel (67).
15. Horn.
16. Driving aids (204), speed limiter (158), and cruise control (162) or adaptive cruise control (165).
17. Gearshift paddle - Up (145).



## Controls overview

- 18. Wash/wipe controls (93).
- 19. Engine START/STOP (138).
- 20. Heated steering wheel (44).
- 21. Steering column adjuster (44).
- 22. Gear selector (145).
- 23. Wireless device charger (110).
- 24. Climate controls (249), terrain response (191), and advanced tow assist (123).
- 25. Lower touchscreen (212).
- 26. Power and volume control (212).
- 27. Touchscreen (210).
- 28. Hazard warning lights.
- 29. ClearSight rear-view mirror (98), and garage door opener (100).
- 30. Optimised Land Rover assistance (309).
- 31. Roof blind (104).
- 32. SOS emergency call (309).

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2019

## Entering the vehicle

### SMART KEY OPERATION

Smart key



E225670

**⚠** The smart key system uses Radio Frequency (RF) transmissions that could interfere with implanted medical devices. To avoid any possibility of interference between the system and the device, make sure that the device is kept at a safe distance. The distance should be at least 22 cm away from any transmitter. In rare circumstances, interference may cause an implanted medical device to malfunction. Malfunction to an implanted medical device may cause death.

See 15, **SMART KEY SYSTEM TRANSMITTERS**.

**⚠** To prevent accidental or unauthorised operation, never leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. The vehicle can be operated when the smart key is inside the vehicle. Unauthorised operation may lead to serious injury or death.

**Note:** The operational range of the smart key varies considerably, depending on atmospheric conditions and interference from other transmitting devices.

**Note:** If any door, or the tailgate, is unlocked ten times within a short period, the locking latch disables for approximately 1 minute.

**Note:** A replacement smart key can be obtained only from a retailer/authorised repairer. The retailer/authorised repairer requires proof of identification and ownership. Notify a retailer/authorised repairer immediately if a smart key is lost or stolen.

The vehicle is supplied with two smart keys. The smart keys act as remote controls for the locking and alarm systems. The smart keys allow the vehicle to be locked, unlocked, and driven without the use of a conventional key. Each smart key also has an emergency key housed behind a slide-off cover. See 13, **KEYLESS ENTRY**, 23, **KEYLESS LOCKING** and 138, **STARTING THE ENGINE**.

1. Lock: Press to secure the vehicle. The vehicle single locks. In some markets, a second press double locks the vehicle. If power-fold mirrors are enabled, the mirrors fold in. See 22, **SINGLE LOCKING**, 22, **DOUBLE LOCKING**, and 97, **DOOR MIRRORS**.



## Entering the vehicle

Press and hold to activate the global closing feature. See **24, GLOBAL CLOSING**.

**2. Headlights:**

When approaching the vehicle during darkness, press to switch on the headlights for approach illumination. Press again to switch approach illumination off.

The approach illumination preset delay period is 30 seconds. The delay period can be configured to provide illumination lasting between 0 and 240 seconds. See **67, INSTRUMENT PANEL**.

**3. Panic alarm:**

Press and hold for 3 seconds, or press three times within 3 seconds, to activate the horn and the hazard warning lights.

Once active for more than 5 seconds, the alarm can be cancelled. Press the button and hold for 3 seconds, or press three times within 3 seconds.

The panic alarm also cancels if a valid smart key is present when the **START/STOP** button is pressed.

- 4. Unlock:** Press briefly to unlock the vehicle and disarm the alarm. The hazard warning lights flash twice to indicate that the vehicle is unlocked and the alarm is disarmed. The interior lights illuminate to assist entry to the vehicle. If power-fold mirrors are enabled, the mirrors unfold. Press and hold to activate the global opening feature, if available. See **15, GLOBAL OPENING**.

- 5. Tailgate:** Press briefly to release, open, or close the tailgate. If the vehicle is locked and armed, all of the other doors remain closed and the exterior alarm remains armed while the tailgate is open. Intrusion and inclination sensing systems disable until the tailgate is closed again. When closing, if the vehicle is already locked and armed, the hazard warning lights flash after a few seconds. It is to confirm that the full alarm system has re-armed. An audible tone sounds when the vehicle is double locked.

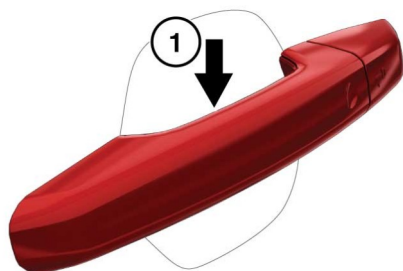
**Note:** Make sure the smart key does not remain in the vehicle before closing the tailgate. The smart key may not be detected if kept inside a metal container, or shielded by a device with a back-lit LCD screen. For example, a smartphone, laptop, including when inside a bag, or a games console. Also, if the vehicle is in an area of localised RF interference, the smart key may not be detected. If the smart key is not detected inside the vehicle, the vehicle can be locked. The vehicle does not automatically unlock. The vehicle unlocks only with another valid smart key.

**Note:** A replacement smart key can be obtained only from a retailer/authorised repairer. The retailer/authorised repairer requires proof of identification and vehicle ownership.

**Note:** Notify a retailer/authorised repairer immediately if a smart key is lost or stolen.

## Entering the vehicle

### Door handles



E234135

1. Keyless entry and exit: Exterior door handles have separate unlock and lock sensors. The unlock sensor is located on the inner surface of the handle. The lock sensor is located on the outer surface of the door handle.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2019



## Entering the vehicle

### Emergency opening



E238229

1. Emergency key blade access: Push the release button and pull to withdraw the key blade.
2. Door lock cover: If the smart key fails to open the vehicle, insert the key blade into the slot at the base of the driver's door lock cover. Apply slight downward pressure to the top of the cover and gently lever the key blade upward. Carefully rotate the door lock cover upward, to lever the cover off the securing lugs.
3. Door lock: Insert the key blade into the exposed lock and turn to operate the lock. If the door is unlocked, the alarm sounds. To cancel the alarm, position the smart key correctly to disarm the alarm or press the unlock button on the smart key.

**Note:** When replacing the door lock cover, locate the top retaining lugs first. Press down and inwards to locate the single bottom lug. The lug clicks into the locked position. Check the security of the cover. An insecure cover is likely to fall off while the vehicle is moving.

### 2-STAGE UNLOCKING

To unlock the vehicle and disarm the alarm system, press the smart key's unlock button.

The vehicle unlocks in one of two ways:

1. 2-stage unlocking on: Unlocks the driver's door only. A second press is required to unlock the remaining doors and the tailgate.
2. 2-stage unlocking off: Unlocks all of the doors and the tailgate on the first press.

To change the vehicle's 2-stage unlocking status, press the smart key's lock and unlock buttons simultaneously for 3 seconds. The hazard warning lights flash twice to confirm the change.


2-stage unlocking can also be set via the **Vehicle Settings** menu. See **69, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

**Note:** If an audible warning sounds when the vehicle is unlocked, there may be a fault with the alarm sensors. Consult a retailer/authorised repairer as soon as possible.



## Entering the vehicle

### KEYLESS ENTRY

 **The smart key system uses Radio Frequency (RF) transmissions that could interfere with implanted medical devices. Make sure that the device is kept at a safe distance of at least 22 cm away from any transmitter. This is to avoid any possibility of interference between the system and the device. The RFs and field strengths used by the keyless entry system operate well within required medical standards for radiated emissions. In rare circumstances, interference may cause an implanted medical device to malfunction, potentially resulting in serious injury or death.**

For information concerning the location of the security system transmitters, see **15, SMART KEY SYSTEM TRANSMITTERS**.

**Note:** The smart key may not be detected if it is inside a metal container, or if it is shielded by a device with a back-lit LCD screen. For example, a smartphone, a laptop or a games console. Keep the smart key clear of such devices when attempting keyless entry, keyless locking, or push button starting.

**Note:** The smart key only needs to be on the driver's person, or in a nearby non-metallic bag or briefcase. The smart key does not need to be exposed or handled.

Keyless entry allows the vehicle to be opened if a smart key is within 2 m of the door handle or 1 m of the tailgate button.

The keyless entry sensor is located on the inner surface of the door handle. Grip and pull the door handle to open the door. The vehicle unlocks, the alarm system disarms, and the hazard warning lights will flash twice to confirm unlocking. If the power-fold mirrors are enabled, the mirrors fold out.

**Note:** When single-point entry is the current security setting and a door other than the driver's door is opened first, all of the doors will unlock.

After entering the vehicle, and closing all of the doors, the vehicle will scan the interior for a valid smart key. If a valid smart key is not detected, the instrument panel displays the message **Smart key not recognised**. If this situation occurs, use a valid smart key to carry out the engine start backup procedure. See **139, ENGINE START BACKUP**.

The security system fitted to the vehicle is Thatcham category 1 approved and meets EU regulations 97/116.

### ACTIVITY KEY

The activity key is a security wrist strap devised to support activities, e.g., swimming, when the smart key would be difficult to keep secure. The activity key is waterproof to a depth of 30 m and is shockproof.

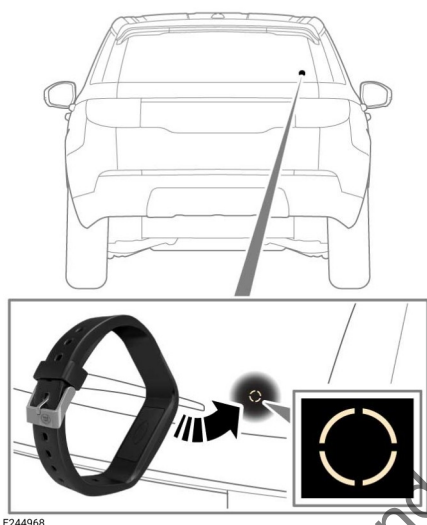
While the activity key is worn on the wrist, the smart key can remain inside the vehicle. When the activity key is activated, the vehicle locks, the alarm system arms, and any smart key remaining inside the vehicle is disabled.



## Entering the vehicle

**Note:** Locking preference settings are retained when locking or unlocking the vehicle using the activity key, e.g., 2-stage unlocking. See **12, 2-STAGE UNLOCKING**. See **15, GLOBAL OPENING**.

### Activity key locking



The ignition must be switched off. After exiting the vehicle and closing the last open door, the antenna for the activity key activates for 30 seconds. The user has this time to place the activity key against the antenna, identifiable by the marking illustrated above. When the security pairing is complete, the vehicle locks and arms the alarm system. The hazard warning lights flash to confirm. If power-fold mirrors are enabled, the mirrors fold in.

**Note:** When the activity key is utilised, any smart key that is left in the vehicle must be hidden from sight. Failure to do so may invalidate the vehicle insurance. Jaguar Land Rover will not accept liability for the loss of any possessions from inside the vehicle, or for the theft of the vehicle itself.

**Note:** If a locking attempt is unsuccessful, an audible alert sounds. Check that all of the doors and the tailgate are closed, and that the ignition is switched off.

**Note:** If the tailgate of a locked vehicle is opened using the smart key, an alert may sound when re-closing the tailgate. Should this occur, fully unlock the vehicle before attempting to close the tailgate.

**Note:** When the vehicle is locked with the activity key, any valid smart key remaining inside the vehicle is disabled. Any valid smart key outside the vehicle remains enabled.

### Activity key unlocking

When returning to the vehicle, press the tailgate release button to reactivate the antenna. The antenna activates for 30 seconds. The user has this time to place the activity key against the antenna. When the antenna recognises the activity key, the vehicle unlocks and disarms the alarm system. The hazard warning lights flash to confirm. If the power-fold mirrors are enabled, the mirrors unfold.

**Note:** When the vehicle is unlocked with the activity key, any valid smart key inside the vehicle re-enables.

**Note:** Only the activity key initially used to lock the vehicle can re-enable any disabled smart key(s).

## Entering the vehicle

### GLOBAL OPENING

**Note:** Global opening of the windows can be enabled and disabled via the **Vehicle settings** menu. See **69, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

To unlock the vehicle and open all of the windows simultaneously, press and hold the smart key's unlock button for 3 seconds.

To cancel global opening, press any of the buttons on the smart key.

### CONVENIENCE MODE

When the driver's door is opened using either the smart key or keyless entry, the vehicle's electrical system initiates convenience mode. The following systems become functional:

- Driver position memory.
- Seat and steering column adjustment.
- Interior and exterior lighting.
- Instrument panel.
- Auxiliary power sockets.

### STEERING COLUMN LOCK

The steering column lock unlocks and locks in conjunction with the vehicle's locking system. The steering column locks automatically when the vehicle's ignition is switched off and the smart key is removed from the vehicle.

- ⓘ During vehicle recovery, a smart key must remain inside the vehicle so that the steering column lock remains unlocked. If the steering column lock locks while the vehicle is moving, serious damage may occur.

If the steering column lock malfunctions, the instrument panel displays the message **Steering column locked**. If this occurs:

1. Lock and then unlock the vehicle using the smart key.
2. Try again to unlock the steering column lock. Turn the steering wheel gently to the left and right.

**Note:** The steering column lock may malfunction if the steering column is under load. For example, when the vehicle is parked with the front wheels pressed against a kerb.

If the problem persists, seek qualified assistance immediately.

### SMART KEY SYSTEM TRANSMITTERS

- ⚠ **Keep any implanted medical device at least 22 cm away from any transmitter mounted in the vehicle. Failure to do so could result in interference between the system and device. Interference may cause the implanted medical device to malfunction, potentially causing serious injury or death.**

More information on the locations of the security system transmitters can be found in the technical specifications section. See **419, SMART KEY TRANSMITTER LOCATIONS**.

### DRIVE-AWAY LOCKING


Drive-away locking automatically locks all of the doors when the vehicle reaches a set speed. The drive-away locking feature can be enabled or disabled via **Vehicle settings** in the instrument panel menu. See **69, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.





## Entering the vehicle


**Note:** After drive-away locking has taken place, press the unlock or lock button to override the feature for the current journey. The unlock and lock buttons are located on the inside of the front doors. See 25, **DOOR LOCKS AND HANDLES**.

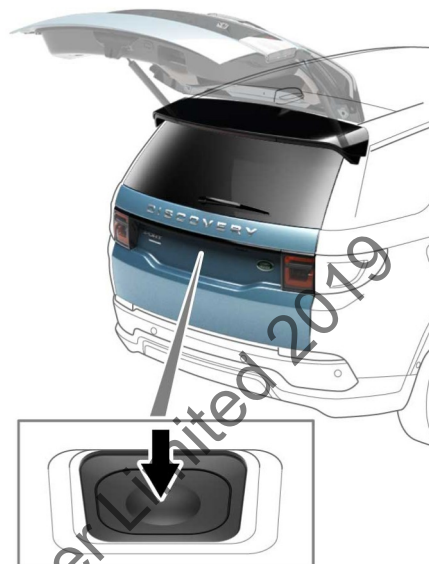
### OPENING AND CLOSING THE TAILGATE

 Before operating the tailgate, make sure that anyone in the vicinity does not have any body part in a position where it could be trapped. Note that the automatic locking action does not incorporate object detection. Death or serious injury could occur, even with an object detection system.

 While the tailgate is open, the locking latch is exposed. Do not attempt to manually close the latch, as it may also automatically soft-close and trap items or body parts.

 Make sure there is sufficient space above and at the rear of the vehicle before operating the tailgate. Insufficient opening space may result in damage to the vehicle.

 Do not operate the tailgate if a cycle rack is fitted to the tailgate. Remove any cycles and/or racks before operating the tailgate. Cycles or racks may cause interference in the operation of the tailgate and may cause damage to the vehicle.



E242725

To open and close the tailgate:

1. Tailgate release button: Press to release the tailgate and then lift to open.

**Note:** The tailgate release operates if all of the doors are unlocked and the gear selector is in the Park (P) position. When the gear selector is in the Neutral (N) position, the release operates only if all of the doors are unlocked. The ignition must be in convenience mode or switched off. The tailgate release does not operate if the gear selector is in any other position. See 15, **CONVENIENCE MODE**.

The tailgate can also be released using the following methods:

- The interior tailgate release button. See 7, **DRIVER CONTROLS**.

## Entering the vehicle

- The smart key's tailgate release button. See **9, SMART KEY OPERATION**.

**Note:** The tailgate does not open if the vehicle is travelling at, or above, approximately 5 km/h (3 mph).

Closing the tailgate: As the closing tailgate reaches its lowest position, it automatically soft closes to the fully closed position.

- ⚠ Do not slam the tailgate, as it may cause damage to the locking system.

**Note:** If a valid smart key cannot be detected within 1 m of the rear of the vehicle, an audible warning sounds to indicate a mislock. The tailgate re-opens after approximately 3 seconds.

**Note:** If the smart key is left inside the loadspace and the vehicle is locked and armed, an audible warning sounds to indicate a mislock. The tailgate re-opens after approximately 3 seconds. The smart key may not be detected if it's inside a metal container, or if it's shielded by a device with a back-lit LCD screen. For example, a smartphone, laptop, including when inside a bag, or games console.

**Note:** Make sure the tailgate is fully closed before leaving the vehicle unattended. Visible and audible warnings indicate if the vehicle is locked and the alarm armed. If there are no visible or audible warnings upon closing the tailgate, the vehicle may be unprotected.

### OPENING AND CLOSING THE POWERED TAILGATE

- ⚠ Before operating the tailgate, make sure that anyone in the vicinity does not have any body part in a position where it could be trapped. Note that the soft-close action does not incorporate object detection. Death or serious injury could occur, even with an object detection system.

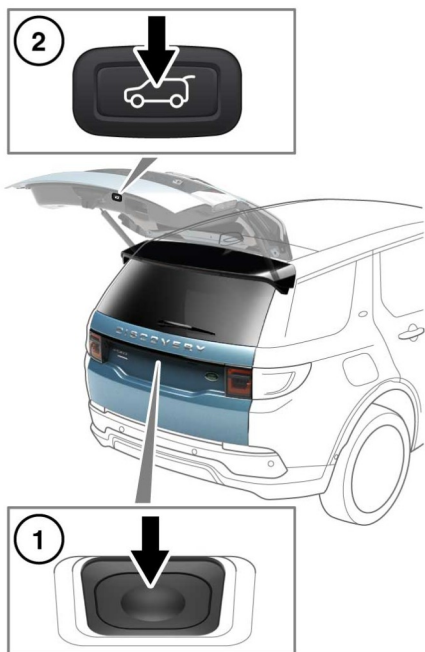
- ⚠ While the tailgate is open, the locking latch is exposed. Do not attempt to manually close the latch, as it may also automatically soft-close and trap items or body parts.

- ⚠ Make sure there is sufficient space above and at the rear of the vehicle, before operating the tailgate. Insufficient opening space may result in damage to the vehicle.

- ⚠ Do not operate the tailgate if a cycle rack is fitted to the tailgate. Remove any cycles and/or racks before operating the tailgate. Cycles or racks may cause interference in the operation of the tailgate and may cause damage to the vehicle.



## Entering the vehicle



E242730

**Note:** The tailgate release operates if all of the doors are unlocked and the gear selector is in the Park (P) position. When the gear selector is in the Neutral (N) position, the release operates only if all of the doors are unlocked. The ignition must be in convenience mode or switched off. The tailgate release does not operate if the gear selector is in any other position.

**Note:** The tailgate does not open if the vehicle is traveling at, or above, approximately 5 km/h (3 mph).

To operate the powered tailgate:

1. Tailgate release button: Press to open, stop, reverse direction, or close the tailgate.
2. Tailgate close button: Press to close or stop the tailgate.

The tailgate can also be opened using the following methods:

- The interior tailgate release button. See 7, **DRIVER CONTROLS**.
- The smart key's tailgate release button. See 9, **SMART KEY OPERATION**.

After the tailgate has opened to its set height, it can be manually raised or lowered. If the tailgate fails to open or close correctly, close it manually and then press the tailgate release button again.

As the closing tailgate approaches the closed position, it soft-closes to the fully closed position. If the vehicle was previously locked, the alarm re-arms. The hazard warning lights flash to confirm the alarm status. An audible confirmation may also be given.

**Note:** If a tailgate button is pressed while the tailgate is opening or closing, all movement stops. However, if a button is pressed during the soft-close stage, the request is ignored.

Object detection while opening: If an object is detected that would interfere with the tailgate opening, tailgate movement stops. Remove any obstructions. Press the tailgate release button again to open.

## Entering the vehicle

Object detection while closing: If an object is detected that would interfere with a tailgate closing, tailgate movement stops. Then the tailgate reverses to the fully open position, if able to do so. An audible warning is given to indicate a mislock. Remove any obstructions and if the tailgate is open, press the tailgate button again to close the tailgate. Press a tailgate release button to open the tailgate. Remove any obstructions. Once obstructions have been removed, press the tailgate close button to close the tailgate.

**Note:** If a valid smart key cannot be detected within 1 m of the rear of the vehicle, the tailgate does not power-close. An audible warning sounds to indicate a mislock.

**Note:** If the tailgate is closed manually, the vehicle searches for a valid smart key. If no smart key is detected within 1 m of the rear of the vehicle, or a smart key remains inside the vehicle, an audible warning sounds to indicate a mislock. The tailgate re-opens after approximately 3 seconds.

**Note:** If the smart key is left inside the loadspace and the vehicle is locked and armed, an audible warning sounds to indicate a mislock. The tailgate re-opens after approximately 3 seconds. The smart key may not be detected inside a metal container or if it is shielded by a device with a back-lit LCD screen. For example, a smartphone, laptop, including when inside a bag, or games console.

### TAILGATE OPENING HEIGHT

The maximum opening height can be set as required:

1. Open the tailgate to the position required as the maximum height. Press any tailgate button to stop movement at the required position. The final position can be achieved manually, if required.
2. Make sure the tailgate is stationary for at least 3 seconds.
3. Press and hold the tailgate close button for 10 seconds to set the maximum opening height.
4. Close the tailgate.
5. Open the tailgate again to check that it opens to the set height.

**Note:** If, after performing part 3 of the process, the tailgate closes automatically, the required height has not been set. Repeat the process, making sure that all steps are adhered to.

The powered tailgate may lose its position memory if there are multiple object detections or if the battery voltage is low. Powered operation may be inhibited.

To reset the tailgate:

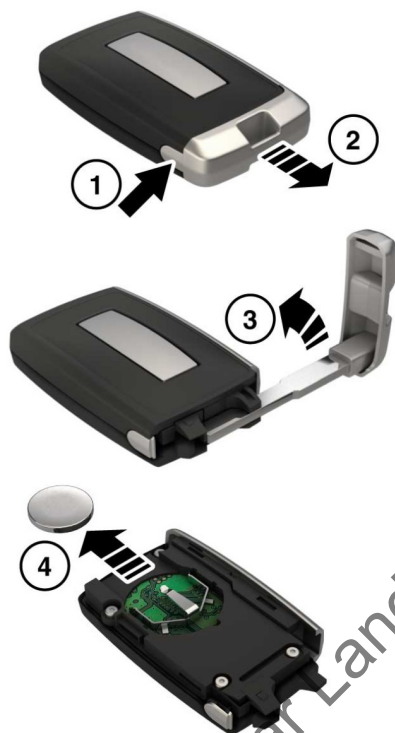
1. Manually close the tailgate.
2. Press a tailgate release button.
3. Allow the tailgate to power fully open, or to the previously set position.
4. Press and release the close button.
5. Allow the tailgate to power-close fully. The tailgate's programmed memory is now restored.





## Entering the vehicle

### SMART KEY BATTERY REPLACEMENT



E206149

When the battery needs replacing, there is a significant decrease in the effective range and the instrument panel displays a warning message.

To replace the battery:

1. Push the button on the smart key, to withdraw the emergency key blade.
2. Pull the emergency key blade in the direction of the arrow.
3. Use the emergency key blade to separate the smart key's body.

4. Fit a new and unused CR2032 type battery, available from a retailer/ authorised repairer, with the positive (+) side upward.

**Note:** Avoid touching the new battery. Moisture or oil from fingers can reduce battery life and corrode the contacts.

**Note:** If the low battery warning does not extinguish, it indicates that the replacement battery is not in a new or unused condition.

Refit the parts in reverse order. Make sure that the parts click securely into place.



**Battery disposal:** Batteries contain harmful substances and must be disposed of correctly. Seek advice on disposal from a retailer/authorised repairer and/ or the local authority.

### SMART KEY CARE



To prevent accidental or unauthorised operation, never leave the smart key unattended in the vehicle. Never leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. The vehicle can be operated when the smart key remains inside the vehicle.

**Note:** The Radio Frequency (RF) used by the smart key may be used by other devices, e.g., medical equipment. Use of these devices may prevent the smart key from operating correctly.



Do not expose the smart key to extremes of heat, dust, or humidity. Do not allow the smart key to come into contact with fluids. Do not leave the smart key exposed to direct sunlight as sunlight may cause damage to it.



## Entering the vehicle

The emergency key blade number is recorded on an attached label. Peel off the label and store it securely away from the vehicle.

The operational range of the smart key depends on atmospheric conditions and interference from other transmitting devices.

- ⓘ The instrument panel will warn if the smart key battery is depleted. If a Smart Key Low Battery warning occurs, replace the batteries in all of the smart keys simultaneously. This is to avoid permanent damage to the smart keys.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2019



## Exiting the vehicle

### SINGLE LOCKING

**⚠** Before exiting the vehicle, make sure Park (P) is selected, the engine is switched off, and the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is applied. The smart key should also be removed from the vehicle. Failure to carry out these steps could impact on the safety of those inside and outside the vehicle.

**!** No modifications or additions should be made to the security system. Such changes could cause the system to malfunction.

Briefly press the lock button on the smart key to lock the vehicle and arm the alarm. The hazard warning lights flash to confirm.

Before attempting to lock the vehicle, always make sure of the following:

- The ignition is switched off.
- All of the doors, the windows, the bonnet, and the tailgate are closed correctly.

Single locking secures the vehicle and prevents the doors from being opened from the outside. The doors may still be unlocked and opened from inside the vehicle.

**Note:** The single locking setting should be used in circumstances when pets remain in the vehicle, or if a window must be left open, etc.

Once armed, the alarm activates if:

- The bonnet, tailgate, or a door is opened.
- The engine **START/STOP** button is pressed without a valid smart key present.
- The vehicle's battery is disconnected.

- An attempt is made to disconnect the battery back-up sounder.

**Note:** Always secure the vehicle when left unattended. Where possible, always secure the vehicle to the maximum available level of security.

### DOUBLE LOCKING

**⚠** Never double lock the vehicle with people, children, or pets inside. In the event of an emergency, occupants would be unable to operate the doors and the emergency services would be unable to release them quickly.

Press the lock button on the smart key twice within 3 seconds to double lock the vehicle and arm the full alarm system. The hazard warning lights flash twice to confirm. A double lock tone sounds (if enabled).

Double locking secures the vehicle and prevents the doors from being unlocked or opened from inside or outside the vehicle.

Double locking provides extra security if the vehicle is left unattended. The vehicle cannot be opened by breaking a window and operating the doors from inside. Additionally, double locking arms the full alarm system.

**Note:** In the double locked state, an open glass area may cause the alarm to sound, due to the movement of air. Make sure that all glass areas are fully closed before double locking the vehicle.

Once the full alarm system is armed, the alarm system activates if:

- The boot or a door is opened.
- Movement is detected within the vehicle's interior, including air currents.

## Exiting the vehicle

- The vehicle is raised or tilted (if tilt sensor fitted).

### LOCK CONFIRMATION

If uncertain about the vehicle's locked and armed status, press the lock button on the smart key. With keyless entry, touch a lock sensor on an exterior door handle. The hazard warning lights flash once to indicate and confirm the current lock status. One short flash means that the vehicle is single locked and one long flash indicates that it is double locked.

### AUTOMATIC RE-LOCKING AND RE-ARMING OF THE ALARM

The security system disarms automatically when the vehicle is unlocked with a smart key. However, if a door is not opened within 40 seconds, the security system re-engages the locks and the alarm re-arms. Automatic re-locking and re-arming is a precautionary action to protect the vehicle when it is unintentionally left unlocked.

**Note:** The vehicle will not automatically double-lock. Automatic re-locking and re-arming of the alarm only returns the vehicle to the **single locked** state.

### KEYLESS LOCKING



**Never double lock the vehicle with people, children, or pets inside. In the event of an emergency, any occupants would be unable to exit the vehicle and the emergency services would be unable to release the occupants quickly.**

**Note:** The smart key may not be detected if it is inside a metal container, or is shielded by a device with a back-lit LCD screen. For example, a smartphone, laptop, including when inside a laptop bag, or a games console. Keep the smart key clear of such devices when attempting keyless entry, keyless locking, or push button starting. Loose coins, in the same pocket as the smart key, may also affect its detection.

**Note:** The vehicle does not lock automatically.



1. Touch the lock sensor (1) once to single lock the vehicle.
- Note:** Do not grip the door handle while touching the sensor. Doing so prevents the vehicle from locking.
2. The hazard warning lights flash once to confirm the single locked status.
  3. Touch the lock sensor (1) again, within 3 seconds, to double lock the vehicle.
  4. The hazard warning lights flash twice to confirm the double locked status.

When using keyless locking, the vehicle does not lock if:

- Any door(s) is open.
- The bonnet is open.
- The boot is not fully closed.
- The vehicle's ignition is switched on.




## Exiting the vehicle

No audible mislock error warning sounds. The hazard warning lights do not flash, and the power-fold mirrors, if enabled, do not fold in.

Make sure that the vehicle's ignition is switched off, and that all of the doors, the bonnet, and the boot are closed properly. Lock the vehicle again. If the mislock persists, consult a retailer/authorised repairer.

### GLOBAL CLOSING

 **Make sure no children, pets, or obstructions are in any open aperture before operating the global closing feature. If children or pets are left unattended in a locked vehicle, it may cause serious injuries.**

**Note:** Global closing can be enabled and disabled via the **Vehicle settings** menu. See **69, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

To operate the global closing feature, all of the doors must be closed. Press and hold the lock button on the smart key for 3 seconds. The vehicle single locks and the alarm arms immediately. After 3 seconds, any open windows close.

Keyless global closing, if enabled, can be achieved if a valid smart key is on the driver's person, or in a non-metallic bag or briefcase. To operate, touch the door's lock sensor for 3 seconds. The vehicle single locks and the alarm arms immediately.

**Note:** The windows close only while the door's lock sensor is being touched. To fully secure the vehicle, continue to touch the lock sensor until all of the windows are fully closed.

### BATTERY BACK-UP SOUNDER

When the alarm is armed, the battery back-up sounder activates if:

- The alarm is activated.
- The vehicle's 12V battery is disconnected.
- An attempt is made to disconnect the battery back-up sounder.

### TILT SENSOR

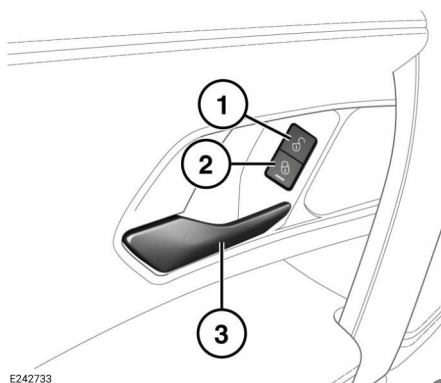
**Note:** The tilt sensor is an alarm sensor. The **Alarm Sensors** can be enabled or disabled for one ignition cycle only, via the **Vehicle settings** menu. See **69, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

When the alarm is armed and the vehicle is double locked, the tilt sensor detects any change in the vehicle's angle to the ground. A significant change in the vehicle's angle activates the alarm.

## Exiting the vehicle

### DOOR LOCKS AND HANDLES

**⚠** The locking latch is exposed while a door is open. If the latch has the soft-close feature, do not attempt to manually close the latch. It may automatically soft-close and trap items or body parts.



To operate the door locks and handles:

1. **Unlock button:** Press to unlock all of the doors. Alternatively, pull either front door handle (3) once to unlock all of the doors.  
Pull either rear door handle once to unlock the individual rear door.
2. **Lock button:** With all of the doors closed, press to lock all of the doors.
3. **Door handle:** Pull to unlock and open a door. If the door is locked, pull either front door handle once to unlock all of the doors.  
Pull either rear door handle once to unlock only the individual rear door.

**Note:** If the vehicle is locked with the smart key, operating an interior door handle unlocks only that door. If the door is opened, the alarm sounds.

**Note:** The rear door child safety locks inhibit operation of the rear door lock and unlock buttons and the door handles. See 52, **CHILD SAFETY LOCKS**.

### CLEAR EXIT DETECTION

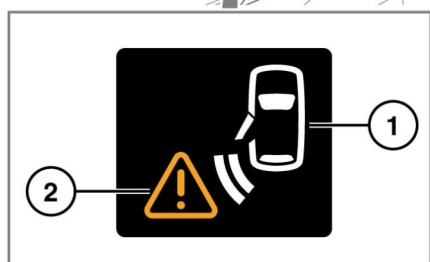
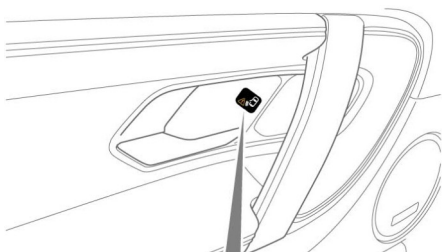
**⚠** Clear exit detection is a passenger aid only. It remains the responsibility of the user to open the door with due care and attention, in a manner which is safe for the vehicle, its occupants and other road users.

- !** Make sure that the warning icons and indicators on the door handle are not obscured by stickers or other objects.
- !** Do not attach stickers or objects to the rear bumper that may interfere with the radar sensors.

Clear exit detection warns of a possible threat after unlatching a rear door from the inside. Sensors in the rear bumper monitor nearby traffic and determine if opening a rear door could pose a threat. The clear exit detection system activates only when the door has been unlatched. The icons illuminate as follows:



## Exiting the vehicle



E245519

1. Illuminates white to indicate that the system is active.
2. Illuminates amber to warn of a detected threat.

The amber icon illuminates when another vehicle, or moving object, is detected approaching from behind. The system has calculated that opening the door could endanger the occupant, the vehicle, or the other road user. The system does not prevent the door from being opened.

The icons extinguish 3 seconds after the door has been closed.

The clear exit detection system may not be able to detect all approaching traffic in all circumstances. The operation relies on the sensor's ability to detect threats which may be affected by road and weather conditions, but also if:

- Vehicles approach very quickly from behind.

- The sensors are impaired by mud, rain, frost, ice, snow, damage, accessories or stickers.
- The range of the sensors is obscured by objects, such as other cars parked particularly wide or close to your vehicle.

Under these circumstances, as well as loss of functionality, reduced warning times may be experienced.

Clear exit detection is only active below the vehicle speed of 5 km/h (3 mph) and remains active for 3 minutes after the ignition is switched off.

### MISLOCK

When locking the vehicle with the smart key, a mislock can occur if:

- One or more of the doors, the bonnet, or the tailgate are not fully closed.
- One or more of the doors have failed to lock.
- The vehicle's ignition is switched on.

If any of the above are present, the vehicle does not lock and an audible mislock error warning sounds. The hazard warning lights do not flash and the power-fold mirrors, if enabled, do not fold in. Check that all of the doors, the windows, the bonnet, and the tailgate are closed properly. Make sure the vehicle's ignition is switched off. Lock the vehicle again. If the mislock persists, consult a retailer/authorised repairer.

**Note:** Operating the interior or exterior door handles while attempting to unlock, lock, or change the child lock status may cause the security system to ignore any requests.

## Exiting the vehicle

### DEACTIVATING THE ALARM WHEN TRIGGERED

If the alarm activates, it can be deactivated by any one of the following methods:

- Press the unlock button on the smart key. See **9, SMART KEY OPERATION**.
- Open a door using keyless entry. See **13, KEYLESS ENTRY**.
- Press the **START/STOP** button with a valid smart key inside the vehicle. See **139, ENGINE START BACKUP**.

The cause of the last alarm activation can be displayed from the **Vehicle info** menu in the instrument panel. See **69, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

### EMERGENCY LOCKING

**Note:** Do not leave the emergency key blade in the vehicle at any point during the emergency locking procedure.

In the event of a fault with the alarm and/or locking system, manually secure the vehicle. Lock all of the doors via the driver's door key barrel.

The emergency key blade is required for this procedure. See **9, SMART KEY OPERATION**.

Using the emergency key:

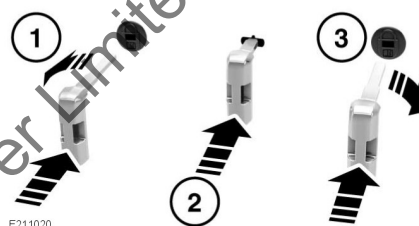
1. Make sure all apertures are closed and insert the emergency key blade into the driver's door key barrel.
2. Turn the emergency key blade 90° clockwise.
3. All of the doors single lock and access to the luggage compartment is inhibited.

4. Pull the exterior door handles to check that the doors are locked. When doing so, make sure any valid smart keys are at least 2 m away from the doors.

If the issue persists, consult a retailer/ authorised repairer for rectification as soon as possible.

In the event of the battery discharging, each of the doors must be locked manually.

The emergency key blade is required for this procedure. See **9, SMART KEY OPERATION**.



Using the emergency key:

1. Open a door and locate the emergency lock access cover on the edge of the door. The cover has an embossed lock icon. Insert the emergency key blade into the cover's slot. Rotate the cover counter-clockwise to first release it, then pull to remove it from the door. Keep the lock access cover safe.
2. Insert the emergency key blade firmly into the emergency lock. A firm push activates the door's locking mechanism. Remove the emergency key blade.
3. Refit the emergency lock access cover. Rotate it clockwise to secure it firmly.
4. Close the door and check that it is locked.



## Exiting the vehicle

Repeat the procedure for all other unlocked doors.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2019





## Front seats


### FRONT SEAT SAFETY


Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using the features in this section.


**Failure to observe warnings and cautions may result in vehicle damage, injury, or DEATH in the event of an accident.**

 **Do not adjust the seat while the vehicle is moving. Doing so could cause a loss of vehicle control, resulting in personal injury.**

 **Take care when retrieving items that have fallen down the side, back, front or underneath the seat. Sharp objects may be present in these areas, which could present a risk of injury. Always stop the vehicle before retrieving items.**

 **Riding with a reclined seatback increases the chance of serious or fatal injuries in the event of a collision or sudden stop. Reclining the seat greatly reduces the protection of the restraint system, i.e., the seat belts and airbags. Seat belts must be snug against the hips and chest to work properly. The more the seatback is reclined, the greater the chance of an occupant's hips sliding under the lap section of the seat belt. The occupant's neck could also strike the shoulder belt. Drivers and passengers should always sit well back in the seat, be properly belted, and have the seatbacks in an upright position.**

 **Make sure that the area immediately surrounding the seat is clear of obstructions before activating the seat memory function. All occupants should be clear of moving parts to avoid personal injury.**

 If seat movement stops unexpectedly during adjustment, check for, and remove, any obstructions. An obstruction may cause damage to the seat mechanism.

**Note:** *If no obstructions can be seen, but normal adjustment cannot be carried out without stalling, contact a retailer/authorised repairer.*



## Front seats

### MANUAL SEATS

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before operating any features in this section. See **29, FRONT SEAT SAFETY**.



E196370

Adjust the position of the manual front seats as follows:

1. Forward and rearward adjustment.
2. Height adjustment.
3. Seatback angle adjustment.

Front seats

**ELECTRIC SEATS**

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before operating any features in this section. See 29, FRONT SEAT SAFETY.



E229348

To adjust the seats, the smart key must be in the vehicle and the ignition switched on.

Adjust the position of the electric front seats as follows:

1. Lumbar support.
  - Press the top of the button to raise the lumbar support.



## Front seats

- Press the bottom of the button to lower the lumbar support.
  - Press the front of the button to inflate the lumbar support.
  - Press the rear of the button to deflate the lumbar support.
2. Head restraint height.
  3. Seatback angle.
  4. Seat height.
  5. Forward and rearward position.
  6. Cushion tilt.
  7. Bolster inflate and deflate.

The front head restraints can also be adjusted. See **41, FRONT HEAD RESTRAINTS**.

### RESTRICTED FRONT SEAT TRAVEL

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before operating any features in this section. See **29, FRONT SEAT SAFETY**.

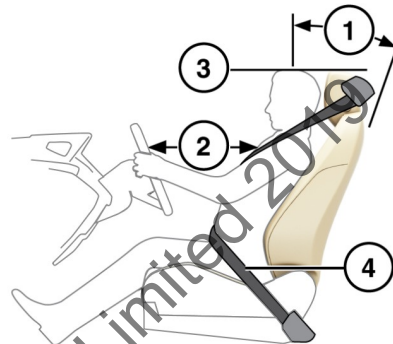
If front seat travel is restricted or obstructed, reset the seat adjustment mechanism, as follows:

1. Remove the obstruction.
2. Adjust the seat to the point where movement stopped.
3. Press and hold the switch for at least 2 seconds to override the restriction.

### SITTING IN THE CORRECT POSITION

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before operating any features in this section. See **29, FRONT SEAT SAFETY**.

The seat, head restraint, seat belt, and airbags all contribute to the protection of the user. Correct use of these components gives greater protection. Therefore, always observe the following points:



E145130

1. Sit in an upright position, with the base of the spine as far back as possible. To achieve optimum benefit of the seat belt in the event of an accident, do not recline the seat excessively.
2. Do not move the driver's seat too close to the steering wheel. Ideally, a minimum distance of 254 mm is recommended between the breastbone and the airbag cover of the steering wheel. Hold the steering wheel in the correct position, with arms slightly bent.
3. Adjust the head restraint so that the top of the head restraint is above the centreline of the head.
4. Position the seat belt so that it is midway between the neck and shoulder. Fit the strap tightly across the hips, not across the stomach.

Make sure that the driving position is comfortable, enabling full control of the vehicle.

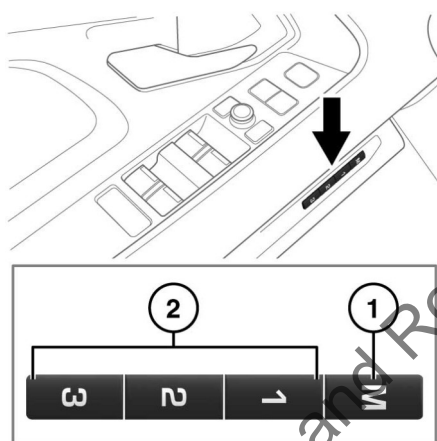
## Front seats

### SEAT POSITION MEMORY

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before operating any features in this section. See **29, FRONT SEAT SAFETY**.

When a preferred seating position has been reached, the settings can be stored for future use. See **44, ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL** and **97, DOOR MIRRORS**.

Press the relevant preset button to recall a stored position. The message **MEMORY (1, 2 or 3) SETTINGS RECALLED** displays in the instrument panel to confirm the settings have been recalled.



E229349

1. Press the memory store (**M**) button to activate the memory function.
2. Press one of the preset buttons within 5 seconds to store the current settings. The message **MEMORY (1, 2 or 3) SETTINGS SAVED** displays in the instrument panel and a chime sounds to confirm the settings have been stored.







**Note:** A seat position only stores during the 5 second active period.


**Note:** Any existing settings are overwritten when storing a new memory position.





## Rear seats

### FOLDING THE REAR SEATS

-  Always make sure that objects carried in the vehicle are secured properly. Unsecured items can cause death or serious injury in the event of an impact or sudden manoeuvre.
-  Never allow passengers to travel in the loadspace under any circumstances. In a collision, people riding in this area are more likely to be seriously injured or killed.
-  Make sure the locking mechanism is fully engaged when the seatback is raised. During an accident or sudden manoeuvre an unsecured seatback could cause an injury to the seat occupant.
-  Make sure the seat belts are correctly routed and not trapped behind the seats when raising the rear seatbacks. An incorrectly routed seat belt may not properly restrain an occupant during a collision or sudden stop.
-  Make sure the head restraints are raised to the correct position before the seats are used by a passenger. The head restraint must be positioned correctly to restrain rearward movement of the head in a collision.
-  Take care when retrieving items that have fallen down the side, back, front or underneath the seat. Sharp objects may be present in these areas, which could present a risk of injury. Always stop the vehicle before retrieving items.

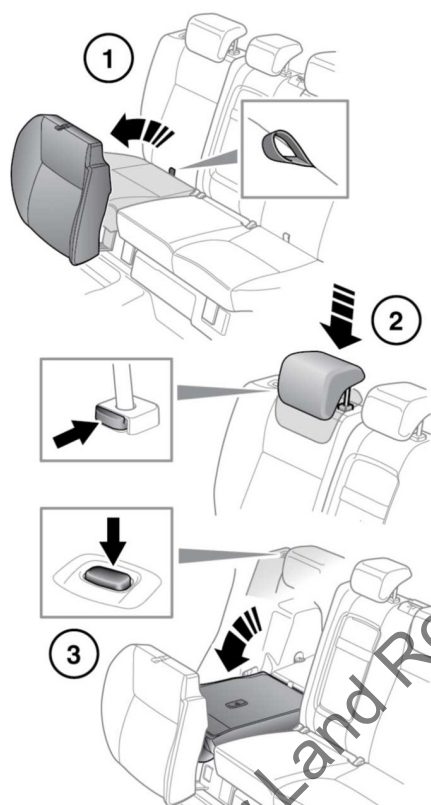
-  To prevent damage when folding a rear seat, make sure the seat belt buckle is correctly stored and that the seatback is free from obstruction.

### FOLDING AND RAISING THE FIXED SEATS

-  Make sure that when the seatback is raised, the locking mechanism is fully engaged. If the seatback is not fully locked in place, red markers will be visible around the seatback buttons. An unsecured seatback may not properly support an occupant during a collision or sudden stop.
-  When raising the rear seats, make sure that the seat belts are correctly routed and not trapped behind the seats. An incorrectly routed seat belt may not properly restrain an occupant during a collision or sudden stop.

The split-folding rear seats can be folded to accommodate large loads and still retain seating for passengers.

## Rear seats



E163929

To raise the rear seat: Lift the seatback until it firmly locks into the upright position. Return the seat cushion to the horizontal position. Before the seat is used by a passenger, make sure the head restraint is positioned correctly. See **42, REAR HEAD RESTRAINTS**.

### FOLDING AND RAISING THE SLIDING SEATS

**⚠** When raising the rear seats, make sure that seat belts are correctly routed and not trapped behind the seats. An incorrectly routed seat belt may not properly restrain an occupant during a collision or sudden stop.

To fold part or all of the rear seat:

1. Pull the strap on the seat cushion and raise to the vertical position.

**Note:** Always raise the cushion before lowering the seatback.

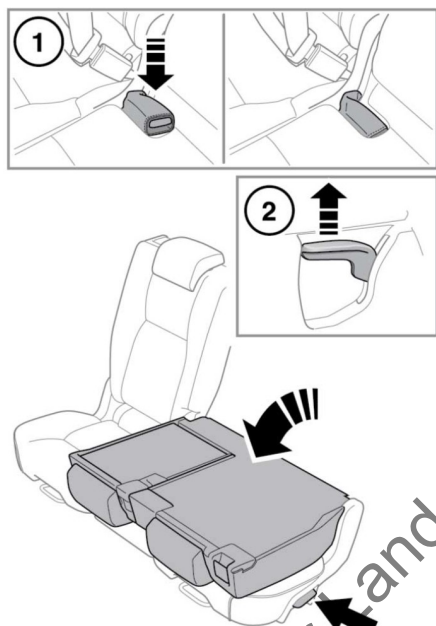
2. Lower the head restraint. See **42, REAR HEAD RESTRAINTS**.
3. Press the seatback release button and lower until locked into place.



## Rear seats

### Split-folding the rear seats

The split-folding rear seats can be folded completely to accommodate large loads, or partially to accommodate large loads and still retain seating for passengers.



E197159

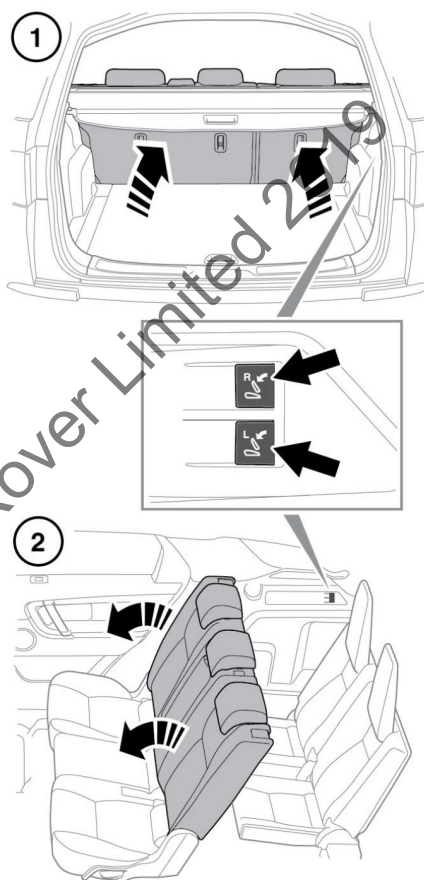
To fold a second row seatback:

1. Make sure the belt buckle is correctly stored.
2. Lift the lever on the side of the seat and pull the seatback forward until it locks into the lowered position.

To raise the rear seat: Lift the lever on the side of the seat. Lift the seatback until it firmly locks into the upright position. Before the seat is used by a passenger, make sure the head restraint is positioned correctly.

### Second row seat folding

To raise the seatback: Lift the lever to unlock and then the seatback until it is locked firmly in the upright position.



E164249

The second row seatbacks can be folded from inside the loadspace, or by the passengers occupying the third row seats:

1. Pull back the switch on the right or left side, respectively, to release the seatback locking mechanism.



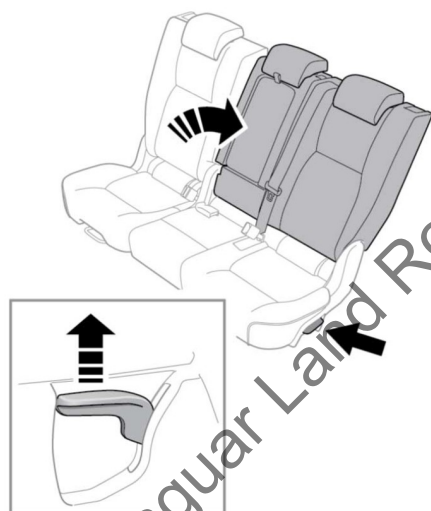
## Rear seats

**Note:** The switches in the loadspace only operate when the vehicle is stationary and the tailgate is open.

2. Push forward on the unlocked seatback to lower it into the folded position.

To raise the rear seat: Lift the lever on the side of the seat. Raise the seatback until it firmly locks into the upright position. Before the seat is used by a passenger, make sure the head restraint is positioned correctly.

### Second row seatback recline



E164250

**Note:** Before reclining the seat: If the loadspace cover is fitted, either slide the seat forward or remove the loadspace cover.

To recline the second row seatback: Lift the side seat lever and push the seatback into the recline position.

To raise the second row seat back: Lift the lever on the side of the seat. Raise the seatback until it firmly locks into the upright position. Before the seat is used by a passenger, make sure the head restraint is positioned correctly.

### Folding the second row centre seatback



E164260

To fold the centre seatback: Press the release button on the top of the seatback. Fold the centre seatback forward into the lowered position.

To raise the centre seatback: Raise the seatback until it firmly locks into the upright position. Before the seat is used by a passenger, make sure the head restraint is positioned correctly.



## Rear seats

**Note:** The second row centre seat belt incorporates a locking feature. The locking feature prevents the seat belt from being pulled out too far when the seatback is folded. To reset the locking feature after returning the seatback to the raised position, pull the seat belt twice. The seat belt now operates as normal.

### Sliding a second row seat





E164261


To move a rear seat forward or backward:

1. Lift the bar at the front of the rear seat. Slide the rear seat into the required position.
2. Release the bar and make sure the rear seat is locked firmly into position.

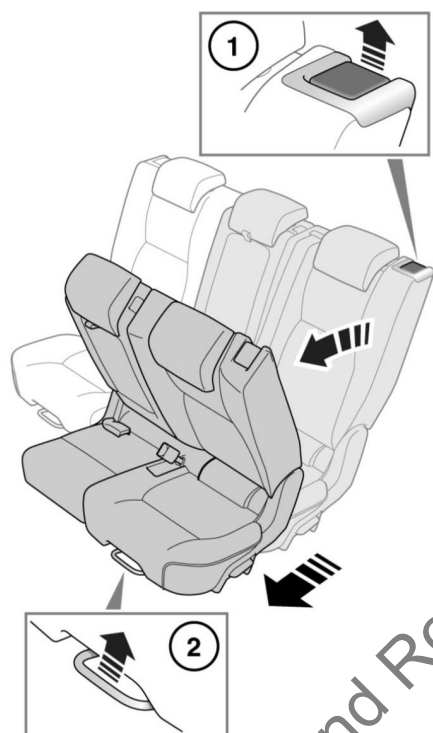
### ACCESS POSITION (7 seat vehicle)

 The vehicle must not be driven with the rear seats in the access position. Motion of the vehicle could cause the seatback to fall forward suddenly, potentially causing injury or death.

 When returning the seat from the access position, make sure the area underneath is clear from obstructions that may prevent the seat from locking securely. Unsecured items can cause death or serious injury in the event of an impact or sudden manoeuvre.

 Make sure that when the seatback and seat are returned to the pre-access position, the locking mechanisms are fully engaged. Physically test to make sure that the seat and seatback are secure before driving. An unsecured seatback may not properly support an occupant during a collision or sudden stop.

## Rear seats



E163645

To tilt the seatback or move the seat forward:

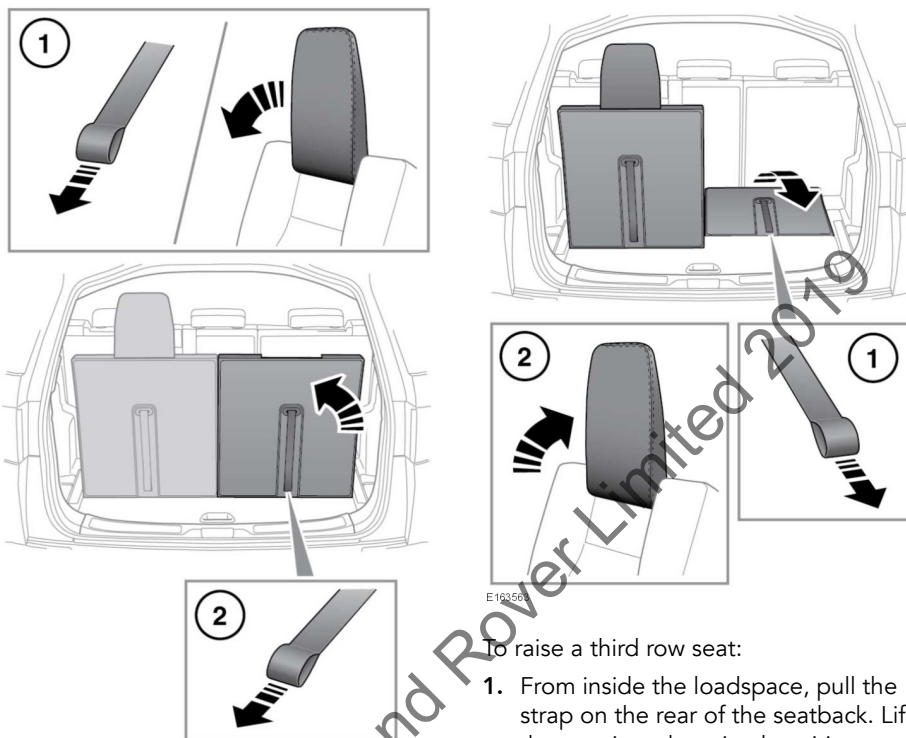
1. Pull the lever on the top of the seatback upward to release the locking mechanism. Move the seatback forward.
2. Pull the lever on the front of the seat upward to release the locking mechanism. Move the seat forward.

### FOLDING AND RAISING THE THIRD ROW SEATS

- ⚠ The head restraint must always be raised when using the third row seats. A correctly adjusted head restraint reduces the risk of neck injury in the event of a collision or sudden stop.
- ⚠ When raising the rear seats, make sure that the seat belts are correctly routed and not trapped behind the seats. An incorrectly routed seat belt may not properly restrain an occupant during a collision or sudden stop.
- ⚠ Beware of trapping fingers when raising and lowering a third row seat.
- ⚠ Take care when retrieving items that have fallen down the side, back, front or underneath the seat. Sharp objects may be present in these areas, which could present a risk of injury. Always stop the vehicle before retrieving items.



## Rear seats



E163564

To fold a third row seat:

1. From inside the loadspace, pull the strap on the rear of the seat to release the head restraint locking mechanism. Fold the head restraint forward.
2. To fold the seat, pull the strap to release the seat locking mechanism. Fold the seat forward.

**Note:** The seat is heavy, so care should be taken when lowering the seat.

E163565


To raise a third row seat:


1. From inside the loadspace, pull the strap on the rear of the seatback. Lift the seat into the raised position.
2. From inside the passenger compartment, lift the head restraint, until it locks in the upright position.


**Note:** The seat is heavy, so care should be taken when raising the seat.


## Head restraints


### HEAD RESTRAINTS OVERVIEW

 Head restraints are designed to support the head, not the back of the neck. The head restraint must be positioned correctly to restrain rearward movement of the head in a collision. An incorrectly adjusted head restraint increases the risk of death or serious injury in the event of a collision.

 While stationary, adjust the head restraint so that the top of the head restraint is above the centreline of the head. An incorrectly adjusted head restraint increases the risk of death or serious injury in the event of a collision.

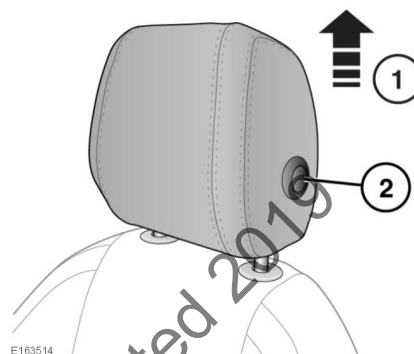
 Do not drive or carry passengers with the head restraints removed from occupied seats. The absence of a correctly adjusted head restraint increases the risk of neck injury in the event of a collision.

 Never adjust the head restraints while the vehicle is in motion. Doing so could potentially cause a loss of vehicle control and personal injury.

 Always store a removed head restraint securely. In the event of an accident, an unsecured object could potentially cause serious injury or death.

Head restraints are fitted to all front and rear seats.


### FRONT HEAD RESTRAINTS



To raise or lower the head restraint:

1. Pull upward to raise.
2. Press the button located on the side of the head restraint and simultaneously push the head restraint downward to lower.

To remove a front head restraint:

-  Head restraints fitted with rear media screens must not be removed.

**Note:** Two people are required for this operation.

1. Raise the head restraint to its highest position.
2. Press down on each of the head restraint stem collars using two hands. The stem collars engage hidden buttons inside the seat.
3. While the collars are pressed down, a second person can lift the head restraint out of the seatback.

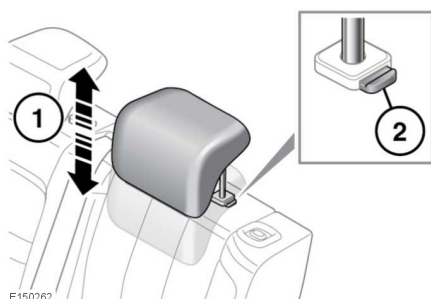


## Head restraints

To refit the head restraint, press the button on the side of the head restraint. While holding the button, press the stems into the head restraint as far as possible. Insert the head restraint stems into the seatback sockets and push downward until at least the first click.

### REAR HEAD RESTRAINTS

#### Fixed seats



To raise or lower:

1. Pull upward and raise to the highest position. The head restraint locks into position.
2. Press the button located on the stem collar and simultaneously push the head restraint downward to lower.

To remove the head restraint, raise it to the highest position. Press the button on the collar and lift the head restraint out of the seatback.

To refit the head restraint, make sure it is facing the correct direction. Insert the head restraint stems into the seatback sockets and push downward until at least the first click.

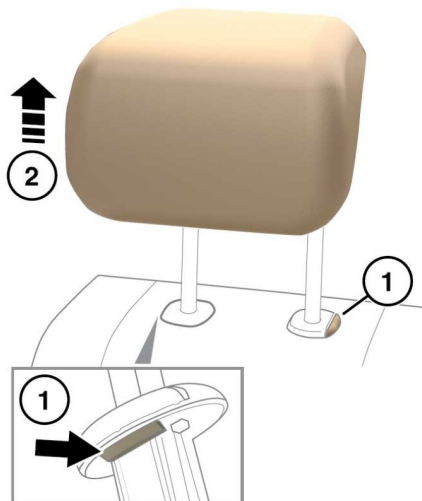
#### Sliding seats



E181066

To raise or lower:

1. Pull upward and raise to the highest position. The head restraint locks into position.
2. Press the button located on the stem collar and simultaneously push the head restraint downward to lower.



E181067

To remove:

## Head restraints

**Note:** Two people are required for this operation.

1. Raise the head restraint to its highest position. Press the release tag below the stem collar and simultaneously press the button on the other stem collar.

**Note:** To locate the release tag, press down on the seat material in the shaded area shown on the illustration.

2. A second person is now required to lift the head restraint out of the seatback.

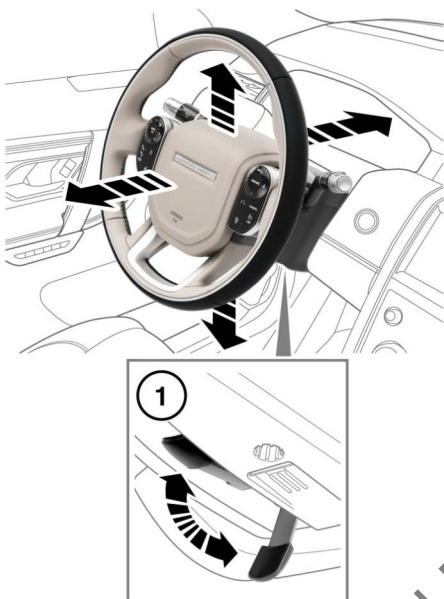
To refit the head restraint, make sure it is facing the correct direction. Insert the head restraint stems into the seatback sockets and push downward until at least the first click.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2019



## Steering wheel

### ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL



E242747

**⚠ Never adjust the steering wheel while the vehicle is in motion. Doing so may cause a loss of control, potentially resulting in an accident.**

To adjust the steering wheel:

1. Move the lever fully downward to unlock the steering column. When the steering wheel is adjusted to the desired position, move the lever fully upward to relock the column.

The steering wheel can be adjusted, up, down, in, or out.

### POWER STEERING

The instrument panel displays a warning message and an amber warning lamp to indicate a fault with the power steering system. See **81, GENERAL WARNING AND INFORMATION MESSAGE (AMBER)**.

Power assistance may be reduced to protect the system if overheating is detected. This can be caused by excessive steering inputs and/or high ambient temperature.

Full steering assistance should return when the system has cooled.

The steering wheel may vibrate to protect against freezing caused by water around the steering system.

If full steering assistance does not return, consult a retailer/authorised repairer.

### HEATED STEERING WHEEL



E242748

Press the heated steering wheel button to switch on the steering wheel heating. Press again to switch off.



## Steering wheel

**Note:** If the steering wheel heater is operating when the ECO program is selected, the steering wheel heater switches off automatically. The steering wheel heater can be switched on again, but this may affect the fuel economy of the vehicle.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2019










## Seat belts

### SEAT BELT SAFETY

Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section.


**Failure to observe warnings and cautions may result in vehicle damage, injury, or DEATH in the event of an accident.**

-  Always replace a seatbelt if it becomes frayed, contaminated, doesn't work properly or after the vehicle has been involved in an accident.
-  Always avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils, chemicals and especially battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water.
-  Always make sure the seat belts are not damaged, or exposed to sharp edges when using them to restrain items other than occupants.
-  Always wear seat belts low across the front of the pelvis, chest and shoulders.
-  Always adjust seatbelts and positioning sliders as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort.
-  Always sit well back in the seat, with the seatback in an upright position.
-  Always wear seat belts, for every journey, no matter how short. The airbag Supplementary Restraint System (SRS) adds to the overall effectiveness of the seat belts, but does not replace them.

-  Never place hard, sharp, or fragile items between the occupant and the seat belt.
-  Never use comfort clips, or any devices that create slack in the seat belt system.
-  Never modify the seat belt adjusting devices or assembly, in any way that prevents the assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.
-  Never wear seat belts with the straps twisted.
-  Never place a seat belt around a child being carried on an occupant's lap. Each belt assembly must only be used by one occupant.
-  Never independently wear the lap belt or shoulder belt portion of the seat belt.
-  Never attempt to cushion the impact of an accident by placing anything between an occupant and the seat belt.

**Note:** Always contact a retailer / authorised repairer before attempting to carry out a repair on a vehicle. Only approved replacement parts should be used for any repairs that are carried out.

### SEAT BELT OPERATION

-  Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 46, SEAT BELT SAFETY.

## Seat belts

Each seat in the vehicle has a dedicated seat belt, designed for an occupant older than 12 years of age or weighing more than 36 kg (80 lb). Occupants with a lower age, or a lower body mass, should use an appropriate child restraint. See 53, **CHILD SEAT REFERENCE TABLES**

To fasten a seat belt:

1. Make sure that the seat, and occupant's sitting position, are correct.
2. Draw the belt out smoothly across the collar bone at the mid-point between the shoulder and neck, and down to the appropriate buckle.
3. Press the metal tongue into the buckle until a click is heard.

**Note:** When releasing the seat belt, hold the belt before pressing the release button. Doing so prevents the belt from retracting too quickly.

**Note:** A seat belt slider may be fitted to this vehicle. When the seat belt is not in use, the belt slider allows for optimal positioning of the metal tongue.

To unfasten a seat belt:

1. Hold the belt.
2. Press the red button on the buckle.
3. Guide the seat belt back to its original resting position.

If a seat belt height adjuster is fitted, to operate:

1. Press and hold the button to release the locking mechanism.
2. Slide the mechanism up or down to the required height.
3. Release the button to re-engage the locking mechanism.



**Always make sure the height is correctly adjusted and the mechanism is locked in place before driving. Maladjustment of the seat belt could reduce its effectiveness in a crash.**



**Never attempt to adjust the seat belt height once the vehicle is in motion. Doing so may cause incorrect seat belt adjustment, or loss of vehicle control.**

### SEAT BELT USE DURING PREGNANCY



**Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 46, SEAT BELT SAFETY.**



E184191



**Always position the seat belt correctly for the safety of a pregnant mother and unborn child. Failure to observe this may increase the risk of serious injury during emergency braking or in the event of an accident.**

To adjust the seat belt for use during pregnancy:


1. Position the lap strap comfortably across the hips, beneath the abdomen.



## Seat belts

2. Place the diagonal part of the seat belt across the chest, and to the side of the abdomen.


### THIRD ROW SEAT BELTS


 **When using the third row seat belts, make sure all the warnings shown at the beginning of this section of the Owner's Handbook are adhered to.**

The third row seat belts should be used in the same way as the front and second row seat belts. See **46, SEAT BELT OPERATION**. Also see **47, SEAT BELT USE DURING PREGNANCY**.

When the third row seat belts are not in use, always store the metal tongue in the storage slot provided in the loadspace.

### SEAT BELT CHECKS

 **Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 46, SEAT BELT SAFETY.**

 **Regularly inspect seat belts for wear and damage. Regularly check for fraying, cuts, or wear to the webbing. Also check the condition and security of the mechanism, buckles, adjusters, and mounting points.**

To inspect the condition of the seat belts:

1. With the seat belt fastened, give the webbing near the buckle a quick upward pull. The buckle must remain securely locked.


2. With the seat belt unfastened, unreel the seat belt to the limit of its travel. Check that it unreels smoothly with no snags. Allow the belt to fully retract with a smooth action.
3. Partially unreel the seat belt. Hold the tongue plate and give a quick forward pull. The mechanism must lock and prevent any further unreeling.

If any seat belt fails to meet the above criteria contact a retailer/authorised repairer immediately.

**Note:** *If the vehicle is parked on an incline, the seat belt mechanism may lock. If locking occurs, ease the belt out from the upper anchorage. If the belt does not ease out from the anchorage, return the vehicle to level ground before attempting to release the seat belt again.*

**Note:** *If the rear seats are returned to the upright position quickly, the seat belt mechanism may lock. If locking occurs, ease the belt out from the upper anchorage.*

### SEAT BELT REMINDER

 **Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 46, SEAT BELT SAFETY.**

An audible warning sounds, and a warning lamp illuminates when the following conditions occur:

- The driver seat, or the front seats are occupied.
- The front seat belts have not been fastened.
- The vehicle accelerates from a low speed.

## Seat belts

- A front seat belt is unfastened while the vehicle is moving.

If a front seat belt has not been fastened, the audible and visual warnings turn off after a short period of time.

**Note:** *There may be a short delay at the start of the journey before the passenger side reminder operates.*

**Note:** *If a heavy object is placed on the front passenger seat, it may activate the seat belt reminder system. If any objects are placed on the front passenger seat, make sure they are secured using the seat belt.*

### SEAT BELT MONITOR



**Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 46, SEAT BELT SAFETY.**

The instrument panel displays a graphic to indicate which seat belts are fastened at the start of a journey. The graphic also indicates when a seat belt is fastened or unfastened during a journey.

**Note:** *In all cases the graphic covers all rear seating positions and may also display front row positions.*

### SEAT BELT PRE-TENSIONERS



**Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 46, SEAT BELT SAFETY.**



**Always check and replace the seat belt pre-tensioners after any activation. Failure to replace the pre-tensioners reduces the effectiveness of the Supplementary Restraint System (SRS).**

Seat belt pre-tensioners are fitted to the front, and third row seats.

The seat belt pre-tensioners activate in conjunction with the SRS to provide additional protection in the event of a severe frontal impact. The seat belt pre-tensioners automatically reduce any slack in a seat belt. As a result, forward movement of an occupant on a seat fitted with a pre-tensioner is reduced.

Load limiters are fitted to the front, and third row seats.

Load limiters help to regulate tension of a seat belt in a severe impact.











## Child safety

### CHILD SEAT SAFETY

Make sure to read and fully understand the following warnings before using any of the features in this section.

**Failure to observe warnings and cautions may result in vehicle damage, injury, or DEATH in the event of an accident.**

-  Always follow the instructions that accompany the child seat carefully.
-  Always use a child restraint or booster seat appropriate to the age and size of a child.
-  Always wear seat belts or use suitable child restraints, for every trip, no matter how short.
-  Always securely store a head restraint, if removing it in order to fit a child restraint.
-  Always refit a removed head restraint after a child restraint is removed.
-  Always make sure the child restraint is correctly anchored.
-  Never use a forward-facing child restraint until the child using it is above 9 kg (20 lb), and able to sit up unaided. Up to the age of two, a child's spine and neck are not sufficiently developed to avoid injury in a frontal impact.
-  Never allow a baby or infant to be held or carried on the lap. The force of a crash can increase effective body weight by as much as thirty times, making it impossible to hold onto the child.



Never use a child seat that hooks over the seatback. A child seat of this type cannot be satisfactorily secured and is unlikely to be safe for a child.

### CHILD SEAT OVERVIEW



Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 50, CHILD SEAT SAFETY.

All infants and children should be restrained in a suitable child safety seat. The child safety seat should be appropriate to the age and size of the infant or child.

### CHILD SEAT POSITIONING



Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 50, CHILD SEAT SAFETY.




Crash statistics show that children are safest when properly secured in a child restraint system appropriate for the age and weight of the child, in a rear seating position. Failure to use an appropriate restraint system greatly increases the risk of serious injury or death in the event of an accident.

**Note:** Ages given are approximate. If in doubt, the child's weight, not age, should be used when considering an appropriate child seat.

## Child safety

**Note:** The legislation which governs how and where children should be carried when travelling in a vehicle is subject to change. The driver is responsible for making sure that all regulations in force are complied with.


### BOOSTER SEATS

 **Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 50, CHILD SEAT SAFETY.**

A child may be too large to fit into a child safety seat, but too small to safely fit the vehicle's seat belt. In these circumstances it is recommended that a booster seat is used for maximum safety. Follow the manufacturer's instructions for the fitting and use of the booster seat. Adjust the vehicle's seat belt accordingly.

If the booster seat is fitted with i-Size or ISOFIX connectors, these should be used to secure the seat in conjunction with the rear seat belt.

### CHILD RESTRAINT CHECK LIST

 **Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 50, CHILD SEAT SAFETY.**

Every time a child travels in the vehicle, observe the following:

- Use appropriate child restraints.
- Carefully follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the restraint system.
- Adjust the harness for every child on every journey.

- Make sure that all slack is removed from the adult seat belt.
- Make sure that any seat belt positioning sliders are adjusted so there is no slack in the belt after fastening.
- Always attach the top tether when fitting an i-Size or ISOFIX child seat, if applicable to the seat type.
- Always check the security of the child restraint.
- Avoid dressing the child in bulky clothing. Do not place any objects between the child and the restraint system.
- Regularly check the fit and condition of the child seat. If the fit is poor, or wear or damage is visible, replace the restraint immediately.
- Set a good example and always wear a seat belt.
- For child seats fitted with a support leg, adjust the leg so that it rests firmly on the floor of the vehicle.
- The centre rear seat may not be suitable for use with child seats that feature a support leg that rests on the floor.

Refer to the child seat manufacturer's information:




- If vehicle head restraints interfere with the fitment of child restraints, remove the head restraint and stow securely. Always replace the head restraint when the child seat is removed.
- When fitting a rearward-facing child seat in the rear, it may be required to move the front seat forward and upward.



## Child safety

Care must be taken not to load any part of the child seat when repositioning the front seat. The space available for front seat occupants is reduced by the fitment of a rearward-facing child seat in the rear.

### CHILD SAFETY INFORMATION


-  **Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 50, CHILD SEAT SAFETY.**
-  **Children should travel in the rear of the vehicle at all times. Front passenger seat travel is not recommended.**
-  **Extreme hazard! Never place a rearward facing child restraint on the front passenger seat. The infant could be seriously injured or killed if the airbag deploys.**

A child should only travel in the front passenger seat if it is essential and national or state legislation permits it. If this is the case, it is recommended that the following preparations are made before fitting the child restraint:

- Disable the front airbag. See **64, DISABLING THE PASSENGER AIRBAG.**
- Adjust the seat to the rearmost position.
- Adjust the seat cushion to the highest position.
- Adjust the seatback to the optimum upright position to support the child seat.
- Adjust any lumbar support to the minimum support position.

- Adjust any cushion extenders to the fully retracted position.

### CHILD SAFETY LOCKS


-  **Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 50, CHILD SEAT SAFETY.**



It is recommended that the rear door interior handles are disabled if children are to be carried in the rear seat positions. Press the button located on the driver's door to activate the child door locks and inhibit the rear windows. The LED indicator illuminates when active, and the instrument panel displays a message.

To switch off, press the button again. The LED extinguishes and the instrument panel displays a message.

### WARNING LABELS

-  **Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 50, CHILD SEAT SAFETY.**



## Child safety

- ⚠ **Extreme Hazard! Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it!**
- ⚠ **NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.**



The above label is affixed to the passenger side sun visor. The label warns against the use of a rearward-facing child seat in the front passenger's seat, when a front passenger airbag is fitted and operational.

- ⚠ **Never let a child's head rest near to a front seat side airbag, as an inflating airbag can cause serious or fatal injury.**



The above label is affixed to both B pillars. The label warns against a child sitting too close to the front seat side airbag.

### Taiwan only

- ⚠ **DO NOT carry babies, infants or children in the front passenger seat. NEVER use rearward facing child restraint systems on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD may occur.**



The above label is affixed to the passenger's side sun visor. The label warns against the use of a rear-facing child seat in the front passenger's seat, when a front passenger airbag is fitted and operational.

### CHILD SEAT REFERENCE TABLES

- ⚠ **Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 50, CHILD SEAT SAFETY.**

**Note:** The information contained within the tables is correct at the time of going to press. However, availability of child restraints may change. Please consult a retailer/authorised repairer for the latest recommendation.



## Child safety

**Note:** The information contained in the following tables may not be applicable to all countries. If there is any doubt regarding the type and fitment of child seats, seek advice from a retailer/ authorised repairer.

### Non-ISOFIX and non-i-Size child seat positioning

Seating positions	Mass group				
	0 = Up to 10 kg 0 to 9 months	0+ = Up to 13 kg 0 to 18 months	I = 9 to 18 kg 9 months to 4 years	II = 15 to 25 kg 4 to 9 years	III = 22 to 36 kg 8 to 12 years
Front passenger seat with airbag ON	X	X	UF	UF	UF
Front passenger seat with airbag OFF*	U	U	U	U	U
Second row outboard**	U	U	U	U	U
Second row centre**	U	U	U	U	U
Third row outboard***	X	X	X	UF	UF

U = Suitable for universal category restraints, approved for this mass group.

X = Not suitable for the use of child restraints in this mass group.

UF = Suitable for universal forward-facing child restraints in this mass group.

However, it is recommended that children are secured in an approved child seat, secured in a rear seating position.

\* Always make sure the passenger airbag has been disabled before using a child restraint in this seating position. See **64, DISABLING THE PASSENGER AIRBAG.**

When using a child restraint in the front passenger seat:

- The seat should be positioned fully rearward.
- The seat cushion should be raised to its highest position.

## Child safety

- The seat back should be adjusted to an upright position to support the child restraint.
- Adjust the seat to the rearmost position, unless the third row seats are occupied.

\*\* For vehicles fitted with adjustable second row seats:

- Adjust the seatback to the upright position to support the child restraint.

\*\*\* Adjust the second row seatback to the upright position. Move the seat forward, to give sufficient clearance to allow fitment of the third row child restraint.

### ISOFIX child seat positioning

Mass group as shown on child restraint	Size class	Fixtures	Front passenger seat with airbag ON	Front passenger seat with airbag OFF*	Second row outboard seats**	Recommended child restraint system
Carycot	F	ISO/L1	X	X	X	-
	G	ISO/L2	X	X	X	-
0 Up to 10 kg (0 to 9 months)	E	ISO/R1	X	IL	IL	Jaguar Land Rover: Group 0+ child seat with ISOFIX base or Britax Römer Baby-Safe Plus with ISOFIX base.
0+ Up to 13 kg (0 to 18 months)	E	ISO/R1	X	IL	IL	-
	D	ISO/R2	X	IL	IL	-
	C	ISO/R3	X	IL	IL	-
I 9 to 18 kg (9 months to 4 years)	D	ISO/R2	X	IL	IL	-
	C	ISO/R3	X	IL	IL	-
	B	ISO/F2	IUF	IUF	IUF	Jaguar Land Rover: Group I child seat or Britax Römer TRIFIX.
	B1	ISO/F2X	IUF	IUF	IUF	
A	ISO/F3	IUF	IUF	IUF		
II and III 15 to 36 kg (4 to 12 years)	-	-	-	-	-	-



## Child safety

IUF = Suitable for ISOFIX forward-facing child restraint systems of a universal category, approved for use in this mass group.

IL = Suitable for installation of an ISOFIX child seat in the Semi-Universal category providing that the vehicle is included on the approved list of vehicles supplied by the child seat manufacturer.

X = ISOFIX position not suitable for ISOFIX child restraint systems in this mass group and/or this size class.

\* Always make sure the passenger airbag has been disabled before using a child restraint in this seating position. See **64, DISABLING THE PASSENGER AIRBAG.**


When using a child restraint in the front passenger seat:


- The seat should be positioned fully rearward.
- The seat cushion should be raised to its highest position.
- The seat back should be adjusted to an upright position to support the child restraint.


\*\* For vehicles fitted with adjustable second row seats:


- Adjust the seatback to the upright position to support the child restraint.
- Adjust the seat to the rearmost position, unless the third row seats are occupied.

### FITTING ISOFIX CHILD RESTRAINTS

 **Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 50, CHILD SEAT SAFETY.**

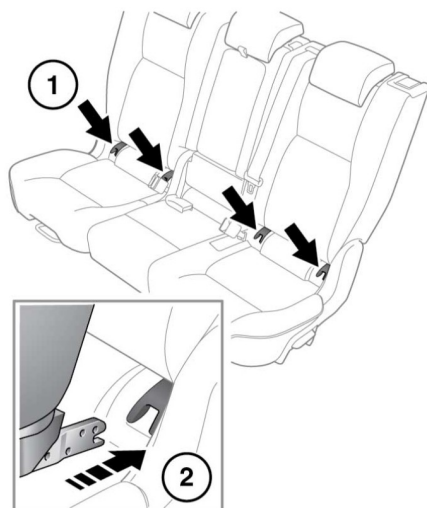
 **Do not attempt to fit ISOFIX child restraints to the centre rear seating position. The anchor bars are not designed to hold an ISOFIX child restraint in this position. The child could be endangered in a crash if the child restraint is not properly secured in the vehicle.**

 **If the child restraint is not correctly secured, there is a significant risk of injury to the child in a collision or emergency braking manoeuvre.**

 **WARNING: child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses, or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.**

ISOFIX anchor points are located at the outer seat positions on the second row seats.

## Child safety



E163865

To fit an ISOFIX child seat:

1. Locate the ISOFIX anchor bars and remove any covers.
2. Slide the child seat into position. Attach the locking mechanism to the ISOFIX anchor bars.

If an upper tether is fitted to the child seat, see **57, FITTING TETHER ANCHORAGE CHILD RESTRAINTS**.

Test the security of the child restraint. To do this, attempt to pull the restraint away from the vehicle's seat and twist the restraint from side to side. Even if the restraint appears secure, check the anchor points visually, to make sure they are correctly attached.

**Note:** Always make sure that if an upper tether is provided, it is fitted and tightened correctly.

**Note:** For child restraints fitted with a support leg, adjust the leg so that it rests firmly on the floor.

### FITTING TETHER ANCHORAGE CHILD RESTRAINTS

- ⚠ Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See **50, CHILD SEAT SAFETY**.
- ⚠ Always follow the child seat or restraint system manufacturer's instructions when fitting tether straps. The child could be endangered in a crash if the child restraint is not properly secured.
- ⚠ Always pass the tether strap over the top of the seatback and underneath the head restraint, when fitting a child seat or restraint. The child could be endangered in a crash if the child restraint is not properly secured.
- ⚠ Always store a removed head restraint securely. In the event of an accident, an unsecured object could cause serious injury or death.

If a head restraint is removed to fit a child seat, make sure it is refitted before the seat is used by a passenger. See **42, REAR HEAD RESTRAINTS**.

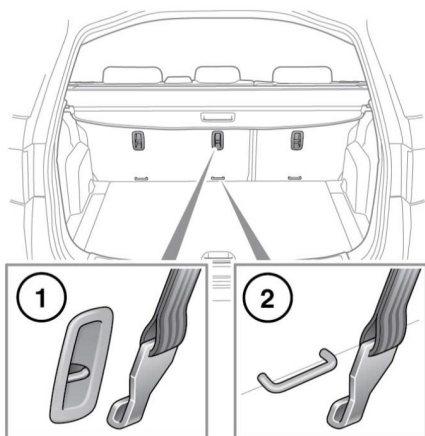
- ⚠ If a child restraint is fitted to the centre rear seat, the centre armrest must be moved to the stored position, in the seat backrest. In the event of an accident, an unsecured object could cause serious injury.

Tether strap anchor points are located behind the second row seats. The anchor points should be used to attach tether straps from a child seat or restraint system.



## Child safety

**Note:** A tether anchorage is provided for the centre seat position. Do not use this anchor position with an ISOFIX child seat. Always fit the upper tether anchorage and tighten correctly.



E163146

Tether strap anchor point locations:

1. Fixed rear seats.
2. Sliding rear seats.

Fit the tether straps as follows:

1. Fit the child restraint securely in one of the rear seating positions.
2. Pass the tether strap over the seatback, beneath the head restraint, and between the seatback and the loadspace cover.
3. Attach the tether strap hook to the tether anchor point on the back of the seat. Make sure the tether strap hook is facing the correct way, as illustrated.
4. Tighten the tether strap according to the manufacturer's instructions.


**Note:** For 5 seat vehicles fitted with sliding seats, the loadspace floor should be lifted and moved rearward. This allows access to the tether anchor points. The loadspace floor should be replaced after attaching the tether straps.

### Australian vehicles only

For 5 and 7 seat vehicles fitted with sliding rear seats, the seats should be adjusted to the foremost position before attaching the tether straps. The seats should then be returned to the rearmost position to aid fitment of the child seat.

## Child safety

### RECOMMENDED CHILD SEATS

 Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 50, CHILD SEAT SAFETY.

Child size and age	Recommended seats	
	i-Size and ISOFIX positions	Non-i-Size and non-ISOFIX positions
<b>Groups 0 and 0+</b>	Jaguar Land Rover - Group 0+ child seat with ISOFIX base or Britax Römer Baby Safe Plus SHR II with ISOFIX base.	Jaguar Land Rover - Group 0+ child seat or Britax Römer Baby Safe Plus SHR II.
<b>Group I</b>	Jaguar Land Rover - Group I child seat or Britax Römer TRIFIX.	Britax Römer Duo Plus.
<b>Groups II and III</b>	Jaguar Land Rover - Group II and III child seat or Britax Römer KIDFIX XP SICT.	Jaguar Land Rover - Group II and III child seat or Britax Römer KIDFIX XP SICT.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2019








## Airbags


### AIRBAG SAFETY

Make sure to read and fully understand the following warnings before using any of the features in this section.

**Failure to observe warnings and cautions may result in vehicle damage, injury, or DEATH in the event of an accident.**

-  **High speed impacts may cause serious injury or death, irrespective of safety features fitted to a vehicle.**
-  **Always wear seat belts, for every journey, no matter how short, in all seating positions. The airbag Supplementary Restraint System (SRS) adds to the overall effectiveness of the seat belts, but it does not replace them.**
-  **Always make sure the roof lining and door pillar trims are correctly fitted, in good condition, and free from obstruction.**
-  **Always wear correctly positioned seat belts, and sit as far back as practically possible from the airbag. Airbags inflate at high speeds and can cause facial abrasions or other injuries.**
-  **Always maintain a gap between the side of the vehicle, and the head and torso to enable unobstructed inflation of the airbags.**

### AIRBAG OPERATION

-  **Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 60, AIRBAG SAFETY.**

The airbag Supplementary Restraint System (SRS) inflates instantaneously, and cannot provide protection in secondary or some other types of impact. Under these circumstances, the only protection is provided by a correctly worn seat belt.



Airbag deployment is dependent on the rate at which the passenger compartment changes velocity following a collision. Circumstances affecting different collisions, vehicle speed, angle of impact, type and size of object hit, etc. vary considerably and affect the rate of vehicle deceleration accordingly.

The airbags and SRS are not designed to operate as a result of:

- Rear impacts.
- Minor front impacts.
- Minor side impacts.
- Heavy braking.
- Driving over bumps and pot holes.

Therefore, it follows that considerable superficial damage to the vehicle can occur, without causing the airbags to deploy.

### AIRBAG OBSTRUCTION

-  **Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 60, AIRBAG SAFETY.**
-  **Never obstruct the operation of the airbags by placing any part of the body or any objects in contact with, or close to, an airbag module.**

**Note:** *Unauthorised modifications of the vehicle or parts may invalidate the vehicle's warranty.*




## Airbags


Examples of obstructions include:


- Any part of an occupant's body in contact with, or close to, an airbag cover.
- Objects placed on, or close to, an airbag cover.
- Clothing, sun screens, or other material hanging from grab handles.
- Clothing, cushions, or other material covering seat-mounted airbags.
- Seat covers which are not approved by the vehicle manufacturer, or specifically designed for use with seat-mounted airbags.


### AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT EFFECTS

 **Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 60, AIRBAG SAFETY.**

**Warning:** When the airbag inflates:

 **A fine powder is released. The powder may cause irritation to the skin and should be thoroughly flushed from eyes and any cuts or abrasions. The powder can also cause breathing difficulty for people who suffer from asthma or other respiratory problems.**


 **A loud noise is emitted. The noise may cause temporary discomfort and loss of hearing.**


 **Some airbag components become very hot. Do not touch the airbag components until they have cooled sufficiently.**

If any of these problems occur, get out of the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. If breathing problems persist, seek medical attention.

After inflation, the front and seat mounted side airbags deflate immediately. Deflation provides a gradual cushioning effect for the occupants and also makes sure the driver's forward vision is not obscured.

### AIRBAG WARNING LAMP

 **Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 60, AIRBAG SAFETY.**

 **The warning lamp indicates a potential fault with the vehicle restraint system. Never use a child restraint on the front passenger seat if the warning lamp indicates a potential fault with the vehicle restraint system.**

The instrument panel displays an illuminated airbag warning lamp as a bulb check when the ignition is switched on. See **79, AIRBAG (AMBER)**.

If any of the following airbag warning lamp conditions occur, the vehicle should be checked by a retailer/authorised repairer immediately.

- Fails to illuminate when the ignition is switched on.
- Fails to extinguish within 6 seconds of the ignition being switched on.
- Illuminates at any time, other than during the bulb check, when the ignition is on.





## Airbags


When the ignition is switched on, a diagnostic control unit monitors the readiness of the system's electrical circuits. Elements of the Supplementary Restraint System (SRS) being monitored include:

- SRS warning lamp.
- Rotary coupler.
- Airbag modules.
- Seat belt pre-tensioners.
- Airbag diagnostic control unit.
- Crash sensors or crash and rollover sensors.
- Airbag status indicator.
- Front seat belt buckle switches.
- Front seat track position sensor.
- Airbag wiring harness.




**Note:** Not all of the SRS Elements listed are fitted to all specifications of vehicle.

### AIRBAG SERVICE INFORMATION

-  **Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 60, AIRBAG SAFETY.**
-  **Never attempt to service, repair, replace, modify, or tamper with any part of the Supplementary Restraint System (SRS). Do not attempt to service, repair, replace, modify, or tamper with any wiring or components in the vicinity of the SRS. Doing so may cause the system to trigger or render the system inoperative.**

-  **Never use any electrical test equipment or devices in the vicinity of any SRS components or wiring. Doing so may cause the system to trigger or render the system inoperative.**


**Warning:** The following operations should only be carried out by a retailer/authorised repairer or a qualified person:

-  **Fitment of electrical, or electronic, equipment and accessories.**
-  **Modification to the front or sides of the vehicle's exterior.**
-  **Attachment of accessories to the front or sides of the vehicle.**

**Note:** Always consult a retailer/authorised repairer if:

- An airbag inflates.
- The front or sides of the vehicle are damaged.
- Any part of the airbag SRS shows signs of cracking or damage, including trim covering airbags.
- The amber airbag warning lamp illuminates.

### DISABILITY MODIFICATIONS

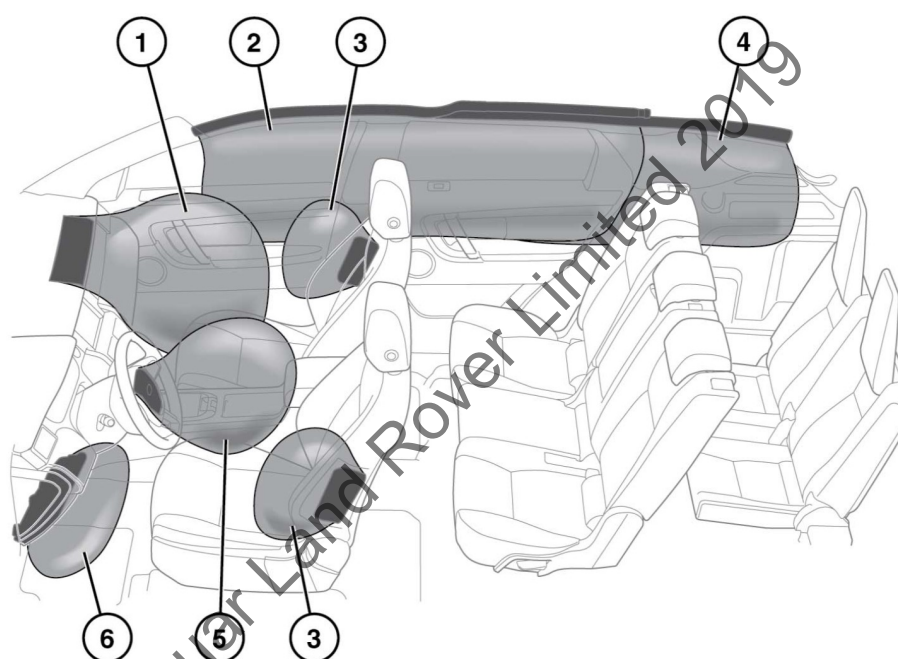
-  **Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 60, AIRBAG SAFETY.**

Occupants with disabilities which may require the vehicle to be modified must contact a retailer/authorised repairer before any modifications are made. Incorrect modifications may result in death or serious injury in the event of an accident.

## Airbags

### AIRBAG LOCATIONS

- ⚠** Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 60, AIRBAG SAFETY.



E181332

Airbag locations:

1. Front passenger's airbag.
2. Curtain airbags.
3. Front seat side airbags.
4. Curtain airbags (7 seat vehicles only).
5. Driver's airbag.
6. Knee-bolster airbag (knee airbag fitment is dependent on market and derivative specification).

**Note:** The general location of airbags fitted to the vehicle is marked by the word **AIRBAG**.

### FRONT AIRBAGS

- ⚠** Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 60, AIRBAG SAFETY.




## Airbags

The front passenger and driver airbags deploy depending on the severity of the frontal impact.

### KNEE BOLSTER AIRBAG


The single stage knee bolster airbag deploys depending on the severity of the frontal impact.

### SIDE AIRBAGS

 **Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 60, AIRBAG SAFETY.**

The side airbags are designed to protect the thorax region of the torso. In general, the side airbags deploy in the event of a side impact, and only on the side of the impact.


### CURTAIN AIRBAGS


 **Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 60, AIRBAG SAFETY.**


The curtain airbags are deployed in side impact and rollover events, providing greater protection from serious head injuries.


**Note:** *Curtain airbags do not only inflate as a result of side impacts and rollover events. The curtain airbags may deploy in some frontal impacts.*


### DISABLING THE PASSENGER AIRBAG


 **Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 60, AIRBAG SAFETY.**

 **The passenger airbag should only be disabled when a child restraint is fitted to the front passenger seat. Incorrect usage of the passenger airbag presents a high risk of death or serious injury in the event of an accident.**

 **Crash test data and statistics show that that a correctly fitted child seat in a rear seat is the safest place to restrain a child.**

 **Do not use a child restraint on a seat protected by an operational airbag in front of it. Doing so presents a high risk of death or serious injury to the child in the event of an accident.**

 **Before checking the operational status of the front passenger airbag, switch the vehicle's ignition on. Wait until the warning lamp bulb check period of 8 seconds has elapsed before carrying out any checks.**

 **As soon as the child seat is removed from the front passenger seat, the airbag must be turned on. Failure to do so will put any front seat passengers at greater risk of death or serious injury in the event of an accident.**

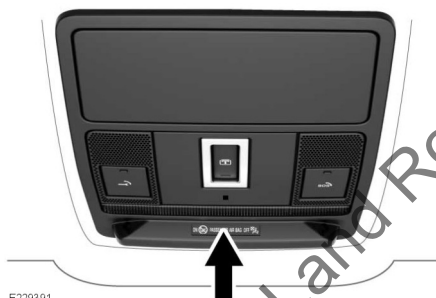
## Airbags

**⚠ Do not fit a child restraint to the front passenger seat if the airbag warning lamp illuminates continuously with the ignition switched on.**

**⚠ The passenger airbag must be disabled when a rearward facing child restraint is fitted to the front passenger seat.**

**Note:** *Disabling the passenger airbag is market dependent (not fitted in Australia).*

The passenger's front airbag can be switched on or off, via the Vehicle Settings instrument panel menu. See **69, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU.**



An airbag status indicator lamp, mounted on the overhead console, displays the operational status of the passenger airbag as shown in the following table:

Setting	Passenger airbag status	Airbag status indicator
Off.	Disabled.	<b>PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF</b>
On.	Activated.	<b>ON PASSENGER AIRBAG*</b>

\*Displays for 60 seconds, then extinguishes.



A status lamp also illuminates in the overhead console to confirm that the passenger airbag is disabled.

### PEDESTRIAN AIRBAG

**⚠ Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 60, AIRBAG SAFETY.**

**⚠ Do not carry out any modifications to the front bumper, or fit any accessories to the front bumper or bonnet. Any changes made to the front of the vehicle that are not approved by Jaguar Land Rover could affect the operation of the pedestrian contact sensing system. This could result in personal injury, or death in the event of a sudden stop or collision.**

**⚠ If damage of any kind is sustained to the front bumper, it should be checked by a retailer/authorised repairer immediately. Failure to do so could result in personal injury, or death in the event of a sudden stop or collision.**

Some vehicles may be fitted with a pedestrian airbag. The pedestrian airbag is located beneath a panel in the bonnet. The word AIRBAG is displayed at the rear of the panel on each end to confirm that a pedestrian airbag is fitted.



## Airbags

The pedestrian airbag operates at speeds between 25 km/h and 50 km/h (15.5 mph to 31 mph). In the event of a frontal impact with a pedestrian, sensors in the front bumper trigger the pedestrian airbag, causing it to inflate.

If a fault should occur with the system, the instrument panel displays a message indicating that a system check is required. If this occurs, the vehicle should be checked by a retailer/authorised repairer immediately.

In the event that the pedestrian airbag deploys, stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. See **404, AFTER DEPLOYMENT OF THE PEDESTRIAN PROTECTION SYSTEM.**

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2019

## Instrument panel

### INSTRUMENT PANEL

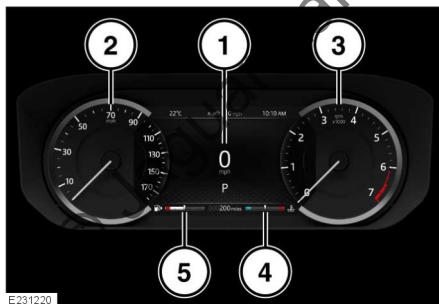
The instrument panel displays information, warnings, and menu options to the driver. See **76, WARNING LAMPS AND INDICATORS**.

The vehicle has one of the instrument panel types from the following list:

- Standard instrument panel: The speedometer and tachometer dials are permanently visible.
- Virtual instrument panel: All of the displayed information, including the speedometer and tachometer dials, is only visible with the ignition switched on.

Dependent on the vehicle's market specification, the instrument panel can be configured to display in miles or km. Select the **Display** and **Units** instrument panel menus. The temperature and tyre pressure units can also be configured. See **69, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

#### Standard instrument panel



The standard instrument panel consists of:

1. Information panel: Displays information and menu selection options.

The information panel display can be configured to suit personal preferences. Select the **Display** instrument panel menu.

2. Speedometer: Displays the current vehicle speed. Dependent on the vehicle's market specification, the digital speedometer can be configured to display in mph or km/h. Select the **Speedometer** option via the **Display** and **Units** instrument panel menus.
3. Tachometer: Displays the current engine speed, i.e., revolutions per minute (rpm).

4. Temperature gauge: Displays the current engine temperature. If the pointer moves onto the red line, the engine is overheating. In this event, the instrument panel illuminates the engine temperature warning lamp. See **78, ENGINE TEMPERATURE (RED)**.

If the engine overheats, stop the vehicle as soon as safety permits. Allow the engine to idle until the temperature reduces. If the temperature does not reduce after several minutes, switch the engine off and allow it to cool. If the problem persists, seek qualified assistance immediately.

- ⚠ Serious engine damage occurs if the vehicle is driven while the engine is overheating.

**Note:** In the event of the engine overheating, a reduction in engine performance may occur. The Air Conditioning (A/C) system may also cease operation, to reduce the load on the engine and assist with engine cooling.

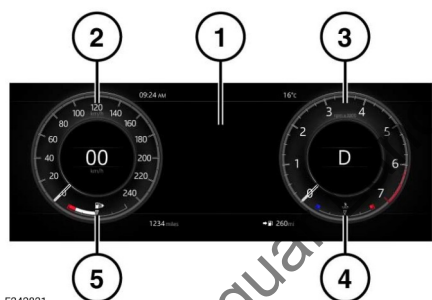


## Instrument panel

5. Fuel gauge: Displays the current fuel tank level.  
An arrow head symbol, next to the fuel pump symbol, indicates which side of the vehicle the fuel filler flap is located. If the instrument panel illuminates the low fuel warning lamp, refuel the vehicle as soon as possible. See **81, LOW FUEL WARNING (AMBER)**.  
To view the approximate driving distance for the current fuel level, use the trip button to select the **Range** trip computer menu. See **71, USING THE TRIP COMPUTER**.

⚠ Never allow the engine to run out of fuel. Doing so may cause serious damage to the vehicle's fuel system.

### Virtual instrument panel



The virtual instrument panel consists of:

1. Information panel: Displays information and menu selection options.  
The information panel display is configurable to suit personal preferences. Select the **Display** and **Info panel** instrument panel menus.

2. Speedometer: Displays the current vehicle speed. Dependent on the vehicle's market specification, the speedometer displays are configurable to display in mph or km/h. Select the **Speedometer** option via the **Display** and **Units** instrument panel menus.
3. Tachometer: Displays the current engine speed, i.e., revolutions per minute (rpm).
4. Temperature gauge: Displays the current engine temperature.  
If the pointer moves onto the red line, the engine is overheating. In this event, the instrument panel illuminates the engine temperature warning lamp. See **78, ENGINE TEMPERATURE (RED)**.  
If the engine overheats, stop the vehicle as soon as safety permits. Allow the engine to idle until the temperature reduces. If the temperature does not reduce after several minutes, switch the engine off and allow it to cool. If the problem persists, seek qualified assistance immediately.

⚠ Serious engine damage occurs if the vehicle is driven while the engine is overheating.

**Note:** In the event of the engine overheating, a reduction in engine performance may occur. The Air Conditioning (A/C) system may also cease operation, to reduce the load on the engine and assist with engine cooling.

5. Fuel gauge: Displays the current fuel tank level.  
An arrow head symbol, next to the fuel pump symbol, indicates which side of the vehicle the fuel filler flap is located.



## Instrument panel

If the instrument panel illuminates the low fuel warning lamp, refuel the vehicle as soon as possible. See **81, LOW FUEL WARNING (AMBER)**.

To view the approximate driving distance for the current fuel level, press the trip button to select the **Range** trip content option. See **71, USING THE TRIP COMPUTER**.

- ⚠ Never allow the engine to run out of fuel. Doing so may cause serious damage to the vehicle's fuel system.

The layout is configurable for the interactive driver display in the virtual instrument panel. Select the **Display** and **Display layout** instrument panel menus to view and select the required option.

The currently selected display layout option is retained after the ignition is switched off and back on again. Select the required display layout option to suit driver preferences.

The available display layout options are as follows:

- **Two dial:** Select this menu option to display both the speedometer and tachometer dials, as illustrated. One information panel is displayed between the dials.
- **One dial:** Select this menu option to display only the tachometer dial. Two information panels are also displayed, i.e., one to the left and one to the right of the tachometer dial.
- **\*Full map:** Select this menu option to display an expanded view of the current navigation system information.
- **\*Media:** Select this menu option to display an expanded view of the current media source information.

- **\*Driver assistance:** Select this menu option to display an expanded view for the currently enabled driver assistance features.

\* No information panels or speedometer and tachometer dials are displayed with these expanded layout selections.

**Note:** Although the position, format, and the amount of information changes for the different display layout options, the instrument panel still displays the driving status information. For example, the vehicle's speed, driving range and the current driving mode and drive selections.

### INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU

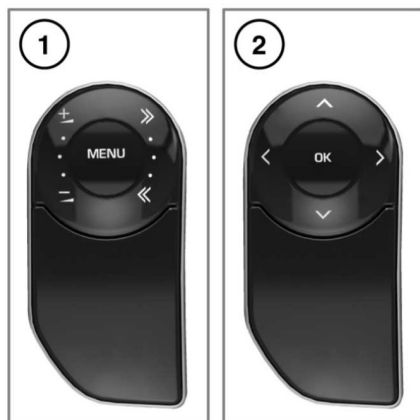
- ⚠ **Do not operate the instrument panel controls while the vehicle is moving. Doing so may cause driver distraction, potentially resulting in an accident, causing serious injury or death.**

The instrument panel's display settings and some vehicle features can be configured via the instrument panel menus. Use the controls on the left side of the steering wheel to display and navigate through the instrument panel menus.

**Note:** Some instrument panel menus are dependent on the market specification of the vehicle.



## Instrument panel



E200493

Operate the instrument panel menus as follows:

1. **MENU** button: Press and release to display the instrument panel menus. The **MENU** button extinguishes and the **OK** button illuminates. The menus do not display if the instrument panel displays any warning or information messages. In this event, press the **OK** button to clear each message after reading and taking any required action. See **7.1. WARNING AND INFORMATION MESSAGES**.
2. Operate the buttons as follows:
  - Vehicles with a virtual instrument panel: Press the **>** button, or the **<** button, to scroll through and highlight the required main menu option, displayed at the top of the information panel. The relevant sub-menu list is automatically displayed.

- Vehicles with a standard instrument panel: Press the **Λ** button, or the **V** button, to scroll through the displayed main menu list and highlight the required menu option. Press and release the **OK** button to display the relevant sub-menu list.
- All vehicles: Press the **Λ** button, or the **V** button, to scroll through the sub-menu list and highlight the required menu.
- All vehicles: Press and release the **OK** button, to view the sub-list options for the highlighted sub-menu. Scroll up or down to the required option.
- All vehicles: Press and release the **OK** button to select or deselect the required sub-list option.
- All vehicles: Press and release the **<** button to return to the previous menu list.
- All vehicles: Press and hold the **<** button to close and exit the instrument panel menus. The **OK** button extinguishes and the **MENU** button illuminates to confirm deselection.

The main menu options are as follows:

- **Driver assistance.**
- **Trip.**
- **Display:** The interactive driver display is configurable for the virtual instrument panel. Use the **Display layout** menu to select a **Two dial, One dial, Full map, Media**, or a **Driver assistance** view.
- **Head-up display:** The availability of this feature is dependent on the specification of the vehicle.

## Instrument panel

- **Vehicle settings.**



**Before making any changes to the Vehicle settings, make sure to read and fully understand the relevant sections and topics of the Owner's Handbook. Failure to do so can lead to serious injury or death.**

- **Vehicle info:** Some options are only available before the engine starts.
- **Phone:** Only available when a phone is connected to vehicles with a virtual instrument panel.
- **Media:** Only available on vehicles with a virtual instrument panel.

### WARNING AND INFORMATION MESSAGES



**Do not ignore any warning or information messages displayed in the instrument panel. Take appropriate action as soon as possible. Failure to do so may result in death, serious injury, or serious damage to the vehicle.**

The instrument panel displays warning messages if specific driver action is required, or to accompany illuminated warning lamps. For example, in the event that a vehicle system fault is detected.

The instrument panel displays information messages if specific driver action is required, or for driver information. For example, to confirm and assist with the selection or deselection of some vehicle features.

To extinguish an instrument panel warning or information message, press the **OK** button on the steering wheel controls.

**Note:** Extinguishing displayed warning and information messages does not clear or rectify a detected fault.

**Note:** If a warning message is manually extinguished, the instrument panel illuminates an amber or red warning lamp until the cause of the message is rectified.

If a persistent fault is detected, the instrument panel displays a warning message each time the ignition is switched on. In this event, follow any on-screen instructions or seek qualified assistance.

Instrument panel messages are displayed in order of importance. If more than one instrument panel message is active, each message is displayed in turn for 2 seconds. High importance warning messages are displayed first. The displayed warning messages can also be accompanied by an audible tone.

Some warning messages can also display the handbook symbol. For information regarding warning messages and any action required, refer to the warning and information lamps section of the Owner's Handbook. Follow any on-screen instructions, if displayed. The instrument panel displays a warning message until the detected fault is rectified.

### USING THE TRIP COMPUTER

The trip computer displays information and stores data for a series of trips. A trip is the distance travelled since the last memory reset, via the trip computer. The maximum trip distance display is 9 999.9 (km or miles). The trip distance then automatically resets to zero. A journey is the complete distance travelled when the vehicle's electrical system is switched on and then switched off.

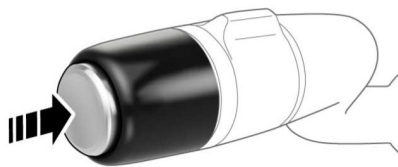


## Instrument panel

Select the **Trip** and **Trip bank** instrument panel menus to display the required trip, i.e., **Trip A**, **Trip B**, or **Trip Auto**. See **69, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

The trip computer can be configured to display the trip units in miles or km. Select the **Trip** and **Units** instrument panel menus.

To configure the trip content options, to be available for display in the instrument panel, select the **Trip** and **Content** instrument panel menus.



E197183

Press and release the trip button to change the trip content option displayed in the instrument panel.

The available trip content display options are as follows:

- **Date.**
- **Trip distance.**
- **Average speed.**
- **Average economy.**
- **Instantaneous economy.**
- **Range.**
- The final option is blank, i.e., no text. When selected, no trip content displays.

Some of the trip computer display option values can be reset to zero. Select and display the relevant trip computer display option. Press and hold the trip button for 2 seconds.

The trip distance, average speed, and average economy values for the trips can be reset. Set the trip computer display to show the required trip to reset. Press and hold the trip button until the instrument panel displays the **Resetting** message.

Select the **Trip bank** and **Trip Auto** instrument panel menus to automatically reset **Trip Auto** each time the ignition is switched on.

Select the **Trip bank** and **Trip Auto** instrument panel menus to add, or remove, the distance figure of another trip to the **Trip Auto** figure. Press the trip button for longer than 1 second, when the **Trip Auto** values for distance, average speed, and average fuel economy are displayed. The instrument panel displays either the **Adding last journey** or **Removing last journey** message. Press the trip button for longer than 1 second to select the desired option. The previous trip information is added to, or removed from, the **Trip Auto** and the new total displays. There is no limit to the number of times this can be done before the ignition is switched off.

### SERVICE INTERVAL INDICATOR

The next required service can be displayed via the instrument panel menu. See **69, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

To view information on the next required service:

- Switch on the vehicle's ignition. See **139, SWITCHING ON THE IGNITION**.
- Press the **MENU** button on the steering wheel control.
- Use the steering wheel control to navigate to and highlight **Vehicle info**.

## Instrument panel

- Press the **OK** button to confirm the selection.
- Navigate to and highlight **Next service**.
- Press the **OK** button to confirm the selection.


**Note:** *Dependent on the vehicle's specification, different service info and messages are available as part of the flexible servicing strategy.*

**Note:** *Dependent on the vehicle's specification, other fluid intervals and capacities may also be displayed.*

The required service interval displays as a distance or time left until the next service is due. If the distance is exceeded, the display shows a negative (-) value to indicate that a service is overdue.

Refer to a retailer/authorised repairer for details.

### HEAD-UP DISPLAY (HUD)

 **Do not operate or adjust the Head-Up Display (HUD) system while the vehicle is moving. Doing so may cause driver distraction, potentially resulting in an accident and causing serious injury or death.**

**Note:** *The availability of the HUD system is dependent on the specification of the vehicle.*

**Note:** *The HUD system may take more time to display in extreme temperatures, allowing the system to operate at the correct temperatures.*

**Note:** *The full HUD image may not be viewed correctly while wearing polarised sunglasses.*

**Note:** *Do not place anything over the HUD unit, which is located on the driver's side between the top of the instrument panel and the windscreen.*

The HUD system projects some of the information currently displayed in the instrument panel onto the inside of the windscreen.

To switch the HUD system **On** or **Off**, select the **Head-up display** and **Enable HUD** instrument panel menus. See **69, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

The HUD system also displays some instrument panel warning lamps. See **76, WARNING LAMPS AND INDICATORS**.

To view a list of vehicle features for the HUD system to display, select the **Head-up display** and **HUD content** instrument panel menus. Select the required **On** or **Off** option for each feature. The HUD system only displays the vehicle features that are currently displayed in the instrument panel.

**Note:** *The position and format of the displayed HUD information varies due to priority and the number of features currently switched on or off.*

Setting the correct HUD position is important. The correct position is dependent on a number of conditions, including the height of the driver and the seat position.

**Note:** *Before setting the position of the HUD, make sure that the driver's seat is correctly positioned. The HUD level should be set horizontally, within the driver's vision.*



## Instrument panel

To set the HUD position, select the **Head-up display** and **Position** instrument panel menus. Follow the on-screen instructions to adjust the HUD position using the steering wheel controls. To confirm and exit the menu, press the **OK** button. Preferences are stored using the driver's seat memory store button. See **33, SEAT POSITION MEMORY**.

The brightness of the HUD display is set automatically to suit the current ambient light conditions. To manually adjust the brightness, select the **Head-up display** and **Brightness** instrument panel menus. Follow the on-screen instructions to adjust the HUD brightness using the steering wheel controls. To confirm and exit the menu, press the **OK** button.

The speedometer units displayed in the HUD system are the same as the trip computer's speedometer units.

If cleaning is required, follow the cleaning instructions. See **348, CLEANING SCREENS AND DISPLAYS**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2019

## Warning and information lamps

### OVERVIEW

The following warning and information lamps may illuminate in the instrument panel:

	See 77, BATTERY CHARGE (RED).		See 79, ALL TERRAIN PROGRESS CONTROL (ATPC) (AMBER).
	See 77, BRAKE (RED).		See 79, ANTI-LOCK BRAKING SYSTEM (ABS) (AMBER).
	See 77, CRITICAL WARNING MESSAGE (RED).		See 79, BRAKE (AMBER).
	See 78, DIESEL EXHAUST FLUID (DEF) (RED).		See 80, CHECK ENGINE (AMBER).
	See 78, ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE (EPB) (RED).		See 80, DIESEL EXHAUST FLUID (DEF) (AMBER).
	See 78, ENGINE TEMPERATURE (RED).		See 80, DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) (AMBER).
	See 78, EXHAUST FILTER (RED).		See 80, DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) OFF (AMBER).
	See 78, LANE DEPARTURE WARNING (RED).		See 80, EXHAUST FILTER (AMBER).
	See 78, LOW OIL PRESSURE (RED).		See 80, EXTERNAL TEMPERATURE (AMBER).
	See 79, SEAT BELT (RED).		See 80, FOLLOW MODE (AMBER).
	See 79, ADAPTIVE SPEED LIMITER (AMBER).		See 81, GENERAL WARNING AND INFORMATION MESSAGE (AMBER).
	See 79, AIRBAG (AMBER).		See 81, GLOW PLUGS (AMBER).
			See 81, LOW FUEL WARNING (AMBER).
			See 81, REAR FOG LIGHTS (AMBER).



## Warning and information lamps



See 81, TYRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM (TPMS) (YELLOW).



See 81, AUTO STOP/START (GREEN).



See 81, CRUISE CONTROL (GREEN).



See 81, DIPPED BEAM (GREEN).



See 82, DIRECTION INDICATORS (GREEN).



See 82, EXHAUST FILTER (GREEN).



See 82, FRONT FOG LIGHTS (GREEN).



See 82, GEARSHIFT (GREEN).



See 82, HILL DESCENT CONTROL (HDC) (GREEN).



See 82, LANE DEPARTURE WARNING (GREEN).



See 82, SIDE LIGHTS (GREEN).



See 82, TRAILER DIRECTION INDICATORS (GREEN).



See 83, AUTO HIGH BEAM ASSIST (AHBA) (BLUE).



See 83, HIGH BEAM (BLUE).



See 83, AUTO HIGH BEAM ASSIST (AHBA) (WHITE).



See 83, AUTO LIGHTS (WHITE).



See 83, AUTO STOP/START INHIBIT (WHITE).



See 83, AUTO STOP/START OFF (WHITE).




See 83, BRAKE HOLD (WHITE).



See 83, FOLLOW MODE OFF (WHITE).

### WARNING LAMPS AND INDICATORS

 Do not ignore warning lamps or indicators. Take appropriate action as soon as possible. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury, or serious damage to the vehicle.

Red warning lamps are for primary warnings. A primary warning must be investigated immediately by the driver or qualified assistance, before continuing.

Amber and yellow warning lamps are for secondary warnings. Some indicate that a vehicle system is active, and others indicate that the driver must take action and seek qualified assistance as soon as possible.

Green and blue lamps within the instrument panel indicate a system's status.



## Warning and information lamps

### LAMP CHECK

**Note:** Not all warning lamps are included in the check, e.g., high beam headlights and direction indicators.

**Note:** If a trailer with LED lights is connected to the trailer socket, the bulb check may not be performed.

A warning lamp bulb check is initiated when the vehicle's ignition system is switched on. The check lasts for 3 seconds, except for the airbag warning lamp which remains on for 6 seconds. If any warning lamp remains on after this period, investigate the cause before driving.

Some warning lamps have associated messages displayed in the instrument panel.

### BATTERY CHARGE (RED)



The 12V battery charge warning lamp illuminates, as a bulb check, when the vehicle's ignition is switched on.

The lamp extinguishes when the engine is started.

If the lamp remains on or illuminates while driving, there is a fault with the battery charging system. The instrument panel displays a warning message. Seek qualified assistance urgently.

### BRAKE (RED)



Do not drive if the instrument panel displays the message "Brake fluid low". Check the brake fluid level and top up, as necessary. If necessary, seek qualified assistance before continuing. Driving with low brake fluid can cause increased braking distance or brake failure, and may lead to a collision. A collision can potentially result in serious injury or death.



The brake warning lamp illuminates briefly, as a bulb check, when the vehicle's ignition is switched on.

If the lamp illuminates while driving, suspect low brake fluid level or a fault with the braking system.

Stop the vehicle as soon as safety permits. Check and top up the brake fluid, if necessary. If the lamp remains illuminated, seek qualified assistance before continuing.

### CRITICAL WARNING MESSAGE (RED)



The critical warning message lamp illuminates when a relevant message displays in the instrument panel.

Stop the vehicle as soon as safety permits, and investigate the cause of the warning.



## Warning and information lamps

### DIESEL EXHAUST FLUID (DEF) (RED)



The Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) warning lamp illuminates to warn the driver that the level of DEF is seriously low.

The warning lamp also illuminates if the incorrect fluid has been added to the system, or if there is a fault with the system.

The instrument panel displays messages when the warning lamp illuminates. Follow the on-screen messages, if safe to do so. Seek qualified assistance urgently.

### ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE (EPB) (RED)



The Electric Parking Brake (EPB) warning lamp illuminates if the EPB is correctly applied.

If the lamp flashes, a fault has been detected. Seek qualified assistance urgently.

### ENGINE TEMPERATURE (RED)



The engine temperature warning lamp illuminates when the engine's temperature is too high.

The instrument panel also displays a warning message.

Stop the vehicle as soon as safety permits. Seek qualified assistance before continuing.

### EXHAUST FILTER (RED)



The exhaust filter warning lamp illuminates when the exhaust filter is full or there is a fault with the exhaust filter system.

Depending on severity, the instrument panel may also display a warning message and a warning tone may sound. Seek qualified assistance at the earliest opportunity.

### LANE DEPARTURE WARNING (RED)



The red lane departure warning lamp illuminates if the vehicle crosses a lane marking without the appropriate direction indicator being operated.

Illumination of the lamp is accompanied by a vibration, felt through the steering wheel.

The left or right lane illuminates, depending on which lane boundary is being crossed.

### LOW OIL PRESSURE (RED)



If the low oil pressure warning lamp flashes or illuminates while driving, stop the vehicle as soon as safety permits. Switch off the engine immediately.

Check and top up the oil level, if necessary. Start the engine. If the lamp remains illuminated, switch the engine off immediately. Seek qualified assistance before continuing.

## Warning and information lamps

### SEAT BELT (RED)

**Note:** Objects on the front passenger seat may activate the seat belt reminder feature. It is recommended that any objects placed on the front passenger seat are secured using the seat belt. See **46, SEAT BELT OPERATION.**



When the vehicle is in motion and seats are occupied, the warning lamp illuminates, accompanied by a chime if the seat belt is unbuckled.

The lamp extinguishes when the relevant seat belt is buckled.

### ADAPTIVE SPEED LIMITER (AMBER)



The adaptive speed limiter lamp illuminates when the adaptive speed limiter feature is switched on.

### AIRBAG (AMBER)



The airbag warning lamp illuminates, as a bulb check, when the vehicle's ignition is switched on.

The lamp extinguishes after 6 seconds.

If the lamp illuminates again, after the bulb check or while driving, there is a fault with the airbag system. Seek qualified assistance as soon as possible.

### ALL TERRAIN PROGRESS CONTROL (ATPC) (AMBER)



The All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC) lamp illuminates to confirm that the ATPC system is enabled.

### ANTI-LOCK BRAKING SYSTEM (ABS) (AMBER)



If the Anti-lock Braking System (ABS) and brake warning lamps illuminate at the same time, do not drive the vehicle until the fault is rectified. The braking system may not be functioning correctly, which may, in turn, lead to a loss of control, potentially causing an accident. Seek qualified assistance immediately.



The driver is responsible to operate the vehicle in an appropriate manner for the prevailing conditions at all times. Failure to do so may lead to an accident, potentially resulting in serious injury or death.



The ABS warning lamp illuminates briefly, as a bulb check, when the vehicle's ignition is switched on.

If the lamp remains on, or illuminates while driving, there is a fault with the ABS system. Drive with care, avoiding heavy brake pedal application. Seek qualified assistance urgently.

### BRAKE (AMBER)



The brake warning lamp illuminates briefly, as a bulb check, when the vehicle's ignition is switched on.

If the lamp illuminates after starting the engine, or while driving, suspect worn brake pads or a fault with the braking system. The vehicle can still be driven with care. Seek qualified assistance urgently.

## Warning and information lamps

### CHECK ENGINE (AMBER)



The check engine warning lamp illuminates when the vehicle's ignition is switched on.

The lamp remains illuminated until the engine starts. If the lamp illuminates when the engine is running, an emissions-related fault has been detected. The vehicle remains safe to drive with the lamp illuminated, although qualified assistance should be sought as soon as possible.

With the lamp illuminated, the engine may enter limp-home mode. Limp-home mode reduces vehicle performance to safeguard against any further damage to the vehicle. If the check engine warning lamp flashes when the engine is running, reduce the vehicle's speed as soon as it is safe to do so. Seek qualified assistance immediately.

### DIESEL EXHAUST FLUID (DEF) (AMBER)



The Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) warning lamp illuminates to warn the driver that the level of DEF is starting to run low.

The warning lamp also illuminates if the incorrect fluid has been added to the system, or if there is a fault with the system.

The instrument panel also displays a warning message. Follow the on-screen messages, if safe to do so.

### DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) (AMBER)



The Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) lamp flashes when the system is active.

If there is a fault with the system, it remains illuminated and the instrument panel displays a warning message.

The vehicle can still be driven, but without DSC assistance. Seek qualified assistance as soon as possible.

### DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) OFF (AMBER)



The Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) OFF warning lamp illuminates when the system is switched off.

The lamp is accompanied by a chime and a confirmation message in the instrument panel.

### EXHAUST FILTER (AMBER)



The exhaust filter warning lamp illuminates when the filter has failed to regenerate and is starting to become full.

The instrument panel also displays a warning message. Follow the on-screen messages, if safe to do so.

### EXTERNAL TEMPERATURE (AMBER)



The external temperature lamp illuminates when the external temperature is low enough that ice may be present on the road.

### FOLLOW MODE (AMBER)



The follow mode lamp illuminates when the adaptive cruise control system is in follow mode.

## Warning and information lamps

### GENERAL WARNING AND INFORMATION MESSAGE (AMBER)



The general warning and information message lamp illuminates when a non-critical warning message, or an information message, is available in the instrument panel.

### GLOW PLUGS (AMBER)



The glow plug lamp illuminates when the vehicle's ignition is switched on, to indicate that the glow plugs are active.

### LOW FUEL WARNING (AMBER)



The low fuel warning lamp illuminates when the fuel level is low. Refuel at the earliest opportunity.

The arrow shows which side of the vehicle the fuel filler flap is located.

### REAR FOG LIGHTS (AMBER)



The rear fog lights indicator lamp illuminates when the rear fog lights are switched on.

### SPEED LIMITER (AMBER)



The speed limiter lamp illuminates when the speed limiter feature is active.

### TYRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM (TPMS) (YELLOW)



The Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) lamp illuminates to warn that one or more tyres are significantly under-inflated.

The instrument panel also displays a warning message. Stop the vehicle as soon as possible, when safe to do so. Check the tyre pressures. Inflate to the recommended pressure.

The lamp flashes to indicate a system fault.

### AUTO STOP/START (GREEN)



The auto stop/start lamp illuminates when the engine is shut down by the auto stop/start system.

**Note:** Other warnings normally associated with an engine shutdown do not illuminate during an engine shutdown by the auto stop/start system.

### CRUISE CONTROL (GREEN)



The cruise control lamp illuminates when cruise control or adaptive cruise control is active.

### DIPPED BEAM (GREEN)



The dipped beam lamp illuminates when the dipped beam headlights are switched on.

## Warning and information lamps

### DIRECTION INDICATORS (GREEN)



The appropriate direction indicator lamp, left or right, flashes when the direction indicators are operated.

If a direction indicator bulb fails, the visual and audible warnings flash and sound, respectively, at twice the normal rate.

### EXHAUST FILTER (GREEN)



The exhaust filter lamp briefly illuminates when a successful filter regeneration process has been carried out.

### FRONT FOG LIGHTS (GREEN)



The front fog lights lamp illuminates when the front fog lights are switched on.

### GEARSHIFT (GREEN)



**The warning indicator is only a guide. It remains the responsibility of the driver to operate the vehicle in an appropriate manner for the prevailing conditions. Failing to do so may result in an accident, causing serious injury or death.**



The gearshift indicator lamp illuminates briefly at the recommended gear change point (up-shift).

The gearshift indicator lamp does not illuminate while cruise control is active and is not being overridden by pressing the accelerator pedal.

### HILL DESCENT CONTROL (HDC) (GREEN)



The Hill Descent Control (HDC) lamp illuminates continuously when the HDC system is selected and HDC operating conditions are met.

If the lamp flashes, HDC has been selected, but the operating conditions are not being met or HDC fade-out is occurring.

### LANE DEPARTURE WARNING (GREEN)



The green lane departure warning lamp illuminates if the feature is enabled and the system is tracking the lanes.

### SIDE LIGHTS (GREEN)



The side lights lamp illuminates when the side lights are switched on.

### TRAILER DIRECTION INDICATORS (GREEN)



The trailer direction indicator lamp illuminates, as a bulb check, when the vehicle's ignition is switched on. The lamp extinguishes when the engine is started.

If a trailer is attached, the warning lamp flashes in conjunction with the direction indicator warning lamp. If the lamp fails to flash, the direction indicator bulb on the trailer may be faulty.

## Warning and information lamps

**Note:** If a connected trailer is fitted with LED lights, the bulb check may not be performed.

### AUTO HIGH BEAM ASSIST (AHBA) (BLUE)



The Auto High Beam Assist (AHBA) warning lamp illuminates when the auto high beam system is selected and high beam is switched on.

### HIGH BEAM (BLUE)



The high beam lamp illuminates when the high beam headlights are switched on or flashed.

### BRAKE HOLD (WHITE)



The brake hold lamp illuminates when a brake hold function is activated.

### AUTO HIGH BEAM ASSIST (AHBA) (WHITE)



The Auto High Beam Assist (AHBA) warning lamp illuminates when the auto high beam system is selected but high beam is currently not switched on.

### AUTO LIGHTS (WHITE)



The auto lights warning lamp illuminates when the vehicle's exterior lights are operating in auto mode.

### FOLLOW MODE OFF (WHITE)



The follow mode OFF lamp illuminates when the adaptive cruise control system is disabled.

### AUTO STOP/START INHIBIT (WHITE)



The auto stop/start inhibit lamp illuminates when the auto stop/start system is active but a vehicle system requires the engine to run.

### AUTO STOP/START OFF (WHITE)



The auto stop/start off lamp illuminates when the auto stop/start system is switched off by the driver.



## Exterior lights

### EXTERIOR LIGHTS OVERVIEW

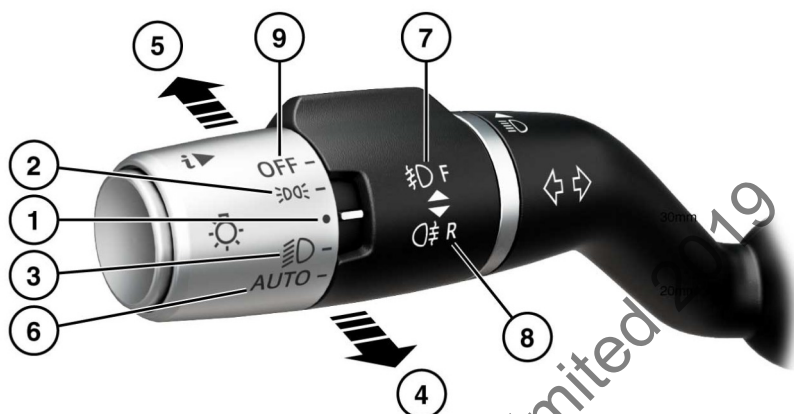
The lighting system operates automatically depending upon the ambient lighting conditions. The system selects the appropriate lighting function, dipped beam or Daytime Running Lights (DRL), for the conditions that the system detects. In some circumstances, it may be necessary to manually override automatic operation. Some manual operations are not possible due to vehicle activity or legislative requirements.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2019



## Exterior lights

### LIGHTING CONTROL



E242755



Lighting control operation:

1. Neutral position of the control: The lighting system operates automatically dependent on the ambient level of light. During daylight, the Daytime Running Lights (DRL) automatically switch on. During low ambient light, the headlights switch on automatically. To manually switch on any lighting functions, rotate the lighting control to the required position and release. After being released, the lighting control returns to the neutral position.
2. Side lights: Rotate the lighting control to this position to switch the side lights on. The instrument panel warning lamp illuminates. See **82, SIDE LIGHTS (GREEN)**.
3. Headlights: Rotate the lighting control to this position to switch the headlights on.
4. High beam flash: Pull the lighting control toward the steering wheel and release to flash the high beam on and off. High beam remains on for as long as the lighting control is held.
5. High beam: With the headlights on, push the lighting control away from the steering wheel to select high beam. The instrument panel warning lamp illuminates. See **83, HIGH BEAM (BLUE)**.  
**Note:** Do not use high beam where it may distract other road users.
6. **AUTO:** Rotate the lighting control to this position to select auto lights. When the ambient light fades and the ignition is switched on, the side lights, rear lights, dipped beam headlights, and number plate lights switch on automatically. Headlight courtesy delay, Auto High Beam Assist (AHBA), and windscreen wiper detection may also be activated.



## Exterior lights

**Note:** Low exterior light levels, caused by adverse weather conditions, may also cause the auto lights to activate.

7. Front fog lights: Operate only while the side lights, headlights, or auto lights are selected. Turn the collar away from the steering wheel and release to switch on. The instrument panel warning lamp illuminates. To switch off the front fog lights, turn the collar away from the steering wheel again, and release. See **82, FRONT FOG LIGHTS (GREEN)**.
8. Rear fog lights: Operate only while the side lights, headlights, or auto lights are selected. Turn the collar toward the steering wheel and release to switch on. The instrument panel warning lamp illuminates. To switch off the rear fog lights, turn the collar toward the steering wheel again, and release. See **81, REAR FOG LIGHTS (AMBER)**.
9. Headlights **OFF**: Rotate the lighting control to this position to switch the headlights off.

In the event of a bulb failure, it should be noted that some bulbs are replaceable only by a retailer/authorised repairer. See **342, CHANGING A BULB**.

### DAYTIME RUNNING LIGHTS (DRL)

During normal daylight operation, the Daytime Running Lights (DRL) operate automatically.

The DRL switches on automatically under the following conditions:

- The engine is running.
- The gear selector is out of Park (P).

- The Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is not applied.

Turn the lighting control to the **OFF** position to switch off the DRL.

**Note:** The option depends on vehicle specification.

The DRL can be manually switched off only when the vehicle is stationary and the engine is running. The DRL reactivates when the vehicle's speed increases above 10 km/h or the vehicle covers a distance of 100 meters. Repeat the process to switch off the DRL permanently during that journey.

### HEADLIGHT COURTESY DELAY

Headlight courtesy delay operates whenever the lighting control is in the **AUTO** position and the ignition is switched off. The headlights remain illuminated for up to 4 minutes.

**Note:** The time delay may be changed via the **Vehicle settings** menu. See **69, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

Press the smart key's headlight button to switch the courtesy lights off.

### AUTO HIGH BEAM ASSIST (AHBA)

**Note:** The Auto High Beam Assist (AHBA) system cannot be relied upon to activate or deactivate high beam in all possible circumstances. The driver remains responsible for the correct use of the headlights at all times.

**Note:** Make sure that the forward-facing sensors on the rear of the rear-view mirror are not blocked or obstructed.

## Exterior lights

The AHBA system automatically selects and deselects high beam, under specific conditions of road lighting and in the absence of other vehicle lights. The system is only active when the ambient light drops below a predetermined level.

For the AHBA system to become operational, the lighting control must be in the **AUTO** position with dipped beam headlights selected.

The instrument panel warning lamp illuminates when AHBA is selected. See **83, AUTO HIGH BEAM ASSIST (AHBA) (WHITE)**.

The AHBA system only activates when the vehicle's speed exceeds 40 km/h (25 mph). The system deactivates when the vehicle's speed drops below 24 km/h (15 mph).

To manually select high beam, move the lighting control to the high beam position, as normal. To return to AHBA operation, move the lighting control back to the central position.

To manually override to dipped beam from high beam, pull the lighting control to the flash position (2). AHBA cancels. To return to AHBA operation, push the lighting control to the high beam position (1) and then return it to the central position.

To switch the AHBA system off, turn the lighting control from **AUTO** to headlights.

The AHBA system can be disabled or enabled via the **Vehicle settings** instrument panel menu. See **69, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

The hand of traffic can also be selected within the instrument panel menu. As default, this is set to be opposite the hand of drive, so if the vehicle is Left Hand Drive (LHD), the hand of traffic is Right Hand Drive (RHD).

**Note:** For vehicles fitted with a navigation system, for each ignition cycle, the hand of traffic resets. The hand of traffic resets according to the region in which the vehicle is being driven.

The following may affect the operation of the AHBA system:

- Highly reflective road signs.
- Dimly lit road users, e.g., cyclists or pedestrians.
- Adverse weather conditions, e.g., rain or fog.
- A dirty or obscured sensor.
- A dirty, damaged, or misted windscreen.
- Oncoming vehicles, partially obscured by a central motorway barrier.
- An icy or frosted windscreen.

**Note:** Make sure to defrost the windscreen during winter conditions.

### WINDSCREEN WIPER DETECTION

If **AUTO** lights is selected and the windscreen wipers are switched on for 20 seconds or more, the side lights, tail lights, and headlights switch on automatically. When the wipers are switched off, the lights automatically switch off 2 minutes later.

## Exterior lights

### EXTERIOR LIGHTS CONDENSATION

Condensation in headlights, direction indicators, or rear lights is a natural phenomenon.

Condensation can occur under certain atmospheric conditions or after washing the vehicle. The performance and life expectancy of the lights is not affected.

Condensation should partially, or completely clear, with regular use of the lights within 48 hours of dry atmospheric conditions.

LED lights distribute less heat towards the outer lens than halogen or xenon lights. In extreme conditions, LED lights may take longer to clear and is not detrimental to the performance of the light.

### DRIVING ABROAD

LED headlights have a beam pattern that eliminates the need to adjust the lights or add any external stick-on decal.

Matrix LED headlights automatically adapt to a change in the road driving side. The road driving side may also be manually changed within the instrument panel menu.

To change the road driving side option:

1. Select **Exterior Lighting** via the instrument panel.
2. Select **Headlights Driving**.
3. Select **Drive on Left** or **Drive on Right**, for the driving side of the road.

**Note:** For vehicles fitted with a navigation system, for each electrical system cycle, the hand of traffic resets according to the region in which the vehicle is being driven.

### HEADLIGHT LEVELLING



E163032

Use the headlight levelling control to account for vehicle loading changes. The control is located on the driver's side, lower fascia. Press the switch, illustrated, to release and then rotate to the required position.

Vehicle load	Switch position
Driver only.	0
Driver and front seat passenger.	0
Driver and passengers in all seats.	1
Maximum Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW).	2
Driver and maximum rear axle load.	3

### HEADLIGHT LEVELLING – LED AND XENON

LED and xenon headlights fitted with automatic levelling do not require manual adjustment. The vehicle does not have a rotary control on the fascia panel.

## Exterior lights

### ADAPTIVE FRONT LIGHTING SYSTEM (AFS)

With the headlights on, the Adaptive Front Lighting System (AFS) adjusts the beams when cornering, to provide improved illumination in the direction of travel.

The AFS is deactivated when:

- Reverse (R) is selected.
- The vehicle is stationary.

If a system fault is detected, the headlights attempt to move to the central position and then remain stationary. The instrument panel displays the message **Dipped beam fault** to indicate that a fault is present.

### ADAPTIVE DRIVING BEAM (ADB)

**Note:** *The Adaptive Driving Beam (ADB) system cannot be relied upon to activate or deactivate high beam in all possible circumstances. The driver remains responsible for the correct use of the headlights at all times.*

**Note:** *Make sure that the forward-facing sensors located at the rear of the rear-view mirror are not blocked or obstructed.*

ADB evaluates the road scene ahead of the vehicle. ADB automatically adapts the high beam light distribution according to the position of the preceding and oncoming traffic.

ADB is enabled when AFS is enabled.

ADB activates automatically once the vehicle's speed reaches 40 km/h (25 mph) and the camera does not detect an urban environment. ADB automatically deactivates when the vehicle's speed slows to 24 km/h (15 mph). ADB also deactivates when ambient light exceeds a predetermined level, or when the gear selector is in Reverse (R).

The driver can disable and re-enable the ADB system at any time:

1. Select **Exterior lighting** from the **Vehicle settings**. See **69, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.
2. Select **Headlights High Beam**.
3. Select **Adaptive Driving Beam ON** or **OFF** or AHBA.

Pull and release the lighting control to manually override to dipped beam from ADB. The instrument panel warning lamp illuminates.

Push and release the lighting control to return to ADB. The instrument panel warning lamp illuminates. See **83, HIGH BEAM (BLUE)**.

Repeated pushing of the lighting control toggles the operation of the high beam between automatic and manual.

Rotate the lighting control to the dipped beam position to switch the ADB system off.

The following may affect operation of the ADB system:

- Highly reflective road signs.
- Dimly lit road users, e.g., cyclists or pedestrians.
- Adverse weather conditions, e.g., rain or fog.
- A dirty or obscured sensor.
- A dirty, damaged, or misted windscreen.
- Oncoming vehicles, partially obscured by a central motorway barrier.
- An icy or frosted windscreen.



## Exterior lights

### DIRECTION INDICATORS

The animated direction indicator feature is in place to improve the side lights by a sequential activation of their light sources.

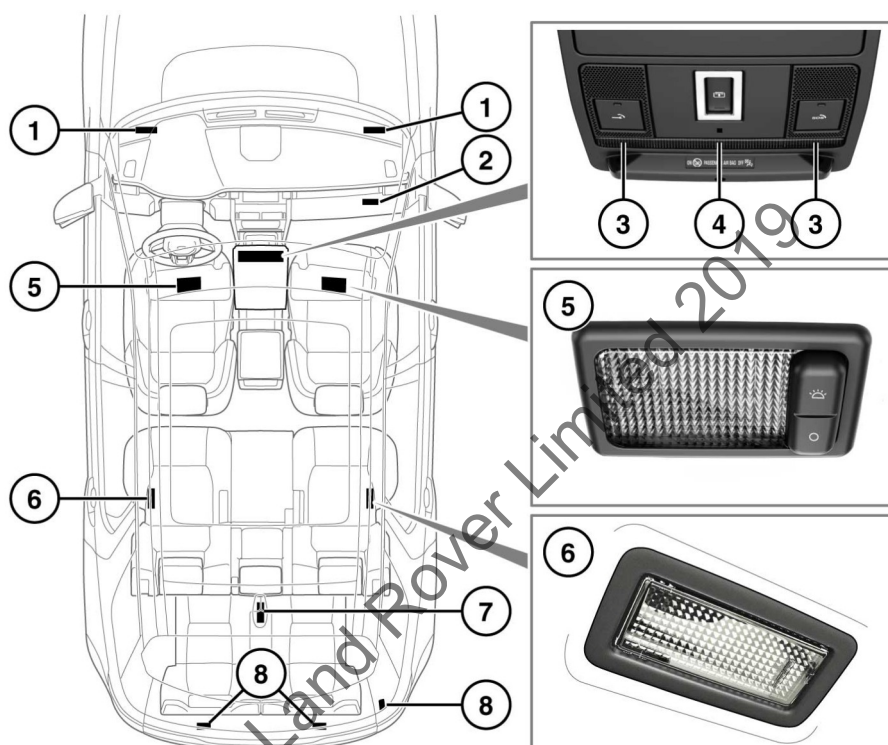
The driver can disable and re-enable the animated direction indicator at any time:

1. Select **Exterior lighting** in the **Vehicle settings** menu, via the instrument panel.
2. Select **Direction indicator**.
3. Select **Animated ON** or **OFF**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2019

## Interior lights

### INTERIOR LIGHTS



E246333

1. Front footwell lights: Illuminate when the doors are unlocked. The lights extinguish 30 seconds after all of the doors are closed, when the engine starts or when the vehicle is locked.
2. Glovebox light: Illuminates when the glovebox is opened.
3. Map reading lights: Move a finger close to, or touch, the relevant lens to switch on or off.
4. Front interior light: Illuminates when the doors are unlocked. The light extinguishes 30 seconds after all of the doors are closed, when the engine starts, or when the vehicle is locked. Move a finger close to, or touch, the lens to switch on and off manually. Touch the lens for 2 seconds to deactivate or activate automatic illumination.

**Note:** If wearing gloves, it may be necessary to touch the lens to operate the lights.



## Interior lights

5. Sun visor lights: Press the button to switch the lights on and off.
6. Rear interior lights: Illuminate when the doors are unlocked. The lights extinguish 30 seconds after all of the doors are closed, when the engine starts, or when the vehicle is locked. Press the lens to switch on and off manually. Touch the front interior light lens for approximately 2 seconds to deactivate or activate automatic illumination.
7. Rear interior lights: As item 6. Fitted to 7 seat vehicles only.
8. Loadspace light: Illuminates when the tailgate is opened.

### INTERIOR LIGHTS INTENSITY

Use the interior illumination control to adjust the intensity of the instrument illumination. The exterior lights must be switched on while changes are being made. See 7, **DRIVER CONTROLS**.

### AMBIENT INTERIOR LIGHTING

The interior mood lighting can be adjusted for colour and intensity via the touchscreen, **EXTRA FEATURES** menu. The exterior lights must be switched on while changes are being made. A 1 second preview of any changes made can be seen if the exterior lights are switched off. See 219, **EXTRA FEATURES**.

**Note:** Vehicles without configurable interior mood lighting illuminate the standard white light for the interior lights. Use the interior illumination control to adjust the intensity.



## Wipers and washers

### WIPER OPERATION

- ❗ Do not operate the wipers on a dry screen as the wipers may cause damage to the windscreen. Failure to do so can damage the wiper arms, blades and the windscreen.
- ❗ Remove any snow, ice, or frost from the screen, around the wiper arms and blades, and the cowl area, before operating the wipers. Failure to do so can damage the wiper arms, blades and the windscreen.
- ❗ Make sure the wipers do not stick to the glass during freezing or hot conditions. Use the winter park position during extreme temperatures. Attempting to use the wipers while they are stuck to the glass could cause damage to the wiper blades and mechanism. See **96, WINTER PARK POSITION**.
- ❗ To avoid damage to the bonnet, do not lift the wipers when they are in the normal parked position. See **342, WIPERS SERVICE POSITION**.
- ❗ To avoid damage to the wiper blade, do not lift the wiper by the wiper blade. Always lift the wiper by the wiper arm.

- ❗ Make sure the wipers are not in automatic rain sensing mode and are switched off before entering a car wash. If the wipers operate during the car washing process, damage may occur to the wiper mechanism.

**Note:** If the wipers leave smears on the glass after the vehicle has been washed, this may be due to wax or other residue. Should this occur, clean the glass with the recommended screen washer fluid. See **410, LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS**.

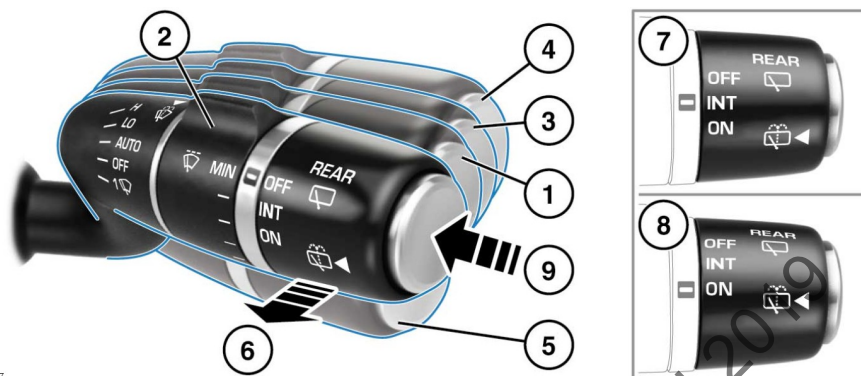
**Note:** The windscreen is no longer wiped effectively and the automatic rain sensing mode degrades if the wipers become worn. Always replace worn or damaged wiper blades as soon as possible. The wipers service position moves the wipers to allow wiper blade replacement. See **342, WIPERS SERVICE POSITION**.

**Note:** If the wipers become stuck or jammed, an electronic cut-out temporarily halts operation of the wipers. If this happens, switch off the wipers and the vehicle's ignition, when safe to do so. Clear any obstructions and free the wiper blades before attempting to switch on the vehicle's ignition.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2019



## Wipers and washers



E152297

To operate the washers and wipers:

1. Vehicles with a rain sensor: Automatic rain sensing mode. The front wipers respond and adapt automatically to the ambient rain conditions. The appropriate wiper frequency is selected for the prevailing conditions. Rotate the collar (2) to adjust sensitivity. Vehicles without a rain sensor: Intermittent wipe. Rotate the collar (2) to adjust the time delay between wipes.
2. Vehicles with a rain sensor: Rotate the collar to adjust the sensitivity of the automatic rain sensing mode when position (1) is selected. The higher the setting, the more responsive the system becomes. When automatic rain sensing mode is selected, or when sensitivity is increased, the system performs a single wipe. Vehicles without a rain sensor: Rotate the collar to adjust the time delay between wipes when position (1) is selected. The higher the setting, the more frequently wipes occur.  
**Note:** Wipe frequency increases with vehicle speed.
3. **LO:** Low speed continuous wipe.
4. **HI:** High speed continuous wipe.
5. Single wipe of the windscreen. Hold down for further continuous wipes.
6. Windscreen wash and wipe: Pull and release to operate the front washers and wipers. After a few seconds, a drip wipe function clears any residual washer fluid from the windscreen. If more washer fluid is required, pull and hold the control's position.  
**Note:** The front wipers do not operate while the bonnet is open.
7. **INT:** Rear wiper, intermittent operation. Wiper frequency increases with vehicle speed.
8. **ON:** Rear wiper, continuous operation.
9. Rear screen wash and wipe: Press and release to operate the rear washer and wiper. The wiper operates in a set cycle to minimise drips when the button is released. If more washer fluid is required, push and hold the button.  
**Note:** The rear wiper activates when reverse (R) is selected and the front wipers are operating.

## Wipers and washers

**Note:** The rear wiper does not operate while the tailgate is open.

### RAIN SENSOR

**Note:** Static droplets may not be detected when the vehicle is first started. A single wipe should be used to clear the windscreen.

**Note:** If the wash/wipe control is in the **AUTO** position, the wipers do not operate if either of the front doors are open. See **93, WIPER OPERATION**.

**Note:** In dry and often sunny conditions, optical influences and dirt accumulation on the windscreen may result in the windscreen wipers activating inadvertently. To prevent this, it is recommended that, under these conditions, the wash/wipe control is returned to the **OFF** position.

The rain sensor is mounted on the inside of the windscreen, behind the rear-view mirror. The sensor detects the presence and amount of water on the windscreen and automatically activates the windscreen wipers, accordingly.

To activate the rain sensitive wipers, move the wash/wipe control to the **AUTO** position (1). Rotate the collar (2) to adjust the behaviour of the system to suit the driver's preference. See **93, WIPER OPERATION**.

The rain sensor feature can be enabled or disabled via the **Vehicle settings** menu in the instrument panel. See **69, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

### SPEED-DEPENDENT MODE

#### Front wipers

If the vehicle's speed drops below 8 km/h (5 mph) with the wipers operating, the wipers switch to the next lowest speed. When the vehicle's speed increases to over 8 km/h (5 mph), the original wiper speed setting is automatically restored.

Vehicles without a rain sensor fitted also increase the frequency of the intermittent front wipe when the vehicle's speed increases.



The front wipers speed-dependent mode feature can be enabled or disabled by a retailer/authorised repairer.

#### Rear wiper

The frequency of the intermittent rear wiper increases when the vehicle's speed increases.



The rear wiper speed-dependent mode feature can be enabled or disabled by a retailer/authorised repairer.

### DRIP WIPE

If the drip wipe feature is configured, the wipers operate a few seconds after a wash and wipe cycle has finished. The drip wipe feature clears any remaining drips from the windscreen.



The drip wipe feature can be enabled or disabled by a retailer/authorised repairer.



## Wipers and washers

### WINTER PARK POSITION

- ⚠ Make sure that the wiper arms are in the winter park position before lifting the wiper blades away from the windscreen. Failure to do so, may result in damage to the bonnet.

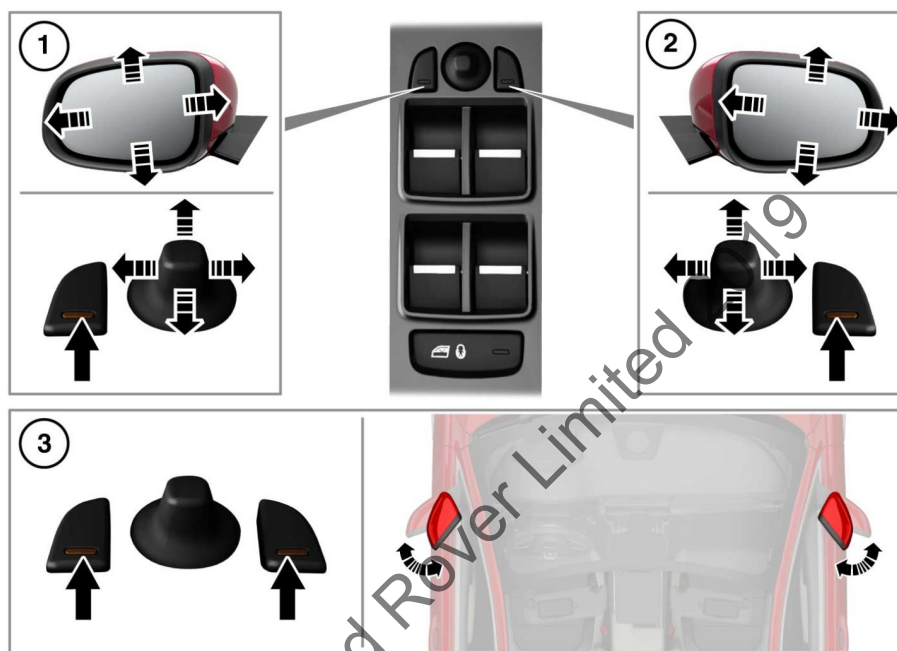
When the vehicle is parked, the wipers can be set to park in a higher position than normal. The wiper blades can be lifted from the windscreen to limit the possibility of the blades sticking to the glass. Lifting the wiper blades from the windscreen aids the removal of snow, mud, and leaves, etc. The winter park position can be enabled or disabled via the **Vehicle settings** menu in the instrument panel. See **69, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

### HEADLIGHT WASHERS

**Note:** *The headlight washers operate only if the headlights are switched on and there is sufficient washer fluid in the reservoir.*

The headlight wash feature operates automatically with the windscreen wash. The feature operates every fourth operation of the screen washers. The feature operates if the headlights are switched on and approximately 10 minutes has elapsed since the last headlight wash. Switching the headlights or the vehicle's ignition off and back on again resets the cycle. See **85, LIGHTING CONTROL** and **138, SWITCHING OFF THE ENGINE**.

### DOOR MIRRORS



E166364

**Note:** An amount of knock protection is designed into the door mirrors. If a door mirror is accidentally knocked inwards or manually folded inwards, the mirror head disengages from the folding mechanism. To re-engage the mechanism, fold, then unfold the mirror using the button.

**Note:** A thermal cut-out temporarily disables the power-fold feature if the buttons are operated repeatedly.

**Note:** The door mirror heaters operate automatically, according to the external temperature and the heated rear screen operation.

**Note:** If the door mirrors are folded using the buttons, the mirrors do not unfold when the vehicle is unlocked. The mirror unfolds when the vehicle speed exceeds 40 km/h (25 mph).

1. Left door mirror adjustment.
2. Right door mirror adjustment.
3. Power-fold or unfold: Press both buttons simultaneously.

**Note:** Power-folding is a vehicle specific feature. The power-fold feature operates only if the vehicle's speed is below 113 km/h (70 mph).



## Mirrors

Press the appropriate button to select the relevant door mirror to be adjusted. The button's LED indicator lamp illuminates to confirm which side is active. Use the joystick control to adjust the mirror's glass.

The door mirrors can be configured by a retailer/authorised repairer to automatically fold when the vehicle is locked and unfold when it is unlocked.

The door mirrors can be adjusted for up to 5 minutes after the ignition is switched off, provided the driver's door is not opened.

### Garage mode

If the mirrors are folded in before the vehicle is locked, the mirrors do not unfold when the vehicle is unlocked. Garage mode prevents the mirrors being damaged when unfolding. For example, in a tight garage spot.

### MIRROR DIP WHEN REVERSING

Mirror dip can be enabled or disabled via the **Vehicle settings** menu. See **69, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

Selecting Reverse (**R**) causes the door mirrors to automatically adjust, providing an improved viewing angle for reversing.

The dipped position of the door mirrors is a preset position. In **R**, the door mirrors can be adjusted and the new position can be saved.

**Note:** The new door mirror dip position can only be saved in **R**.


When the vehicle is in **R**, press the memory save button (**M**). Select either memory **1**, **2**, or **3** to save the reverse mirror dip position to the corresponding memory position. See **33, SEAT POSITION MEMORY**.


Using the memory save button allows three different reverse mirror dip positions to be saved. Use the memory recall feature to recall the saved positions.

When the gear selector is moved out of **R**, the door mirrors return to the previous position.

**Note:** If the vehicle's speed exceeds 12 km/h (7mph) in **R**, the mirrors return to the normal position for enhanced visibility.

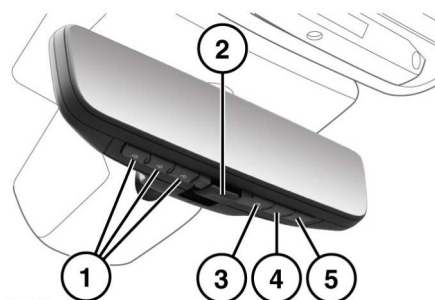
### CLEAR-SIGHT REAR-VIEW MIRROR

 The ClearSight rear-view mirror has a limited view. The driver is responsible for detecting obstacles and estimating the vehicle's distance from them when manoeuvring the vehicle. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.

 When cleaning the ClearSight rear-view mirror glass, please use a paper towel or similar material dampened with glass cleaner. Do not spray glass cleaner directly on the mirror as that may cause the liquid cleaner to enter the mirror housing and damage the mirror.

A ClearSight rear-view mirror uses a camera and a mirror-integrated display. The ClearSight rear-view mirror camera mode displays a wide-angle camera view of the area behind the vehicle. Alternatively, use the ClearSight rear-view mirror as a conventional mirror.

## Mirrors



E231132

1. HomeLink® buttons. See **100, RADIO FREQUENCY (RF) TRANSCEIVER**.
2. ClearSight rear-view mirror mode switch.
3. ClearSight rear-view mirror settings button.
4. ClearSight rear-view mirror settings adjuster button - Down.
5. ClearSight rear-view mirror settings adjuster button - Up.

To enable the ClearSight rear-view mirror camera mode, pull the ClearSight rear-view mirror mode switch (2) rearward.

Push the mode switch (2) forward to disable.

The user can adjust the following ClearSight rear-view mirror settings:


- Brightness: Press the settings button (3). Adjust the brightness levels using the up (5) and down (4) buttons.
- Height: Press the settings button twice. Adjust the height using the up (5) and down (4) buttons.


If a ClearSight rear-view mirror system fault is detected, the rear view mirror displays a camera disabled icon. If the camera display is not available, place the ClearSight rear-view mirror in to mirror mode, and contact a retailer/authorised repairer.





## Garage door opener

### RADIO FREQUENCY (RF) TRANSCEIVER

 Do not use the Radio Frequency (RF) transceiver with any garage door opener that lacks the safety stop and reverse feature, as required by safety standards. A closing garage door may cause serious injuries or death.

 Do not use the RF transceiver with any garage door opener that was manufactured before April 1982. An outdated garage door opener can lead to malfunction of the garage door, potentially causing serious injury or death.

 When programming the RF transceiver to a garage door opener or entry gate, make sure that the area is clear of people and objects. Potential harm or damage may occur, as the gate or garage door activates during programming.

 The system may suffer from interference if operated in the vicinity of a mobile or fixed station transmitter. Interference is likely to affect the hand-held transmitter, as well as the RF transceiver. See **102, INFORMATION AND ASSISTANCE.**

The RF transceiver is also known as HomeLink®.


The HomeLink device is located in the rear-view mirror.

The hand-held transmitter is also known as a garage door remote.

The HomeLink wireless control system provides a convenient way to replace up to three remote controls. HomeLink can be used to activate devices such as gate operators, garage door openers, entry door locks, security systems, and home lighting.

HomeLink® is a registered trademark of Gentex Corporation.

### BEFORE PROGRAMMING

 Unplug the remote device during programming if repeated operation of the remote control is required. Repeated operation of the remote control during programming may result in damage to the remote device.

**Note:** HomeLink® is compatible with a wide range of remote devices. For information on compatible devices and instructional videos, visit: [www.HomeLink.com](http://www.HomeLink.com).

For the best results, fit a new battery to the remote control before programming. If the remote device's receiver is equipped with an antenna, make sure the antenna is extended.

HomeLink® is a registered trademark of Gentex Corporation.

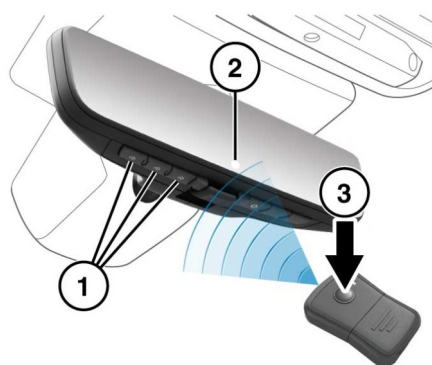
### PROGRAMMING

**Note:** The instructions below apply to the majority of HomeLink compatible systems. However, there are some HomeLink applications, or HomeLink compatible systems, that require slightly different instructions. For more information and instructional videos, visit: [www.HomeLink.com](http://www.HomeLink.com).



## Garage door opener

**Note:** Garage door openers manufactured after 1995 may be equipped with rolling code protection. In this case, a stepladder, or other sturdy, safe device, may be required to reach the learn or smart button on the garage door opener.



E226961

1. HomeLink buttons.
2. LED indicator.
3. Remote control for the device, e.g., garage door.

If required, erase the previous programming from the HomeLink device. See **102, TO ERASE ALL PROGRAMMING**.

To program the HomeLink device:

1. With the ignition switched on, press and release the chosen HomeLink button (1). The LED indicator (2) flashes orange.
2. Position the end of the remote control (3) 2 to 8 cm from the HomeLink button.
3. Press and hold the button on the remote control until the LED indicator changes from flashing orange to flashing or solid green.

**Note:** Some remote device systems require the operator to cycle the remote control button every 2 seconds during programming. Refer to the additional information in **Cycling the remote control** at the end of the **PROGRAMMING** instructions.

4. Firmly press and release the programmed HomeLink button up to three separate times to activate the device.

The device should now be programmed. If not, carry out the following additional steps:

1. Locate the **learn** or **smart** button on the garage door opener's motor-head unit.

**Note:** The **learn** or **smart** button can usually be found directly on the motor-head unit. If in doubt, refer to the garage door opener manual to identify the button.

2. Firmly press and release the **learn** or **smart** button. There are typically 30 seconds to initiate the following step.
3. Return to the vehicle. Firmly press and release the programmed HomeLink button up to three separate times to activate the device. If the device activates, programming is complete.

### Cycling the remote control

Some remote device systems have a remote control signal that only operates for a short period of time. The signal times-out before programming is complete. The operator is required to cycle the remote control button every 2 seconds during programming.

If experiencing difficulties while programming the remote device, carry out the following:



## Garage door opener

During programming of the remote device, replace programming step **3** with the following:

1. Press and release the HomeLink button. Simultaneously, press and release the remote control button every 2 seconds, until the LED indicator rapidly flashes green or continuously illuminates green. Release the HomeLink and remote control buttons.
2. Continue the programming process from step **4**.

If the HomeLink LED indicator does not rapidly flash green or continuously illuminate green after performing these steps, contact HomeLink at: [www.HomeLink.com](http://www.HomeLink.com).

HomeLink® is a registered trademark of Gentex Corporation.

### REPROGRAMMING A SINGLE GARAGE DOOR OPENER BUTTON

To program a remote device to a previously programmed HomeLink® memory button:

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Press and hold the required HomeLink memory button. After approximately 20 seconds, the LED starts to flash orange.
3. Release the button.
4. Follow the programming instructions from step **3** onwards, as described in **PROGRAMMING**.

HomeLink® is a registered trademark of Gentex Corporation.

### TO ERASE ALL PROGRAMMING

To erase all programming from the HomeLink® device:

1. Switch the vehicle's ignition on.
2. Press and hold the outer two HomeLink buttons until the LED on the rear-view mirror changes from continuously illuminated orange to flashing green.  
**Note:** Do not press and hold the buttons for longer than 20 seconds.
3. Release the buttons. HomeLink is initialised and the previous settings of all three buttons are erased.

HomeLink® is a registered trademark of Gentex Corporation.

### INFORMATION AND ASSISTANCE

- ⓘ If the vehicle is sold, it is recommended that all programming is erased from the HomeLink® device.

**Note:** Retain the original remote device's remote control handset for future programming requirements.

**Note:** The manufacturer is not responsible for any radio or TV interference caused by unauthorised modifications to this equipment. Such modifications could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

For information on the range of compatible remote devices, or for assistance, contact a retailer/authorised repairer. Alternatively, visit the HomeLink website: [www.HomeLink.com](http://www.HomeLink.com).

## Garage door opener

For Genie and Sommer garage door openers, go directly to the HomeLink website.


HomeLink® is a registered trademark of Gentex Corporation.


© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2019




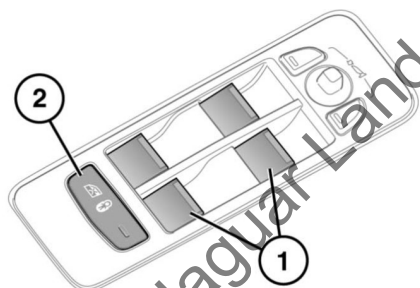
## Windows

### ELECTRIC WINDOWS

 To prevent accidental operation, never leave the smart key inside the vehicle if children or animals are also left inside the vehicle. Unsupervised operation of the windows and sunroof may result in serious injury or death.

 If children are carried in the rear seats, the isolator button should be used to prevent operation of the windows and doors. If the windows or doors are operated by children, there is a risk of serious injury or death.

 Any ice must be removed from the windows before operating. Ice on the window surface can cause damage to the operating mechanism.



E162414

**Note:** Each window switch has a two-stage operation. Lightly press, or pull, and hold to manually operate to the required position. Alternatively, fully press or pull and release for one-touch operation. Operate the window switch again to halt one-touch operation.

To operate the windows:

1. Window switches:

- Briefly pull a switch fully up, and release to close a window.
- Briefly press a switch fully down, and release to fully open a window.
- Press or pull a switch again to stop movement of the window.

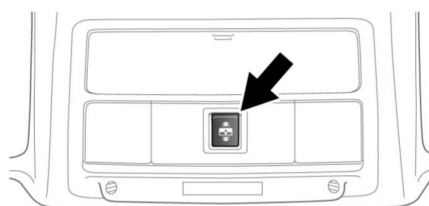
**Note:** The windows operate for 5 minutes after the engine is switched off, as long as none of the doors are opened.

Rear windows have a short drop feature for passenger comfort. The first press of a switch lowers the window a short distance, to give a flow of air. A second press lowers the window to its full extent. If a resonance or booming sound occurs when a rear window is open, lowering an adjacent front window by approximately 25 mm eliminates the condition.

2. Rear window and door isolator button:

- Press the button to isolate operation of the rear windows and doors. The indicator lamp in the button illuminates to confirm isolation.

### ROOF BLIND



E162416

Roof blind open and close switch:

To open the blind, press the rear of the switch to the second position and release. The blind fully opens. A further press stops movement of the blind.

## Windows

Alternatively, press the rear of the switch to the first position and hold until the blind reaches the desired position. Release the switch.

To close the blind, press the front of the switch to the second position and release. The blind fully closes. A further press stops movement of the blind.

Alternatively, press the front of the switch to the first position and hold until the blind reaches the desired position. Release the switch.

### ANTI-TRAP PROTECTION

**⚠ Before closing a window, or the sunroof, make sure that no occupants have any body part in a position where it could be trapped. Even with an anti-trap system, death or serious injury could occur.**

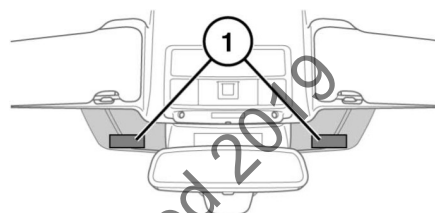
**⚠ Closing a window or the sunroof onto any part of the body can result in serious injury.**

Anti-trap protection is designed to stop window movement if an obstruction or resistance is detected. Check the window and its aperture. Remove any obstructions. The override procedure is as follows:

1. Attempt to close the window. Anti-trap prevents closure and lowers the window.
2. Within 10 seconds, attempt to raise the window again. Anti-trap prevents closure and lowers the window.
3. Attempt to close the window for a third time. Hold the switch in the close position. The window raises while the switch is held. Hold until closed.

**Note:** If this procedure fails to remove the blockage, or if the windows do not operate correctly, the window may need to be reset. See **343, WINDOW RESET**.

### SOLAR ATTENUATING GLASS



E198895

The solar attenuating glass windscreen filters sunlight passing through a special laminated layer.

Electronic actuating cards, such as toll road payment cards or Radio Frequency (RF) ID tags, can be fixed at the dedicated locations. The locations are on the inside of the windscreen. If the cards are located at any other part of a solar attenuating windscreen, the electronic scanners may not recognise them.

The optimal fixing location is at the top of the windscreen, as shown at (1), close to the interior rear-view mirror.

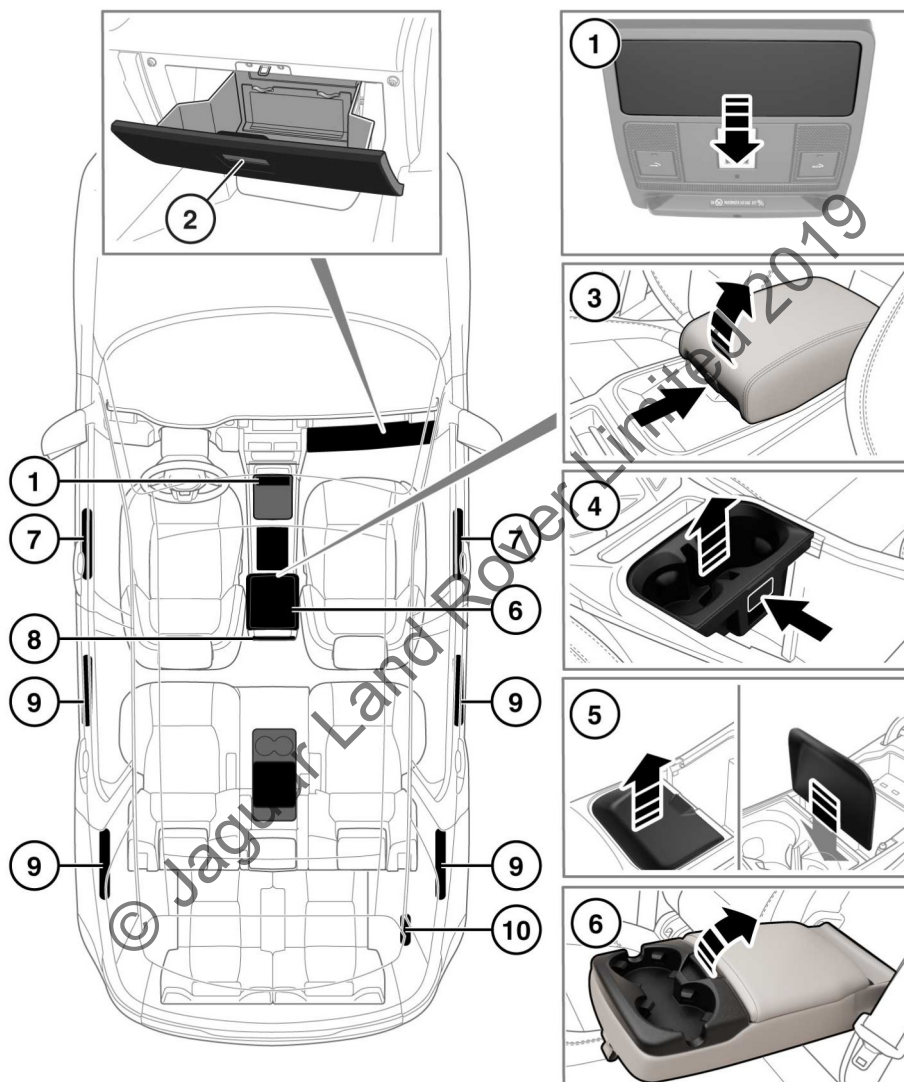
**Note:** The electronic actuating card should be in the size appropriate location on the driver's side of the windscreen.

**Note:** Transponders, mounted on the front number plate plinth, can be used as an alternative, dependent on the market and availability.



## Storage compartments

### STORAGE COMPARTMENTS



E242769

## Storage compartments

- ⚠ Make sure that any items stored in the vehicle are secure and cannot move. If the vehicle is involved in an accident, or is subject to sudden braking or a change of direction, loose items can cause serious injury.**

Storage compartment locations:

1. Sunglasses tray.
2. Glovebox: Pull the handle to open.
3. Armrest and cubby box: Pull the release lever and raise the armrest to access the storage area.

- ⚠ To avoid personal injury, keep hands and fingers clear from the front and rear edges of the armrest during opening and closing of the cubby box.**

4. Removable front cupholders: To remove the cup holder assembly, open the cubby box lid and pull the release handle on the rear end of the assembly.

**Note:** A hidden storage area is located under the cup holder assembly.

- ⚠ Do not drink while driving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.**

- ⚠ Do not remove items from, or place items in, the cup holders while driving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.**

5. Removable coin tray: The removable coin tray can be stored vertically in the cubby box.

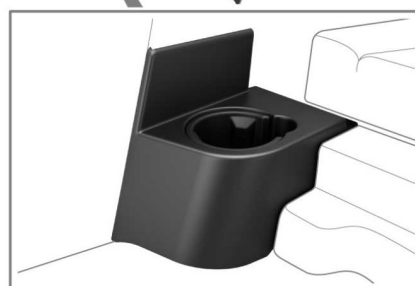
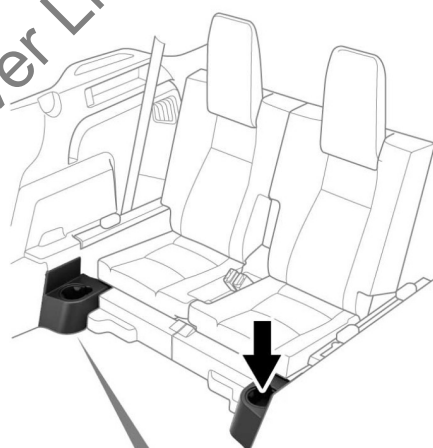
6. Rear armrest storage and cup holders: Press the release button to access the storage area.

7. Front door storage areas.
8. Storage bin, located at the rear end of the centre console.
9. Rear door storage areas.
10. Luggage compartment storage area.

### Third row cup holders

- ⚠ Do not drink while driving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.**

- ⚠ Do not remove items from, or place items in, the cup holders while driving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.**



E222089



## Storage compartments

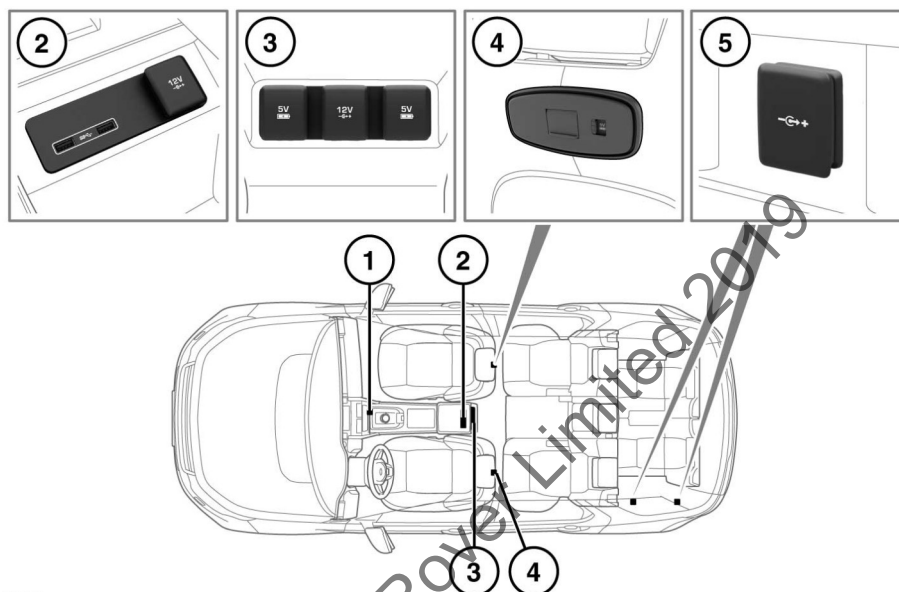
The fitment of third row cup holders depends on the vehicle's specification.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2019



## Storage compartments

### AUXILIARY POWER SOCKETS



E245156

- !** Only use approved accessories. Using any other equipment may damage the vehicle's electrical system and/or cause the battery to discharge. If in any doubt, contact a retailer/authorised repairer.
  - !** The engine should be running when using accessories for long periods. Failure to do so can discharge the battery.
- There are 12V power sockets and 5V USB charge sockets equipped to the vehicle.
- Note:** The 12V power sockets can be used to power approved accessories that use a maximum of 120 Watts.
- 12V and 5V socket locations:
1. 5V USB socket located on the passenger side dashboard.
  2. 12V power socket located inside the centre console's cubby box.
 

**Note:** Depending on the vehicle specification, a cigar lighter may be equipped instead of the 12V power socket.
  3. Two 5V USB sockets and one 12V power socket, or a single 12V power socket at the rear of the centre console.
  4. Power socket located on the seatbacks of the front driver and passenger seat.
 


**Note:** The passenger side USB socket is not fitted if the vehicle has the third row seat Air Conditioning (A/C) control.
  5. 12V and 5V power sockets located in the loadspace.




## Storage compartments

**Note:** Socket locations are dependent on the specification of the vehicle.

### WIRELESS CHARGER

 **Metallic objects may become hot if they are placed between the mobile device and the charging mat, which may result in serious injuries.**

 Do not place anything other than a Qi-compatible mobile device or accessory onto the charging mat. Items such as keys, key fobs, coins, jewellery, paperclips, or foil sweet wrappers may interfere with the wireless charger operation.

The wireless charger is located on the centre console, in front of the gear selector.

The wireless charger provides up to 15W of power to charge mobile devices.

To use the wireless charger:

1. Switch on the vehicle's ignition.
2. Place the compatible mobile device in the centre of the mat with the device facing upward. After a few seconds the charging commences.




**Note:** Remove the mobile device from the mat to stop the charging process.

**Note:** The amount of charging current supplied and the time taken for charging is entirely under the control of the mobile device.

**Note:** The wireless charger continues to charge during an engine stop/start event.

The wireless charger switches off automatically, when the mobile device is fully charged.

The following icons appear on the touchscreen and relate to wireless charging status:

-  Charging: Indicates a device is on the charging mat and recognised by the system.
-  Charged: Indicates the mobile device is fully charged.
-  Foreign object: Indicates a foreign object is detected on the charging mat.

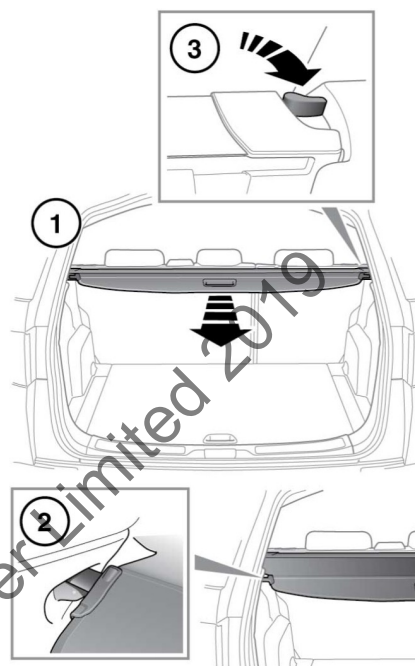
## Load carrying

### LOAD CARRYING

- ⚠ Never allow passengers to travel in the loadspace under any circumstances. All vehicle occupants should be seated correctly and should wear a seat belt at all times when the vehicle is in motion. Failure to do so can lead to serious injury or death in the event of an accident.
- ⚠ All items carried in the vehicle should be properly secured. If the vehicle is involved in an accident, or is subject to sudden braking or a change of direction, loose items can cause serious injury or death.

### LOADSPACE COVER

- ⚠ Do not store the loadspace cover loose in the vehicle. During an accident or sudden manoeuvre, loose objects can cause serious injury or death.
- ⚠ Never place objects on top of the loadspace cover. During an accident or sudden manoeuvre, loose objects can cause serious injury or death.
- ⚠ To avoid injury, the loadspace cover must not be left in the fitted position when the third row seats are occupied.
- ⓘ Do not attempt to raise the second row seatbacks into the upright position or tip them forward for third row access when the loadspace cover is stored behind the second row seats. Doing so may result in damage to the loadspace cover.



E163428

Using and removing the loadspace cover:

1. Using the handle, pull the cover to unroll.
2. Engage the end pieces into the recessed areas, moulded into the loadspace sides. To retract the loadspace cover, disengage the ends from the recessed areas and allow the cover to retract into its housing.
3. To remove the cover, turn the release lever to unlock the assembly and disengage the pins from the sockets.

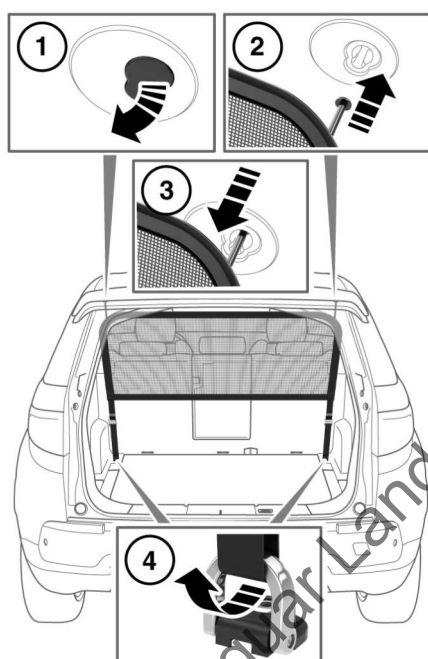
**Note:** Turn the release lever until resistance is felt and pull further to release.



## Load carrying

4. To refit the cover assembly, engage the left side into the recessed area. Then engage the right side. Push down into place until an audible click is heard.

### LOADSPACE PARTITION



E243329

- Make sure the cargo barrier net, all fasteners and the straps are tight and straight.**

To fit the cargo barrier net:

1. Open the bracket's lid.
2. Engage the cargo barrier net's end pieces into the recessed areas moulded into the sides of the roof.
3. Push down the end pieces to secure the cargo barrier net.

4. Fit and secure the straps to the lashing eye loops.

**Note:** Removal of the partition net is the reverse of the fitment procedure.

### ROOF RACKS AND LOAD CARRIERS

- A loaded roof rack can reduce the stability of the vehicle, particularly when cornering and during crosswinds. Driving with a loaded roof rack can lead to the loss of control over the vehicle and cause serious injury or death.**
- Driving off-road with a loaded roof rack is not recommended. Doing so may result in accidents causing serious injury or death.**

Fit only a roof rack system that is designed for use with the vehicle. For further information, consult a retailer/authorised repairer.

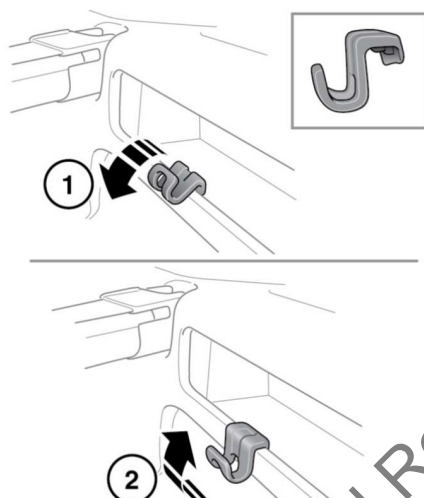
The maximum load for an approved roof rack system is 75 kg, while driving on-road. Off-road driving reduces the limit to 50 kg. The weight of the approved roof rack system is not calculated as part of the load.

If an alternative roof rack system is used, the weight of that system must be included as part of the load weight.

Loads must be evenly distributed without overhanging the rack. After travelling 50 km (30 miles), check the security of the roof rack and any load.

## REMOVABLE LOADSPACE HOOKS

There are four loadspace hooks located underneath the loadspace floor, in dedicated storage pockets.



E185715

The hooks can be positioned anywhere along the storage area rail, on either side of the loadspace. To fit a hook:

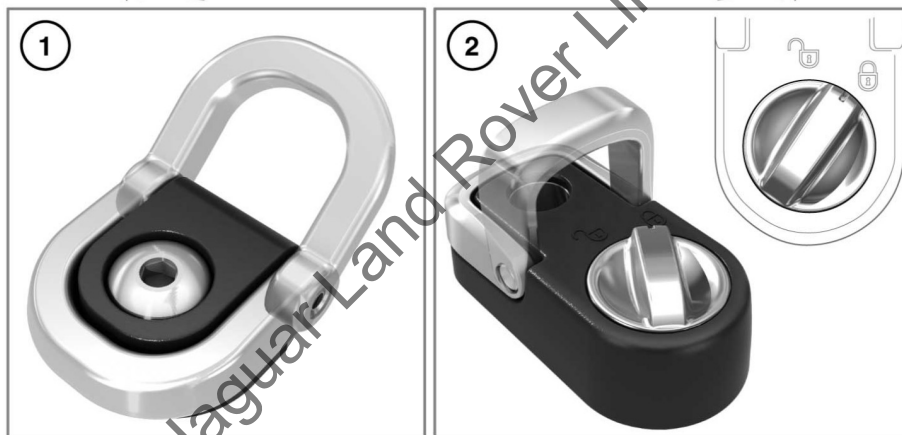
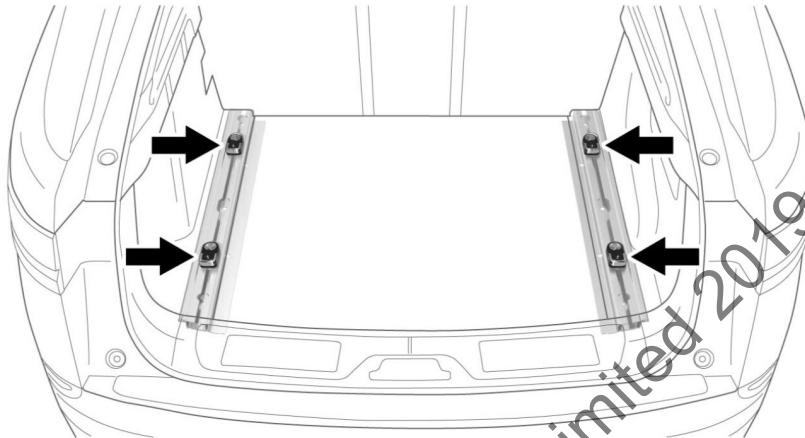
1. Retract the loadspace cover to give better access to the loadspace. See **111, LOADSPACE COVER**.
2. Position the hook on the storage area rail at the angle shown (1).
3. Push the hook downward, toward the loadspace floor. Keep a finger on top of the hook to make sure it does not slip.

To remove a hook: Push the bottom of the hook upward (2) and lift it off the rail.



## Load carrying

### LUGGAGE ANCHOR POINTS



E196604

**⚠ All items carried in the loadspace should be properly secured. If the vehicle is involved in an accident, or is subject to sudden braking or a change of direction, loose items can cause serious injury.**

Using the fixed and adjustable lashing eyes:

1. Fixed lashing eyes: Use to assist in safely securing large items.

## Load carrying

2. Adjustable lashing eyes: First turn the locking button counter-clockwise to unlock. Press the mechanism and slide to the required position in the adjusting rail. Release the mechanism to latch into position. Move the lashing eye slightly, until a click is heard. The lashing eye is now secured. Turn the mechanism clockwise to lock.

**Note:** In some markets, a range of approved luggage retention accessories is available from a retailer/authorised repairer.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2019



## Towing

### TOWING WEIGHTS

Trailer	Variant	Maximum weight (kg)
Maximum tow mass of unbraked trailer.	All vehicles.	750

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2019



## Towing

Trailer	Variant	Maximum weight (kg)
Maximum towable mass.	Diesel - 150PS - Front Wheel Drive (FWD).	1 800, EU, South Africa, and Australia only. 1 500, all except EU, South Africa, and Australia.
	Diesel - 150PS - All Wheel Drive (AWD).	2 200, EU, South Africa, and Australia only. 1 500, all except EU, South Africa, and Australia.
	Diesel - 180PS - AWD - with 5 seats.	2 500, EU only. 2 200, South Africa, and Australia only. 1 500, all except EU, South Africa, and Australia.
	Diesel - 180PS - AWD - with 7 seats.	2 200, EU, South Africa, and Australia only. 1 500, all except EU, South Africa, and Australia.
	Diesel - 240PS - AWD - with 5 seats.	2 500, EU only. 2 200, South Africa, and Australia only. 1 500, all except EU, South Africa, and Australia.
	Diesel - 240PS - AWD - with 7 seats.	2 200, EU, South Africa, and Australia only. 1 500, all except EU, South Africa, and Australia.
	Petrol vehicles.	2 000, EU, South Africa, and Australia only. 1 500, all except EU, South Africa, and Australia.



## Towing

Trailer	Variant	Maximum weight (kg)
Nose weight*	All vehicles.	100
Tow bar mounted accessories.	All vehicles.	66.8

\*The nose weight can be increased to a maximum of 150 kg for vehicles with 5 seats and to a maximum of 145 kg for vehicles with 7 seats. Make sure that the GVW, the GTW, and the maximum rear axle weights are not exceeded. If required, remove weight from the vehicle to facilitate the increased nose weight.

When towing, make sure to not exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW), the Gross Train Weight (GTW), or the front and rear axle weights. See **411, WEIGHTS**.

**Note:** Include the trailer's nose weight when calculating the GVW.

**Note:** When calculating the vehicle's rear axle weight, the vehicle's payload weights must also be considered. Include the combined weights of all the rear passengers, the loadspace, roof rails, accessory equipment, and the nose weight.

If in any doubt, contact a retailer/ authorised repairer and quote the Vehicle Identification Number (VIN). See **407, LABEL LOCATIONS**.

### Europe only

When towing, the maximum GVW can be increased by 100 kg, provided that the vehicle's road speed is limited to 97 km/h (60 mph).

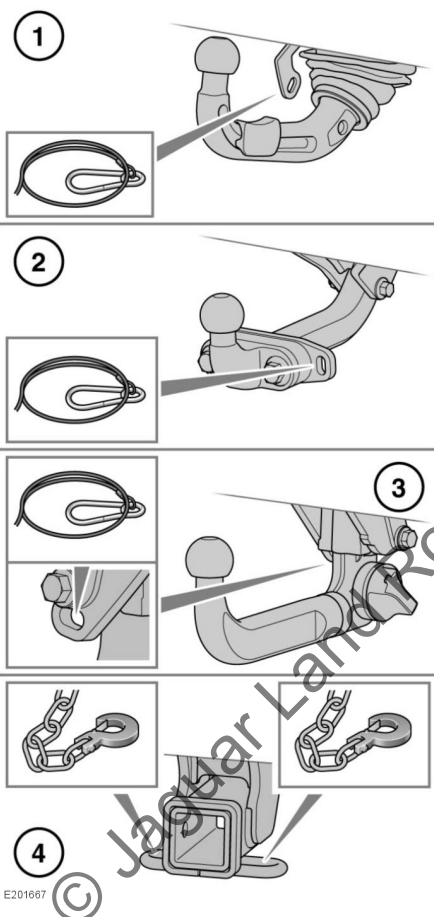
### TOW BAR OPTIONS

**Note:** The tow bar options are dependent on the market and the vehicle's specification.

**Note:** When towing, make sure to attach a breakaway cable, or breakaway chains, at the correct locations, as illustrated.

## Towing

### 5 and 7 seat vehicles without a spare wheel

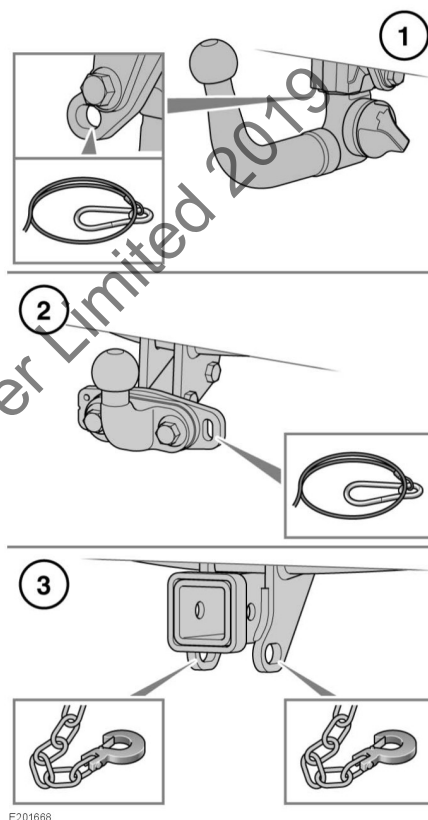


The available tow bar options are as follows:

1. Deployable.
2. Bolt-on.
3. Detachable.

### 4. Tow hitch receiver (Australia only). The fitting of a tow hitch is required before towing. See 120, TOW HITCH (Australia only).

### 7 seat vehicles with a spare wheel



The available tow bar options are as follows:

1. Detachable.
2. Bolt-on.



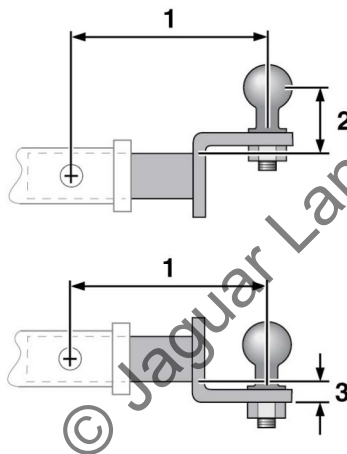
## Towing

3. Tow hitch receiver (Australia only). The fitting of a tow hitch is required before towing. See **120, TOW HITCH (Australia only)**.

### TOW HITCH (Australia only)

**⚠ Never leave the tow hitch loose in the vehicle. In the event of an accident, or during heavy braking, it can become a projectile, potentially causing serious injury or death.**

**Note:** The following dimensions are calculated with a tow ball centre to the tow hitch plate height of 50 mm. If a different tow ball size is used, adjust the dimensions accordingly.



The fitting of a tow hitch is required for towing with the tow hitch receiver.

### 5 and 7 seat vehicles without a spare wheel

The following tow hitch dimensions must be adhered to:

1. The maximum recommended length is 204 mm, as illustrated.
2. To achieve the maximum ball height, a rise of 75 mm is recommended, as illustrated.
3. To achieve the minimum ball height, a drop of 12.5 mm is recommended, as illustrated.

### 7 seat vehicles with a spare wheel

The following tow hitch dimensions must be adhered to:

1. The maximum recommended length is 154 mm, as illustrated.
2. To achieve the maximum ball height, a rise of 50 mm is recommended, as illustrated.
3. To achieve the minimum ball height, a drop of 37.5 mm is recommended, as illustrated.

If required, consult a retailer/authorised repairer for further information.

### TRAILER STABILITY ASSIST (TSA)

**Note:** The Trailer Stability Assist (TSA) system does not operate in the event of the trailer jack-knifing.


**Note:** The TSA system does not operate when Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) is switched off.

**Note:** The TSA system performance may reduce when travelling on slippery surfaces.

When a trailer is correctly attached to the vehicle, the TSA system automatically detects when trailer sway is developing. When active, the TSA system gradually reduces the vehicle's speed by reducing engine power and applying the brakes to help regain stability control.

## Towing

## HITCH ASSIST

-  The driver is always responsible for calculating the correct distances and manoeuvring the vehicle to a trailer's tow hitch. Failure to do so may result in damage to the vehicle and trailer.

**Note:** The hitch assist system displays an approximation for the vehicle's tow ball position and the required trajectory to a trailer's tow hitch.

**Note:** Accuracy of the hitch assist system is affected by the height of the trailer's tow hitch compared to the height of the vehicle's tow ball. The maximum height difference should be no more than 3 cm.




The hitch assist system displays a rear-view guidance image to aid the process of reversing the vehicle to a trailer's tow hitch.

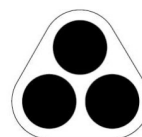
Operate as follows:

1. Select Reverse (R) to automatically display a rear-view image on the touchscreen.
2. Select the touchscreen's settings icon to display the **CAMERA SETTINGS** menu. Select **ON** from the **Hitch Assist** option to display the guidance lines. See **276, SURROUND CAMERA SYSTEM** or **275, REAR CAMERA**.
3. Reverse the vehicle toward the trailer.
4. As the vehicle closes to within 600 mm of the trailer's tow hitch, an automated zoom feature operates to enlarge the view.
5. Continue the manoeuvre until the vehicle and trailer are as close as required.

## TOW ASSIST

-  Only use towing equipment that is approved by the vehicle manufacturer. Non-approved towing equipment may adversely affect the accuracy and performance of other vehicle features. The potential result can lead to vehicle damage and personal injury.

Use the tow assist feature when reversing the vehicle while towing a trailer. The touchscreen displays coloured trajectory lines to indicate the predicted direction path of the trailer. Dependent on the vehicle's specification, the camera images can also be displayed on the touchscreen.



E134952

The tow assist feature uses the vehicle's rear camera and a target sticker to constantly monitor the position of a connected trailer. The target sticker must be affixed to the trailer in the same orientation as illustrated. If required, consult a retailer/authorised repairer to acquire a target sticker.

To display the correct sticker location for the trailer, enable the tow assist feature. Follow the on-screen instructions for the new trailer configuration menus on the touchscreen.



## Towing

**Note:** The tracking target sticker must be affixed at a distance of between 1 m and 2 m from the rear of the vehicle. The tracking target sticker must be affixed to a flat vertical surface that is parallel to the rear of the vehicle. The tow assist feature does not operate if these conditions are not met.

Different light conditions between the vehicle's rear camera and the trailer's target sticker can affect the operation of the tow assist feature. In this event, the touchscreen extinguishes the displayed trajectory lines and operation of the tow assist feature is suspended. Normal tow assist operation resumes when the light levels are no longer different.

Some examples of differing light conditions are as follows:

- Lower light levels on the target sticker, e.g., a shadow.
- Higher light levels on the target sticker, e.g., direct sunlight.
- Higher light levels on the rear camera, e.g., direct sunlight.



To enable the tow assist feature, touch the **tow assist** icon on the **CAMERAS** menu screen. See **276, SURROUND CAMERA SYSTEM**.

Alternatively, the tow assist feature can also be enabled via a pop-up menu, if the vehicle detects an electrical connection at the tow bar socket.

The correct process for making an electrical connection is as follows:

- Switch the ignition system off.
- Connect the electrical equipment to the tow bar socket.

- Switch the ignition system on to enable the vehicle to detect the connection.

**Note:** If the ignition system is switched on during the connection, opening and closing the driver's door enables the vehicle to detect the connection.

- The touchscreen displays a pop-up menu.
- Touch the relevant soft key to enable the tow assist feature, if connecting a trailer with a target sticker and an existing profile.

**Note:** Touch the alternative soft key to cancel the tow assist feature, if connecting accessory equipment or a trailer without a target sticker.

With the tow assist feature enabled, the touchscreen guides the driver through a set of menus. If applicable, select the trailer's existing profile. Alternatively, create a profile for a new trailer. In this event, the touchscreen guides the driver through a series of configuration options, including the correct position to affix a target sticker.

**Note:** A trailer must be connected to allow a trailer profile to be created, selected, edited, or deleted.

Drive the vehicle with the steering wheel in the straight-ahead position to calibrate the connected trailer. The status bar disappears shortly after status reaches 100%. The tow assist feature is ready to use when the status bar disappears, and Reverse (**R**) gear is selected.

**Note:** Do not use the tow assist feature until the trailer calibration is complete.


In the event of persistent problems with the configuration or calibration of a trailer, consult a retailer/authorised repairer.


## Towing

When a trailer configuration is created, or selected, the touchscreen automatically displays the trailer's reverse view when **R**). The touchscreen display is configurable. Select the rear camera option for a full rear view. Alternatively, select the side camera option for a view from both sides.

**Note:** The camera view options are dependent on the specification of the vehicle.

### ADVANCED TOW ASSIST

 **The driver is always responsible for detecting obstacles, and for estimating both the trailer and the vehicle's distance from them, when manoeuvring. Failure to do so can result in serious injury or death.**

 **The driver must always control the vehicle's speed via normal driving operation of the accelerator pedal and the brake pedal. Failure to do so can result in serious injury or death.**

**Note:** Using towing equipment approved by the vehicle manufacturer is recommended. Non-approved towing equipment may adversely affect the accuracy, performance, and safety of the vehicle's towing features.

**Note:** Advanced tow assist does not operate if the tailgate is open or unlatched. In this event, the touchscreen displays a message.

**Note:** Advanced tow assist does not operate if the All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC) feature is enabled.



Advanced tow assist automatically operates the steering when the vehicle is driven in reverse with a correctly connected trailer. The driver only needs to operate the steering wheel to override the automatic steering operation.

The intended trajectory path to reverse a connected trailer is viewed and adjusted on-screen. The vehicle's camera views also display on-screen.

Operate as follows:

1. Connect and calibrate a trailer to the vehicle. See **121, TOW ASSIST**. The **advanced tow assist** icon then displays on the **CAMERAS** menu screen. See **276, SURROUND CAMERA SYSTEM**.

**Note:** Failure to correctly connect and calibrate a trailer causes the advanced tow assist feature to be unavailable for selection, i.e., the icon is not displayed.

2. Touch the **advanced tow assist** icon to enable the feature. To confirm selection, an on-screen confirmation message displays. The advanced tow assist icon displays next to the right side rotary control. See **191, TERRAIN RESPONSE OVERVIEW**.

**Note:** A pop-up menu displays on-screen information if advanced tow assist cannot be enabled.



## Towing

3. Rotate the driver's side rotary control on the lower touchscreen, to set the trailer's intended steering trajectory path, as displayed on-screen. Press and hold the rotary control for more than 3 seconds to set a straight line reversing trajectory. When driven, the vehicle automatically steers so that the reversing trailer follows the intended steering trajectory path. If the driver operates the steering wheel to override the automatic steering operation, the touchscreen displays a cancelled message.

**Note:** *If the driver's side rotary control is used for any other purpose, advanced tow assist is stopped.*

The screen displays two trailer images:

- The solid image indicates the current position of the trailer.
- The outline image indicates the intended trajectory path for the trailer.

The outline image changes colour to indicate the current status of the reversing trailer:

- Green lines indicate the trailer is reversing in a straight line.
- Magenta lines indicate the trailer is reversing at an angle.
- Red lines indicate the trailer's reversing angle is too acute.

The maximum operational speed for advanced tow assist is 8 km/h (5 mph). If this speed is exceeded, advanced tow assist automatically disables and the touchscreen displays a message.

To disable advanced tow assist:

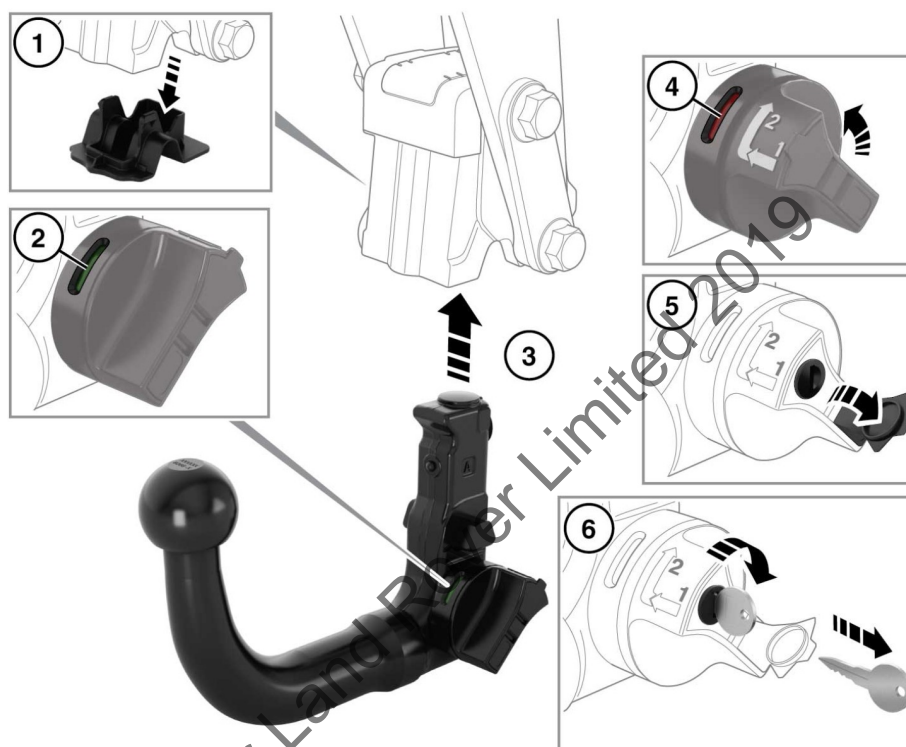
- Engage the transmission into an alternative gear, i.e., deselect Reverse (R).

- Touch the **advanced tow assist** icon on the **CAMERAS** menu screen.
- Turn the steering wheel.

An on-screen cancelled message displays. The driver's side rotary control extinguishes the **advanced tow assist** icon and reverts back to operation of the previously selected feature.



## FITTING THE DETACHABLE TOW BALL



E166119

**⚠** The detachable tow ball is very heavy. Extreme care must be taken when handling it. Make sure that no part of the body is below the tow ball when fitting and removing it. Use both hands to maintain secure handling of the tow ball. Failure to do so can potentially result in personal injury.

To fit the detachable tow ball, proceed as follows:

1. Pull the protective cover downward to remove it from the tow bar. Store the protective cover in a safe place.

**Note:** Note the orientation of the protective cover to enable refitting.

2. Make sure that the handwheel aperture display is red, to confirm that the handwheel is in the unlocked position.

**Note:** If the handwheel aperture display is black, push and turn the handwheel clockwise until red displays.





## Towing

3. Using both hands, push the detachable tow ball into the tow bar until an audible click is heard to confirm correct fitting.
4. The handwheel automatically rotates and displays green in the aperture to confirm correct fitting of the tow ball.
5. Gently pull the protective cover to release it from the key slot.
6. Insert the key. Turn the key clockwise to lock the detachable tow ball's handwheel. Remove the key. Refit the protective cover. Store the key in a safe place.

When the detachable tow ball is not required for immediate use, it should be removed and stored securely. See **126, REMOVING THE DETACHABLE TOW BALL.**

### REMOVING THE DETACHABLE TOW BALL


-  Never leave the detachable tow ball loose in the vehicle. In the event of heavy braking or an accident, it can potentially become a projectile, which can result in serious injury or death.
-  The detachable tow ball is very heavy. Extreme care must be taken when handling it. Make sure that no part of the body is below the tow ball when fitting and removing it. Use both hands to maintain secure handling of the tow ball. Failure to do so can potentially result in personal injury.


To remove the detachable tow ball, proceed as follows:

1. Gently pull the protective cover to release it from the key slot.
2. Insert the key. Turn the key counter-clockwise to unlock the detachable tow ball's handwheel.
3. Remove the key. Store the key in a safe place.
4. Support the detachable tow ball. Push and turn the handwheel clockwise to release the detachable tow ball from the tow bar.
5. Refit the protective cover to the vehicle's tow bar mounting.
6. Refit the protective cover to the detachable tow ball's key slot.

Securely store the detachable tow ball in a safe place.

### DEPLOYABLE TOW BALL

 Make sure that the deployable tow ball is fully deployed before connecting a trailer. Failure to do so can result in a loss of control of the vehicle and trailer, potentially causing serious injury or death.

 In the interests of safety, it is recommended to fully stow the deployable tow ball when not in use. Failure to do so can potentially result in personal injury or vehicle damage.

**Note:** To maintain control of the vehicle, apply the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) during operation of the deployable tow ball.

**Note:** It may not be possible to stow the deployable tow ball in extreme low temperatures.

## Towing

Before activating the deployable tow ball, make sure that:

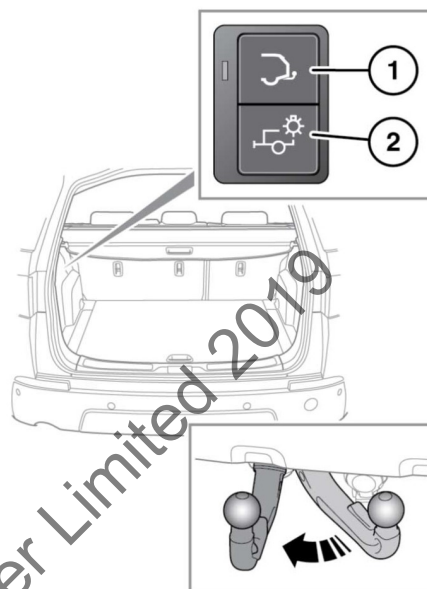
- The vehicle is stationary.
- The transmission is engaged in Park (P), or Neutral (N).
- Any trailer is unhitched.
- Any electrical connection to the tow bar's electrical socket is disconnected.

Failure to comply with the listed conditions prevents operation of the deployable tow ball.

The deployable tow ball is stowed out of view, underneath the centre of the rear bumper. Make sure that no obstructions are within close proximity before operating.

If the deployable tow ball is operated many times in succession, operation may be suspended for 90 minutes. In this event, normal tow ball operation resumes after 90 minutes.

The deployable tow ball is stowed and deployed via the touchscreen. Select the **Deployable Tow Bar** extra feature and follow the on-screen instructions. See **219, EXTRA FEATURES**.



The deployable tow ball is also stowed and deployed via the buttons located in the loadspace. Open the tailgate to access and enable the buttons.

**Note:** The loadspace buttons do not operate if the tailgate is closed.

Operation is as follows:

1. The deployable tow ball button: Press and release to deploy the tow ball. Press and release the button again to stow the tow ball.
  - The LED indicator lamp, by the side of the button, flashes slowly while the tow ball deploys or stows. An audible tone also sounds.
  - Once deployed, the LED indicator lamp stops flashing and illuminates constantly.



## Towing

- Once stowed, the LED indicator lamp stops flashing, illuminates for 2 seconds and extinguishes.
  - To stop operation of the deployable tow ball at any time, press the deployable tow ball button. Press the button again to reset the tow ball. During the reset process, the tow ball fully stows and then fully deploys.
  - If an obstruction occurs during operation of the deployable tow ball, the tow ball movement stops. The LED indicator lamp flashes faster, accompanied by a 2 second warning tone. When the obstruction is cleared, press the deployable tow ball button to reset the tow ball.
  - If the vehicle is driven with the tow ball partially deployed or partially stowed, a warning tone sounds for 10 seconds. Do not tow with the tow ball in this condition. Press the tow ball button again to reset the tow ball.
  - In the event of unexpected operation, press the deployable tow ball button to reset the tow ball.
2. Trailer bulb check button: Press to start a 3 minute test sequence for a visual check of both the vehicle and the trailer's lights. The trailer bulb check can also be enabled via the touchscreen. Select the **Deployable Tow Bar** extra feature. Touch the **Trailer bulb check** soft key from the **TOW BAR** menu screen and follow the on-screen instructions.
- For correct operation of the visual bulb check, switch off the vehicle's lights, apply the Electric Parking Brake (EPB), and switch the ignition off. Switching the ignition off also switches the touchscreen off. Press the sound system's power button to switch the touchscreen on again. See **224, MEDIA CONTROLS**.
  - The vehicle and trailer lights operate at the same time so that a visual check can be made of all the lights.
  - Press the trailer bulb check button again to stop the test sequence at any time. Alternatively, manually switch on the vehicle's lights, or switch the ignition on.

**Note:** The test feature only allows an observer to visually check that the lights are illuminating. The vehicle does not display any warnings for faulty trailer lights.

### TRAILER ELECTRICAL CONNECTION

- ⓘ Connect only approved electrical circuits, which are in good condition, to the vehicle's electrical tow bar socket. Failure to do so may result in damage or affect the correct operation of the vehicle's electrical systems.

## Towing

When a trailer's electrical connection is made, the instrument panel's trailer warning indicator flashes when the vehicle's direction indicator lights are operated. If the trailer warning indicator does not flash, check the trailer's electrical connection. Also check the operation of the trailer's direction indicator lights. See

### 82, TRAILER DIRECTION INDICATORS (GREEN).

The following information confirms if a trailer, or a lighting board, is compatible for use with this vehicle. If these conditions are not met, the vehicle does not detect the electrical connection of a trailer or an LED lighting board.

Function	Minimum load		Maximum load	
	Milliamps (mA)	Watts	Amps	Watts
Brake lights.	100	1.2	5	60
Direction indicator lights.	50	0.6	5	60
Side marker lights, both sides combined.	-	-	10	120
Reverse lights.	-	-	5	60
Fog lights.	-	-	5	60
Permanent battery feed.	-	-	15	180
Ignition feed.	-	-	15	180

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2019




## Towing


### Australia and New Zealand only

Some vehicles may have the provision for the connection of an electric trailer brake module. An electrical connector for a trailer brake module is located adjacent the steering column. The information in the following table helps to confirm if an electric trailer brake module is compatible for use with these vehicles. If in doubt contact a retailer/authorised repairer.

Function	Maximum amps load
Permanent feed.	30
Brake signal.	2
Electric trailer brake module connection to tow bar electrical socket.	30

### ESSENTIAL TOWING CHECKS

 **Do not exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW), maximum rear axle weight, maximum trailer weight, or nose weight. Exceeding any of these limits could cause instability and a loss of control, potentially resulting in serious injury or death.**

 **Do not loop the breakaway cable or safety chain over the tow ball. The cable or chain may slide off, preventing correct operation in the event that a connected trailer becomes detached when towing. Failure to correctly connect a breakaway cable or chain can potentially result in serious injury or death.**

Make sure to perform the following essential towing checks:

- To maintain the vehicle's stability, the trailer's nose weight should not exceed 7% of the trailer's gross weight.
- The trailer's nose weight must be at least a minimum of 4% of the trailer's gross weight and never less than 25 kg (55 lb).
- When towing a trailer with more than one axle, load the trailer to achieve even weight distribution between the axles.
- When calculating the laden weight of the trailer, remember to include the weight of the trailer, plus the weight of the load.
- If the load can be divided between the vehicle and the trailer, loading more weight into the vehicle generally improves stability. Do not exceed the vehicle's weight limits.
- Check that the tyre pressures are correct for the current loading condition of the vehicle.

## Towing

- Make sure that a suitable breakaway cable, safety chain, or secondary coupling is used. Refer to the trailer manufacturer's instructions for guidance.
- Always connect the breakaway cable or safety chain to the provided connection point. Do not loop it over the tow ball.
- Make sure that the tow ball is secure.
- Check the operation of all the lights on the trailer.

### TOWING A TRAILER

- ⚠️ Only fit towing accessories approved by the vehicle manufacturer. Always use the towing accessories correctly, according to the manufacturer's instructions. Using non-approved towing accessories may adversely affect the handling and stability of the vehicle, potentially resulting in serious injury or death.
- ⚠️ Never use the vehicle's towing eyes or lashing points for towing a trailer. Doing so may cause serious damage to the vehicle, and may cause a loss of control, potentially leading to an accident. The potential result can be serious injury or death.

⚠️ Never exceed the maximum weights for either the vehicle or the trailer. Doing so can cause accelerated wear and damage to the vehicle, and adversely affect the vehicle's stability and braking. Serious injury or death can also result from a possible loss of control, a vehicle rollover, or an accident.

⚠️ Do not exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW), maximum rear axle weight, maximum trailer weight, or the trailer's nose weight. Doing so can cause accelerated wear and damage to the vehicle, and adversely affect the vehicle's stability and braking. Serious injury or death can also result from a possible loss of control leading to an accident.

ⓘ The use of weight distribution hitches is not recommended. Using weight distribution hitches can potentially cause serious damage to the vehicle.

**Note:** When calculating the vehicle's rear axle weight, the vehicle's payload weights must also be included. Hence, add the combined weights of all the rear passengers, the vehicle's luggage, roof rails, accessory equipment, and the nose weight.

**Note:** Include the trailer's nose weight when calculating the GVW.

**Note:** A reduction in the performance of the Air Conditioning (A/C) system is a normal function under high load towing conditions.

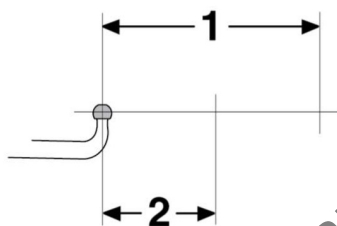


## Towing

The engine's power output always reduces with increased altitude. At 1 000 m above sea level, and for every extra 1 000 m, deduct 10% from the Gross Train Weight (GTW). See **116, TOWING WEIGHTS**.

### TOW BALL MOUNTED ACCESSORIES

- ⓘ Before fitting a tow ball mounted accessory, make sure that it has been approved by the vehicle manufacturer. The use of unsuitable equipment can result in severe damage to the tow ball and the tow bar.



E178990

Before fitting an accessory to the tow ball, observe the following guidelines:

1. The attached accessory must not protrude more than 700 mm from the tow ball.
2. The centre of gravity of the mounted equipment and load combined should not exceed a distance of 390 mm from the tow ball. The maximum weight at this distance must not exceed 66.8 kg.

**Note:** The forces exerted by the trailer's nose weight and tow ball mounted accessories are different in nature, so a separate limit applies to both.

### TOW BAR DIMENSIONS AND MOUNTING POINTS

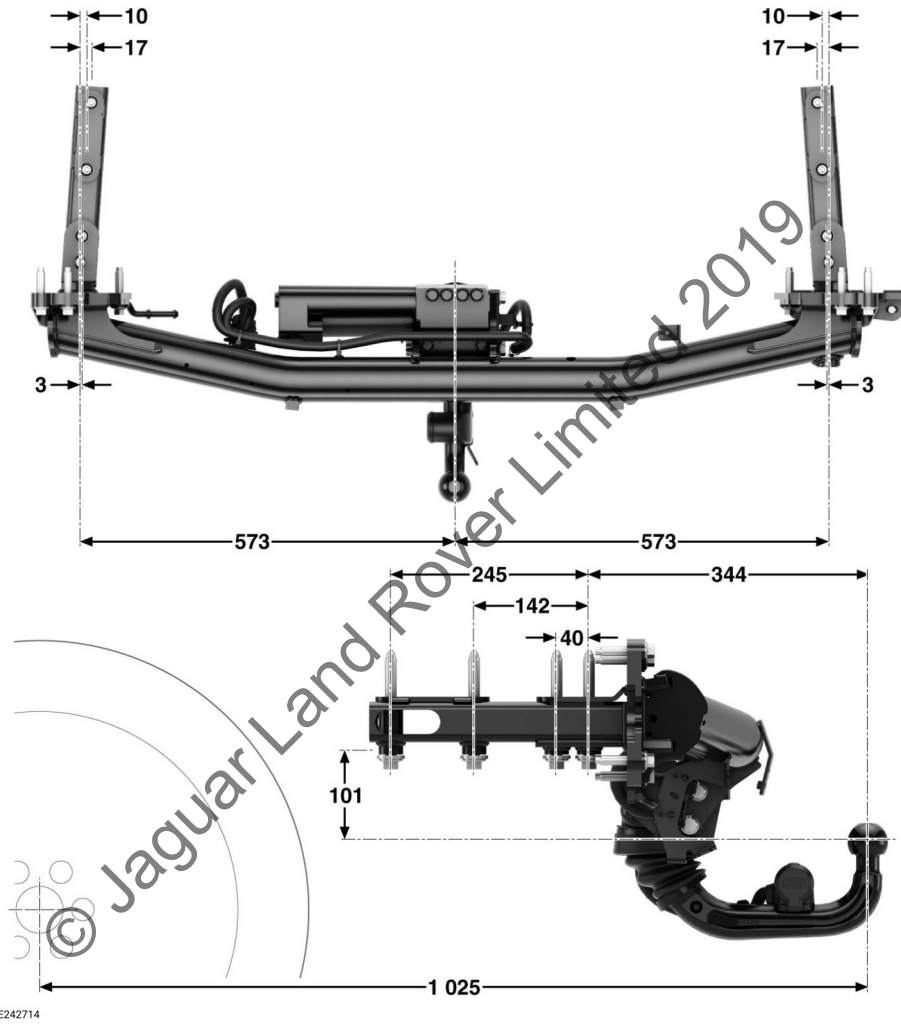
**Note:** The following information refers to towing equipment officially released by the vehicle manufacturer.

**Note:** All dimensions are given in mm.



Towing

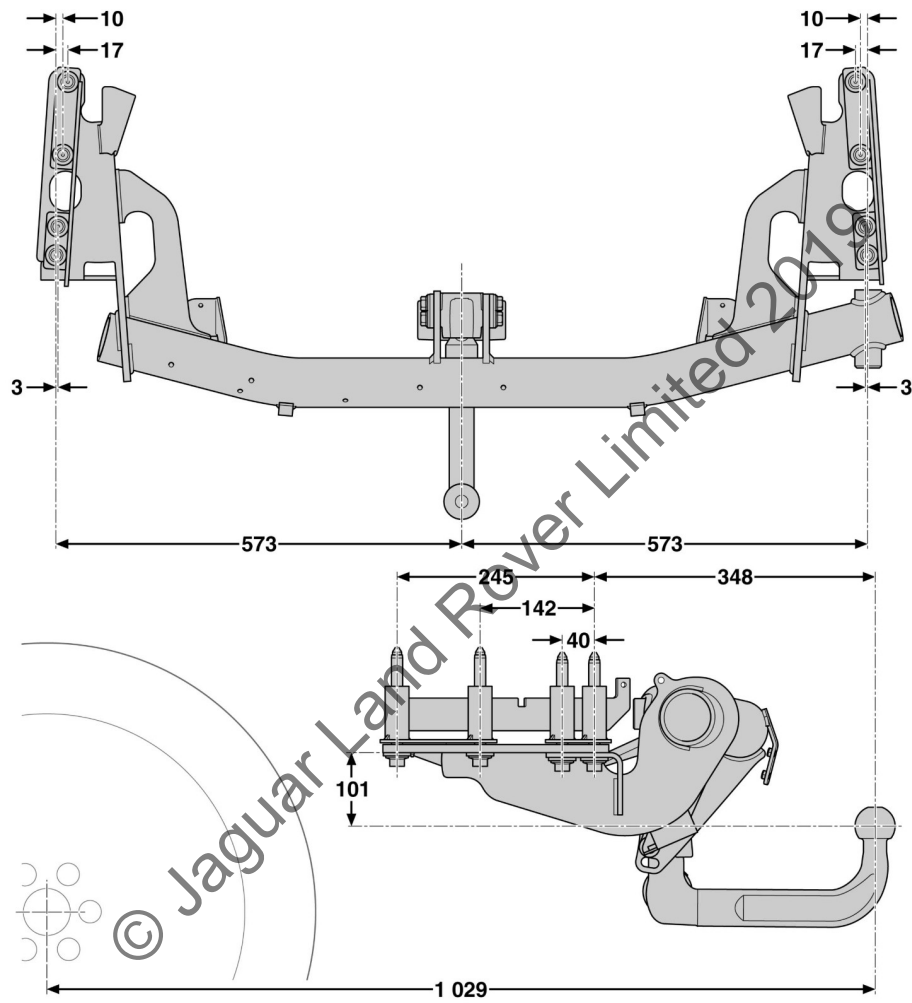
Deployable tow bar (5 seat vehicles)





## Towing

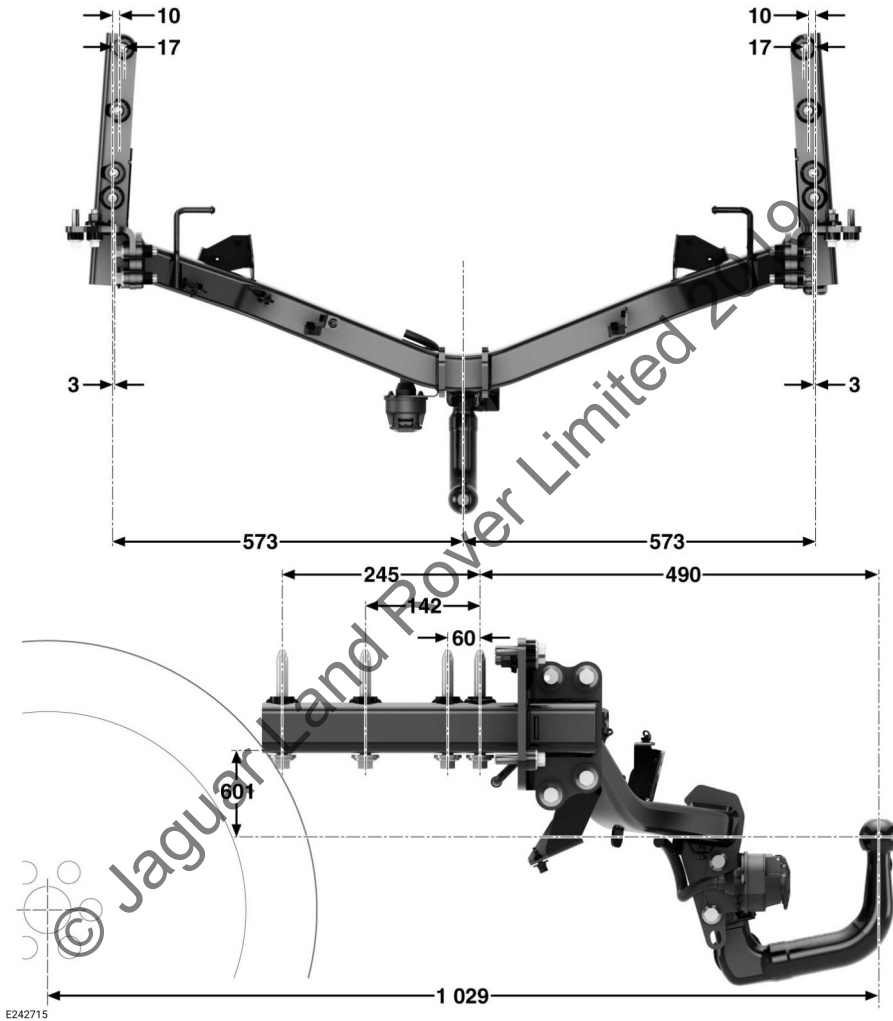
Detachable tow bar (5 seat vehicles)



E202933

Towing

Detachable tow bar (7 seat vehicles)

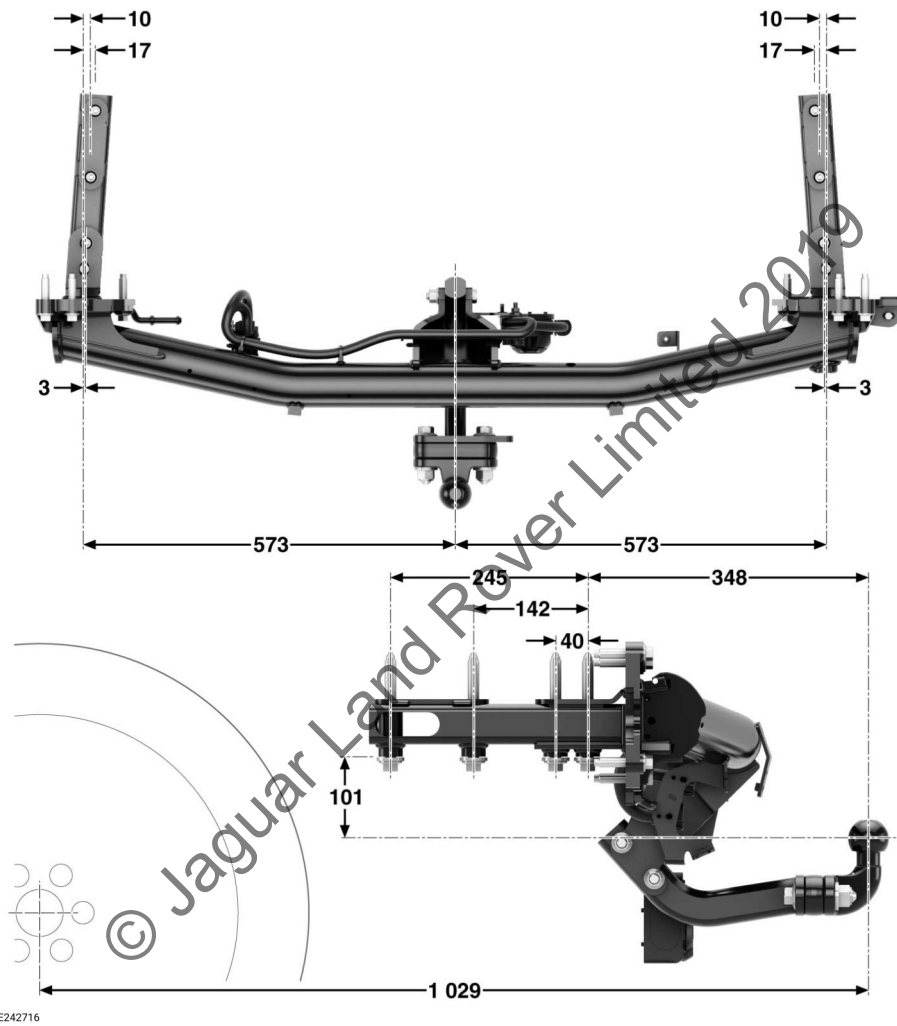


E242715



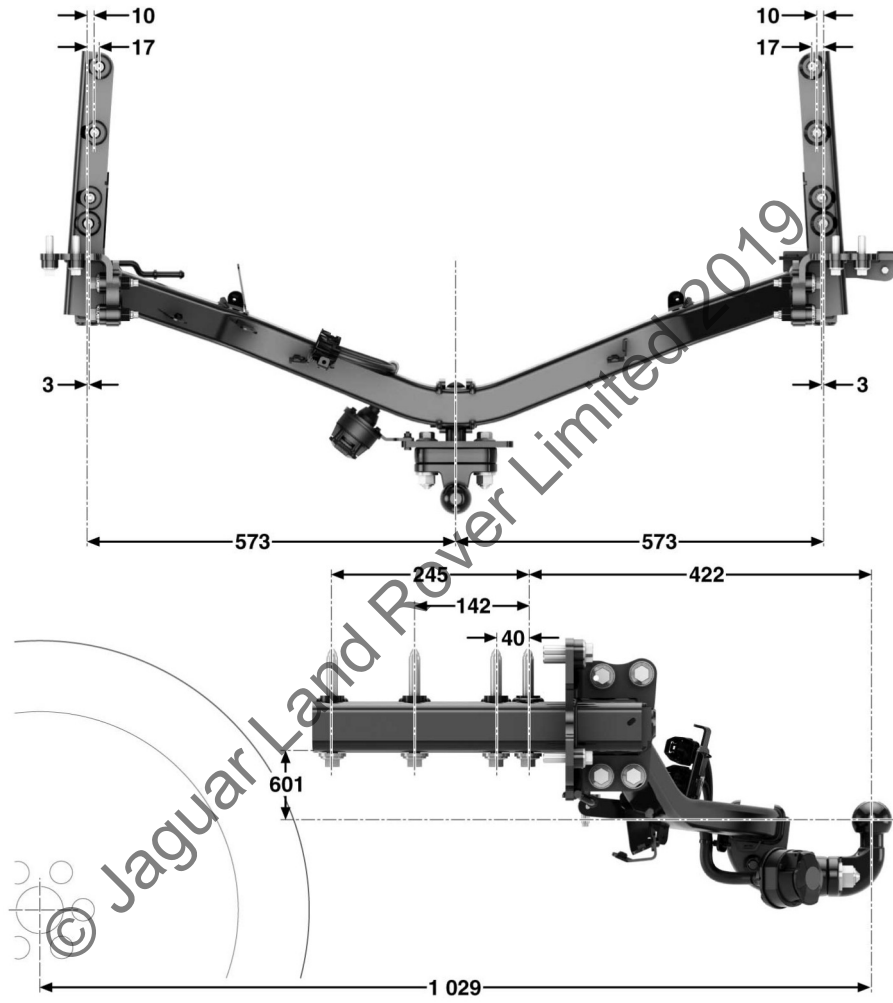
## Towing

Bolt-on tow bar (5 seat vehicles)



Towing

Bolt-on tow bar (7 seat vehicles)



E242717



## Starting the engine

### STARTING SAFETY

**⚠** Never start the engine and leave it running when the vehicle is in an enclosed space. Exhaust gases are poisonous and can cause unconsciousness and death if inhaled.

**!** If the engine fails to start, do not continue cranking, as this discharges the battery. The catalytic converter may also be damaged due to unburnt fuel passing through the exhaust.

**Note:** The smart key may not be detected if placed within a metal container, or shielded by a device with a back-lit LCD screen. For example, a smartphone, laptop, including when inside a laptop bag, or a games console. Keep the smart key clear of such devices when attempting keyless entry, an engine start, or the engine start backup procedure.

### STARTING THE ENGINE

**⚠** Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before starting the vehicle. See 138, STARTING SAFETY.

To start the engine:

1. Make sure a valid smart key is inside the vehicle.
2. Make sure Park (P) or neutral is selected.
3. Automatic transmission: Press the brake pedal firmly.  
Manual transmission: Press the clutch pedal firmly.
4. Press and release the engine **START/STOP** button. See 7, DRIVER CONTROLS.

**Note:** For vehicles with a diesel engine, the delay period before cranking begins is longer in low ambient temperatures. The extended delay period is due to extended glow plug operation. During this extended delay period, the brake pedal (automatic transmission) or clutch pedal (manual transmission) must remain firmly pressed.

Once the engine starts, release the brake pedal (automatic transmission) or clutch pedal (manual transmission), if it is safe to do so.

**⚠** If the vehicle is left in a driveable condition with the engine running, the driver exit feature does not prevent the vehicle from moving. Always make sure the vehicle is not left in a driveable condition, as serious injury or death may occur. See 143, DRIVER EXIT.

**Note:** For vehicles with a diesel engine, a different starting procedure may be required if the vehicle has ran out of fuel. See 330, DIESEL ENGINES.

### SWITCHING OFF THE ENGINE

Before switching off the engine, it is recommended that the vehicle is stationary. Make sure the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is applied and:

- Automatic transmission: Park (P) is selected.
- Manual transmission: Neutral is selected.

Press and release the engine **START/STOP** button. The engine now stops. The vehicle's ignition system also switches off.

To switch off the engine while the vehicle is moving:

## Starting the engine

- ⚠ When the vehicle is moving, it is not advisable to switch off the engine. However, if a situation arises where engine switch-off is urgent, the following procedure applies:

1. Press and hold the engine **START/STOP** button for longer than 2 seconds, or
2. Press and release the engine **START/STOP** button twice within 3 seconds.

With either method, the instrument panel displays the message **Engine Stop Button Pressed**.

### SWITCHING ON THE IGNITION

To switch on the vehicle's ignition system without starting the engine:

1. Automatic transmission: Make sure that a valid smart key is inside the vehicle and that the brake pedal is not pressed.  
Manual transmission: Make sure that a valid smart key is inside the vehicle and that the clutch pedal is not pressed.

- ⚠ If the brake pedal or clutch pedal is pressed when the engine **START/STOP** button is pressed, the engine starts.

2. Press and hold the engine **START/STOP** button until the instrument panel warning lamps illuminate.
3. Release the engine **START/STOP** button.

### ROLLING RESTART

If the engine is switched off while the vehicle is moving, a rolling restart can be initiated. To initiate a rolling restart:

- Automatic transmission: Select Neutral (**N**) and press the engine **START/STOP** button.
- Manual transmission: Firmly press the clutch pedal and simultaneously press the engine **START/STOP** button.

**Note:** The engine **START/STOP** button is inhibited for 2 seconds after the engine has been switched off.

### ENGINE START BACKUP

The engine start backup procedure is used to disarm the alarm and start the engine if either of the following occur:

- The vehicle is unlocked using the emergency key blade.
- The vehicle does not detect the smart key.

The engine start backup procedure can only be used when the instrument panel displays **Smart Key not recognised**. **Reposition or place as shown and press Start button.**



E241686



## Starting the engine

To carry out the engine start backup procedure:

1. Position the smart key flat against the underside of the steering column, with the buttons facing downward.

**Note:** *There are markings on the steering column to help locate the correct position.*


2. While holding the smart key in position:  
Automatic transmission: Firmly press the brake pedal.  
Manual transmission: Firmly press the clutch pedal.
3. Press and release the engine **START/STOP** button.

Once the engine starts, release the brake pedal (automatic transmission) or clutch pedal (manual transmission), if it is safe to do so.

If the smart key is not recognised, or the engine fails to start, consult a retailer/authorised repairer.

### IF THE ENGINE FAILS TO START

#### All vehicles

-  Seek qualified assistance if the vehicle has been in a recent collision and the engine fails to start when the **START/STOP** button is pressed. Damage to the vehicle may have occurred.

If the engine fails to start, and a valid smart key is inside the vehicle, a check must be made to determine the cause. To do this:

1. Switch on the vehicle's ignition. See **139, SWITCHING ON THE IGNITION.**

2. Check the instrument panel for messages and any illuminated warning lamps. Seek qualified assistance, if necessary. See **76, WARNING LAMPS AND INDICATORS** and **71, WARNING AND INFORMATION MESSAGES.**

3. Switch off the vehicle's ignition.

Alternatively, if the engine fails to start, the alarm system may need to be reset. To reset the alarm system, lock and unlock the vehicle. See **9, SMART KEY OPERATION.**

If the engine still fails to start, consult a retailer/authorised repairer.

#### Petrol vehicles only

If the engine persistently fails to start, carry out the following steps:

1. Make sure that a valid smart key is inside the vehicle.
2. Make sure that Park (**P**) or neutral is selected.
3. Press and hold the engine **START/STOP** button until the warning lamps in the instrument panel illuminate.
4. Automatic transmission: Firmly press the brake pedal.  
Manual transmission: Firmly press the clutch pedal.
5. Slowly press the accelerator pedal and hold it in the fully pressed position.
6. Press and release the engine **START/STOP** button. The engine begins to crank.
7. Release the accelerator pedal when the engine starts.

Once the engine starts, release the brake pedal (automatic transmission) or clutch pedal (manual transmission), if it is safe to do so.



## Starting the engine

If the engine still fails to start, consult a retailer/authorised repairer.

### ENGINE PRE-HEATER

- ⓘ The fitting of an engine pre-heater does not eliminate the need for antifreeze. Damage may be caused to the engine if the correct mixture of antifreeze is not present.

Engines are more difficult to start when the ambient temperature is very low. In geographical areas where temperatures below  $-10^{\circ}\text{C}$  are experienced frequently, it is advisable to fit an engine pre-heater. The pre-heater has an insulated connector at the front of the vehicle, which is connected to a mains supply using a suitable extension cable. The pre-heater can remain in use overnight, if required. Typically, an engine pre-heater uses between 0.4 and 1 kWh.

For further information, consult a retailer/authorised repairer.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2019



## Auto stop/start

### AUTO STOP/START

- ⚠ Always disable the auto stop/start system before wading. Failure to do so could cause damage to the vehicle.

The auto stop/start system is designed to improve fuel efficiency. The system automatically activates when the vehicle's ignition is switched on. Unless it is required to support other vehicle systems, the engine switches off when the vehicle is stationary, e.g., at traffic lights. When the engine stops, it is referred to as an auto stop.

When the brake pedal is released, or a drive gear is selected, the engine automatically restarts. When the engine restarts, it is referred to as an auto start.

The instrument panel displays a status icon to indicate the operational status of the auto stop/start system. See **81, AUTO STOP/START (GREEN)**.

**Note:** When activated, the auto stop/start system does not always stop the engine when the vehicle is stationary. The system may also restart the engine before setting off.

Under certain conditions, the auto stop/start system also switches off the engine while the vehicle is moving. See **143, AUTO STOP ON THE MOVE**.

### TRIGGERING AN AUTO STOP

To trigger an auto stop on vehicles with an automatic transmission, drive forward with Drive (**D**) or Sport (**S**) selected and stop the vehicle. Fully press the brake pedal to make sure the vehicle is stationary.

To trigger an auto stop on vehicles with a manual transmission, drive forward and stop the vehicle. Fully press the brake pedal to make sure the vehicle is stationary. Select neutral and fully release the clutch pedal.

The following conditions inhibit an auto stop:

- The external temperature is less than approximately  $-2^{\circ}\text{C}$ .
- The external temperature is more than approximately  $40^{\circ}\text{C}$ .
- The engine or other vehicle systems have not reached the optimum operating temperatures.
- The driver's seat belt is unbuckled.
- Demand from the climate control system requires the engine to be running, e.g., when in defrost mode.
- The vehicle's battery charge is low.
- The auto stop/start system is deactivated.
- After reversing, the vehicle's speed has not exceeded 16 km/h (10 mph).
- A gearshift paddle has been used to select a gear (automatic transmission vehicles only).

The instrument panel displays an information lamp when the vehicle is stationary and the auto stop/start system is active, but operation is inhibited. See **83, AUTO STOP/START INHIBIT (WHITE)**.

### TRIGGERING AN AUTO START

To trigger an auto start on vehicles with an automatic transmission, release the brake pedal with Drive (**D**) or Sport (**S**) selected.

## Auto stop/start

To trigger an auto start on vehicles with a manual transmission, fully press the clutch pedal before selecting a gear.

The engine also restarts if one of the following occurs:

- The auto stop/start system is deactivated.
- Reverse (R) gear is selected.
- Demand from the climate control system increases.
- The vehicle begins to move.
- The vehicle's battery charge becomes low.
- The accelerator pedal is pressed (automatic transmission vehicles only).
- A gearshift paddle is used to select a gear (automatic transmission vehicles only).

### DEACTIVATING AUTO STOP/START



To deactivate the auto stop/start system, press the auto stop/start button. See 7, DRIVER CONTROLS.

**Note:** Auto stop/start automatically deactivates if Hill Descent Control (HDC) or certain terrain response special programs are selected.

When the auto stop/start system deactivates, the instrument panel displays the message **Auto Stop/Start Off**. A status icon is also displayed. See 83, AUTO STOP/START OFF (WHITE).

If the auto stop/start button is pressed while the system is unable to operate, the instrument panel displays the message **Auto Stop/Start not available**.

**Note:** The auto stop/start system automatically reactivates the next time the vehicle's ignition is switched on.

### AUTO STOP ON THE MOVE

Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicles (MHEVs) are equipped with an auto stop on the move feature. The auto stop on the move feature switches off the engine while the vehicle is moving if:

- The vehicle is travelling at less than approximately 17 km/h (10 mph), and:
- The brake pedal is pressed.

When the brake pedal is released, the engine automatically restarts.

Operation of the auto stop on the move feature is indicated by a status icon in the instrument panel. See 81, AUTO STOP/START (GREEN).

The auto stop on the move feature is deactivated if auto stop/start is deactivated. See 143, DEACTIVATING AUTO STOP/START.

### DRIVER EXIT

During an auto stop, the driver exit feature prevents the vehicle from being inadvertently left in a driveable condition. If the feature detects that the driver is not present, it automatically switches off the vehicle's ignition system. Once the vehicle's ignition is switched off, the vehicle can be locked, if required. See 22, SINGLE LOCKING.



**If the vehicle is left in a driveable condition with the engine running, the driver exit feature does not prevent the vehicle from moving. Failure to make sure the vehicle is left in a safe condition could lead to serious injury or death.**



## Auto stop/start

### **Automatic transmission - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicles (MHEVs) only**

If Drive (**D**), Sport (**S**), or Neutral (**N**) is selected, the driver exit feature switches the vehicle's ignition off when all the following conditions exist:

- The vehicle is in an auto stop.
- The driver's seat belt is unbuckled.
- The vehicle is stationary.
- The brake pedal is released.

If Park (**P**) is selected, the driver exit feature switches the vehicle's ignition off when all the following conditions exist:

- The vehicle is in an auto stop.
- The driver's seat belt is unbuckled.
- All foot pedals are released.
- The driver's door is opened.

### **Automatic transmission**

If Drive (**D**), Sport (**S**), or Neutral (**N**) is selected, the driver exit feature switches the vehicle's ignition off when all the following conditions exist:

- The vehicle is in an auto stop.
- The driver's seat belt is unbuckled.
- The brake pedal is released.

If Park (**P**) is selected, the driver exit feature switches the vehicle's ignition off when all the following conditions exist:

- The vehicle is in an auto stop.
- The driver's seat belt is unbuckled.

### **Manual transmission**

The driver exit feature switches the vehicle's ignition off when all the following conditions exist:

- The vehicle is in an auto stop.
- The driver's seat belt is unbuckled.
- The driver's door is opened.

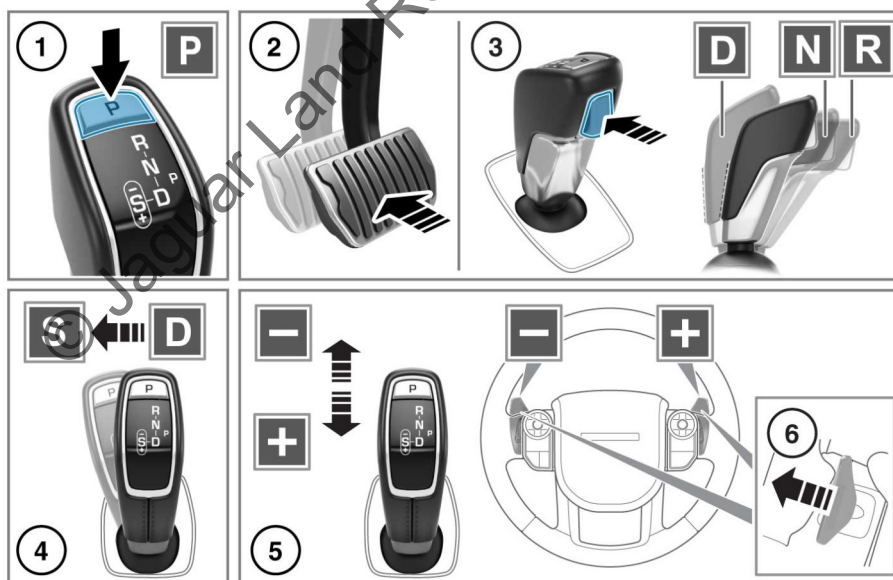
## Transmission

### AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

- ⚠ Before exiting the vehicle, make sure that the vehicle is stationary. Select Park (P). Apply the Electric Parking Brake (EPB). Switch the engine off. The vehicle can move unexpectedly with any other gear position selected, which may result in death or serious injury.
- ⚠ Do not allow the vehicle to remain stationary for a prolonged period, with a drive gear selected and the engine running. In this event, always select P or Neutral (N) and apply the EPB. The vehicle may move unexpectedly with any other gear position selected which may result in serious injury in death.

- ⚠ Never select P while the vehicle is in motion. Doing so can result in serious transmission damage.
- ⚠ Never select Reverse (R) while the vehicle is in forward motion. Doing so can result in serious transmission damage.
- ⚠ Never select a forward gear while the vehicle is moving backward. Doing so can result in serious transmission damage.
- ⚠ Do not press the accelerator pedal when making a gear selection. Doing so can result in serious transmission damage.

**Note:** In certain markets it is required to have an audible warning while reversing. Therefore, depending on the market specification, an audible warning may sound when the vehicle is reversing.



E151677



## Transmission

The instrument panel displays the current gear selection status. The appropriate indicator lamp, on top of the gear selector, illuminates to confirm selection.

**Note:** When the gear selector is released after normal operation, it returns to the central position, except for when in the Sport (S) position.

**Note:** If the driver's door is opened with the transmission engaged in R, D, or S, then N is automatically selected.

1. Press to select P. The P indicator lamp illuminates to confirm. Select P before switching the engine off.

**Note:** P can be selected from any gear selector position.

**Note:** P cannot be selected by manually moving the gear selector.

**Note:** If the engine is switched off with N selected, the system waits for 10 minutes before selecting P. The procedure allows for the vehicle to be conveyed through a car wash and should not be used for vehicle recovery purposes.

2. When the vehicle is stationary, press the brake pedal before selecting D, N, or R.
3. With the brake pedal still applied, press the button to allow the gear selector to be moved:
  - Rearward to select D.
  - Forward a short way to select N.
  - Forward a long way to select R.

**Note:** The button must be pressed in order to make most gear selections. A button press is not required when selecting N from D or R. A button press is also not required when moving between S and D.

4. While in D, move the gear selector one side movement to select S.

**Note:** Reverse this action to return to D.

5. To select manual gear changes while in S, pull the gear selector backward for up-shifts and forward for down-shifts. The instrument panel displays the manual gear selection status. The relevant gear selector indicator shows the status of the manual gear selection:

- Continuous illumination confirms the driver's gear change request has been recognised and selected.
- On or off flashing confirms the driver's gear change request has been recognised but not selected.

6. Paddle shifts: Allow for manual gear selection while in D or S. Lightly pull the left paddle for down-shifts, or lightly pull the right paddle for up-shifts. To exit manual mode, pull and hold the right paddle shift for approximately 1 second. The transmission will return directly to the previous automatic operation in D or S.

**Note:** The paddle shifts can be configured to be active in both D and S, or active in S only, via the **Vehicle settings** menu. See 69, **INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

## Transmission

Paddle shift use can be effective when rapid acceleration and engine braking are required. A gearshift indicator warning lamp illuminates briefly at the recommended (up-shift) gear change point. See **82, GEARSHIFT (GREEN)**. If the gear selector remains in the **D** position, temporary use of the manual gear selection mode is held while the driver is accelerating. The manual decelerating, cornering or continuing to request gearshift changes via the steering wheel paddle shifts.

**Note:** *If continued use of the paddle shifts is required, select **S**.*

### LIMP-HOME MODE

If a transmission system fault is detected, the instrument panel displays a warning message. If possible, the vehicle should be carefully driven to the nearest place of safety. In this event, seek qualified assistance.

**Note:** *The driver should be aware that the vehicle's performance is also reduced and must take this into account when driving. Use of the steering wheel paddle shifts is also disabled.*

Some transmission faults may cause the gear selector to be locked in position until the vehicle's ignition is switched off. A flashing gear status in the instrument panel indicates that the driver's gear request cannot be engaged. This can be accompanied by a message. In this event, select Neutral (**N**) and then select the required gear change again.

If the transmission is still unable to engage the requested gear, contact a retailer/ authorised repairer.

### MANUAL TRANSMISSION



E208214

⚠ Never attempt to select Reverse (**R**) when the vehicle is moving forward. Selecting **R** in these circumstances can lead to serious and costly repairs.

Vehicles with a manual transmission have an automated function which assists the driver when pulling away from a standstill.

When pulling away from a standstill, the engine speed may increase slightly. If the accelerator pedal is pressed further, the engine speed is controlled to an appropriate maximum limit. Normal engine speed control is fully returned to the driver once the pulling away manoeuvre is complete.

To engage Reverse (**R**), press the clutch pedal and lift up the latch located under the gear selector. Move the gear selector to the top left position.

A gearshift indicator warning lamp illuminates briefly at the recommended (up-shift) gear change point. See **82, GEARSHIFT (GREEN)**.



## Suspension

### ADAPTIVE DYNAMICS

The adaptive dynamics system automatically adjusts the vehicle's suspension for the current driving style and road conditions. The adaptive dynamics system also detects rough road and off-road conditions, and adjusts the suspension settings for greater ride comfort.

If the dynamic terrain response driving program is selected, the adaptive dynamics system modifies the suspension settings for a sporting driving style.

If the instrument panel displays an adaptive dynamics fault message, some reduction in ride comfort may be experienced. The instrument panel may also illuminate a warning lamp. See **81, GENERAL WARNING AND INFORMATION MESSAGE (AMBER)** and **76, WARNING LAMPS AND INDICATORS**.

If the adaptive dynamics system fault persists, consult a retailer/authorised repairer.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2019



## Brakes

### IMPORTANT INFORMATION

- ⚠ If the red brake warning lamp illuminates, safely bring the vehicle to a stop, as quickly as possible, and seek qualified assistance. Failure to do so can result in serious injury or death.
- ⚠ If the amber brake warning lamp illuminates, drive with care, avoiding heavy brake pedal application, and seek qualified assistance. Failure to do so can result in serious injury or death.
- ⚠ Do not rest a foot on the brake pedal while the vehicle is in motion. Doing so can damage the braking system and reduce braking efficiency. The result can lead to a crash, causing serious injury or death.
- ⚠ Never allow the vehicle to coast (freewheel) with the engine switched off. The engine must be running to provide full braking assistance. The brakes still function with the engine switched off, but far more brake pedal pressure is required to operate them.
- ⚠ Never place non-approved floor matting or any other obstructions under the brake pedal. The result can be restricted pedal travel and reduced braking efficiency, leading to a crash, potentially causing serious injury or death.

⚠ Driving through heavy rain or water can have an adverse effect on braking efficiency. Under such circumstances, it is recommended to lightly apply the brakes intermittently, to dry the brakes.

⚠ Do not pump the brake pedal at any time. Doing so interrupts operation of the braking system and may increase stopping distances.

Make sure to read and follow the important information and instructions contained in the warnings listed. See **77, BRAKE (RED)** and **79, BRAKE (AMBER)**.

### STEEP SLOPES

If the vehicle is stationary on a steep, slippery slope, it may begin to slide, even with the brakes applied. Without wheel rotation, the Anti-lock Braking System (ABS) cannot determine vehicle movement. To counteract this, briefly release the brake pedal, allowing wheel rotation. Re-apply the brake pedal to allow the ABS to gain control.

**Note:** *The vehicle needs to be in Neutral (N) or an appropriate gear to descend the slope. The Electric Parking Brake (EPB) must not be applied.*

### EMERGENCY BRAKE ASSIST (EBA)

If the brakes are rapidly applied, the Emergency Brake Assist (EBA) system automatically boosts the braking force to its maximum. The result is that the EBA system helps to bring the vehicle to a halt as quickly as possible.

The EBA system stops operating as soon as the brake pedal is released.



## Brakes

The amber brake warning lamp indicates an EBA system fault and the instrument panel displays a warning message. In this event, drive with care, avoiding heavy brake pedal application. Seek qualified assistance. See **79, BRAKE (AMBER)**.

**Note:** In the event of heavy braking, the hazard warning lights automatically enable.


### ELECTRONIC BRAKE-FORCE DISTRIBUTION (EBD)


The Electronic Brake-force Distribution (EBD) system controls the balance of braking forces supplied to the front and rear wheels. The result is that the EBD system helps to maintain maximum braking efficiency and stability.


If the vehicle has a light load, e.g., driver only and no luggage, the EBD system reduces the braking force applied to the rear wheels. If the vehicle is heavily laden, e.g., passengers and luggage, the EBD system increases the braking force to the rear wheels.

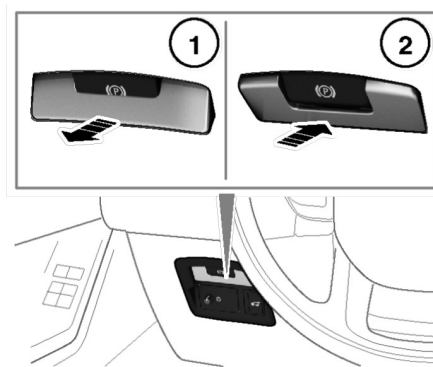
The red brake warning lamp indicates an EBD system fault and the instrument panel displays a warning message. In this event, gently and safely stop the vehicle. Seek qualified assistance. See **77, BRAKE (RED)**.

### ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE (EPB)

 Do not rely on the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) to hold the vehicle stationary if the brake warning lamp is illuminated or the EPB warning lamp is flashing. Seek qualified assistance urgently. A faulty EPB system can lead to personal injury or death.

 The EPB operates on the rear wheels, therefore, secure parking of the vehicle is dependent on being on a hard and stable surface. Operating the EPB on wet or loose surfaces may lead to damage to the vehicle or personal injury.

 Do not rely on the EPB to operate effectively, if the rear wheels have been immersed in mud or water. Doing so may result in damage to the vehicle or personal injury.



The EPB switch is located on the switch pack between the steering wheel and the driver's door. Operate as follows:

## Brakes

1. With the ignition switched on, press the brake pedal and pull the EPB switch out to release the EPB.
2. Push the EPB switch in to apply the EPB. The EPB warning lamp illuminates to confirm. See **78, ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE (EPB) (RED)**.

**Note:** The red EPB warning lamp continues to illuminate for at least 10 seconds after the ignition has been switched off.


The EPB automatically applies when Park (P) is selected.

**Note:** To prevent automatic operation, with the vehicle stationary, pull out the EPB switch to the release position before selecting P.

The EPB applies automatically if the ignition is switched off and the vehicle's speed is below 3 km/h (2 mph).

**Note:** To prevent automatic operation when the vehicle is stationary, pull out and hold the EPB switch in the release position. Within 5 seconds, switch off the ignition and continue to hold the EPB switch for a further 2 seconds.

If the EPB is operated when the vehicle's speed is less than 3 km/h (2 mph), the vehicle is brought to an abrupt stop. The stop lights do not illuminate.

 Driving the vehicle with the EPB applied will cause serious damage to the braking system.

When stationary, with the EPB applied and the transmission engaged in a forward gear or reverse, press the accelerator pedal gradually to release the EPB. The result is that the vehicle can be driven away smoothly.

When shifting from P with the EPB applied, the EPB automatically releases to allow a smooth drive away.

**Note:** Automatic EPB release for pulling away from a standstill is only possible when the driver's door is closed or the driver's seat belt is buckled.

To override the EPB automatic release, push the EPB switch in and hold.

In an emergency, apply and hold the EPB switch to give a controlled reduction in the vehicle's speed. The vehicle can also be brought to a complete stop. The vehicle must be travelling at more than 3 km/h (2 mph), and the accelerator pedal must also be released. The brake warning lamp flashes, a warning chime sounds, and the instrument panel displays a warning message. The stop lights illuminate.

Release the EPB switch, or press the accelerator pedal to release the EPB.

If an EPB fault is detected, the instrument panel displays a warning message. The amber brake warning lamp also illuminates. See **79, BRAKE (AMBER)**.

If a fault is detected during EPB operation, a warning message appears in the instrument panel. The red EPB warning lamp also flashes. See **78, ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE (EPB) (RED)**.

### EMERGENCY STOP SIGNAL (ESS)

The Emergency Stop Signal (ESS) system automatically activates the hazard warning lights during emergency braking.


Activation of the hazard warning lights warns other road users of a potential hazard and reduces the risk of a collision.


**Note:** ESS applicability is dependent on the market.



## Stability control

### DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC)

 The Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) system does not compensate for driver error or misjudgement. The vehicle should be driven with due care and attention at all times. Always drive in a manner that is safe for the vehicle, its occupants, and other road users. Failure to do so can potentially result in a loss of control of the vehicle, which may potentially result in serious injury or death.


 In extremely low temperatures the vehicle may initially have reduced stability and braking performance. In these conditions, drive with extra caution. Failure to do so can potentially result in personal injury or vehicle damage.

The DSC system helps to maintain the vehicle's stability in critical driving situations, e.g., during unstable driving behaviour such as understeer and oversteer. If required, the DSC system manipulates the engine's power output and applies the brakes at individual wheels. Brake noise may be generated during DSC operation. The DSC system also activates if wheel spin is detected, to help improve the vehicle's progress during acceleration. When the DSC system is active, the amber DSC warning lamp flashes. See **80, DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) (AMBER)**.

The DSC system automatically enables when the vehicle's ignition is switched on.

Make sure that the correct terrain response driving program is selected for the current terrain and driving conditions, or the required driving style. Using an incorrectly selected driving program may adversely affect the correct operation of the DSC system. See **191, TERRAIN RESPONSE**.

### SWITCHING DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) OFF

 The vehicle's stability and safety may be reduced by inappropriately disabling the Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) system. The potential result may lead to a possible loss of control of the vehicle, potentially resulting in serious injury or death.

**Note:** In the majority of driving situations, and particularly on-road, it is recommended that the DSC system is not disabled.

**Note:** The DSC system cannot be disabled if the automatic (AUTO) terrain response driving program is currently selected.



To switch the DSC system off, touch the DSC **OFF** soft key, displayed on the lower touchscreen. See **212, LOWER TOUCHSCREEN CONTROLS**.

An audible warning tone sounds. The instrument panel temporarily displays the **DSC Off** message and also illuminates the amber DSC OFF warning lamp to confirm that DSC is disabled. See **80, DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) OFF (AMBER)**.

**Note:** The DSC system automatically switches back on if the vehicle's speed reaches 50 km/h (30 mph).

## Stability control

Switching the DSC system off reduces the level of traction and stability control intervention. Doing so may lead to an increase in wheel spin and a reduction in the vehicle's stability.

Some driving conditions may require switching the DSC system off, in the event that a correctly selected driving program cannot improve the vehicle's progress. See **191, TERRAIN RESPONSE OVERVIEW**.

Examples of some driving conditions that may adversely affect the vehicle's progress include:

- Rocking the vehicle out of a hollow or deep rut.
- Pulling away in deep snow or on a loose surface.
- Driving through deep sand or mud.

**Note:** Make sure to switch the DSC system back on when the need for switching DSC off has passed.

### SWITCHING DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) ON

**Note:** If the vehicle's cruise control system is currently enabled, it automatically disables when the Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) system activates.

**Note:** Switching the ignition off and on always reverts the DSC system status to **DSC on**, regardless of the previous status.

The DSC system can be manually switched on if it is currently switched off.



Touch and briefly hold the DSC **OFF** soft key, displayed on the lower touchscreen. See **212, LOWER TOUCHSCREEN CONTROLS**.

The instrument panel displays the **DSC on** message and also extinguishes the amber DSC OFF warning lamp. See **80, DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) OFF (AMBER)**.

The amber DSC warning lamp flashes when the DSC system activates.

DSC is automatically enabled for some terrain response driving programs. See **191, TERRAIN RESPONSE OVERVIEW**.



## Traction control

### **ELECTRONIC TRACTION CONTROL (ETC)**

The Electronic Traction Control (ETC) system operates in conjunction with the Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) system. See **152, DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC)**.

The ETC system activates if the vehicle's wheels lose traction, causing wheel spin. In this event, the ETC system operates the brake on the spinning wheel. If required, the ETC system also manipulates the engine's power output, until the wheel regains traction. The DSC amber warning lamp flashes when the ETC system activates. See **80, DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) (AMBER)**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2019

## Hill Descent Control (HDC)

### HILL DESCENT CONTROL (HDC)



**Do not attempt a steep descent if the Hill Descent Control (HDC) system is inoperative or if any warning messages are displayed. Doing so can potentially result in vehicle damage or personal injury.**

**Note:** The HDC system is automatically selected by some of the terrain response driving programs.

**Note:** The HDC system is automatically deselected if the ignition is switched off for more than 6 hours.

Use the HDC system to help maintain the vehicle's downhill speed to a driver requested set speed.



The **HDC** icon is located on the lower touchscreen.

To enable the HDC system, touch and briefly hold the **HDC** icon. The instrument panel displays a confirmation message and illuminates the HDC warning lamp to confirm selection. See **82, HILL DESCENT CONTROL (HDC) (GREEN)**.

Touch and briefly hold the **HDC** icon again to disable the HDC system. The instrument panel displays a confirmation message and extinguishes the HDC warning lamp to confirm deselection.

When the HDC system is enabled, the instrument panel displays a graphic showing the current set speed. The graphic also indicates the range of set speeds available for the current transmission gear selection. See **156, HILL DESCENT CONTROL (HDC) SETTINGS**.

**Note:** The HDC system does not operate when Park (**P**) is selected. In this event, the instrument panel graphic illuminates grey.

If the HDC system is deselected while operating, the warning lamp extinguishes. The HDC system operation fades out, allowing the vehicle's speed to gradually increase.

The HDC system only operates at vehicle speeds of less than 50 km/h (31 mph). At higher vehicle speeds, the HDC system operation is suspended. In this event, the instrument panel graphic illuminates grey and displays a warning message. The HDC warning lamp also flashes.

**Note:** If the vehicle's speed exceeds 80 km/h (50 mph), the HDC system disables. The instrument panel displays a message and extinguishes the HDC warning lamp.

If the brake pedal is pressed when the HDC system is active, a pulsation might be felt through the brake pedal. When the brake pedal is released, HDC operation resumes.

If an HDC system fault is detected, the instrument panel displays a warning message indicating that HDC is not available. In this event, contact a retailer/ authorised repairer as soon as possible.

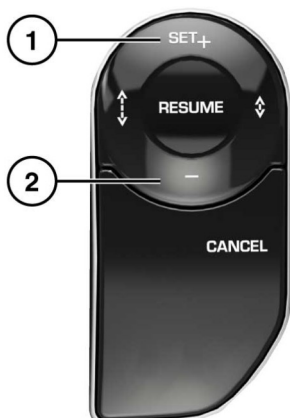
If a fault is detected during operation of the HDC system, HDC operation fades out.



## Hill Descent Control (HDC)

### HILL DESCENT CONTROL (HDC) SETTINGS

When the Hill Descent Control (HDC) system is enabled, the desired speed for the descent can be manually set and adjusted. Use the controls mounted on the right side of the steering wheel. See **155, HILL DESCENT CONTROL (HDC)**.



E225625

Operate as follows:

1. **SET+** button: Press and release to increase the descent set speed in increments of 1 km/h (0.6 mph). Alternatively, press and hold for larger incremental increases, up to the maximum permissible set speed.

**Note:** Each gear has a predetermined maximum speed.

**Note:** The vehicle's speed only increases on a slope steep enough to increase momentum. Using the **SET+** button may not increase the vehicle's speed on a gentle slope.

2. **-** button: Press and release to decrease the descent set speed in increments of 1 km/h (0.6 mph). Alternatively, press and hold for larger incremental decreases, down to the minimum permissible set speed.

**Note:** Each gear has a predetermined minimum speed.

### GRADIENT RELEASE CONTROL (GRC)

The Gradient Release Control (GRC) system operates when the vehicle is pulling away from a standstill on an incline or a decline. When the vehicle's brakes are released, the GRC system automatically delays and graduates the brake release to allow the vehicle to pull away smoothly.

The GRC system automatically operates in forward and reverse gears. No driver intervention is required.

If the brakes are applied with the Hill Descent Control (HDC) system enabled, the GRC system activates to allow a smooth transition into HDC operation.

The GRC system does not operate if the terrain response sand driving program is enabled. See **193, SAND**.

### BRAKE TEMPERATURE

In extreme circumstances, prolonged use of the Hill Descent Control (HDC) system may cause excessive brake temperatures. In this event, the instrument panel displays a warning message, indicating that the HDC system is temporarily unavailable. HDC operation fades out and becomes temporarily inactive.



## Hill Descent Control (HDC)

When the brake temperatures have returned to normal, the instrument panel warning message extinguishes and HDC operation resumes.


© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2019




## Speed limiter

### SPEED LIMITER SAFETY


Make sure the following warnings have been read and fully understood before using a speed limiter. Failure to use the speed limiter safely could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

 **Speed limiters are driving aids only. Always drive with due care and attention, and in a manner which is safe for the vehicle, its occupants, and other road users. The driver should still observe all road signs, road markings, and situations that are not detected or recognised by the speed limiter systems. Driving without due care and attention greatly increases the risk of an accident.**

 **In certain conditions, such as a steep downhill gradient, the vehicle's speed may exceed the set speed limit. Driver intervention may be required. Driving at speeds above the set speed limit may infringe on local laws.**

**Note:** *Speed limiters are convenience features only. Speed limiters do not remove the driver's responsibility to adhere to the legal road speed limit.*

### SPEED LIMITER OVERVIEW

 **Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 158, SPEED LIMITER SAFETY.**

Two types of speed limiter are available:

- Speed limiter.
- Adaptive speed limiter.

The speed limiter allows the driver to manually restrict the maximum vehicle speed. When a maximum speed limit is set, the vehicle responds normally until the set speed is reached. At this point, the vehicle stops accelerating.

The adaptive speed limiter works in conjunction with the traffic sign recognition system and the navigation system to restrict the maximum vehicle speed. The maximum speed is set based on the information received from both of these systems. If the system cannot determine a valid maximum speed, the last known detected speed limit is used.

To activate the speed limiter, see **159, SPEED LIMITER**.

To activate the adaptive speed limiter, see **160, ADAPTIVE SPEED LIMITER**.

Press and hold the **CANCEL** button on the steering wheel to switch between the speed limiter and the adaptive speed limiter.

**Note:** *Speed limiters are not available when cruise control or adaptive cruise control is in operation. When the vehicle is first switched on, the vehicle reverts to whichever system was used previously.*

## Speed limiter

### SPEED LIMITER

**⚠** Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 158, SPEED LIMITER SAFETY.



E199562

1. SET+.
2. -.
3. RESUME.
4. CANCEL.
5. LIM.

Press the **LIM** button on the steering wheel controls to switch the speed limiter function on. The instrument panel displays an information lamp to confirm the speed limiter is selected.

The speed limiter does not operate until activated.

To activate the speed limiter, press the **SET+** button. The vehicle's speed is now limited to the speed it was travelling at when the button was pressed. If the vehicle is stationary when the **SET+** button is pressed, the system sets the speed limit to 30 km/h (19 mph).

Press and hold the **SET+** button to increase the speed limiter's set speed in 10 km/h (or 5 mph) steps. Press and release the **SET+** button to increase the speed limiter's set speed by 2 km/h (1 mph).

Press and hold the **-** button to lower the speed limiter's set speed in 10 km/h (or 5 mph) steps. Press and release the **-** button to lower the speed limiter's set speed by 2 km/h (1 mph).

Press the **CANCEL** button to suspend speed limiter operation. Press either the **RESUME** button or the **SET+** button to resume speed limiter operation.

Pressing the **RESUME** button activates the previous set speed. Pressing the **SET+** button limits the vehicle's speed to the speed it is travelling at when the button is pressed.

The speed limiter's set speed can be overridden if rapid acceleration is required. Fully press the accelerator pedal to accelerate past the speed limiter's set speed. When the vehicle's speed drops below the speed limiter's set speed, any speed limitations are reapplied.

### SPEED LIMITER LIMITATIONS

The driver may notice the effects of the speed limiter if the vehicle's speed is close to the set speed limit.



## Speed limiter

The instrument panel displays messages to inform the driver of any performance or system issues.

### ADAPTIVE SPEED LIMITER

**⚠** Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 158, SPEED LIMITER SAFETY.

**Note:** The adaptive speed limiter does not operate if the traffic sign recognition system is not operating. See 207, TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION.



E199562

1. SET+.
2. -.
3. RESUME.
4. CANCEL.
5. LIM.

Press the **LIM** button on the steering wheel to switch the adaptive speed limiter on. Depending on vehicle status, the instrument panel displays either the speed limiter or the adaptive speed limiter information lamp.

If the speed limiter information lamp displays, press and hold the **CANCEL** button. The adaptive speed limiter information lamp replaces the speed limiter information lamp to confirm that the adaptive speed limiter has been selected.

The adaptive speed limiter does not operate until activated. Press the **SET+** button or the **RESUME** button to activate the adaptive speed limiter. The instrument panel and Head-Up Display (HUD) show the detected speed limits as icons.

If the adaptive speed limiter detects a speed limit lower than the current vehicle speed, it automatically slows the vehicle to meet the speed limit. Press the **RESUME** button to increase the rate of deceleration.

If the system detects a speed limit higher than the current vehicle speed, it allows the driver to accelerate up to the speed limit. Press the **RESUME** button to increase the rate of acceleration.

Press the **CANCEL** button to suspend adaptive speed limiter operation. Press the **RESUME** button or the **SET+** button to resume adaptive speed limiter operation.

## Speed limiter

The adaptive speed limiter's detected speed limit can be overridden if rapid acceleration is required. Fully press the accelerator pedal to accelerate past the adaptive speed limiter's detected speed limit. When the vehicle's speed drops below the adaptive speed limiter's detected speed limit, any speed limitations are reapplied.

The system's detected speed limit can be adjusted, if required, to control the vehicle's speed at just above or below the detected speed limit. To adjust the detected speed limit:

1. Press the **SET+** button to raise the maximum vehicle speed 2 km/h (1 mph) above the detected speed limit. The maximum increase available is 10 km/h (6 mph) above the detected speed limit. Press and hold the **SET+** button to raise the maximum vehicle speed directly to 10 km/h (6 mph) above the detected speed limit.
2. Press the **-** button to lower the maximum vehicle speed 2 km/h (1 mph) below the detected speed limit. The maximum decrease available is 10 km/h (6 mph) below the detected speed limit. Press and hold the **-** button to lower the maximum vehicle speed directly to 10 km/h (6 mph) below the detected speed limit.

**Note:** Any adjustments to the system's detected speed limit are lost if the speed limiter is activated, or if the vehicle's electrical systems are switched off.

### ADAPTIVE SPEED LIMITER LIMITATIONS

The adaptive speed limiter does not operate if the traffic sign recognition system is unable to detect a valid speed limit. After a short period of time, the adaptive speed limiter is deactivated and the speed limiter is activated.

The adaptive speed limiter:

- Does not recognise speed limits below 30 km/h (19 mph). For detected speed limits below 30 km/h (19 mph), the system sets a speed limit of 30 km/h (19 mph).
- Displays **---** in the instrument panel if the traffic sign recognition system cannot determine a valid speed limit. The last known valid speed limit is applied if this occurs.
- May allow vehicle speed to increase in certain conditions, e.g., when travelling downhill. If the vehicle's speed rises by more than 3.5 km/h (2 mph) above the detected speed limit, the instrument panel displays a warning message. If the vehicle's speed rises by more than 7 km/h (5 mph) above the detected speed limit for 4 seconds, a chime also sounds.
- Performance and accuracy are only as good as the information provided by the traffic sign recognition system.
- Performance and accuracy are only as good as the information provided by the navigation system. Always make sure the navigation system is operating correctly and is using the latest software.




The instrument panel displays messages to inform the driver of any performance or system issues.




## Cruise control

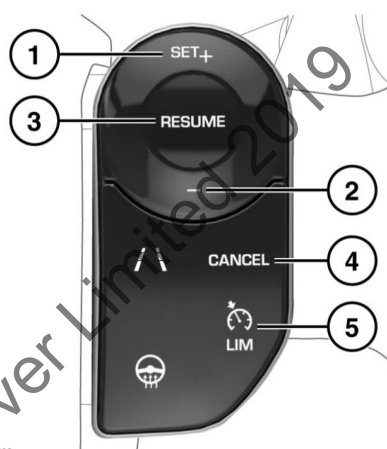
### CRUISE CONTROL SAFETY

Make sure the following warnings have been read and fully understood before using cruise control. Failure to use cruise control safely could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

-  **The driver must always make sure that a safe speed is maintained within the speed limit, taking account of traffic and road conditions. Driving at unsafe speeds increases the risk of an accident.**
-  **In certain conditions, such as a steep downhill gradient, the vehicle's speed may exceed the set cruising speed. Driver intervention may be required. Driving at speeds above the set cruising speed may infringe on local laws.**
-  **Do not use cruise control in heavy traffic, or conditions where a constant road speed cannot be safely maintained. For example, cruise control should not be used on roads that are winding, wet with rain or snow, slippery, or unpaved.**

### USING CRUISE CONTROL

-  **Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 162, CRUISE CONTROL SAFETY.**



1. SET+.
2. -.
3. RESUME.
4. CANCEL.
5. LIM.

Cruise control allows the vehicle to automatically maintain a set vehicle speed. Controls mounted on the steering wheel are used to operate the system. The driver can also intervene, at any time, by using the brake or accelerator pedals.

**Note:** Do not use cruise control when driving off-road.

While driving at the desired speed, press the **SET+** button to activate cruise control. The instrument panel displays an information lamp to confirm that the system is operational.

## Cruise control

The cruise control icon on the steering wheel controls also illuminates to confirm that the system is operational.


To increase the set speed, press the **SET+** button. A single press of the button raises the vehicle's speed by 2 km/h (1 mph). Alternatively, press the accelerator pedal to increase the set speed. When the new desired speed is reached, press the **SET+** button.

**Note:** *Cruise control cancels if the accelerator pedal is pressed to override the system for more than 5 minutes.*

Press the **-** button to lower the set speed. A single press of the button lowers the vehicle's speed by 2 km/h (1 mph).

Press the **CANCEL** button to cancel cruise control. The set speed is retained in the system's memory until the vehicle is switched off.

Press the **RESUME** button to resume the set speed from the system's memory.

 **The RESUME button should only be used if the driver is aware of the set speed and intends to return to it. Pressing the RESUME button when not aware of the set speed may lead to a loss of control of the vehicle.**

### CRUISE CONTROL LIMITATIONS

Cruise control:

- Cannot be set when the vehicle is travelling at speeds below 32 km/h (20 mph).
- Remains active until the vehicle's speed drops below 24 km/h (15 mph).

Cruise control does not operate when:

- The speed limiter or adaptive speed limiter is in operation. When the vehicle is first switched on, the vehicle reverts to whichever system was used previously. Press the **LIM** button to switch between cruise control and the speed limiter. See **162, USING CRUISE CONTROL**.
- The brake pedal is pressed.
- The gear selector is moved to Neutral (**N**) or Reverse (**R**).
- The Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is applied.
- The Anti-lock Braking System (ABS) requests a cruise control cancellation.
- Hill Descent Control (HDC) is activated.
- All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC) is activated.

## Adaptive cruise control

### ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL SAFETY

Make sure the following warnings have been read and fully understood before using adaptive cruise control or any of its features. Failure to use adaptive cruise control or any of its features safely could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

- ⚠ **Adaptive cruise control is not a substitute for driving safely, with due care and attention. Staying alert, driving safely, and being in control of the vehicle at all times is the responsibility of the driver.**
- ⚠ **Adaptive cruise control may not function properly under all weather and road conditions. Do not use adaptive cruise control in poor visibility, specifically fog, heavy rain, spray, or snow. Using adaptive cruise control in these conditions increases the risk of a loss of control of the vehicle.**
- ⚠ **Adaptive cruise control does not react to pedestrians or objects in the roadway. Additionally, the system may not react to stationary or slow moving vehicles travelling below 10 km/h (6 mph), or oncoming vehicles in the same lane.**

- ⚠ **Adaptive cruise control uses a radar sensor and camera to monitor the area in front of the vehicle. The radar sensor is mounted on the front of the vehicle. The camera is mounted on the rear of the rear-view mirror. Keep these areas of the vehicle clean and free from obstructions, e.g., stickers, debris, mud, snow, or ice. Failure to do so may result in the system failing to identify objects ahead.**

The driver should remain alert and intervene, if necessary, when adaptive cruise control is in operation.

The adaptive cruise control system may operate unexpectedly in certain conditions. For example:



E214263

When driving on a different line to the vehicle in front.

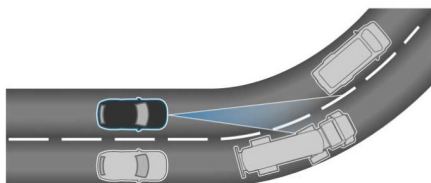


E214264



## Adaptive cruise control

When a vehicle edges into the same lane as the vehicle being driven. The vehicle is only detected once it has moved fully into the same lane.



E214265

When entering or exiting a bend. Vehicles in front may not be detected.



E214266

When moving around a stationary vehicle. The detection beam may become uncertain as to which vehicle should be followed.



E214267

When the vehicle in front turns out of the same lane as the vehicle being driven. The detection beam may become uncertain as to which vehicle should be followed.

### ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL OVERVIEW

**⚠** Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 164, ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL SAFETY.

Adaptive cruise control allows the driver to set a cruising speed for the vehicle. The vehicle's speed is automatically reduced if a slower moving vehicle is detected in the lane ahead. The system then maintains a constant gap to the vehicle ahead. If the system detects that the slower moving vehicle is no longer present, it automatically raises the vehicle's speed back to the set speed. In some scenarios, adaptive cruise control also brings the vehicle to a standstill, if required.

**Note:** The adaptive cruise control system illuminates the brake lights when it applies the brakes. A noise may also be heard.

Adaptive cruise control comprises a number of different sub-features in order to operate effectively, including:

- Follow mode. See 168, **FOLLOW MODE**.
- Queue assist. See 170, **QUEUE ASSIST**.
- Stop and go. See 171, **STOP AND GO**.
- Steering assist. See 171, **STEERING ASSIST**.



## Adaptive cruise control




E196492

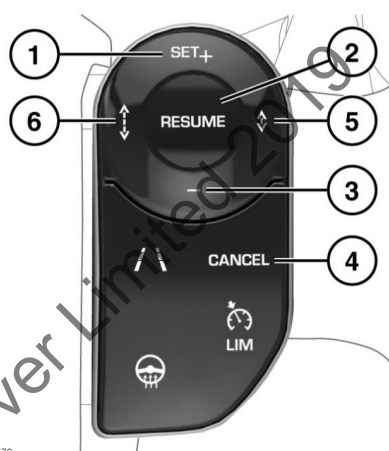
**Note:** Adaptive cruise control is not available when the speed limiter is in operation. When the vehicle is first switched on, the vehicle reverts to whichever system was used previously.

Press the **LIM** button on the steering wheel controls to switch between the speed limiter and adaptive cruise control.

The instrument panel displays a message if a fault occurs in the adaptive cruise control system, or in any of its sub-features. If this occurs, adaptive cruise control does not operate. Consult a retailer/authorised repairer at the earliest opportunity.

### ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL

 Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 164, ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL SAFETY.



1. **SET+.**
2. **RESUME.**
3. **-.**
4. **CANCEL.**
5. **<->:** Follow mode gap decrease.
6. **<--->:** Follow mode gap increase.


Press the **SET+** button to set a desired cruising speed. The vehicle's cruising speed is set at the speed it was travelling when the button was pressed.

Fully release the accelerator pedal when a cruising speed is set.

Press the **CANCEL** button to deactivate adaptive cruise control.

Press the **RESUME** button to reactivate adaptive cruise control.

## Adaptive cruise control

 **The RESUME button should only be pressed if the driver is aware of the set cruising speed and intends to return to it. Pressing the RESUME button when not aware of the set cruising speed may lead to a loss of control of the vehicle.**



The instrument panel displays a white information lamp to inform the driver that adaptive cruise control is engaged. The instrument panel information lamp illuminates green when adaptive cruise control is active.

The **LIM** icon on the steering wheel controls also illuminates to confirm adaptive cruise control status.

When adaptive cruise control is operating, it monitors the area in front of the vehicle to identify any vehicles which are in its path. The vehicle's cruising speed is controlled accordingly. See **168, FOLLOW MODE**.

Adaptive cruise control may also react to stationary vehicles that it previously recognised as travelling in the same direction. See **170, QUEUE ASSIST**.

### ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL LIMITATIONS

Adaptive cruise control:

- Should only be used when conditions are favourable. For example, on major roads with traffic moving in lanes.
- Should not be used during abrupt or sharp turns. For example, traffic islands, junctions, areas with many parked vehicles, or areas shared with pedestrians.

- Performance and operation can be affected by the use of non-recommended tyres. Non-recommended tyres may have a different circumference to those recommended for the vehicle.
- Performance may be inhibited if accumulations of dirt, snow, or ice build up on the radar sensor or camera. Fitting a protector or metalised badges to the front of the vehicle may also affect adaptive cruise control operation.

The instrument panel displays **Driver intervene**, followed by **Radar sensor blocked**, if a sensor's operation becomes affected by an obstruction. Clearing the obstruction from the sensor allows the system to return to normal operation. Operation is resumed automatically once the obstruction is removed.

The instrument panel may also display **Radar sensor blocked** temporarily if the radar sensors or camera's vision is disrupted for a long period. For example, in poor weather conditions, when travelling through a tunnel, or in complex traffic situations.

The instrument panel may also display **Radar sensor blocked** when travelling on open roads with few objects for the radar to detect.

Adaptive cruise control does not operate if:

- Reverse (**R**) or Park (**P**) is selected.
- The speed limiter is in operation.

Adaptive cruise control automatically deactivates, but does not clear its memory, when:



## Adaptive cruise control

- The **CANCEL** button on the steering wheel controls is pressed. See **166, ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL**.
- The brake pedal is pressed.
- The Anti-lock Braking System (ABS) requests a cruise control cancellation.
- The Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is applied.

Adaptive cruise control automatically deactivates, and its memory is cleared, when:

- All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC) is selected.
- The vehicle is switched off.
- A fault occurs in the adaptive cruise control system.

### ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL DRIVER INTERVENTION


The amount of braking applied by the adaptive cruise control system is limited. The instrument panel displays a message if the system's braking limits are reached. The driver should intervene immediately and apply a higher level of braking force using the brake pedal.

Adaptive cruise control cancels when the brake pedal is pressed. Press the **RESUME** button (2) on the steering wheel to resume adaptive cruise control operation. See **166, ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL**.

Pressing the accelerator pedal inhibits adaptive cruise control braking. The follow mode amber warning lamp extinguishes to confirm the system has been overridden. See **80, FOLLOW MODE (AMBER)**.


Adaptive cruise control operation resumes when the accelerator pedal is released.

### FOLLOW MODE

-  **Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 164, ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL SAFETY.**

When adaptive cruise control identifies a slower-moving vehicle in the lane ahead, it automatically enters follow mode.

Adaptive cruise control adjusts the vehicle's speed by controlling acceleration and braking to maintain a set gap to the vehicle ahead.

-  **When in follow mode, the vehicle may not decelerate automatically to a stop, nor does the vehicle always decelerate quickly enough to avoid a collision. Always maintain a safe gap to the vehicle ahead to reduce the risk of an accident.**



The instrument panel displays an amber warning lamp to confirm that follow mode is active. See **80, FOLLOW MODE (AMBER)**.

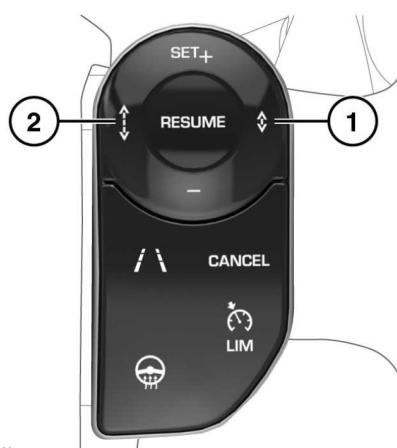
If the direction indicators are used, follow mode may reduce the gap to the vehicle ahead in anticipation of a manoeuvre. If a manoeuvre is not carried out, follow mode restores the previous gap setting after a few seconds.

**Note:** Follow mode may not reduce the gap to the vehicle ahead if it is deemed inappropriate. For example, the vehicle ahead is already too close, or the manoeuvre has already been completed.

The follow mode gap to the vehicle ahead can be adjusted. See **169, CHANGING THE FOLLOW MODE GAP**.

## Adaptive cruise control

### SWITCHING FOLLOW MODE OFF



E214286

1. <->: Follow mode gap decrease.
2. <--->: Follow mode gap increase.

Switching follow mode off allows the driver to take control of the vehicle's speed. When follow mode is switched off, the adaptive cruise control system does not provide any vehicle braking. Vehicle braking must be applied by the driver.



Press and hold the follow mode gap decrease button (1) on the steering wheel controls to switch follow mode off. The follow mode off white warning lamp illuminates to confirm the feature has been switched off.

**Note:** If the follow mode gap decrease button (1) is held for too long, the request to switch follow mode off is ignored.

Press and release either the decrease (1) or increase (2) button on the steering wheel controls to switch follow mode back on. If adaptive cruise control is active and tracking a vehicle, the follow mode off white warning lamp extinguishes. The follow mode amber warning lamp illuminates to confirm the feature has been switched back on. The previous follow mode gap setting is resumed.

Follow mode resumes if:

1. The vehicle is switched off.
2. Adaptive cruise control is not used for a long period of time.

### CHANGING THE FOLLOW MODE GAP



**Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 164, ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL SAFETY.**



**The driver is responsible for selecting options appropriate for the driving conditions. Always drive with due care and attention. Driving without due care and attention greatly increases the risk of an accident.**

Follow mode has four different gap settings. Gap 3 is the default gap setting when the vehicle is switched on.



## Adaptive cruise control



1. <->: Follow mode gap decrease.

2. <--->: Follow mode gap increase.

To decrease the follow mode gap, press the decrease button (1) on the steering wheel. To increase the follow mode gap, press the increase button (2) on the steering wheel.

The instrument panel displays a vehicle image with a number of bars when the follow mode gap is adjusted. The number of bars displayed in front of the vehicle image reflects the follow mode gap setting.

### FOLLOW MODE LIMITATIONS

Follow mode maintains a constant gap to the vehicle ahead until:

- The vehicle ahead accelerates to a speed above the adaptive cruise control set speed. If this occurs, the vehicle stops accelerating when the set speed is reached.

- The vehicle ahead moves out of the lane or out of view. If this occurs, the vehicle accelerates to the adaptive cruise control set speed.

### QUEUE ASSIST

**⚠ Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 164, ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL SAFETY.**

Queue assist enhances the adaptive cruise control follow mode feature. See 168, FOLLOW MODE.

Queue assist operates at lower speeds than follow mode, allowing the feature to be used in slow-moving lines of traffic.

When the targeted vehicle slows to a standstill, queue assist brings the vehicle to a standstill. When the targeted vehicle moves off, briefly press the accelerator pedal, if safe to do so. Queue assist now maintains a constant gap to the vehicle ahead.

**⚠ Queue assist may not recognise a stationary vehicle or object. To avoid an impact, it is important that the driver is prepared to press the brake pedal when approaching stationary vehicles or objects, if necessary.**

In certain conditions, queue assist also applies the Electric Parking Brake (EPB), including when:

- Adaptive cruise control is cancelled by the driver.
- The driver's seat belt is unbuckled.
- The driver's door is opened.

Adaptive cruise control deactivates when the EPB is applied.

## Adaptive cruise control

The queue assist gap to the vehicle ahead can be adjusted. See **169, CHANGING THE FOLLOW MODE GAP**.

### STOP AND GO

**⚠ Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 164, ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL SAFETY.**

In certain circumstances, adaptive cruise control is able to follow a targeted vehicle down to a standstill. See **170, QUEUE ASSIST**.

The stop and go feature automatically accelerates the vehicle away from a standstill, if the targeted vehicle pulls away within a few seconds. A short press of the accelerator pedal is required if the targeted vehicle is stationary for longer than a few seconds.

A short press of the accelerator pedal is also required if not all system requirements are met.

**⚠ The instrument panel displays a warning message if adaptive cruise control detects an object in its immediate path when accelerating away from a standstill. Adaptive cruise control does not apply the brakes. Braking in order to avoid an impact remains the responsibility of the driver.**

### STEERING ASSIST

**⚠ Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 164, ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL SAFETY.**

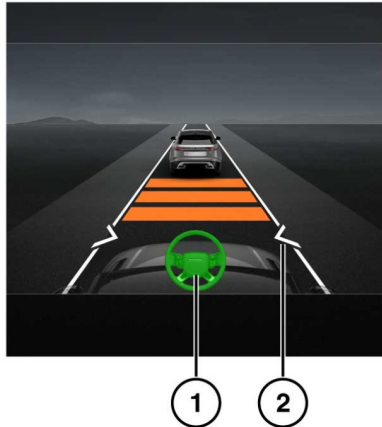
Steering assist helps the driver keep the vehicle in the centre of the lane in which it is travelling. The system does this by making steering adjustments.



Press the button on the steering wheel (1) to activate steering assist. Press the button a second time to switch the feature off. When active, the instrument panel displays steering assist system status.



## Adaptive cruise control



E215897

1. Steering assist active.
2. Tracked lane borders.

If the driver's hands are removed from the steering wheel, the vehicle presents a series of visual and audible warnings. Steering assistance is stopped if the warnings are ignored.

Under normal circumstances, if the driver uses the direction indicators steering assistance stops in the direction indicated.

**⚠ Steering assist is a driving aid only and not a substitute for driving safely, with due care and attention. Driving without due care and attention greatly increases the risk of an accident.**

**⚠ Steering assist does not steer the vehicle autonomously. The driver must remain in full control of the vehicle at all times. Failure to remain in full control of the vehicle greatly increases the risk of an accident.**

**⚠ Do not use steering assist if a trailer is connected to the vehicle. The trailer may cause the steering assist feature to make incorrect judgements, increasing the risk of an accident.**

### STEERING ASSIST LIMITATIONS

Steering assist does not operate if:

- Adaptive cruise control is not active.
- The driver's door is open.
- The vehicle is travelling at speeds higher than 180 km/h (112 mph).
- The driver's hands are removed from the steering wheel.
- The camera is obscured, e.g., by stickers, mud, or other debris.
- The radar sensor is obscured, e.g., by stickers, mud, or other debris.
- The lane boundaries in which the vehicle is travelling are not clear and visible to the camera.
- The corner through which the vehicle is travelling is too tight.
- There is a fault in the system.

Steering assist operates with a reduced level of performance and accuracy if:













- Operation of the camera is impaired due to severe weather conditions, e.g., heavy rain, fog, snow, or ice.
- Operation of the camera is impaired due to extreme sunlight.
- Road markings, or in some cases a road edge, are not recognised on both sides of the lane in which the vehicle is travelling.



## Collision avoidance


### COLLISION AVOIDANCE SAFETY

Make sure the following warnings have been read and fully understood before driving the vehicle. Failure to use the collision avoidance systems safely could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

-  Collision avoidance systems are not a substitute for driving safely, with due care and attention. Staying alert, driving safely, and being in control of the vehicle at all times is the responsibility of the driver.
-  Blind spot driving aids are a supplement to, not a replacement for, a safe driving style.
-  The driver is responsible for driving with due care and attention, and in a safe manner for the vehicle, the occupants, and other road users. The driver is responsible for detecting obstacles, and estimating the vehicle's distance from them, when manoeuvring the vehicle. The driver should observe all road signs, road markings and any potential braking situations, and act appropriately.
-  Always use the door and rear-view mirrors. Drive safely at all times, and use the door and rear-view mirrors to help avoid accidents.
-  Blind spot driving aids may not function at all speeds, or in all weather conditions.
-  Blind spot driving aids do not correct errors of judgement when driving.
-  The radar and camera sensors used by the blind spot driving aids may become impaired by mud, rain, frost, ice, snow, road spray, etc. The blind spot driving aids ability to detect a vehicle in the driver's blind spot may subsequently be affected and may give false indications.
-  Do not attach stickers or objects to the rear bumper or to the windscreen. Operation of the blind spot sensors and camera may subsequently become impaired. The blind spot driving aids ability to detect a vehicle in the driver's blind spot may subsequently be affected and may give false indications.
-  Do not attach stickers or other objects to the door mirrors, as the blind spot icons and indicators may become obscured. Obscuring the icons and indicators could increase the risk of a collision during a vehicle manoeuvre.
-  The blind spot monitor system may not be able to give adequate warning of vehicles approaching very quickly from behind.
-  The blind spot monitor system may not be able to detect all vehicles and may also detect objects such as roadside barriers, etc.
-  Do not use blind spot assist when a trailer is connected. The trailer may provide miscalculations or false indications. False indications could increase the risk of a collision during a vehicle manoeuvre.





## Collision avoidance

 **The radar sensor must be calibrated if it is replaced, its mounting is replaced, or it becomes misaligned, e.g., as a result of impact damage. Contact a retailer/authorised repairer.**

**Note:** *The radar sensor is approved for use in all member countries covered under the Radio and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment (RTTE) directive.*

### FORWARD ALERT

 **Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 173, COLLISION AVOIDANCE SAFETY.**

 **Forward alert may not react to slow-moving vehicles. Always drive with due care and attention. Driving without due care and attention greatly increases the risk of an accident.**

Forward alert monitors an area in front of the vehicle. The driver is warned if forward alert detects an object within the detection area. The instrument panel also displays a warning message if the vehicle is travelling between 30 km/h (18 mph) and 80 km/h (50 mph). The driver is responsible for taking appropriate action.

Three forward alert sensitivity settings are available:

- Normal.
- Medium.
- High.

Warnings sound and the instrument panel displays a warning message if forward alert detects an object in front of the vehicle.

Forward alert can be switched on and off via the **Driver assistance** instrument panel menu. See **69, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

Forward alert sensitivity can be adjusted. See **174, CHANGING THE FORWARD ALERT SENSITIVITY**.

### CHANGING THE FORWARD ALERT SENSITIVITY

Forward alert has three different sensitivity settings. The default setting is **Normal**.

The sensitivity of the forward alert feature can be changed as follows:


1. Switch the vehicle's ignition on.
2. Select **Collision avoidance** from the **Driver assistance** instrument panel menu. See **69, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.
3. Use the steering wheel controls to highlight the required setting: **Normal**, **Medium**, or **High**.
4. Press and release the **OK** button on the steering wheel.


The forward alert sensitivity setting is retained in the vehicle's memory after the vehicle is switched off.


### AUTONOMOUS EMERGENCY BRAKING (AEB) SAFETY


Make sure the following warnings have been read and fully understood before driving the vehicle. Failure to understand the Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB) system could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.


## Collision avoidance

 The AEB system is a driving aid only. The driver is responsible for driving with due care and attention, and in a safe manner for the vehicle, the occupants, and other road users. The driver should observe all road signs, road markings and any potential emergency braking situations, and act appropriately.

 The AEB system uses forward-facing cameras to detect real vehicles and pedestrians, plus other certified target objects. AEB is not designed to detect any other objects, including non-industry approved targets.

 In order for AEB to operate, it must be able to detect a clear image of the object and be able to determine its movement. If neither of these occur, the AEB system may not operate.

 Seat belts should be worn by all vehicle occupants, for every journey, no matter how short. Failure to do so greatly increases the risk of death or serious injury in the event of an accident.

 Make sure that the windscreen is kept clean and that the camera's line of sight is not obstructed by labels, stickers, etc. Failure to do so can cause incorrect AEB operation.


**Note:** AEB efficiency is dependent on the condition of the current driving surface and the vehicle's speed, tyres, and braking system.

**Note:** When a vehicle is parked outside, in full sunlight and in high ambient temperatures, the forward-facing camera may reach an internal temperature of 99°C. In this state, the instrument panel displays the warning message **AEB not available**. When the forward-facing camera cools to less than 88°C, normal operation is resumed, and the warning message extinguishes.

**Note:** When driving off-road, it is recommended to switch off the AEB system.

**Note:** When the vehicle's ignition is first switched on, AEB may require an initialisation period before it is fully functional. AEB efficiency is limited during this period.

### AUTONOMOUS EMERGENCY BRAKING (AEB)

 Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 174, AUTONOMOUS EMERGENCY BRAKING (AEB) SAFETY.

**Note:** Not all vehicles are fitted with Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB). Consult a retailer/authorised repairer for confirmation.

AEB uses forward-facing cameras, located above the rear-view mirror, to help identify an imminent risk of collision with:

- Another vehicle travelling in front.
- A crossing pedestrian.

In most instances, AEB helps reduce the severity of an impact. In some cases, AEB helps to stop the vehicle before an impact takes place.




## Collision avoidance

AEB automatically switches on, every time the vehicle's ignition is switched on.

If required, AEB can be switched off via the **Driver assistance** instrument panel menu. See **69, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

AEB operates at speeds above 5 km/h (3 mph). The vehicle detection AEB system is able to operate at speeds of up to 80 km/h (50 mph). The pedestrian detection AEB systems is able to operate at speeds of up to 60 km/h (37 mph).

If an imminent risk of a collision is detected, the system automatically applies the brakes. The instrument panel also displays the message **AEB active** while AEB is operating.

 **If AEB brings the vehicle to a stop, the brakes continue to hold the vehicle stationary for a few seconds. After this period, the driver must resume full control of the vehicle. Failure to take back full control of the vehicle could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.**

**Note:** *The brake lights are automatically operated in heavy braking situations.*

The driver can override AEB operation by turning the steering wheel, or pressing the accelerator pedal. When overridden, AEB cancels its request for braking to make sure that the driver remains in full control of the vehicle.

After AEB has been activated, a warning sounds and the instrument panel displays the message **AEB was activated**.

### AUTONOMOUS EMERGENCY BRAKING (AEB) LIMITATIONS

Vehicle detection Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB) does not operate if:

- The vehicle is negotiating a tight corner.
- The forward-facing cameras are dirty or obscured.
- The vehicle's speed is below 5 km/h (3 mph), or above 80 km/h (50 mph).
- Visibility is impaired due to severe weather conditions, e.g., heavy rain, fog, or snow.

In addition to the items listed for the vehicle detection AEB system, the pedestrian detection AEB system does not operate if:


- The vehicles speed is above 60 km/h (37 mph).
- The detected object is not identified as a pedestrian.
- The height of the object is less than 1 m.
- The pedestrian detection AEB system cannot determine that the target object is a pedestrian. For example, if the pedestrian is carrying a large object.

### LOW SPEED AUTONOMOUS EMERGENCY BRAKING (AEB)

Low speed Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB) uses sensors mounted in the front and rear bumpers to help identify if a collision is imminent. The sensors are able to identify stationary objects, e.g. a post or pillar, and moving objects, e.g. a pedestrian. If the risk of an imminent collision is detected, low speed AEB applies the brakes.

## Collision avoidance

In most instances, low speed AEB helps reduce the severity of an impact. In some cases, AEB helps to stop the vehicle before an impact takes place.

 **If low speed AEB brings the vehicle to a stop, the brakes continue to hold the vehicle stationary for a few seconds. After this period, the driver must resume full control of the vehicle. Failure to take back full control of the vehicle could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.**

Low speed AEB is able to operate at speeds from 1 km/h (1 mph) to 10 km/h (6 mph). The driver can override low speed AEB operation by pressing the accelerator pedal.

Low speed AEB switches on automatically every time the vehicle's ignition is switched on. The system can be switched off via the touchscreen.


### LOW SPEED AUTONOMOUS EMERGENCY BRAKING (AEB) LIMITATIONS

Low speed Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB) does not operate if:

- The vehicle's speed is above 10 km/h (6 mph).
- An electrical connector is connected to a Jaguar Land Rover approved trailer socket.
- Hitch assist is enabled. See **121, HITCH ASSIST**.
- Tow assist is enabled. See **121, TOW ASSIST**.

- An off-road driving program has been selected. See **191, TERRAIN RESPONSE OVERVIEW**.

### ADVANCED EMERGENCY BRAKE ASSIST (AEBA)

 **Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See **173, COLLISION AVOIDANCE SAFETY**.**

Advanced Emergency Brake Assist (AEBA) prepares the braking system if it detects a collision is imminent. If the driver subsequently presses the brake pedal, full braking force is applied immediately.

If forward alert is switched on, AEBA activates after the instrument panel displays the warning message **Forward alert**. AEBA automatically applies a light braking force. Full braking force is applied immediately when the driver presses the brake pedal.

AEBA still operates if forward alert is switched off.


### ADVANCED EMERGENCY BRAKE ASSIST (AEBA) LIMITATIONS


Make sure the following warnings have been read and fully understood before driving the vehicle. The Advanced Emergency Brake Assist (AEBA) feature does not take away the requirement to always drive with due care and attention. Driving without due care and attention could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

 **The AEBA feature may not react to slow-moving vehicles.**




## Collision avoidance

 The AEBA feature does not react to stationary vehicles or vehicles travelling in the opposite direction.

 In some circumstances, warnings may not display in the instrument panel. For example, if the distance to the vehicle ahead is very small. Another example includes when carrying out a collision avoidance manoeuvre by making large steering wheel and pedal movements.

AEBA operates at speeds above approximately 8 km/h (5 mph).

### HIGH-SPEED EMERGENCY BRAKING

 Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 173, COLLISION AVOIDANCE SAFETY.


The high-speed emergency braking feature attempts to slow the vehicle automatically if it detects that a collision with a slower vehicle ahead is unavoidable. The high-speed emergency braking feature operates at all speeds. The feature also operates if forward alert is switched off.


A warning sounds if the high-speed emergency braking feature detects that a collision is imminent. The high-speed emergency braking feature automatically applies the brakes if it detects that a collision is unavoidable. The instrument panel displays **IEB system not available (was activated)** after the high-speed emergency braking feature has been activated.

**Note:** The high-speed emergency braking feature does not work again until the system has been reset by a retailer/ authorised repairer.

### HIGH-SPEED EMERGENCY BRAKING LIMITATIONS

Make sure the following warnings have been read and fully understood before driving the vehicle. The high-speed emergency braking feature does not take away the requirement to always drive with due care and attention. Driving without due care and attention could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.


 The high-speed emergency braking feature may not react to slow-moving vehicles.

 The high-speed emergency braking feature does not react to stationary vehicles or vehicles travelling in the opposite direction.

The distance required to slow or stop the vehicle is dependent on the condition of the vehicle's tyres and the road surface.

## Collision avoidance

### BLIND SPOT MONITOR

-  Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 173, COLLISION AVOIDANCE SAFETY.



E210991

The blind spot monitor system monitors an area adjacent to, and approximately 8.5 m behind, the vehicle. When the system detects an overtaking vehicle, the amber warning icon (1):

- Flashes if the relevant direction indicator is being used.
- Illuminates continuously if the relevant direction indicator is not being used.
- Extinguishes when the system no longer detects a vehicle in the monitored area.

During initialisation, the warning icons flash in both door mirrors.

A warning indicator (2) illuminates in the door mirrors when the blind spot monitor system is disabled, not active, or there is a system fault.

The blind spot monitor system can be switched on and off via the **Driver assistance** instrument panel menu. See 69, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU.

### BLIND SPOT MONITOR LIMITATIONS

The blind spot monitor system does not operate when:

- Reverse (R) or Park (P) is selected.
- The vehicle's speed is below 10 km/h (6 mph).
- The radar sensors become blocked or stop working.
- The door mirrors stop working.
- An electrical connector is connected to a Jaguar Land Rover approved trailer socket.

**Note:** The blind spot monitor system remains disabled if a trailer is disconnected from the trailer socket while the engine is still running. Switch the vehicle's ignition off, then back on again, to enable the blind spot monitor system.

The blind spot monitor system:


- Works most effectively on multi-lane roads.
- Monitors an area of approximately 3.3 m from the side of the vehicle, and approximately 8.5 m behind the vehicle.
- May register false targets if travelling along a narrow lane.
- Does not work accurately if the sensors are misaligned due to bumper modifications, impact damage, etc.

The instrument panel and touchscreen display messages to inform the driver of any performance or system issues.



## Collision avoidance

### CLOSING VEHICLE SENSING

 **Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 173, COLLISION AVOIDANCE SAFETY.**

The closing vehicle sensing system monitors an area adjacent to, and up to approximately 70 m behind, the vehicle. Closing vehicle sensing is automatically switched on when the blind spot monitor system is switched on. See **179, BLIND SPOT MONITOR**.



E210991

An amber warning icon (1) is located in each door mirror. The icon:

- Illuminates continuously if the detected vehicle enters the area monitored by the blind spot monitor system, and the relevant direction indicator is not being used. See **179, BLIND SPOT MONITOR**.
- Flashes if the detected vehicle enters the area monitored by the blind spot monitor system, and the relevant direction indicator is being used. See **179, BLIND SPOT MONITOR**.

A warning indicator (2) illuminates in the door mirrors when the closing vehicle sensing system is disabled, not active, or there is a system fault.

### CLOSING VEHICLE SENSING LIMITATIONS

The closing vehicle sensing system does not operate when:

- Reverse (R) or Park (P) is selected.
- The vehicle's speed is below 10 km/h (6 mph).
- The sensors become blocked.
- The blind spot monitor system is not operating.
- The vehicle is travelling around a tight bend.
- An electrical connector is connected to a Jaguar Land Rover approved trailer socket.

**Note:** The closing vehicle sensing system remains disabled if a trailer is disconnected from the trailer socket while the engine is still running. Switch the vehicle's ignition off, then back on again, to enable the closing vehicle sensing system.

The closing vehicle sensing system:


- Works most effectively on multi-lane roads.
- Monitors an area of approximately 3.3 m from the side of the vehicle, and approximately 70 m behind the vehicle.
- May register false targets if travelling along a narrow lane.
- Does not work accurately if the sensors are misaligned due to bumper modifications, impact damage, etc.

The instrument panel and touchscreen display messages to inform the driver of any performance or system issues.



## Collision avoidance

### BLIND SPOT ASSIST

-  **Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 173, COLLISION AVOIDANCE SAFETY.**

The blind spot assist system applies corrective steering inputs if:

- A vehicle is detected in the blind spot monitor area, and:
- A lane change manoeuvre is attempted.



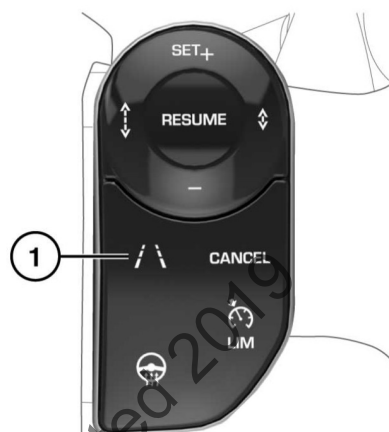
If a lane change manoeuvre is initiated while a risk is detected, the relevant door mirror displays a flashing vehicle warning icon.

At the same time, a rotational force is applied to the steering wheel to counter the lane change. The instrument panel displays a warning icon when a rotational force is applied to the steering wheel. The Head-Up Display (HUD) also displays a warning.

**Note:** Blind spot assist operates irrespective of the direction indicators being used.

If required, the steering input provided by the blind spot assist system can be overridden in order to complete a lane change manoeuvre.

The blind spot assist system can be switched on and off via the **Driver assistance** instrument panel menu. See **69, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.



E197992

When switched on, the blind spot assist system must then be activated. Press the button located on the steering wheel (1) to activate the blind spot assist system. Press the button a second time to deactivate the system. The button icon illuminates to confirm system status.

**Note:** The steering wheel button (1) also controls operation of the lane departure warning and Lane Keep Assist (LKA) systems. See **204, LANE DEPARTURE WARNING** and **206, LANE KEEP ASSIST (LKA)**.

### BLIND SPOT ASSIST LIMITATIONS

The blind spot assist system does not operate when:

- Reverse (R) or Park (P) is selected.
- The vehicle's speed is below 64 km/h (40 mph) or above 180 km/h (112 mph).
- The sensors in the rear bumper become blocked.



## Collision avoidance


- The camera under the rear-view mirror becomes blocked.
- The blind spot monitor system is not operating.
- An electrical connector is connected to a Jaguar Land Rover approved trailer socket.


The blind spot assist system:

- Works in conjunction with the blind spot monitor and closing vehicle sensing systems.
- May register false targets if travelling along a narrow lane.
- Does not work accurately if the sensors are misaligned due to bumper modifications, impact damage, etc.

The instrument panel displays messages to inform the driver of any performance or system issues.

### FORWARD TRAFFIC MONITOR

 **Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 173, COLLISION AVOIDANCE SAFETY.**

 **The driver is responsible for detecting obstacles, and estimating the vehicle's distance from them, when manoeuvring the vehicle. Failure to drive with due care and attention could cause an accident, leading to serious injury or death.**

**Note:** *The quality of the camera views may vary in different lighting conditions.*



E200635

1. **Vehicle warning** icon.
2. **Parking aid plan view.**

3. **Camera** icon.
4. **Feature disabled** icon.

## Collision avoidance

The forward traffic monitor feature assists the driver when exiting from a junction or parking space. The feature increases the visibility available to the driver when carrying out a low speed, forward manoeuvre.

The feature operates when the vehicle is travelling at speeds of up to 6 km/h (4 mph), down to a standstill. Visual and audible alerts are no longer generated once the vehicle reaches a speed of 6 km/h (4 mph). The touchscreen continues to display camera views at speeds above 6 km/h (4 mph).

**Note:** *The feature is not autonomous.*

Access to the feature is via the **CAMERA** or **PARKING AID** screens.

Switch the feature on by touching the **camera** icon (3) shortly before attempting a low speed, forward manoeuvre.


The touchscreen displays the **vehicle warning** icon (1) on the relevant side(s) of the screen if an imminent risk of a side impact is detected. An audible warning also sounds.


The feature detects vehicles from either side, travelling at speeds of up to 64 km/h (40 mph), with a time to collision of 3 seconds.


The touchscreen displays the **feature disabled** icon (4) if the feature is not available or a fault is detected. The instrument panel also displays a message if a camera or sensor is blocked.

If a fault is not rectified when the engine is switched off and then on again, consult a retailer/authorised repairer.

### REAR TRAFFIC MONITOR

 **Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 173, COLLISION AVOIDANCE SAFETY.**

 **The driver is responsible for detecting obstacles, and estimating the vehicle's distance from them, when manoeuvring the vehicle. Failure to drive with due care and attention could cause an accident, leading to serious injury or death.**

 **The rear camera and bumper must be kept clean and free from debris or obstructions, e.g., ice, frost, snow, leaves, mud, or insects. Failure to keep the rear camera and bumper clear may result in miscalculations, or false indications. Miscalculations and false indications could cause an accident, leading to serious injury or death.**

**Note:** *The quality of the camera views may vary in different lighting conditions.*

**Note:** *Depending on the market in which the vehicle is used, an audible and visual warning is provided during a reversing manoeuvre.*



## Collision avoidance



E203360

1. **Vehicle warning** icon.
2. Parking aid plan view.
3. **Camera** icon.
4. **Feature disabled** icon.

The rear traffic monitor feature assists the driver when carrying out a reversing manoeuvre.

The rear traffic monitor feature automatically activates when all the following conditions exist:

- The touchscreen is displaying either the **CAMERA** or **PARKING AIDS** screen.
- Reverse (**R**) gear is selected.
- The vehicle is travelling at speeds of less than 16 km/h (10 mph).

To switch from the **CAMERA** view to the **PARKING AIDS** view, touch the parking aid plan view (2). To switch from the **PARKING AIDS** view to the **CAMERA** view, touch the **camera** icon (3).

The rear traffic monitor feature detects cross traffic vehicles travelling at speeds of up to 55 km/h (34 mph). If activated, the touchscreen displays the **vehicle warning** icon (1) on the relevant side(s) of the screen. The warning icon informs the driver the vehicle is about to reverse into the path of a moving vehicle. An audible warning also sounds.

The touchscreen or instrument panel may also display warning messages.

If required, the rear traffic monitor feature can be disabled via the **Driver assistance instrument panel menu**. See **69, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

The touchscreen displays the **feature disabled** icon (4) if the feature is not available, or a fault is detected. The instrument panel may also display messages.

**Note:** If a fault in a single sensor is detected, the entire rear traffic monitor feature is disabled.

## Collision avoidance


If a fault is not rectified when the engine is switched off and then on again, consult a retailer/authorised repairer.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2019



## All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC)

### ALL TERRAIN PROGRESS CONTROL (ATPC) OVERVIEW


-  Use extreme care when manoeuvring the vehicle in a reverse direction, to avoid serious injury or death.

The All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC) system helps the driver to manoeuvre the vehicle on slippery surfaces, e.g., snow, grass, gravel, sand, or mud.

When the ATPC system is enabled, with the brake pedal fully released, the system helps to provide controlled and progressive assistance for the vehicle to:

- Maintain an automatically set low speed, for a steep descent. See **188, DESCENT CONTROL MODE**.
- Make progress and maintain a driver selected set speed, up to a maximum of 30 km/h (19 mph). See **188, FULL FUNCTION MODE**.
- Pull away from a standstill, in a forward or reverse direction on level ground, and uphill or downhill.
- Perform low speed manoeuvring in a forward or reverse direction.

### ALL TERRAIN PROGRESS CONTROL (ATPC)

-  Do not adjust the lower touchscreen controls, or allow the All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC) system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving. Driver distraction may potentially lead to an accident, resulting in serious injury or death.

**Note:** Do not attempt a steep descent if the ATPC system is not enabled, or if the instrument panel displays any warning messages.

**Note:** The driver must maintain full control of the steering and brakes at all times.

**Note:** The ATPC system cannot be enabled if the advanced tow assist, park assist, or wade sensing features are currently enabled.

**Note:** The vehicle's cruise control, speed limiter, and auto stop/start systems are disabled during operation of the ATPC system.



The ATPC icon is located on the lower touchscreen.

To enable the ATPC system, touch the ATPC icon. The instrument panel displays an ATPC on confirmation message and also illuminates the amber ATPC warning lamp to confirm selection. See **79, ALL TERRAIN PROGRESS CONTROL (ATPC) (AMBER)**.

Determine the required mode of operation for the ATPC system. See **188, DESCENT CONTROL MODE** and **188, FULL FUNCTION MODE**.

Touch the ATPC icon again to disable the ATPC system. The instrument panel extinguishes the ATPC warning lamp to confirm deselection.

**Note:** The driver can override the ATPC system operation, at any time, using the brake pedal or the accelerator pedal.

The ATPC system can be enabled when the vehicle is stationary and when the vehicle is moving. When the vehicle is stationary, apply the brake pedal to maintain control of the vehicle.

## All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC)

The ATPC system's enabled status is retained for up to 6 hours after the ignition is switched off. After this time, it has to be reselected if ATPC is still required when the ignition is switched on.

The ATPC system operation is influenced by the current terrain response driving program selection. For example, the grass gravel snow program requires gradual ATPC acceleration to help gain available wheel traction. The comfort program allows increased ATPC acceleration to help improve vehicle progress. See **191, TERRAIN RESPONSE**.

### USING ALL TERRAIN PROGRESS CONTROL (ATPC)

The All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC) system has two modes of operation:

- **Descent control mode:** Is the default setting when the ATPC system is enabled and the vehicle is stationary. See **188, DESCENT CONTROL MODE**. The ATPC system uses the braking system to maintain an automatically set low speed, for driving down a steep descent.
- **Full function mode:** Is automatically entered, when the ATPC system detects the driver has requested a higher set speed, via the operation of the steering wheel's **SET +** button. See **188, FULL FUNCTION MODE**. The ATPC system maintains the higher set speed by using the braking system and engine torque. Full function mode should be used for all other manoeuvres that require the vehicle to gain and make progress. For example, making an ascent, pulling away from a standstill, and driving on unstable and slippery driving surfaces.

The ATPC system automatically exits full function mode and reverts back to descent control mode, in the event that:

- Neutral (**N**) or Park (**P**) is selected.
- The Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is applied.
- The vehicle's brakes are firmly applied during operation of the ATPC system.
- The vehicle is brought to a standstill via light and gentle application of the brake pedal.

In all of the previously listed events, the instrument panel displays a relevant information message.

In the event that the vehicle's brake temperatures exceed the normal operating limits, the instrument panel displays a warning message. In this event, the ATPC system operation fades out and becomes temporarily inactive. When the brakes return to normal operating temperatures, the message extinguishes and the system resumes normal operation.

If an ATPC system fault is detected, the instrument panel displays a message indicating that ATPC is not available.

Some detected faults may allow the ATPC system to operate in descent control mode only. In this event, the instrument panel displays a message indicating that ATPC can only operate in descent control mode. Using the **SET+** button increases the set speed for descent control mode. Switching the ignition off and on again may reset the ATPC system.

If a detected fault persists, consult a retailer/authorised repairer.



## All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC)

### DESCENT CONTROL MODE

When the All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC) system enters descent control mode, the instrument panel displays a confirmation message. See **186, ALL TERRAIN PROGRESS CONTROL (ATPC)** and **187, USING ALL TERRAIN PROGRESS CONTROL (ATPC)**.

Operate as follows:

1. Select the correct driving program for the current terrain. See **191, TERRAIN RESPONSE OVERVIEW**.
2. Select the required position for the gear selector.
3. Release the vehicle's brakes to allow gravity to make the vehicle progress up to the descent control mode's default speed. The currently selected terrain response driving program determines the descent control mode's default speed. The default speed varies from a minimum of 1.8 km/h (1.1 mph) and up to a maximum of 12 km/h (7.5 mph).
4. The ATPC system maintains the descent control mode's default speed. ATPC exits descent control mode if it detects the use of the accelerator pedal or the steering wheel's **SET+** button. See **188, ALL TERRAIN PROGRESS CONTROL (ATPC) SETTINGS**.

**Note:** Descent control mode resumes when the accelerator pedal is released and the steering wheel's **SET+** button is not used.

### FULL FUNCTION MODE

When the All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC) system enters full function mode, the instrument panel displays a prompt message to select the desired set speed. See **188, ALL TERRAIN PROGRESS CONTROL (ATPC) SETTINGS** and **187, USING ALL TERRAIN PROGRESS CONTROL (ATPC)**.

**Note:** The driver's seat belt must be buckled and all of the doors must be closed to enable the ATPC system to enter full function mode. If these conditions are not met, the instrument panel displays a warning message.

**Note:** If the low traction launch feature is currently enabled, it is disabled when the ATPC system enters full function mode. See **200, LOW TRACTION LAUNCH**.

### ALL TERRAIN PROGRESS CONTROL (ATPC) SETTINGS

**Note:** When the vehicle is stationary, press and hold the brake pedal to maintain control of the vehicle while using the **SET+** button.

**Note:** Light and gentle application of the accelerator pedal temporarily overrides the current set speed. When the accelerator pedal is fully released, the ATPC system reverts back to the previously selected set speed.

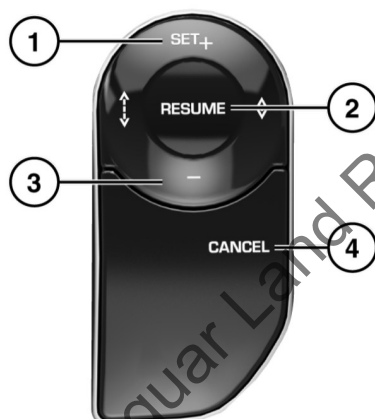
**Note:** Selecting very low speeds when pulling away on slippery surfaces can affect the vehicle's ability to make progress. For improved pulling away performance, it is recommended to select a set speed that is sufficient to maintain the vehicle's progress.



## All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC)

**Note:** Light and gentle application of the brake pedal lowers the set speed in full function mode. When the brake pedal is fully released, the ATPC system maintains the speed at which the vehicle was travelling when the brake pedal was released. If the brake pedal is pressed when the ATPC system is active, a slight pulsation movement may be felt through the brake pedal.

When the All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC) system is enabled, the desired set speed for the vehicle can be set and adjusted. Use the controls mounted on the right side of the steering wheel.



E197818

Operate as follows:

- 1. SET+** button: Press and release to enable the ATPC system to recognise that the desired set speed is to be set and adjusted. Press and release repeatedly, or press and hold, to increase the set speed up to a maximum speed of 30 km/h (19 mph). Alternatively, press the **SET+** button for the vehicle's current speed to be the set speed. The instrument panel displays the current set speed.
- 2. RESUME** button: Press to resume the set speed if the vehicle's speed has been lowered via gentle application of the brake pedal.

**⚠️ RESUME should only be used if the driver is aware of the set speed and intends to return to it. Inappropriate use can potentially lead to vehicle damage or personal injury.**

- 3. -** button: Press and release repeatedly, or press and hold, to decrease the desired set speed, down to a minimum of 1.8 km/h (1.1 mph).
- 4. CANCEL** button: Press to exit full function mode and revert the ATPC system to descent control mode. See **187, USING ALL TERRAIN PROGRESS CONTROL (ATPC)**.

**Note:** Pressing the **CANCEL** button retains the set speed for future use, unless the ATPC system or the ignition system is switched off.

The incremental increases or decreases of the set speed are influenced by the current set speed:

- 0.5 km/h (0.3 mph) increments if the set speed is between 0 and 5 km/h (0 and 3 mph).



## All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC)

- 1 km/h (0.6 mph) increments if the set speed is between 5 and 10 km/h (3 and 6 mph).
- 2 km/h (1.2 mph) increments if the set speed is between 10 and 30 km/h (6 and 19 mph).

When the vehicle is travelling at speeds between 30 km/h (19 mph) and 80 km/h (50 mph), the ATPC system operation is suspended. The system enters stand-by mode and the instrument panel flashes the ATPC warning lamp. The ATPC system operation resumes when the vehicle's speed is less than 30 km/h (19 mph). If the vehicle's speed exceeds 80 km/h (50 mph), the ATPC system disables and the warning lamp extinguishes. If required, the ATPC system has to be switched on again.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2019

## Driving programs

### TERRAIN RESPONSE OVERVIEW

**Note:** Changing between the terrain response driving programs alters various vehicle settings. For example, the engine's revolution speed (rpm) may alter while at a constant accelerator pedal position. The adaptive dynamics suspension may feel harder or softer and the steering system may feel heavier or lighter. The setting changes are not dramatic but are noticeable.

The terrain response system consists of different driving programs that can be selected to suit the current terrain and driving conditions, or the required driving style.

Make sure that the correct driving program is selected for the current driving conditions or the required driving style. The Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) system operation is automatically adapted to suit the current driving program selection. See **152, DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC)**.

Information relating to the suitability of each terrain response driving program for different types of surfaces can be displayed on the touchscreen. Select the **Off-Road Information** menu from the **4x4i** extra feature. See **199, OFF-ROAD INFORMATION**.

Further information on off-road driving, including tips and driving techniques, can be found at: [www.landrover.com](http://www.landrover.com).

### TERRAIN RESPONSE

**⚠** Do not adjust the lower touchscreen controls, or allow the terrain response system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving. Driver distraction can potentially lead to accidents, causing serious injury or death.

**Note:** The availability of some terrain response driving programs is dependent on the specification of the vehicle.

**Note:** The comfort driving program is automatically selected each time the vehicle's ignition is switched on. The previous driving program selection is not retained when the vehicle's ignition is switched off.

The vehicle's lower touchscreen displays the terrain response driving program options. **7, DRIVER CONTROLS**.

**Note:** The number of available driving program options is dependent upon the specification of the vehicle.



E225405



## Driving programs



Briefly touch the **driving programs** icon, located on the lower touchscreen, to display the available on-screen program icons. The default display of the **climate and comfort** icons, around the rotary control, is replaced with the **driving program** icons.

**Note:** The default display of **climate and comfort** icons automatically resumes after a predetermined time period, following a driving program selection or no user input.

Turn the rotary control to scroll through and select the required on-screen icon. The **AUTO** driving program can also be selected by touching the **driving programs** icon for more than 2 seconds.

The instrument panel displays a confirmation message and the relevant icon for the currently selected terrain response driving program.

### AUTO



Select the **AUTO** driving program to allow the vehicle to automatically select the appropriate driving program for the current terrain.

**Note:** The **AUTO** driving program does not select the **ECO** or Dynamic driving programs, because they are program options for a required driving style.

### COMFORT



Select the comfort driving program when driving on-road or off-road, on surfaces which are similar to a hard road surface. For example, dry cobbles, tarmac, and dry wooden planks.

The comfort driving program returns all of the vehicle's systems to their normal settings. Hill Descent Control (HDC) remains active if it was previously selected manually.

Select the comfort driving program when the need for any other terrain response driving program has passed.

### GRASS GRAVEL SNOW



Select the grass gravel snow program when driving on a firm surface that is covered with loose or slippery material.

For deep snow and gravel, it is recommended to select the sand driving program. In the event that automatic braking system operation restricts the vehicle's progress, switch off the Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) system. The DSC system should be switched on again as soon as the difficulty is overcome. See **152, SWITCHING DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) OFF.**

### MUD RUTS



Select the mud ruts driving program for terrain that is muddy, rutted, soft, or uneven.

## Driving programs

### SAND



Select the sand driving program for terrain which is predominantly soft. For example, dry sand, deep gravel, or deep snow.

In the event that automatic braking system operation restricts the vehicle's progress, switch off the Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) system. The DSC system should be switched on again as soon as the difficulty is overcome. **152, SWITCHING DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) OFF.**

If the current terrain is damp or wet sand, and is deep enough to cause the wheels to sink, select the mud ruts driving program.

### ECO



Select the **ECO** driving program to modify the vehicle's settings to help reduce fuel consumption and encourage a more efficient driving style. For example, the energy consumption of the climate and comfort features is reduced and the accelerator pedal response is adjusted.

Selecting the **ECO** driving program may automatically change some of the settings for the climate and comfort features.

Deselecting the **ECO** driving program, or the manual adjustment of each feature, overrides the automatic changes.

The possible automatic changes are as follows:

- The heated seats are switched off.
- The climate seats are switched off.
- The heated steering wheel is switched off.

- The heated windscreen does not automatically switch on when the engine is started, if configured to switch on via the **CLIMATE SETTINGS** menu. See **251, CLIMATE SETTINGS.**
- The auto blower speed is set to low, if currently set to a high speed.
- The audio volume may also be adjusted if it is currently set to a high volume.

**Note:** The **ECO** driving program may also make subtle changes to the rate of the cabin's heating or cooling, and also the amount of air recirculation.

**Note:** The availability of some features is dependent on the market and the specification of the vehicle.

The ECO data feature consists of various information display screens that provide extra vehicle efficiency data and guidance. Select **Eco Data** from the touchscreen's **EXTRA FEATURES** menu. See **219, EXTRA FEATURES.**

**Note:** The ECO data feature only begins recording data after the vehicle has travelled at least 1 km.

**Note:** The ECO data feature only monitors the driver's manual inputs, e.g., driver application of the accelerator and brake pedals. Automatic operation of the accelerator and brake pedals, via a vehicle feature, are not measured. Any relevant data not currently being measured or recorded illuminates grey in the instrument panel display.



## Driving programs

### DYNAMIC



Select the dynamic driving program to coordinate the vehicle's control systems to contribute to a more dynamic driving experience.

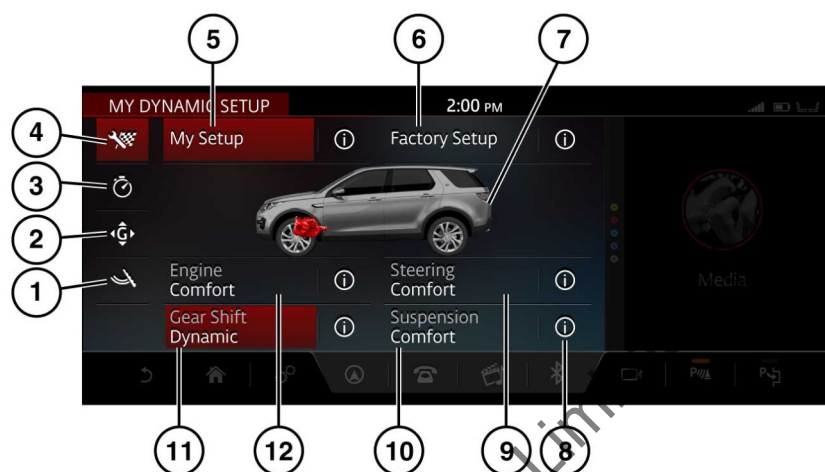
**Note:** *The dynamic driving program is a driving style setting, rather than a terrain response setting.*

During manual gear selection, with the dynamic driving program selected and the transmission in Sport (S), transmission upshifts are fully controlled by the driver. In this condition, an automatic transmission does not change up automatically, even when the engine's revolution speed (rpm) limit is reached. The instrument panel briefly illuminates the gearshift indicator warning lamp at the recommended (upshift) gear change point. See **82, GEARSHIFT (GREEN)**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2019

## Driving programs

### CONFIGURABLE DYNAMICS



E238225



**Do not adjust the touchscreen controls, or allow the configurable dynamics system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving. Driver distraction can potentially lead to accidents, causing serious injury or death.**

Some vehicles have the **Dynamic-i** extra feature, which displays information and allows the manual selection or deselection of the dynamic setting for some vehicle systems. Select **Dynamic-i** from the touchscreen's **EXTRA FEATURES** menu.

**Note:** The last displayed **Dynamic-i** screen becomes the default screen, when the **Dynamic-i** extra feature is next selected. If required, touch the **setup** icon (4) to display the **MY DYNAMIC SETUP** screen.

The touchscreen displays a message if the dynamic driving program is not currently enabled.

Operate as follows:

- 1. Pedal graph icon:** Touch to display the **PEDALS** screen to view a graphical display for the brake and accelerator pedal operation.
- 2. G meter icon:** Touch to display the **G METER** screen to view the current amount and direction of G Force.
- 3. Stopwatch icon:** Touch to display the **STOPWATCH** screen to view live timings and split timings.
- 4. Setup icon:** Touch to display the **MY DYNAMIC SETUP** screen.
- 5. My Setup soft key:** Touch to enable the driver preferences for each vehicle system. The previous driver selections are retained as the default settings. Selecting the **Dynamic** option for each vehicle system reverts the dynamic-i feature to the **Factory Setup** settings.



## Driving programs

6. **Factory Setup** soft key: Touch to collectively select the **Dynamic** option for each vehicle system. Selecting the **Comfort** option for any vehicle system reverts the dynamic-i feature to the **My Setup** options.
7. Displays the vehicle systems currently set to the **Dynamic** setting.
8. **Information** icon: Touch to display a brief description of the **Dynamic** setting adjustment for each vehicle system.
9. **Steering** soft key: Touch to select the **Dynamic** or **Comfort** setting.
10. **Suspension** soft key: Touch to select the **Dynamic** or **Comfort** setting.
11. **Gear Shift** soft key: Touch to select the **Dynamic** or **Comfort** setting.
12. **Engine** soft key: Touch to select the **Dynamic** or **Comfort** setting.

### DRIVER OVERRIDE OPTIONS

The Hill Descent Control (HDC) system automatically engages for some terrain response driving programs. If required, the HDC system can be manually switched off or on. The instrument panel displays the current HDC status. See **155, HILL DESCENT CONTROL (HDC)**.

The Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) system automatically engages after the selection of a terrain response driving program. If required, the DSC system can be manually switched off or on. See **152, SWITCHING DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) OFF**.

### SYSTEM DIFFICULTIES

- ⚠ Incorrect use of a terrain response driving program impairs the vehicle's response to the current terrain. The vehicle's suspension and transmission systems may also be damaged.

If a terrain response driving program fault is detected, the instrument panel displays a warning message. The comfort driving program is automatically selected and the relevant LED indicator lamp illuminates. In this event, the remaining terrain response driving programs become unavailable for selection. If the fault is temporary and normal operation resumes, the instrument panel displays a reactivation message. In this event, the comfort driving program remains enabled, but normal operation allows selection of the required terrain response driving program. If the fault is permanent, the instrument panel displays a warning message if a terrain response driving program selection is attempted. In this event, consult a retailer/authorized repairer.

The following list of events may cause the currently selected terrain response driving program's LED indicator lamp to flash amber:

- Inappropriate selection of a terrain response driving program.
- Operation of the Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) system.
- Continued heavy demand of the steering system.



## Driving programs

In these events, the instrument panel also displays further information. If appropriate action is not taken within 60 seconds, the warnings cease and the instrument panel displays the currently active terrain response driving program.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2019



## 4x4i

### 4x4i

Information and guidance features for off-road driving are displayed on the touchscreen by selecting **4x4i** from the **EXTRA FEATURES** menu. See **219, EXTRA FEATURES**.

Alternatively, the **4x4i** extra feature is also accessed via the Touch Pro Duo lower touchscreen controls. See **210, TOUCHSCREEN HOME MENU** and **212, LOWER TOUCHSCREEN CONTROLS**.



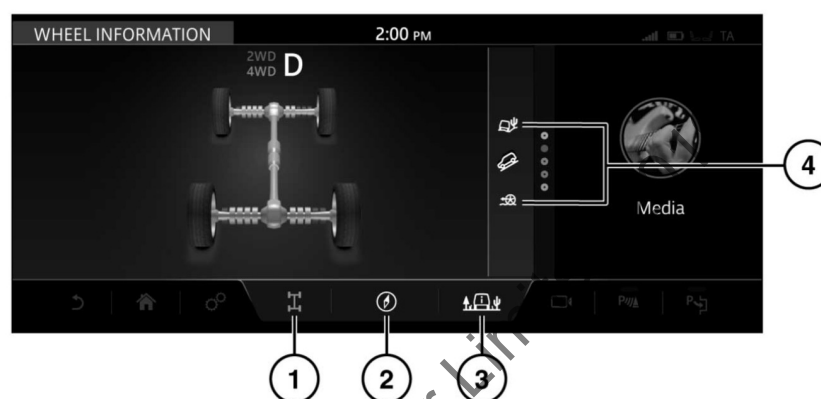
Touch the **Vehicle** soft key at the top of the lower touchscreen to display the **Vehicle** menu.



Touch the **4x4i** icon from the **Vehicle** menu.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2019

## OFF-ROAD INFORMATION



E188316

Select the **4x4i** extra feature to access 4 Wheel Drive (4WD) information and guidance features for off-road driving. See **219, EXTRA FEATURES**.

**Note:** The number of **4x4i** features is dependent on the specification of the vehicle.

Touch the **Off-Road Information** soft key from the **4x4i** menu screen.

Touch the relevant icon to display the required information:

1. **Wheel Information** icon: Touch to display information about the vehicle's wheels, transmission, and driveline. The following information is displayed:
  - The current automatic transmission gear selection.

- The status of the active driveline system, i.e., the automatic switching between 4WD and 2 Wheel Drive (2WD).
- The highlighted increments on the displayed axles indicate the constantly varying distribution of the transmission's driveline torque, currently supplied to each wheel.
- The displayed front wheels on the graphic move to indicate the current steering angle.
- The differential lock symbols display increments to indicate the current status of the locking torque applied to the vehicle's driveline.
 

**Note:** Dependent on the specification of the vehicle.



## 4x4i

- In the event that a wheel loses traction, i.e., wheel spin occurs, a coloured arrow displays on the relevant wheel. A yellow arrow indicates a low level of wheel spin. An orange arrow indicates a medium level of wheel spin. A red arrow indicates a high level of wheel spin.
- 2. **Compass** icon: Touch to display the direction orientation of the vehicle. The current latitude, longitude, and altitude also display.
- 3. **Terrain response information** icon: Touch to display information and guidance for the currently selected terrain response driving program.  
**Note:** Make sure that the vehicle is stationary, with the ignition switched on.
- 4. Highlighted icons indicate other vehicle features that are currently enabled. For example, Hill Descent Control (HDC) and the currently selected terrain response driving program.

**Note:** The number of available icons is dependent on the specification of the vehicle.

Further information on off-road driving, including tips and driving techniques, can be found at: [www.landrover.com](http://www.landrover.com).

### VEHICLE DIMENSIONS



To display the vehicle dimensions on the touchscreen, select **Vehicle Dimensions** from the **EXTRA FEATURES** menu screen. See **219, EXTRA FEATURES**.

Touch the alternative icon at the bottom of the screen to view other dimensions.

### LOW TRACTION LAUNCH

The low traction launch feature helps to further enhance low speed manoeuvring and pulling away from a standstill in adverse conditions.

Operation of the low traction launch feature is further enhanced if the grass gravel snow driving program is enabled. See **192, GRASS GRAVEL SNOW**.

The low traction launch feature also operates if either the automatic (**AUTO**) driving program or the comfort driving program is selected. See **191, TERRAIN RESPONSE OVERVIEW**.

To enable the low traction launch feature, select **Low Traction Launch** from the touchscreen's **4x4i** extra feature. Follow the on-screen instructions to meet the required vehicle conditions. See **219, EXTRA FEATURES**.

Alternatively, the touchscreen displays a pop-up menu if the following conditions are met and the grass gravel snow driving program is currently selected:

- The vehicle is stationary.
- The accelerator pedal is not pressed.
- All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC) has not entered full function mode if ATPC is currently enabled. See **187, USING ALL TERRAIN PROGRESS CONTROL (ATPC)**.

In this event, select the required **Yes** or **No** soft key from the pop-up menu to enable or disable the low traction launch feature. Alternatively, touch the **Do not show again** soft key to disable the pop-up menu. The pop-up menu is also enabled and disabled via the low traction launch feature settings. See **221, SYSTEM SETTINGS**.

The low traction launch feature only operates at vehicle speeds below 30 km/h (19 mph). If this maximum speed is exceeded, the low traction launch feature is automatically disabled.

The low traction launch feature also automatically disables if:

- The ATPC system enters full function mode, if ATPC is currently enabled.
- The dynamic, mud ruts, or sand driving programs are selected.
- The accelerator pedal is quickly pressed down to a high level driving demand position.
- A low traction launch system fault is detected. In this event, the instrument panel and the touchscreen display a message.

## DRIVE ASSIST

The drive assist feature uses the surround camera system to display forward vehicle images, to assist the driver during off-road driving.

Select **Drive Assist** from the **4x4i** extra feature. See **198, 4x4i**.



The touchscreen displays the **DRIVE ASSIST** screen. The **drive assist** icon illuminates to confirm selection.

The **DRIVE ASSIST** screen displays the area directly ahead of the vehicle that may not be visible to the driver.

The touchscreen camera view displays three images: one from the front camera and one from each door mirror camera. Touch either of the door mirror camera views for a two image display, i.e., the selected door mirror camera view and the front camera view. To return to the three image display, touch the front camera image or touch the **return** icon.



Touch the **clear sight** icon to view the **CLEAR SIGHT GROUND VIEW** screen. The icon illuminates to confirm selection. Follow the on-screen instructions. Alternatively, touch the **clear sight** icon from the **CAMERAS** menu screen. See **276, SURROUND CAMERA SYSTEM**.

**Note:** The clear sight ground view only activates at vehicle speeds less than 16 km/h (10 mph).

The **CLEAR SIGHT GROUND VIEW** screen displays a view of the terrain ahead of the front bumper and under the bonnet. The touchscreen view is generated using recordings from the vehicle's front camera. Hence, the touchscreen also displays text to confirm the images are not live. Recorded images of the vehicle's front wheels and the bonnet area are overlaid on the camera images.

The drive assist feature may not operate correctly in certain conditions, for example:

- If the system is operating in low ambient light levels.



## 4x4i



- If the vehicle's cameras are dirty or obscured.


The drive assist feature disables if Reverse (R) is engaged. In this event, the touchscreen displays a rear-view camera image.


The drive assist feature is suspended if the vehicle's speed exceeds 30 km/h (19 mph). The touchscreen displays a warning message. Normal operation resumes when the vehicle's speed is less than 28 km/h (17 mph).


### WADE SENSING SAFETY


Make sure the following warnings have been read and fully understood before using the wade sensing feature. Failure to use the wade sensing feature safely could result in serious personal injury, death, or vehicle damage.

-  **Avoid driving in floodwaters or any flowing water.**
-  **Do not assume that using the wade sensing feature makes wading any less dangerous. The wade sensing feature only detects the immediate level of water touching the vehicle. The wade sensing feature cannot detect or predict the depth of water surrounding the vehicle or rapid increases in water levels about to occur. Hence the wade sensing feature cannot predict whether it is safe to continue driving. The driver is responsible for assessing the safety of the driving conditions, potential hazards, and the current driving direction.**


 **When entering water from a steep slope, the water level may rise rapidly. The wade sensing feature may not be able to accurately warn the driver of the current water level.**

 **The wade sensing feature cannot detect accurate water levels if a layer of ice or snow exists on the surface of the water.**

 **The sensors for the wade sensing feature are located on the base of the door mirrors. The sensors must be kept clean and free from snow, ice, mud, and other debris. Failure to keep the sensors clean can result in sensor miscalculation.**

 **If the door mirrors are in the fold position, the wade sensing feature operates but displays false information.**

### WADE SENSING

-  **Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before using the wade sensing feature. See 202, WADE SENSING SAFETY.**

The wade sensing feature is designed to aid the driver in calculating the current depth while driving through water. The touchscreen displays the current detected water level and the vehicle's maximum wading depth.

**Note:** *The door mirrors must be in the normal (unfolded) position for correct operation of the wade sensing feature.*

Select **Wade Sensing** from the **4x4i** extra feature. See 219, **EXTRA FEATURES**.

The wade sensing feature cannot be enabled if the All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC) system is currently enabled. See **186, ALL TERRAIN PROGRESS CONTROL (ATPC) OVERVIEW**.

Use the **4X4i SETTINGS** menu screen to configure the units displayed in the wade sensing feature. Select the **Metres** or **Feet** soft key, as required. See **221, SYSTEM SETTINGS**.

If the detected water level approaches the vehicle's maximum wading depth, the touchscreen and the instrument panel display warning messages. Audible warning tones also sound.

If the wade sensing feature limitations are exceeded, the touchscreen image illuminates grey and the water level no longer displays.

The wade sensing feature does not operate when the vehicle's speed exceeds 10 km/h (6 mph) or the current gradient exceeds 10°. Operation automatically resumes when the vehicle's speed returns to less than 10 km/h (6 mph) or the current gradient is less than 10°. If the vehicle's speed exceeds 30 km/h (19 mph) for 30 seconds, the wade sensing feature automatically switches off.


**Note:** Operation of the wade sensing feature disables the parking aid system, the park assist system, and the auto stop/start system.





## Driving aids


### DRIVING AIDS SAFETY


Make sure the following warnings have been read and fully understood before using a driving aid system. Failure to use the driving aids safely could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.


 Despite the vehicle being fitted with driving aids, the driver is still responsible for driving with due care and attention. The driver should also observe all road markings. Only drive in a manner which is safe for the vehicle, its occupants, and other road users.


 Driving aids are a supplement to, not a replacement for, a safe driving style.


 Always use the door and rear-view mirrors. Drive safely at all times, and use the door and rear-view mirrors to help avoid accidents.


 Driving aids may not function at all speeds, or in all weather conditions.

 Driving aids do not correct errors of judgement when driving.

 The sensors and camera used by the driving aids may become impaired by mud, rain, frost, ice, snow, road spray, etc. The driving aids ability to detect a risk may subsequently be affected and may give false indications.


 Do not attach stickers or objects to the rear bumper or to the windscreen. Operation of the sensors and camera may subsequently become impaired. The driving aids ability to detect a risk may subsequently be affected, and may give false indications.

 Do not attach stickers or other objects to the door mirrors, as the blind spot icons and indicators may become obscured. Obscuring the icons and indicators could cause system miscalculations and increase the risk of a collision during a vehicle manoeuvre.

 The performance of the lane departure systems is affected by tyre pressures and steering alignment. Constant steering adjustment may be required if the tyre pressures are low, or if the steering is out of alignment. Constant steering adjustment increases the risk of an accident. Check the tyre pressures regularly. Consult a retailer/ authorised repairer if it is believed that the steering is out of alignment.

*Note: The driving aids radar is approved in all RTTE countries.*

### LANE DEPARTURE WARNING

 Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 204, DRIVING AIDS SAFETY.

The lane departure warning system alerts the driver when the vehicle is in danger of crossing a road lane boundary.



## Driving aids



E197992

The lane departure warning system is enabled via the **Driver assistance** instrument panel menu. Once enabled, press the button located on the steering wheel (1) to switch the system on and off.

**Note:** The steering wheel button (1) also controls operation of the Lane Keep Assist (LKA) and blind spot assist systems. See **206, LANE KEEP ASSIST (LKA)**.

The button icon illuminates when either the lane departure warning, LKA, or blind spot assist systems are switched on.

The instrument panel displays a lamp when the lane departure warning system is switched on. The lamp changes colour as follows:

- Grey lines indicate that the lane boundaries are not being tracked.
- Green lines indicate that the lane boundaries are being tracked.
- A red line indicates that the vehicle has crossed a lane boundary.

A vibration can also be felt through the steering wheel if the vehicle crosses a lane boundary.

Lane departure warning status can also be viewed via the **Driver assistance** instrument panel view. See **69, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

The **Driver assistance** view displays a visual representation of the vehicle's position within a lane in the instrument panel. The lane boundaries change colour as follows:

- Dashed white lines indicate that the lane boundaries are being tracked.
- A solid red line indicates that the vehicle has crossed a lane boundary.

### LANE DEPARTURE WARNING LIMITATIONS

The lane departure warning system is not active when:

- The brake pedal is pressed.
- A direction indicator is being used.
- The vehicle's speed is below 60 km/h (37 mph) or above 180 km/h (112 mph).
- The windscreen area in front of the rear-view mirror becomes blocked by stickers, mud, snow, debris, etc.
- Driving off-road.
- Driving in lanes narrower than approximately 2 m or wider than approximately 5 m.
- A fault occurs in the system.

The lane departure warning system:

- Does not detect unmarked road edges.
- Does not perform to the best of its ability in adverse weather conditions. For example, heavy fog, rain, or snow.

## Driving aids

The instrument panel displays messages to inform the driver of any performance or system issues.

### LANE KEEP ASSIST (LKA)

**⚠ Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 204, DRIVING AIDS SAFETY.**

Lane Keep Assist (LKA) provides two levels of assistance, if it determines the vehicle is in danger of crossing a road lane boundary.



E197992

The LKA system is enabled via the **Driver assistance** instrument panel menu. Once enabled, press the button located on the steering wheel (1) to switch the system on and off.

**Note:** The button (1) also controls operation of the lane departure warning and blind spot assist systems. See **204, LANE DEPARTURE WARNING.**

The button icon illuminates when either the LKA, lane departure warning, or blind spot assist systems are switched on.

Select the **LKA Settings** option in the **Driver assistance** instrument panel menu to choose the level of lane keeping assistance. See **69, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU.**

LKA options are:

- **Steering assist:** Applies an opposing, corrective steering input.
- **Steering vibrate:** Applies a vibration to the steering wheel.

When the vehicle's ignition is switched on, the previous LKA settings are recalled.

LKA uses the same instrument panel icons and displays as the lane departure warning system. See **204, LANE DEPARTURE WARNING.**

### LANE KEEP ASSIST (LKA) LIMITATIONS

The Lane Keep Assist (LKA) system is not active when:

- The brake pedal is pressed.
- A direction indicator is being used.
- The vehicle's speed is below 60 km/h (37 mph) or above 180 km/h (112 mph).
- The windscreen area in front of the rear-view mirror becomes blocked by stickers, mud, snow, debris, etc.
- Driving off-road.
- Driving in lanes narrower than approximately 2 m or wider than approximately 5 m.
- A fault occurs in the system.

The LKA system:


- May not detect unmarked road edges.

## Driving aids

- Does not perform to the best of its ability in adverse weather conditions. For example, heavy fog, rain, or snow.

The instrument panel displays messages to inform the driver of any performance or system issues.

### DRIVER CONDITION MONITOR

 **Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 204, DRIVING AIDS SAFETY.**

The driver condition monitor feature evaluates driving technique for signs of fatigue.



The instrument panel displays a white icon if it is determined that the driver is fatigued. The instrument panel also emits a chime.

If the initial warning is ignored, the instrument panel displays an amber icon after 15 minutes. The instrument panel also emits a chime. The icon remains illuminated until the **OK** button on the steering wheel is pressed.

The driver condition monitor feature can be switched on and off via the **Driver assistance** instrument panel menu. See **69, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

### DRIVER CONDITION MONITOR LIMITATIONS

The driver condition monitor is not active when:

- The vehicle's speed is below 60 km/h (37 mph) or above 180 km/h (112 mph).
- A fault occurs in the system.

### TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION



**Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 204, DRIVING AIDS SAFETY.**

The traffic sign recognition system uses a forward-facing camera, located in the rear-view mirror. The camera detects speed signs, no overtaking signs, and variable overhead speed signs.



The instrument panel displays symbols of recognised traffic signs. If no speed limit signs are detected, the instrument panel displays speed limit information taken from the navigation system.

The traffic sign recognition system is also able to detect traffic signs containing additional information. For example, the system is able to detect if a reduced speed limit is in place for wet conditions, and the wipers are switched on. In this instance, the reduced speed limit is displayed in the instrument panel.

**Note:** A reduced speed limit is also displayed if an approved Jaguar Land Rover trailer socket is connected to the vehicle.

The traffic sign recognition system can be switched on and off via the **Driver assistance** instrument panel menu. See **69, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

The traffic sign recognition system can also be adjusted via the **Driver assistance** instrument panel menu. Three levels of speed alert can be set, as follows:

- When the vehicle's speed is above the detected speed limit.



## Driving aids

- When the vehicle's speed is either 10 km/h or 5 mph above the detected speed limit.
- When the vehicle's speed is either 20 km/h or 10 mph above the detected speed limit.

### TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION LIMITATIONS

The traffic sign recognition system is not active when the windscreen area in front of the rear-view mirror becomes blocked. For example, by stickers, mud, snow, debris, etc.






The traffic sign recognition system:

- Does not perform to the best of its ability in adverse weather conditions. For example, heavy fog, rain, or snow.
- May not perform, or may perform incorrectly, when the vehicle is travelling through an area not covered by the navigation system.
- May function incorrectly when driving toward bright lights.
- May not recognise concealed, covered, or non-conforming road signs.
- May not perform to the best of its ability if the navigation information is incorrect.

The instrument panel and touchscreen display messages to inform the driver of any performance or system issues.

### TOUCHSCREEN SAFETY

Make sure the following warnings and cautions have been read and fully understood before using the touchscreen controls. Failure to use the touchscreen controls safely could result in an accident, leading to serious injury, death or damage to the vehicle and its components.

-  **Do not adjust the touchscreen controls, or allow the system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.**
-  Do not use excessive pressure when selecting items on the touchscreen. Using excessive pressure could cause the touchscreen to malfunction or even lead to complete failure.
-  Do not use abrasive cleaners on the touchscreen. For approved cleaning products, contact a retailer/authorised repairer.
-  Always run the engine during prolonged use of the touchscreen. Failure to do so may discharge the vehicle's battery and prevent the engine from starting.
-  Avoid spilling or splashing liquids onto the touchscreen. The spilling or splashing of liquids could cause the touchscreen to malfunction or even lead to complete failure.



## Touchscreen home

### TOUCHSCREEN HOME MENU



E236266



**Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 209, TOUCHSCREEN SAFETY.**

**Note:** A gloved hand may not operate the touchscreen. Remove glove(s) before selecting any touchscreen features.

Swipe the home menu screen to the left, to access the **EXTRA FEATURES** screens or to the right, to access the **MY HOME** screens.

- 1. Navigation:** Touch to select the **NAVIGATION** assistance map. See **291, USING THE NAVIGATION SYSTEM**.
- 2. Media:** Touch to select the **SELECT SOURCE** media screen. If the media system is already switched on, touch to select the current media source menu. See **224, MEDIA CONTROLS**.

**Note:** When the system is active, current information for the media being played is displayed.

- 3. Phone:** Touch to select the **PHONE** screen. See **280, PHONE SYSTEM OVERVIEW**.
- 4. Status icons:** Display the status of a vehicle feature or application. See **214, TOUCHSCREEN STATUS ICONS**.
- 5. Page indicator:** Indicates the number of available screens. The solid dot indicates the position of the currently displayed screen.
- 6. Phone shortcut icons:** The phone shortcut icons displayed are dependent on the vehicle's market specification. See **217, PHONE SHORTCUT ICONS**.
- 7. Driving icons:** The driving icons displayed are dependent on the vehicle's market specification. See **215, TOUCHSCREEN DRIVING ICONS**.

## Touchscreen home

8. Feature icons: The feature icons displayed are dependent on the vehicle's market specification. See **215, TOUCHSCREEN FEATURE ICONS**.
  9. Global icons: The global icons displayed are dependent on the vehicle's market specification. See **216, TOUCHSCREEN GLOBAL ICONS**.
  10. Navigation shortcut icons: The navigation shortcut icons displayed are dependent on the vehicle's market specification. See **216, NAVIGATION SHORTCUT ICONS**.
  11. Media shortcut icons: The media shortcut icons displayed are dependent on the vehicle's market specification. See **216, MEDIA SHORTCUT ICONS**.
- **Weather:** Displays the temperature and a description of the current weather. Also displays the weather for the set destination and favourite locations.
  - **News:** Displays the headlines of the selected news channel and enables news stories to be read out.  
*Note: The weather and news are features that are utilised via Live Apps. See 316, LIVE APPS*
- For more detailed information, touch the centre of the feature to shortcut to the main display.

### TOUCHSCREEN SIDE PANEL

The touchscreen's side panel allows features to be displayed and controlled independently of the main view. See **224, MEDIA CONTROLS**.

The following features can be displayed, alongside the main view:

- **Media:** Displays the currently selected media source, and enables tracks, channels, or stations to be changed and the sound to be muted.
- **Navigation:** Displays either the current location or the set destination, the ETA, or the distance remaining to the destination.
- **Phone:** Displays a list of recent calls, details of the current call in progress, and the **end call** and **mute call** icons.



## Touchscreen home

### LOWER TOUCHSCREEN CONTROLS



E226869

**⚠** Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 209, TOUCHSCREEN SAFETY.

**Note:** A gloved hand may not operate the touchscreen. Remove glove(s) before selecting any touchscreen features.

#### 1. Power and volume control:

- Press to switch the media system on and off.

**Note:** The media system operates with the ignition on or off, but always switches off when the ignition is switched off. Switch the system on again, if required.

- Rotate to adjust the volume level. The touchscreen displays the volume level.

**Note:** If the volume is turned to zero while a media source is playing, the media pauses play. Play resumes when a greater volume is selected.

#### 2. Climate controls: Further information on climate controls can be found in the relevant section of the Owner's Handbook. See 249, FRONT CLIMATE CONTROL.



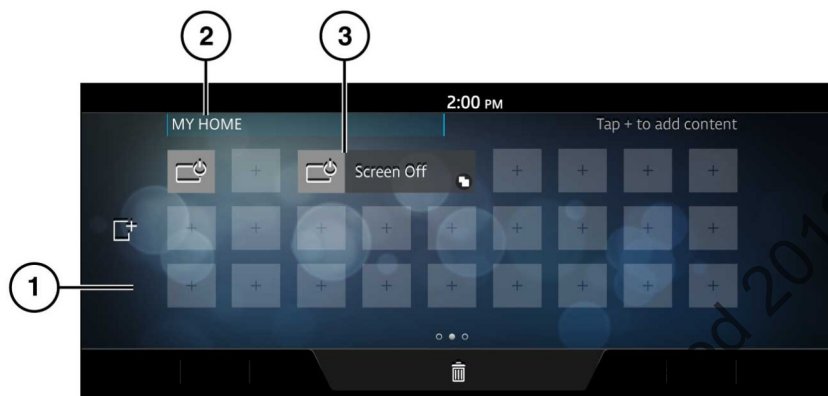
## Touchscreen home

3. Cabin, seat temperature and massage, terrain response operation, and advanced tow assist rotary controls: Further information on the cabin, seat temperature and massage, terrain response operation, and advanced tow assist rotary controls can be found in the relevant section of the Owner's Handbook. See **249, FRONT CLIMATE CONTROL, 257, HEATED SEATS, 257, CLIMATE SEATS, 258, SEAT MASSAGE, 191, TERRAIN RESPONSE** and **123, ADVANCED TOW ASSIST**.
4. **All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC)** icon: Further information on the ATPC operation can be found in the relevant section of the Owner's Handbook. See **186, ALL TERRAIN PROGRESS CONTROL (ATPC) OVERVIEW**.
5. Driving programs button: Press to switch the driving programs options on or off. Further information on the driving programs can be found in the relevant section of the Owner's Handbook. See **191, TERRAIN RESPONSE**.
6. **Hill Descent Control (HDC)** icon: Further information on the HDC response operation can be found in the relevant section of the Owner's Handbook. See **155, HILL DESCENT CONTROL (HDC)**.
7. **Dynamic Stability Control (DSC)** icon: Further information on the DSC operation can be found in the relevant section of the Owner's Handbook. See **152, DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC)**.
8. Blower operation button: Press to switch the blower fan speed display on or off. Further information on climate controls can be found in the relevant section of the Owner's Handbook. See **249, FRONT CLIMATE CONTROL**.
9. **A OFF** icon: Further information on the auto stop/start operation can be found in the relevant section of the Owner's Handbook. See **142, AUTO STOP/START**.



## Touchscreen home

### MY HOME SCREEN



E200654



**Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 209, TOUCHSCREEN SAFETY.**

**Note:** The screen shown is in edit mode.

From the **HOME** screen, swipe the touchscreen to the right, to access the **MY HOME** screen. See 210, **TOUCHSCREEN HOME MENU**.

To view all of the **MY HOME** screens, continue to swipe to the right. To return to the **HOME** screen swipe to the left.

The **MY HOME** screen enables the user to display and arrange widgets and shortcuts to applications.

1. **MY HOME** screen: Multiple screens are available.
2. Personalised **MY HOME** screen name: Touch to edit.

3. Widgets and shortcuts: The widgets and shortcuts are available in different sizes and can be moved to different locations.

### TOUCHSCREEN STATUS ICONS

The icons displayed at the top of the screen provide information about the status of the vehicle feature or application.



Phone signal strength indicator.



Phone battery level indicator.








Status of the heated or climate seats.




Traffic Alerts.





## Touchscreen home

-  Wi-Fi signal.
-  Connecting.
-  Phone set to divert incoming calls.
-  Network connection status.
-  No mobile network connection.


### TOUCHSCREEN DRIVING ICONS


-  **Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 209, TOUCHSCREEN SAFETY.**

The following driving icon options may be displayed on the footer bar:


-  **Park assist** icon: Touch to switch the **PARK ASSIST** screen on or off. See **268, PARK ASSIST**.
-  **Parking aids** icon: Touch to switch the **PARKING AIDS** screen on or off. See **265, USING THE PARKING AID**.
-  **Cameras** icon: Touch to select the **CAMERAS** screen. See **276, SURROUND CAMERA SYSTEM**.
-  **4x4i** icon: Touch to switch the 4x4i screen on or off. See **198, 4x4i**.

-  **Dynamic-i** icon: Touch to switch the Dynamic-i screen on or off. See **195, CONFIGURABLE DYNAMICS**.


-  **Power** icon: Touch to switch the touchscreen off.


-  **Media mute** icon: Touch to mute the media sound.


### TOUCHSCREEN FEATURE ICONS

-  **Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 209, TOUCHSCREEN SAFETY.**


The following feature icon options may be displayed on the footer bar:

-  **Navigation** icon: Touch to select the **NAVIGATION** assistance map. See **291, USING THE NAVIGATION SYSTEM**.

-  **Phone** icon: Touch to select the **PHONE** screen. See **280, PHONE SYSTEM OVERVIEW**.

-  **Media** icon: Touch to select the **SELECT SOURCE** media screen. If the media system is already switched on, touch to select the current media source menu. See **224, MEDIA CONTROLS**.

**Note:** When the system is active, current information for the media being played is displayed.

-  **Seats** icon: Touch to select the **SEATS** screen. See **256, SEAT COMFORT AND ADJUSTMENT**.



## Touchscreen home



**Climate** icon: Touch to select the **FRONT CLIMATE** control screen. See **249, FRONT CLIMATE CONTROL**.



**Bluetooth** icon: Touch to select the Bluetooth® wireless technology device screen. See **289, BLUETOOTH® INFORMATION**.



**Valet Mode** icon: Touch to select the **VALET MODE** screen. See **219, SELECTING VALET MODE**.



**Audio Settings** icon: Touch to select the **AUDIO SETTINGS** screen. See **226, AUDIO SETTINGS**.



**Timed Climate** icon: Touch to select the **TIMED CLIMATE** screen. See **259, TIMED CLIMATE TOUCHSCREEN CONTROLS**.



**ECO** icon: Touch to select the **ECO** screen. See **193, ECO**.

### TOUCHSCREEN GLOBAL ICONS



**Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 209, TOUCHSCREEN SAFETY.**

The following global icon options may be displayed on the footer bar:



**Settings** icon: Touch to select the **Home Settings** via the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu.



**Home** icon: Touch to select the **PREVIEWS** screen. Touch to select the **HOME** screen, when in other screens.



**Return** icon: Touch to return to a higher menu level.

**Note:** The **return** icon is disabled on the **HOME** screen.

### NAVIGATION SHORTCUT ICONS



**Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 209, TOUCHSCREEN SAFETY.**

The following navigation shortcut icon options may be displayed in the navigation pane:



**Take me home** icon: Touch to activate a stored home destination, or input the home destination details.



**Search navigation** icon: Touch to activate a navigation search. See **291, USING THE NAVIGATION SYSTEM**.



**Set Destination** icon: Touch to display a list of stored destinations.

### MEDIA SHORTCUT ICONS



**Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 209, TOUCHSCREEN SAFETY.**

The following media shortcut icon options may be displayed in the media pane:

## Touchscreen home



**Source selection** icon: Touch to select the media select source screen options. See **224, MEDIA CONTROLS**.



**Search media** icon: Touch to search through the media library options.



**Favourites** icon: Touch to view the stored favourites list.



**Queue** icon: Touch to view the media queue.

### PHONE SHORTCUT ICONS



**Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 209, TOUCHSCREEN SAFETY.**

**Note:** If a phone is not paired to the vehicle then no icons are displayed in the touchscreen home menu phone pane.

The following phone shortcut icon options may be displayed in the phone pane:



**Swap phone** icon: Touch to change the phone. See **283, PAIRING AND CONNECTING USING THE PHONE**.



**Search contact** icon: Touch to search the phone contact list.



**Recent calls** icon: Touch to view a list of recent calls.

### EDITING SHORTCUTS, WIDGETS AND SCREENS



**Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 209, TOUCHSCREEN SAFETY.**

**Adding a widget:** Touch and hold the screen to display edit mode. Touch any of the + symbols on the screen and select from the available categories in the **CONTENT LIBRARY**. Scroll through the gallery of widgets using the direction arrows, or swipe the screen. Touch to select a widget. The widget is then displayed on the **MY HOME** screen.

**Moving a widget:** Touch and hold the screen to display edit mode. Drag the widget to a new location. To move the widget to another **MY HOME** screen, drag it to the side of the screen.

**Resizing a widget:** Touch and hold the screen to display edit mode. When the widget has been selected, moved to a new location, or newly created, a resize toggle is displayed. Touch the toggle to resize the widget.

**Delete a widget:** Touch and hold the screen to display edit mode. Drag the widget to the delete bar.

**Edit a personalised screen name:** Touch and hold the screen to display edit mode. Touch the screen name and enter text using the keyboard. Touch **OK** to complete.



## Touchscreen home


Moving a screen: Touch the **home** icon to display the **PREVIEW** screen for the **HOME, MY HOME** and **EXTRA FEATURES** screens. Touch the preview to display the chosen screen. Touch and hold the screen to display the **EDIT PREVIEWS** screen. Touch and drag the screen preview to the required position.

Adding a screen: While in the **PREVIEW** screen, touch and hold the screen to display the **EDIT PREVIEWS** screen. Touch the **+** symbol to create a new **MY HOME** screen. When adding or moving a widget, it can be dragged to the left side of the screen to create a new **MY HOME** screen.

**Note:** A maximum of four **MY HOME** screens can be added.

Deleting a screen: While in the **PREVIEW** screen, touch and hold the screen to display the **EDIT PREVIEWS** screen. Touch and hold the chosen **MY HOME** screen, and drag it to the delete bar and release.

### TOUCHSCREEN USE


 **Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 209, TOUCHSCREEN SAFETY.**

Definitions for the various button taps and touchscreen gestures used in this handbook:

- **Touch:** Briefly touch the screen's surface with a fingertip.
- **Touch and hold:** Touch the screen's surface for an extended period of time.
- **Swipe:** Move a fingertip over the screen's surface in a fast linear movement.

- **Drag:** Touch an object and move it with a fingertip over the screen's surface, without losing contact.
- **Pinch:** Spread two fingers apart on a map or image to zoom in. Pinch two fingers together on a map or image to zoom out.


### TOUCHSCREEN CARE

 **Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 209, TOUCHSCREEN SAFETY.**

Follow the cleaning instructions. See **348, CLEANING SCREENS AND DISPLAYS.**

## Touchscreen extra features

### EXTRA FEATURES

-  **Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 209, TOUCHSCREEN SAFETY.**


Select the **EXTRA FEATURES** screens from the **TOUCHSCREEN HOME MENU**. See **210, TOUCHSCREEN HOME MENU**.

The **EXTRA FEATURES** menu screens give options for enabling, disabling, or adjusting the settings of available features. Touch the extra feature to launch the required application or settings screen:

- **Eco Data:** The ECO data system is designed to provide vehicle data and driving tips to help the driver maximise fuel economy. Real-time ECO data can be viewed in the instrument panel.
- **Cameras.**
- **Web Browser.**
- **Live.**
- **Seats.**
- **Timed Climate.**
- **Valet Mode.**
- **Contacts.**
- **Voice.**
- **Bluetooth.**
- **Dynamic i.**
- **Ambient Lighting.**
- **Vehicle Dimensions.**
- **4x4i:** Allows the low traction launch feature to be enabled or disabled.
- **Deployable Tow Bar.**
- **Apple CarPlay.**
- **Android Auto.**

**Note:** The number of extra features varies, depending on the specification of the vehicle.

### SELECTING VALET MODE

-  **Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 209, TOUCHSCREEN SAFETY.**

Valet mode allows the vehicle to be driven and locked by a parking attendant, without giving access to the loadspace. Valet mode also prevents operation of the touchscreen, to prevent access to phone numbers or navigation addresses. Only essential driver assist features are available, such as cameras and parking aid.

Activate valet mode via the **Master PIN**. See **221, GENERAL SETTINGS**.

Alternatively, use a temporary PIN, if the master PIN is unknown, to allow someone other than the owner to set valet mode.

When set with the master PIN, only the master PIN can unlock valet mode. When set with a temporary PIN, the temporary PIN or the master PIN unlocks valet mode.

To select valet mode:

1. Touch **Valet Mode** in the **EXTRA FEATURES** screen. See **219, EXTRA FEATURES**.
2. Enter the **Master PIN** or a memorable four digit temporary PIN. When a temporary PIN is used, it has to be entered a second time to confirm the PIN. To cancel the PIN, touch the **return** icon.<sup>1</sup> If the confirmation PIN is incorrectly entered, then a prompt is displayed to re-enter the PIN a second time. See **221, GENERAL SETTINGS**.




## Touchscreen extra features

3. The touchscreen start up screen is displayed to indicate that the PIN has been accepted and valet mode is active. The touchscreen and loadspace are now securely locked in valet mode.



return icon.<sup>1</sup>

### DESELECTING VALET MODE

-  **Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 209, TOUCHSCREEN SAFETY.**

To deselect valet mode:

1. When re-entering the vehicle, touch the touchscreen.
2. Enter the master PIN, or the temporary PIN if used to set. Touch **OK**.
3. The touchscreen opens at the previously displayed screen to indicate that the PIN has been accepted and valet mode has been deactivated. The touchscreen is enabled and the loadspace returns to the previously set security requirement.

**Note:** *If the master PIN is forgotten, valet mode can only be deactivated by a retailer/authorised repairer.*




© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2019



## Touchscreen settings

### GENERAL SETTINGS

-  Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 209, TOUCHSCREEN SAFETY.

Accessing the touchscreen settings allows for the adjustment of the general system settings.

1. Touch the **settings** icon<sup>1</sup> from any screen.
2. Touch **All Settings**.
3. Touch **General** to display the **GENERAL SETTINGS** menu.

The **GENERAL SETTINGS** menu is divided into categories:

- **Time and Date.**
- **Display.**
- **Screensaver.**

**Note:** Screensaver vehicle images may not be representative of the actual vehicle.

- **Master PIN.**

**Note:** The default master PIN is **1926**. Change the master PIN to a personal PIN as soon as possible.


- **Legal information.**
- **Data Collection** (only when set).

Touch to display the list of settings for the required system.



**settings** icon.<sup>1</sup>

### SYSTEM SETTINGS

-  Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 209, TOUCHSCREEN SAFETY.

System settings allows for the adjustment of the selected features settings.

1. Touch the **settings** icon<sup>1</sup> from any screen.
2. Touch **All Settings**.
3. Touch **Features**.

The **Features** settings menu is divided into categories:

- **Home.**
- **Navigation.**
- **Media.**
- **Phone.**
- **Climate.**
- **Seats.**
- **Cameras.**
- **Live.**
- **Voice.**
- **Low Traction Launch.**

Touch to display the list of settings for the required system.

**Note:** The list varies, depending on the specification of the vehicle.



**settings** icon.<sup>1</sup>

### CUSTOMISABLE BUTTON SETTINGS

To customise a favourite feature:

1. Touch the **settings** icon. See 216, TOUCHSCREEN GLOBAL ICONS.



## Touchscreen settings

2. Touch **All settings**.

3. Touch **Features**.

4. Touch **Favourite button**.

Two customisable steering wheel button options are available to program on the **FAVOURITE BUTTON** screen:

- **Short press.**
- **Long press.**

To replace a stored feature, touching the feature name of the respective button options opens the **CONTENT LIBRARY** screen.

Touch one of the following menu features to store and replace the present displayed customised button option:





- **Cancel guidance.**
- **Next source.**
- **Mute speaker.**
- **Play/pause.**
- **Voicemail.**
- **Mute phone.**
- **Hold.**
- **Auto reject.**
- **Upper screen off.**
- **Traffic alerts.**

Touch the touchscreen home menu **return** icon after feature storage. See **216, TOUCHSCREEN GLOBAL ICONS.**

A corresponding short press or long press of the steering wheel favourite button operates the stored feature. See **225, AUDIO STEERING WHEEL CONTROLS.**

### MEDIA SAFETY

Make sure the following warnings and cautions have been read and fully understood before using any of the media controls or features. Failure to use the media controls or features safely could result in an accident, leading to serious injury, death or damage to the vehicle and its components.

-  **Do not adjust the touchscreen controls, or allow the system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.**
-  **In the interest of safety, only operate or adjust the audio steering wheel controls when it is safe to do so. Failure to do so can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.**
-  **Sustained exposure to high sound levels, greater than 85 decibels, can damage hearing.**
-  Avoid spilling or splashing liquids onto the touchscreen. The spilling or splashing of liquids could cause the touchscreen to malfunction or even lead to complete failure.






## Media

### MEDIA CONTROLS



E226892

 **Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 223, MEDIA SAFETY.**

From the **HOME** menu screen, select the **Media** soft key. See 210, **TOUCHSCREEN HOME MENU**.

1. Media source: Touch to select the media source.

2. Side panel: Displays the last used feature.
3. **Media** icon: Touch to select the media system. If the media system is already switched on, touch to select the media source.
4. **Settings** icon: Select **Audio Settings**, or specific media settings, via the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. See 226, **AUDIO SETTINGS**.
5. **Return** icon: Touch to return to a higher menu level.
6. Power and volume control:

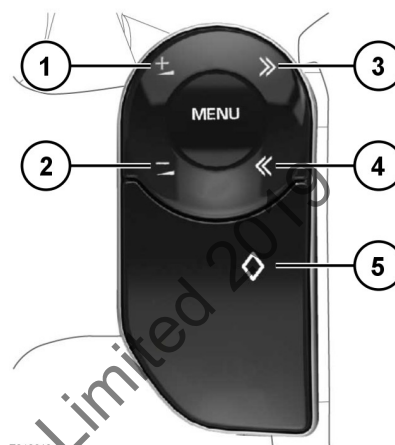
- Press to switch the media system on or off.

**Note:** The media system operates with the ignition on or off, but always switches off when the ignition is switched off. Switch the system on again, if required.

- Rotate to adjust the volume level. The touchscreen displays the volume level.

**Note:** If the volume is turned to zero while a media source is playing, the media pauses play. Play resumes when a greater volume is selected.

## AUDIO STEERING WHEEL CONTROLS



E212946



**Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 223, MEDIA SAFETY.**

**Note:** Customisation of the audio steering wheel controls can only be performed if the vehicle is stationary and valet mode is exited.

**Note:** If valet mode has been selected, no customised audio steering wheel selections are available.

**Note:** When a customised audio steering wheel function is selected, the instrument panel and touchscreen display a notification message.

**Note:** The **favourites** icon is set to the factory default setting until a customised function has been stored.

1. Volume up: Press to increase the volume for any source.
2. Volume down: Press to decrease the volume for any source.



## Media

3. Seek up:  
Press and release:
  - To select the next radio favourite.
  - To select the next track on the chosen media library or the connected portable media source.
  - To scroll up lists of calls or contact entries, when the phone is in use.
  - To select the next TV channel on the channel list or the next video.
  - To seek up the frequency to the next radio station.
4. Seek down:  
Press and release:
  - To select the previous radio favourite.
  - To select the previous track, or the start of the current track, on the chosen media library or the connected portable media source.
  - To scroll down lists of calls or contact entries, when the phone is in use.
  - To select the previous TV channel on the channel list or the previous video.
  - To seek down the frequency to the next radio station.
5. **Favourites** button: Press to operate the stored steering wheel button favourites. See **221, CUSTOMISABLE BUTTON SETTINGS**.

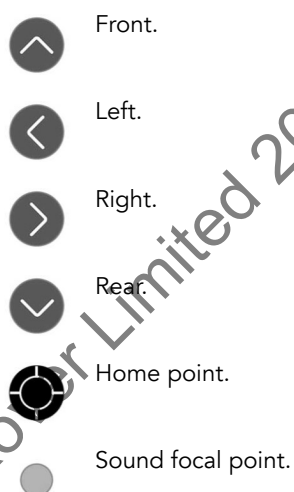
### AUDIO SETTINGS

To view or alter the audio settings, touch the **settings** icon<sup>1</sup> to access the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu and then select **Audio Settings**.

To adjust the sound settings:

1. Touch **+** or **-** to adjust the **Bass**, **Treble**, or **Subwoofer** levels.
2. Alternatively, touch the slider bar and drag, or touch anywhere on the bar, and release.

To adjust the balance and fade settings:



1. Touch the arrows to move the sound focal point to the desired area of the vehicle.
2. Alternatively, touch the sound focal point and drag it to the required position, or touch anywhere on the vehicle graphic, and release.
3. To return to the default setting, touch the home point.

If **Meridian Surround** or **Meridian Reference** is available, adjust the surround sound settings by touching either **Meridian**, **Dolby Pro Logic IIx**, or **DTS Neo:6** to select **Surround Sound**. Select **Stereo** to switch **Surround Sound** off.

**Note:** Surround sound options are not available for certain sources where the surround sound mode is set automatically.



settings icon.<sup>1</sup>

## GRACENOTE® END USER LICENSING AGREEMENT

### Gracenote Terms of Use

This application or device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of Emeryville, California ("Gracenote"). The software from Gracenote (the "Gracenote Software") enables this application to do disc or file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information ("Gracenote Data") from online servers or embedded databases (collectively, "Gracenote Servers") and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended end-user functions of this application or device.

This application or device may contain content belonging to Gracenote's providers. If so, all of the restrictions set forth herein with respect to Gracenote Data shall also apply to such content and such content providers shall be entitled to all of the benefits and protections set forth herein that are available to Gracenote. You agree that you will use Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data to any third party. YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.

You agree that your non-exclusive licence to use the Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your licence ends, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers. Gracenote reserves all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide. You agree that Gracenote may enforce its rights under this agreement against you directly in its own name.

The Gracenote service uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow the Gracenote service to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page for the Gracenote **Privacy Policy** for the Gracenote service.



## Media

The Gracenote Software and each item of Gracenote Data are licensed to you "AS IS." Gracenote makes no representations or warranties, express or implied, regarding the accuracy of any Gracenote Data from the Gracenote Servers.

Gracenote reserves the right to delete data from the Gracenote Servers or to change data categories for any cause that Gracenote deems sufficient. No warranty is made that the Gracenote Software or Gracenote Servers are error-free or that functioning of Gracenote Software or Gracenote Servers will be uninterrupted. Gracenote is not obligated to provide you with new enhanced or additional data types or categories that Gracenote may provide in the future and is free to discontinue its services at any time.

GRACENOTE DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. GRACENOTE DOES NOT WARRANT THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES.

© 2013. Gracenote, Inc. All Rights Reserved.

## LICENSING

E180920



E135227



E145346



E132539



Manufactured under licence from Dolby Laboratories.

Dolby, Dolby Audio, Dolby Digital, Pro Logic, and the double-D symbol are registered trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.

E132540





Manufactured under licence, under U.S. Patent number's: 5451942, 5956674, 5974380, 5978762, 6487535, 7003467 & other U.S. and worldwide patents issued & pending. DTS, the Symbol, and Neo:6 are registered trademarks, & DTS Digital Surround and the DTS logos are trademarks of DTS, Inc. Product includes software. © DTS, Inc. All Rights Reserved.



E132541



E132542

Manufactured under licence, under U.S. Patent number's: 5451942, 5956674, 5974380, 5978762, 6487535 & other U.S. and worldwide patents issued & pending. DTS and the Symbol are registered trademarks, & DTS 2.0+ Digital Out and the DTS logos are trademarks of DTS, Inc. Product includes software. © DTS, Inc. All Rights Reserved.

DTS, the Symbol, DTS and the Symbol together, and DTS Neo:X are registered trademarks or trademarks of DTS, Inc. in the United States and/or other countries. © DTS, Inc. All Rights Reserved.



E132544

Music and video recognition technology and related data are provided by Gracenote®. Gracenote is the industry standard in music recognition technology and related content delivery. For more information, please visit:

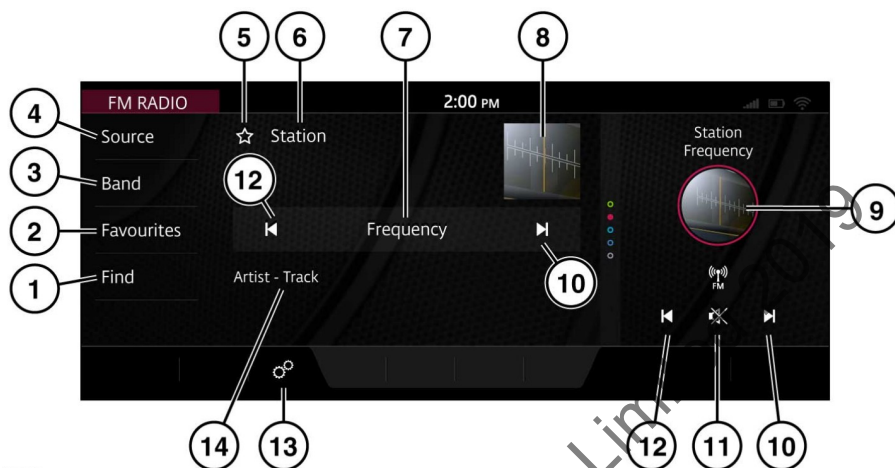
[www.gracenote.com](http://www.gracenote.com).

CD, DVD, Blu-ray Disc, and music and video-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright © 2000 to present Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000 to present Gracenote. One or more patents owned by Gracenote apply to this product and service. See the Gracenote website for a non-exhaustive list of applicable Gracenote patents. Gracenote, CDDB, MusicID, MediaVOCS, the Gracenote logo and logotype, and the "Powered by Gracenote" logo are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Gracenote in the United States and/or other countries.



## AM/FM radio

### AM/FM RADIO CONTROLS



E220689

**!** Do not adjust the touchscreen controls, or allow the system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.

**!** Sustained exposure to high sound levels, greater than 85 decibels, can damage hearing.

From the **SELECT SOURCE** screen, select the media source. See **224, MEDIA CONTROLS**.

1. **Find**: Touch to display options for finding a required station, frequency, or genre:
  - **STATION LIST**: Touch to display a list of available stations on the selected waveband.
  - **FREQUENCY INPUT**: Touch to display the keypad. Enter the required frequency.

**GENRE**: Touch to display a list of available genres. Select the required genre from the list.

**Note**: After a station has been selected from the **Find** option, the radio **STATION LIST** screen continues to be displayed. To return to the **AM/FM RADIO** screen, touch the **return** icon.<sup>1</sup>

2. **Favourites**: Touch to display a single list of **AM**, **FM**, and **DAB** favourite stations. Touch the **favourites** icon to add or delete the selected station from the favourites list. Touch the station's frequency or name to select that station and play it. To rearrange the list order, touch and hold the **RADIO FAVOURITES** screen to open the edit mode. Drag and drop the selected items to the desired position.

## AM/FM radio

**Note:** After selection of a stored favourite station the **RADIO FAVOURITES** screen continues to be displayed. To return to the **AM/FM RADIO** screen, touch the **return** icon.<sup>1</sup>

3. **Band:** Touch to view and select a radio band: **AM**, **FM**, or **DAB**. The radio tunes to the last used station on that radio band.
4. **Source:** Touch to display all media sources.
5. **Favourites** icon: Touch to add stations to, or delete from, the favourites list. The icon highlights when the tuned station is set as a favourite.
6. Station information display.
7. Frequency of the current station: Touch on the frequency to access the **FREQUENCY INPUT** keypad. Enter the required frequency.  
**Note:** The keypad only allows the input of possible frequencies valid for the vehicle's market.
8. Artist or station image: Touch to view further information. Touch again to close the information display.  
**Note:** If unavailable, a generic image is displayed.
9. AM or FM radio shortcut: Touch to view the **AM** or **FM RADIO** screen. Swipe up or down to access other features.
10. Seek up:
  - Touch, or swipe the touchscreen to the left, to seek up to the next radio station.
  - Touch and hold to seek up to the next radio station.
11. **Mute** icon: Touch to mute the volume.

12. Seek down:

- Touch, or swipe the touchscreen to the right, to seek down to the previous radio station.
- Touch and hold to seek down to the previous radio station.

13. **Settings** icon: Touch to access the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. Select **AM/FM Settings**. Touch to activate or deactivate the following features: **RDS**, **Traffic Alerts (TA)**, **News**, **Station List Order**, **Alternate Frequency (AF)** and **Regionalisation**. See 232, **RADIO DATA SYSTEM (RDS)**.

14. Broadcasting station information display: Touch to view further information. Touch again to close the information display.

**Note:** Electronic devices used within, connected to, or within close proximity to the vehicle, may affect the performance of this system. For example, radio reception.



**return** icon.<sup>1</sup>

### Mexico only

The operation of this device is subject to the following two conditions:

1. The device does not cause harmful interference.
2. The device must accept any interference, including any undesired operation.

The device is designed to be operated with listed antennas only.



## AM/FM radio

### RADIO DATA SYSTEM (RDS)

The radio is equipped with a Radio Data System (RDS), which enables the media system to receive extra information with normal FM radio signals.

**Note:** Not all FM radio stations broadcast RDS information.

To view or alter the **RDS** settings:

1. Touch the **settings** icon.<sup>1</sup>
2. From the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu select **AM/FM Settings**.
3. Select from the available options.

The AM/FM settings options are as follows:

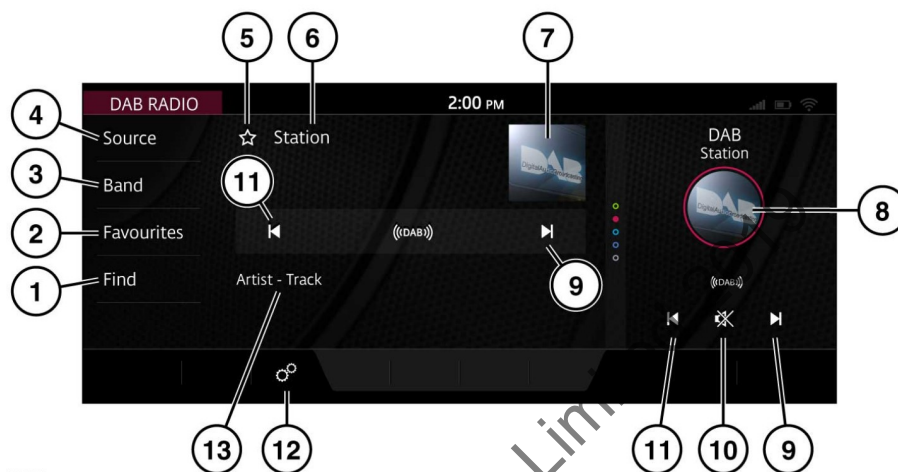
- **RDS:** Select **ON** or **OFF**.
- **Traffic Alerts (TA):** Provides local travel information.
- **News:** Provides news information.
- **Station List Order:** Lists stations by name or frequency.
- **Alternative Frequency:** Select to allow the radio to automatically retune to a stronger Alternative Frequency (AF) for the current station. A useful option on a journey where the vehicle travels through different transmitter areas.
- **Regionalisation:** When **ON**, no regional switching occurs. When AF is **ON**, it allows AF switching to other station frequencies with identical content.  
When regionalisation is **OFF** and AF is **ON**, it allows AF switching to other station frequencies with similar content.



**settings** icon.<sup>1</sup>

## DAB radio

### DAB RADIO CONTROLS



E220690

**⚠ Do not adjust the touchscreen controls, or allow the system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.**

**⚠ Sustained exposure to high sound levels, greater than 85 decibels, can damage hearing.**

From the **SELECT SOURCE** screen, select the media source. See **224, MEDIA CONTROLS**.

1. **Find:** Touch to display options for finding a required station.
  - **DAB STATION LIST:** Touch to view a list of available stations. The DAB station list is arranged in alphabetical order. Select the up or down arrows to scroll through the list.

- **DAB GENRE:** Touch to list available genres. The stations are grouped into categories: **Pop Music, Travel**, etc.
- **SEARCH:** Touch to search using the keyboard. Enter the required station name and select **OK**.

**Note:** After a station has been selected from the **Find** option, the radio **STATION LIST** screen continues to be displayed. To return to the **DAB RADIO** screen, touch the **return** icon.<sup>1</sup>



## DAB radio

- Favourites:** Touch to display a single list of **AM**, **FM**, and **DAB** favourite stations. Touch the **favourites** icon to add or delete the selected station from the favourites list. Touch the station's frequency or name to select that station and play it. To rearrange the list order, touch and hold the **RADIO FAVOURITES** screen to open the edit mode. Drag and drop the selected items to the desired position.

**Note:** After selection of a stored DAB favourite station the **RADIO FAVOURITES** screen continues to be displayed. To return to the **DAB RADIO** screen, touch the **return** icon.<sup>1</sup>

- Band:** Touch to view and select a radio band: **AM**, **FM**, or **DAB**. The radio tunes to the last used station on that radio band.
- Source:** Touch to display all media options.
- Favourites** icon: Touch to add stations to, or delete from, **RADIO FAVOURITES**. The icon highlights when the tuned station is set as a favourite.
- DAB station display:** Displays the current station.
- Artist or station image:** Touch to view further information. Touch again to close the information display.  
**Note:** If unavailable, a generic image is displayed.
- DAB radio shortcut:** Touch to view the **DAB RADIO** screen.
- Seek up:**
  - Touch, or swipe the touchscreen to the left, to select the next station.

- Mute** icon: Touch to mute the volume.

- Seek down:**

- Touch, or swipe the touchscreen to the right, to select the previous station.

- Settings** icon: Touch to access the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. Select **DAB settings**. Touch to activate or deactivate the following features: **Link to FM Stations**, **Frequency Band**, and **Announcements**. See 234, **DAB RADIO SETTINGS**.

- Station information:** Touch to view DAB information.

**Note:** Electronic devices used within, connected to, or within close proximity to the vehicle may affect the performance of this system. For example, radio reception.



**return** icon.<sup>1</sup>

### DAB RADIO SETTINGS

To view or alter the DAB settings:

- Touch the **settings** icon.<sup>1</sup>
- Touch the **DAB settings** soft key.

In the **DAB SETTINGS** screen the following settings options are available:

- Link to FM Stations:** Can be set to **Off** or **On**. If **On** is selected, upon the DAB signal strength, for a station, falling below an acceptable level, this is activated. If the option is available the media system automatically switches to the FM version of this station.
- Choose **Frequency Band** if moving to a region that uses a different digital band. Available formats are:
  - Band 3.**
  - Band 3 China.**

## DAB radio

- Select **Announcements**, e.g., **Traffic**, **News**, etc., from the list. The selected announcement interrupts the current programme, when broadcast.



settings icon.<sup>1</sup>


© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2019





## Portable media


### PORTABLE MEDIA SAFETY


Make sure the following warnings and cautions have been read and fully understood before using any of the portable media controls or features. Failure to use the portable media controls or features safely could result in an accident, leading to serious injury, death or damage to the vehicle and its components.


 **Do not adjust the touchscreen controls, or allow the system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.**


 **Make sure that any media devices are stored securely while the vehicle is in motion. Any loose objects are potential hazards during sudden manoeuvres, emergency braking situations or accidents.**


 **Sustained exposure to high sound levels, greater than 85 decibels, can damage hearing.**

 Read the manufacturer's instructions for any device before it is connected to the media system. Make sure that the device is suitable. Comply with any instructions regarding connection and operation. Failure to do so may result in damage to the vehicle's media system or the media device.


 It is recommended not to use a hard disc drive via the USB link. The devices are not designed for in-vehicle use and may be damaged.

 USB memory stick devices exceeding 70mm in length, must not be connected to the media hub. Using devices exceeding this length can result in damage to the media device or hub on closure of the cubby box lid on the centre console.

 If an iPod is connected, disconnect before leaving the vehicle. Failure to do so may result in the iPod battery discharging.

 Avoid spilling or splashing liquids onto the touchscreen. The spilling or splashing of liquids could cause the touchscreen to malfunction or even lead to complete failure.

### PORTABLE MEDIA CONNECTIONS

 **Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 236, PORTABLE MEDIA SAFETY.**

Portable media devices can be connected to the media hub, located in the centre console's cubby box. See **106, STORAGE COMPARTMENTS**.

Compatible portable devices include:

- USB mass storage devices, e.g., a memory stick. Devices must use FAT or FAT32.

**Note:** *External hard drives are not recommended for use. Doing so could reduce the life of the device.*



## Portable media

**Note:** It is recommended that the USB mass storage device does not exceed 128GB. USB mass storage devices exceeding the maximum recommendation could cause a malfunction of the infotainment system.

**Note:** Depending on the memory size of the USB mass storage device, a time delay may be evident before the stored files can be accessed.

- iPod: iPad, iPod Touch, iPod Mini, iPhone, iPod Nano and iPod Classic Gen4, Gen5, Gen6 are supported. Full functionality for older devices cannot be guaranteed. iPod Classic Gen1, Gen2, Gen3, and iPod Shuffle are not supported.

**Note:** Album artwork displays if the iPod device is fully supported. Some Generation level devices cannot recognise or support the album artwork.

If connecting an iPod, mass storage, or **Bluetooth**® wireless technology device, use the touchscreen to operate and search the device.

**Note:** The media system plays MP3, WMA, AIFF, M4A, FLAC, AAC, and ALAC files. Other formats are available.

**Note:** If a software update has been activated on the connected portable media device, it is necessary to restart the media device. Restarting the device makes sure the update is recognised by the media system.

To maximise playback quality, it is recommended that lossless compression is used for any media files on USB mass storage devices. Failing this, it is recommended that compressed files utilise a minimum bit rate of 192 kb/s. A higher bit rate is strongly recommended.

**Note:** iPod is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the US and other countries.

**Note:** Some MP3 players have a file system that is not supported by the system. To use an MP3 player, set it to **USB Removable Device** or **Mass Storage Device** mode.

### **Bluetooth**® connections

Information on pairing and connecting a **Bluetooth** wireless technology device can be found in the relevant section of the Owner's Handbook. See **241, PAIRING AND CONNECTING USING THE MEDIA PLAYER.**

Further information on **Bluetooth** wireless technology can be found in the relevant section of the Owner's Handbook. See **289, BLUETOOTH® INFORMATION.**

For a list of compatible **Bluetooth** wireless technology devices, please refer to the Land Rover website at: [www.landrover.com](http://www.landrover.com).

The **Bluetooth** wireless technology devices listed have been tested for compatibility with Jaguar Land Rover vehicles. Performance varies, based on the device's software version and battery condition. Devices are warranted by the device's manufacturer, not the vehicle manufacturer.

**Note:** Dependent on the device being connected, certain functions, e.g., **Bluetooth** pairing, may not be compatible.



## Portable media

### CONNECTING A MEDIA DEVICE



Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 236, PORTABLE MEDIA SAFETY.



E223753

Portable media devices can be connected to the media hub, located in the centre console's cubby box. See 106, STORAGE COMPARTMENTS.

Connect the media device into one of the available USB sockets.

**Note:** Use the cable supplied with the media device to connect to the USB socket.

**Note:** High quality cables are recommended to be used with Apple devices as this enhances the operation.

**Note:** A USB socket cannot be used to connect more than one USB device to the media system.

**Note:** Devices connected to the USB ports are charged, but devices that are fully discharged do not play. Higher-rated devices that require more than 7.5W to charge may not display an indicator when charging. The devices still charge without the indicator being displayed.

**Note:** Apple devices should be updated to the latest iOS version, otherwise, full support cannot be guaranteed.

**Note:** Voice command is only available for newer Apple devices, i.e., devices that are connected to the system via a lightning connector.

**Note:** Voice command will not operate devices connected to the system via Bluetooth® wireless technology devices.

**Note:** Options, such as Repeat and Shuffle, relate to the device currently playing. The options do not apply to any subsequent device. Previous Repeat and Shuffle selections deactivate when a new queue has been created.

**Note:** The available sockets vary, according to vehicle specification.

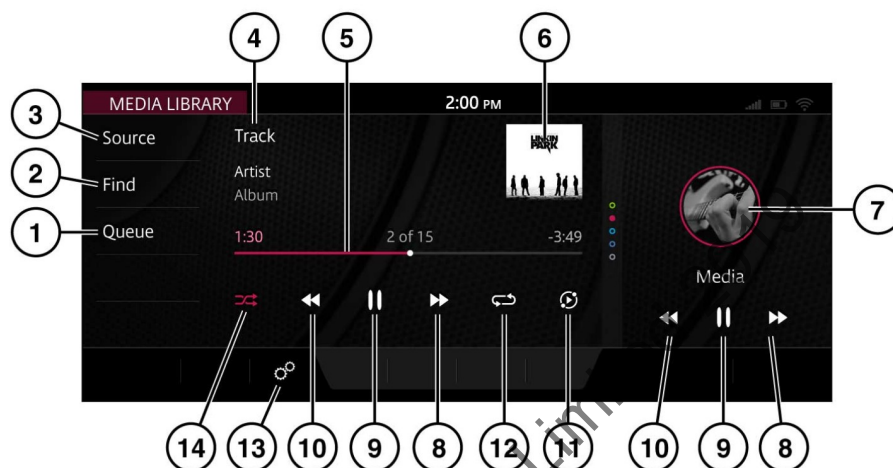


E180361

The SuperSpeed USB Trident Logo is a registered trademark of USB Implementer Forum, Inc.

## Portable media

### PORTABLE MEDIA CONTROLS



E220691



**Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 236, PORTABLE MEDIA SAFETY.**

Portable media includes **Media Library** (internal storage), iPods, iPads, iPhones, USB mass storage, and **Bluetooth®** wireless technology devices.

Select the portable media device from the **SELECT SOURCE** screen. See **224, MEDIA CONTROLS**.

- 1. Queue:** Opens the current queue of tracks selected from the portable media devices. To add a track, album, artist, or genre to the queue, touch and hold the respective item at any time. A pop-up list gives further instructions.

**Note:** Selecting a track, album, artist, or genre, not currently in the queue to play, causes the current queue to be erased.

- 2. Find:** Touch to select the **artist**, **album**, or **song** icon to display results in alphabetical order. Select the **more like this** icon (11) to display a list of further available options: **Genres**, **Videos**, **Folder Browse**, etc.
  - Select **Folder Browse** to view the contents of the connected device, which are displayed as dictated by the file structure.
  - Select a file to start playback. Select a folder or sub-folder to view the contents.
  - To return to the **MEDIA LIBRARY** screen, touch the **return** icon.<sup>1</sup>



## Portable media

- Note:** After an artist, album, or song has been selected from the **Find** option, the **SONGS** screen continues to be displayed. To return to the **MEDIA LIBRARY** screen, touch the **return** icon.<sup>1</sup>
- Source:** Displays all media sources. The list of media devices is dynamically populated, based on whether the devices are connected.  
**Note:** Sound quality and volume levels available from connected media devices may vary widely.
  - Track information display:** Touch the displayed text to view a list of tracks in the album. Touch again to return to the current track information display.  
**Note:** Only connected devices that support ID3 tags display the information.  
**Note:** The instrument panel also displays the track information.
  - Interactive time progress bar:** Touch or drag to move forward or backward through the current track.  
**Note:** Only connected devices that support the interactive time progress bar have this function.
  - Album image display:** Touch to view the list of tracks on the album, the queue list, or information for the current track. Touch again to revert back to the previous view, or press the **return** icon.<sup>1</sup>  
**Note:** Album artwork is displayed if the media is recognised by **Gracenote**®. If the album artwork is not recognised, a generic image is displayed.
  - Media library shortcut:** Touch to view the **MEDIA LIBRARY** screen.
  - Skip or scan forward:**
    - Touch and release to skip forward to the next track.
    - Touch and hold to scan forward through the current track. Playback resumes, when released.
    - Swipe the touchscreen to the left to skip to the next track.
  - Pause or play:** Select to pause playback. Select again to resume playback.
  - Skip or scan backward:**
    - Touch and release to skip back to the previous track.
    - Touch and hold to scan backward through the current track. Playback resumes, when released.
    - Swipe the touchscreen to the right to skip to the previous track.
  - More like this icon:** Select to automatically generate a smart playlist based on similar tracks. Touch, at any time, to create a new list based on the track currently being played.  
**Note:** Loading time is dependent on content type.
  - Repeat icon:** Touch to repeat the current track continuously. The **repeat** icon is highlighted when active. Touch again to cancel.  
**Note:** Additional repeat functionality options may be available depending on the portable device connected.
  - Settings icon:** Touch to access the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. Select **Media Player settings** to manage the importing and deleting of files stored to the vehicle's memory.

## Portable media

**Note:** The option to import/rip media is dependent on the vehicle's infotainment and market specification. Not all levels of infotainment are fitted with an internal hard drive. If the vehicle's infotainment system does not include a hard drive, the feature to import/rip media is not available.

14. **Shuffle** icon: Touch to shuffle the current music queue continuously. The **shuffle** icon is highlighted when active. Touch again to cancel.



return icon.<sup>1</sup>

### CONNECTING MULTIPLE DEVICES

Multiple devices can be simultaneously connected to the portable media interface. Use the touchscreen to switch between the connected devices. Select **iPod**, **USB**, or **Bluetooth** to switch between inputs.

**Note:** *USB and iPod devices only:* When switching back to a previous device, from another newly connected device, playback resumes from the point at which it was left. See 238, **CONNECTING A MEDIA DEVICE**.

### PAIRING AND CONNECTING USING THE MEDIA PLAYER



**Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 236, PORTABLE MEDIA SAFETY.**

**Note:** The process of pairing and connecting the media device with the vehicle, using the media device, varies depending on the type of media device.

1. Switch on the ignition. Make sure that the touchscreen is active.
2. Touch the **settings** icon<sup>1</sup> from any screen. Select **All Settings** via the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. Select **Connectivity**. Select **Bluetooth**.
3. The **BLUETOOTH SETTINGS** screen is displayed. Select **Pair New Device**.
4. The vehicle's **Bluetooth**® wireless technology system remains discoverable while in the pairing screen.
5. Using the media device, search for devices. On some media devices, this is referred to as a new paired device. See the device's operating instructions for further information. The vehicle's name is displayed as the default discoverable name.
6. When the vehicle's discoverable name is discovered, follow the on-screen instructions. Select **Yes**, when prompted, to confirm the pairing. On some media devices, this completes the pairing. Alternatively, on other media devices, the vehicle's system displays a PIN. When prompted, either enter the PIN on the device, or select **Yes** to confirm that the PIN displayed matches the vehicle's PIN.
7. Once the media device is paired and connected to the system, a confirmation message is displayed. Either, select the **return** icon or return to the previously selected media and select **Source**.



## Portable media

8. Select the media device from the displayed media options.

**Note:** If, when playing media through a wireless connected Apple device, the device is then also connected to a USB port, the wireless connection is disabled. To reconnect via wireless, the USB connection needs to be disconnected and the Apple device reconnected via the **BLUETOOTH SETTINGS** screen.

**Note:** Apple devices containing a large quantity of media, can take a considerable amount of time to synchronise. During this time, playback can only be accessed from the Apple device's media player and not via voice commands.

**Note:** After the Apple device has been synced with the media system, the device can then be controlled via the media system or operated by the voice system. If the Apple device's track list is updated after the device was previously synced, the device needs to be re-synced to the media system. During this time, the Apple device's voice commands become temporarily unavailable.

For further information on **Bluetooth** wireless technology, see **289, BLUETOOTH® INFORMATION.**



settings icon.

### CHANGING/DISCONNECTING A DEVICE



Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See **236, PORTABLE MEDIA SAFETY.**

To connect or disconnect a paired **Bluetooth®** wireless technology device:

1. Touch the **settings** icon<sup>1</sup> from any screen. Select **All Settings** via the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu.
2. Select **Features**. Select **Phone**. Select **Bluetooth settings**. Alternatively, select **Connectivity**. Select **Bluetooth**.
3. The **BLUETOOTH SETTINGS** screen displays. Select **Paired Devices**.
4. Paired devices are listed. Select the device's name, followed by **Connect** or **Disconnect**.

To unpair a paired **Bluetooth** device:

1. Touch the **settings** icon<sup>1</sup> from any screen. Select **All Settings** via the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu.
2. Select **Features**. Select **Phone**. Select **Bluetooth settings**. Alternatively, select **Connectivity**. Select **Bluetooth**.
3. The **BLUETOOTH SETTINGS** screen displays. Select **Paired Devices**.
4. Paired devices are listed. Select the device's name, followed by **Forget Device**.


To forget all paired **Bluetooth** devices:

1. Touch the **settings** icon<sup>1</sup> from any screen. Select **All Settings** via the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu.
2. Select **Features**. Select **Phone**. Select **Bluetooth settings**. Alternatively, select **Connectivity**. Select **Bluetooth**.
3. The **BLUETOOTH SETTINGS** screen displays. Select **Forget All Devices**.



settings icon.<sup>1</sup>

## IMPORTING/RIPPING MEDIA

 Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 236, PORTABLE MEDIA SAFETY.

**Note:** The option to import/rip media is dependent on the vehicle's infotainment and market specification. Not all levels of infotainment are fitted with an internal hard drive. If the vehicle's infotainment system does not include a hard drive, the feature to import/rip media is not available.

The vehicle's internal storage, is used for navigation data, speech data, and metadata databases. Media can also be imported and stored from USB memory devices, via the **MEDIA PLAYER SETTINGS** screen.

To select the **MEDIA PLAYER SETTINGS** screen:

1. Select the **settings** icon<sup>1</sup> from any screen to access the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu.
2. Select **Media Player Settings**.



**settings** icon.<sup>1</sup>



## Portable media

### VIDEO MEDIA PLAYER CONTROLS



E220692



**Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 236, PORTABLE MEDIA SAFETY.**

**Note:** The system supports MPEG2 (.avi, .mpg), WMV9 (.wmv) and H.264 (.mp4, .avi, .mkv, .mov) files. Other formats may work but the playback quality cannot be guaranteed.

**Note:** To maximise the stereo sound playback quality, it is recommended not to playback video files with a resolution greater than 1080p or a speed exceeding 30fps.

**Note:** The quality of video playback may be affected by the USB memory device's speed.

Select the portable media device from the **SELECT SOURCE** screen. See 224, **MEDIA CONTROLS**.

- 1. Queue:** Opens the current queue of videos selected from the relevant device.
- 2. Find:** Touch to search, or select from the list of videos. The list is displayed in alphabetical order.
- 3. Source:** Touch to display all media sources.  
**Note:** The media source, e.g., USB memory device is displayed, only if the device is connected.
- 4. Video playback:** Touch to select full screen mode or wait for the preview screen to time-out. Touch the screen again to view the controls at any time.
- 5. Interactive time progress bar:** Touch or drag to move forward or backward through the current video track.
- 6. Media library shortcut:** Touch to view the **MEDIA LIBRARY** screen.
- 7. Skip or scan forward:**



## Portable media

- Touch and release to skip forward to the next video track.
  - Touch and hold to scan forward through the current video track. Playback resumes, when released.
  - Swipe the touchscreen to the left, to skip to the next video track.
8. **Pause or play:** Select to pause playback. Select again to resume playback. A second touch stops and resets the video.
  9. **Skip or scan backward:**
    - Touch and release to skip backward to the previous video track.
    - Touch and hold to scan backward through the current video track. Playback resumes, when released.
    - Swipe the touchscreen to the right, to skip to the previous video track.
  10. **Zoom icon:** Select to zoom in or out between the two available options.
  11. **Repeat icon:** Touch to repeat the current video continuously. The **repeat** icon is highlighted when active. Touch again to cancel.
  12. **Settings icon:** Touch to access the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. Select **Media Player settings** to view all available settings options.
  13. **Shuffle icon:** Touch to shuffle the current video queue. The **shuffle** icon is highlighted when active. Touch again to cancel.

### VIDEO MEDIA INHIBIT WITH VEHICLE MOVING

When the vehicle is moving, the touchscreen displays a relevant safety message, and the video picture is automatically inhibited.

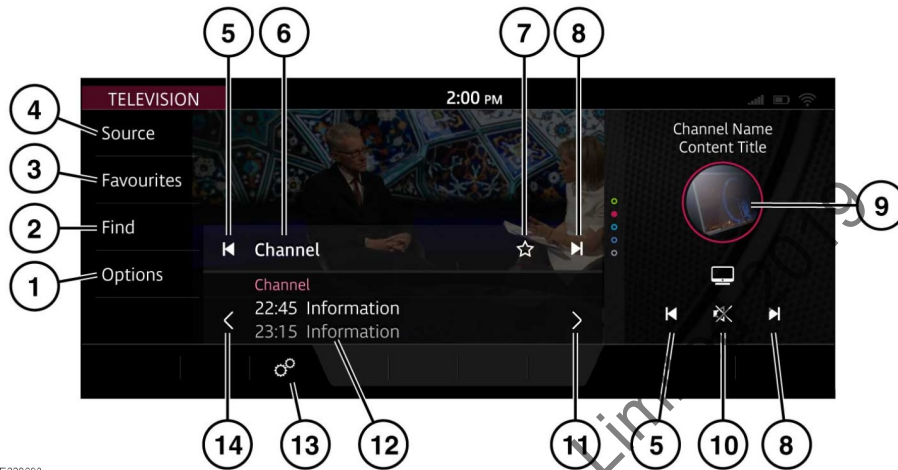
### FULL SCREEN VIEW

If full screen mode is selected, operate the seek controls in the same manner as when in preview mode.



## Television

### TELEVISION CONTROLS



E220693

**⚠ Do not adjust the touchscreen controls, or allow the system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.**

**⚠ Sustained exposure to high sound levels, greater than 85 decibels, can damage hearing.**

**Note:** When the vehicle is moving the video picture is automatically inhibited. See **245, VIDEO MEDIA INHIBIT WITH VEHICLE MOVING.**

**Note:** While continuing to work closely with partners to develop TV standards worldwide the TV feature in all countries cannot be guaranteed at all times.

From the **SELECT SOURCE** screen, select the media source. See **224, MEDIA CONTROLS.**

**1. Options:** Touch to display various TV options.

- Touch the **zoom** icon to zoom in from 16:9 or 4:3 to fit the screen. Touch again to zoom out.
- Touch the **audio** icon to access available alternative audio tracks for the current broadcast.
- Touch the **video** icon to access available alternative video feeds for the current broadcast.

**2. Find:** Touch to display options for finding a TV channel or programme.

- **CHANNEL LIST** icon<sup>1</sup>: Touch to view a list of available channels. Select the up or down arrows to scroll through the list, or swipe the touchscreen up or down. Touch the name of the channel to tune to and view that channel.

## Television

**Note:** The TV system is continually checking the availability of channels. Channels in the list may not actually be available. For example, when driving through different transmitter regions.

- **WHAT'S ON** icon<sup>2</sup>: Touch to view the Electronic Programme Guide (EPG).  
To set a programme reminder: Select a programme that is currently not broadcasting, to display a summary page. Select **Set Reminder**. An icon is displayed in the EPG once the reminder has been set. Only four reminders can be set for the same time.  
To view a programme currently being broadcast, select the required programme to display a summary page. Select **View Now** to tune to that channel. The selected programme displays in full screen view.
  - 3. **Favourites**: Touch to display a single list of favourite stations. To rearrange the order of the list, touch the **edit** icon<sup>3</sup> in the footer. Drag and drop selected items to the desired position. Press **OK** to confirm.
  - 4. **Source**: Touch to display all radio and media options.
  - 5. **Seek down**: Touch, or swipe the touchscreen to the right, to tune to and view the previous channel in the TV channel list.
  - 6. Current channel and programme title display.
  - 7. **Favourites** icon: Touch to add, to or delete from, the **Favourites** list. The icon highlights when a tuned channel is set as a favourite.
  - 8. **Seek up**: Touch, or swipe the touchscreen to the left, to tune to and view the next channel in the TV channel list.
  - 9. **Television shortcut**: Touch to view the **TELEVISION CONTROLS** screen. Swipe up or down to access other features.
  - 10. **Mute** icon: Touch to mute the volume.
  - 11. **Seek up**: Touch to browse to the next TV programme on the programme schedule list. Touch the programme to select it.
  - 12. **Programme schedule**: Shows the TV programme currently playing and what is coming up next.
  - 13. **Settings** icon: Touch to access the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu.
    - Select **TV Settings**.
    - Select the **Parental Lock**, **BCAS Serial Number**, **Channel Lock**, **Genre Lock**, or **Rating Lock** options.

**Note:** Available options are dependent upon regional television standards.
  - 14. **Seek down**: Touch to browse to the previous TV programme on the programme schedule list. Touch the programme to select it.
- Further information on the use of the media system or steering wheel sound and video controls can be found in the relevant section of the Owner's Handbook. See **224, MEDIA CONTROLS** or **225, AUDIO STEERING WHEEL CONTROLS**.



## Television



Channel list icon.<sup>1</sup>



What's on icon.<sup>2</sup>

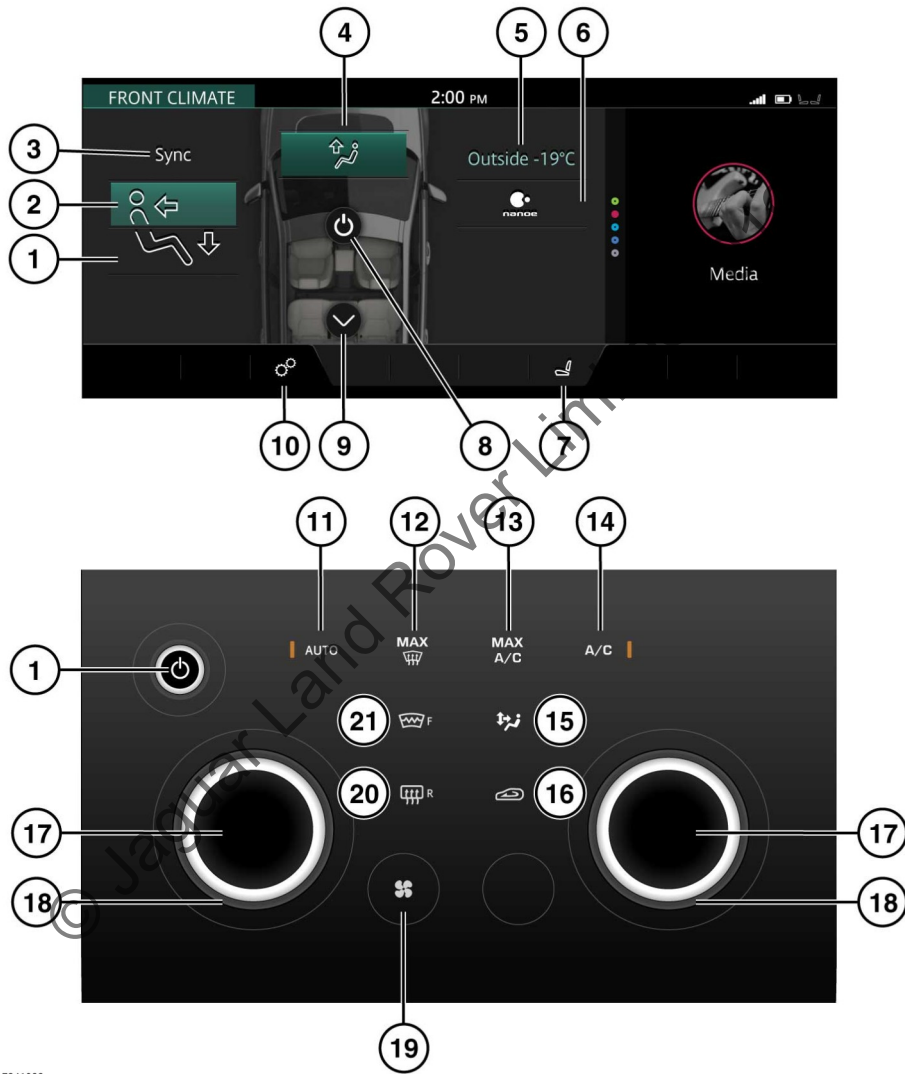


edit icon.<sup>3</sup>

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2019

Climate and comfort


FRONT CLIMATE CONTROL




E241933



## Climate and comfort

 In the interest of safety, only operate or adjust the system when it is safe to do so. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.

 Do not adjust the touchscreen controls, or allow the system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.

To access the **FRONT CLIMATE** screen, press the **Climate** button located below the touchscreen (15).

Alternatively select Climate feature icon from the touchscreen. See **215, TOUCHSCREEN FEATURE ICONS**.

- 1. Air distribution to the feet** icon: Touch to switch on or off.
- 2. Air distribution to the face** icon: Touch to switch on or off.
- 3. Sync:** Select to synchronise the front and rear passenger climate settings to the driver's settings.
- 4. Air distribution to the front windscreen** icon: Touch to switch on or off.
- 5. External temperature display.**

**Note:** When the external temperature is low enough that ice may be present on the road, an amber snowflake warning lamp illuminates in the Instrument panel. See **80, EXTERNAL TEMPERATURE (AMBER)**.
- 6. Air ionisation** icon: Touch to activate air ionisation.

**Note:** Air ionisation technology is designed to improve the air quality within the cabin.

- 7. Seats** icon: Press to select the **SEATS** screen. See **257, HEATED SEATS**. See **257, CLIMATE SEATS**.
- 8. Power** icon: Touch to switch the climate control system on or off.
- 9. Down arrow** icon: Select the down arrow, or swipe the screen upwards, to view the **REAR CLIMATE** screen. Select the up arrow, or swipe the screen downwards, to return to the **FRONT CLIMATE** screen. See **252, REAR CLIMATE CONTROL**.
- 10. Settings** icon: Touch to access the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu and then select **Climate Settings**. See **251, CLIMATE SETTINGS**.
- 11. AUTO** mode: Press to switch fully automatic mode on. Dependent on the vehicles's specification, the various options for **AUTO** mode can be set via the **Climate Settings** menu. See **257, CLIMATE SEATS**.

**Note:** *AUTO mode is the recommended normal operating mode. The Air Conditioning (A/C) and heating and ventilation controls automatically provide an optimum environment at the selected temperature.*
- 12. Maximum defrost** icon: Touch and hold to switch maximum defrost for the windscreen on or off.
- 13. Max A/C** icon: Touch and holds to switch maximum A/C mode on or off.

## Climate and comfort

- 14. A/C icon:** Touch to switch the Air Conditioning (A/C) system on or off. The A/C system can be switched on or off independently of the other climate control functions.

**Note:** The A/C system can be switched on or off independently of the other climate control functions. However, this will not work if MAX/AC, or Maximum defrost are active.

- 15.** Touch to access the **Climate** screen.

- 16. Recirculation icon:** Touch to recirculate air inside the vehicle.

**Note:** Prolonged use at low temperatures may cause the windows to mist.

**Note:** Some of the buttons illuminate, or have an LED indicator lamp that illuminates to confirm selection.

- 17.** Cabin temperature and front seat temperature control display. See **256, SEAT COMFORT AND ADJUSTMENT.**

- 18. Rotary controls:** Press to switch between, and rotate to adjust cabin or seat temperature.

- 19. Blower speed control icon:** Touch to switch blower speed adjustment on or off. Rotate the rotary control to manually adjust the blower speed.

**Note:** The blower speed is automatically set in **AUTO** mode. Adjusting the blower speed cancels **AUTO** mode.

- 20. Heated rear screen icon:** Touch to switch on or off. If left on, it deactivates after a timed period, dependant on the outside temperature.



**Do not attach labels to the rear screen. Do not scrape or use abrasive materials to clean the inside of the rear screen.**

**Note:** The heated windscreen and rear screen operate only when the engine is running.

- 21. Heated windscreen icon:** Touch to switch on or off. If left on, it deactivates after a timed period, dependant on the outside temperature.

**Note:** In cold ambient conditions, the windscreen and rear screen heaters switch on automatically when the engine is started. The function can be switched on or off via **Climate Settings.**

### AUTOMATIC RECIRCULATION

The climate control system monitors exterior air pollution, and selects recirculation if it reaches a predetermined level. Automatic recirculation only operates when the **Air Purity** function is active. The sensitivity of the air quality sensor can be set via the **CLIMATE SETTINGS** screen. See **252, AIR QUALITY SENSOR.**

**Note:** It is recommended that automatic recirculation is enabled, to maintain the optimum air quality within the vehicle.

### CLIMATE SETTINGS

To view the **CLIMATE SETTINGS** menu, select the **Settings** icon. select **Climate Settings** from the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. See **249, FRONT CLIMATE CONTROL.**

- Automatic heated screens: Automatic operation of the heated windscreen and/or the rear heated screen can be enabled or disabled.



## Climate and comfort

- **Air purity:** The air quality sensor, for automatic recirculation, can be adjusted. See **252, AIR QUALITY SENSOR**.
- **Auto air flow:** The blower speed for automatic operation can be set to **Soft and Quiet, Balanced, or Powerful and Fast**.
- **Auto sunroof blind:** The auto sunroof blind feature can be enabled or disabled. See **104, ELECTRIC WINDOWS**.

### AIR QUALITY SENSOR

The sensitivity of the air quality sensor can be adjusted by changing the **Air Purity** level.

To adjust the **Air Purity** level:

1. Select the **Settings** icon, and then select **Climate Settings** from the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. See **249, FRONT CLIMATE CONTROL**.
2. Select **Air Purity**, and then select the appropriate level: **Low, Medium, or High**.  
To deactivate, touch **OFF**.

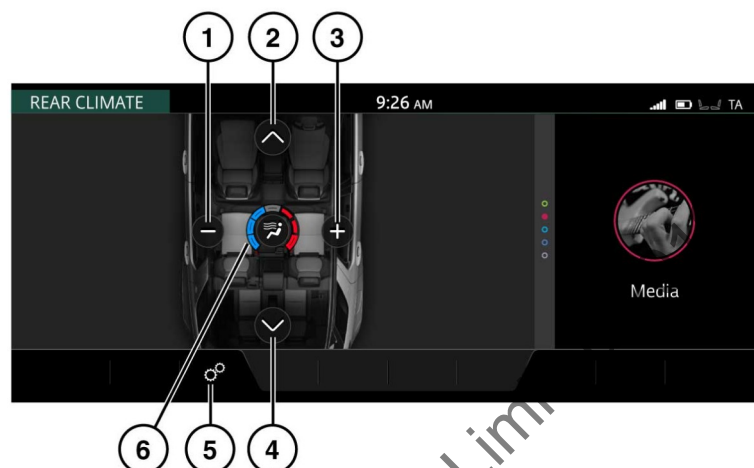
### REAR CLIMATE CONTROL

To access the **REAR CLIMATE** screen, select the down arrow from the **FRONT CLIMATE** screen. Alternatively, swipe up the vehicle graphic. See **249, FRONT CLIMATE CONTROL**.



## Climate and comfort

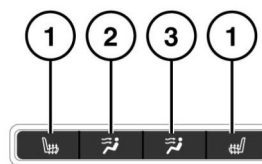
### Second Row Climate Control



E241950

Control the rear climate from the touchscreen as follows:

1. **Temperature Decrease** icon: Select to decrease the second row air vents temperature.
2. **Up Arrow** icon: Select or swipe downwards to return to the **FRONT CLIMATE** screen. See 249, **FRONT CLIMATE CONTROL**
3. **Temperature Increase** icon: Select to increase the second row air vents temperature.
4. **Down Arrow** icon: Select or swipe upwards to view the **REAR CLIMATE** screen for third row seats.
5. **Settings** icon: Touch to access the settings menu. See 249, **FRONT CLIMATE CONTROL**
6. **Temperature** icon: Displays information on the current temperature.



E241951

The climate for the second row seats can also be adjusted from the rear console as follows:

1. **Heated seats** icon: Press the respective button to switch the required seat on/off. See 257, **HEATED SEATS**.
2. **Temperature Down** icon: Press to adjust the rear vent temperature, three settings are available as follows:



## Climate and comfort

- Press once to cool the air from the rear vent, a single LED illuminates.
- Press a second time to increase the level of cooling, two LEDs illuminate.
- Press a third time to set the highest level of cooling, three LEDs illuminate.

**Note:** To increase rear vent temperature press the temperature up icon (3), each press raises the vent temperature by one setting.

**3. Temperature Up icon:** Press to adjust the rear vent temperature, three settings are available as follows:

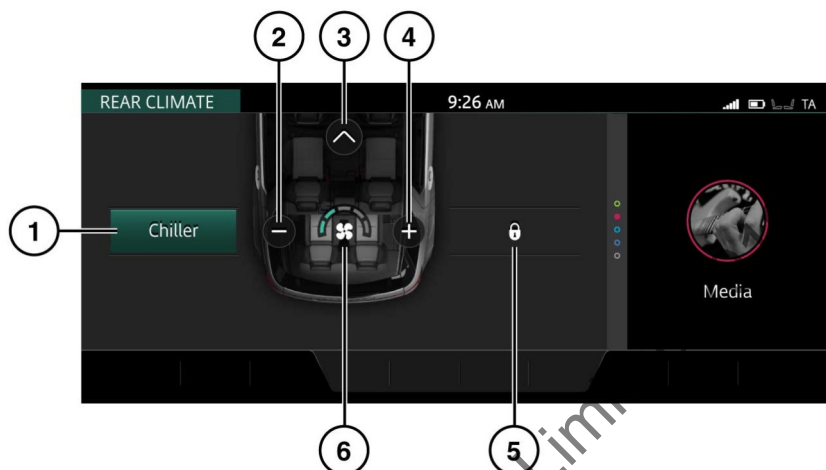
- Press once to heat the air from the rear vent, a single LED illuminates.
- Press a second time to increase the level of heating, two LEDs illuminate.
- Press a third time to set the highest level of heating, three LEDs illuminate.

**Note:** To decrease rear vent temperature press the temperature down icon (2), each press lowers the vent temperature by one setting.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2019

## Climate and comfort

### Third Row Climate Control



E241968

Control the rear climate from the touchscreen as follows:

1. **Chiller** soft key: Touch to toggle the chilled air on or off.
2. **Blower speed decrease** icon: Touch repeatedly to decrease the blower speed.
3. **Up Arrow** icon: Select or swipe downward to return to the **REAR CLIMATE** screen for the second row seats.
4. **Blower speed increase** icon: Touch repeatedly to increase the blower speed.
5. **Padlock** icon: Touch to disable or enable adjustment of the chilled air fan speed, via the third row climate control switch.
6. **Blower speed** icon: Displays information on the blower speed.

The chiller for the third row can also be adjusted using the control at the rear of the vehicle.



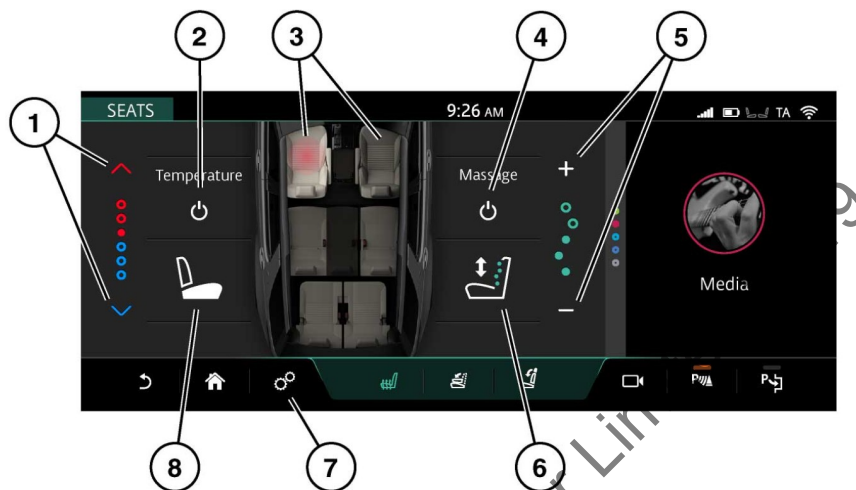
E164877

The third row chiller provides chilled air through the rear side vents. Rotate the control to adjust the fan speed.



## Climate and comfort

### SEAT COMFORT AND ADJUSTMENT



E188822

To access the **SEATS** screen, select the **seats** icon on the **HOME** screen. See **210, TOUCHSCREEN HOME MENU**.

1. **Temperature control**: Touch the up arrow to increase the seat temperature or the down arrow to decrease the seat temperature. See **251, CLIMATE SETTINGS** or **257, HEATED SEATS**.
2. **Temperature power** icon: Touch to switch the heated or climate seat on or off.
3. **Seat selection**: Touch to select the required seat.
4. **Massage power** icon: Touch to switch the seat massage function on or off. See **258, SEAT MASSAGE**.
5. **Massage intensity control**: Touch to increase or decrease the intensity of the selected massage program.

6. **Message program control**: Touch to select the seat massage program.

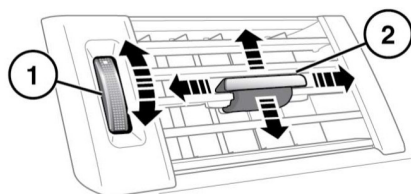
7. **Settings** icon: Touch to access the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu and then select **Climate Settings**.

8. **Seat zone selection** icon: Select the required seat zone position for heating and cooling.

### AIR VENT OPERATION

- ⚠ Do not insert or attach items to the vents, e.g., pens, or air fresheners, etc. Doing so could potentially cause damage to the vehicle.
- ⚠ Do not use excessive force while operating the vent control or the thumbwheel. Doing so could potentially cause damage to the vehicle.

## Climate and comfort



E155740

The air vents can be opened using the following procedure:

1. To open the vent, rotate the thumbwheel fully upwards, from the bottom (closed) position to the top (open) position.
2. After the vent has been opened using the thumbwheel, use the direction control to adjust the direction of air flow.

**Note:** The vent can only be fully closed again using the thumbwheel. The vent can be closed regardless of the position of the directional control.

### HEATED SEATS

**Note:** Heated seats consume a large amount of battery power. They only operate when the engine is running.

**Note:** The heated rear seats (non-climate) can only be operated by pressing the buttons located at the rear of the centre console.



Heated seat icon.

Touch the relevant heated seat icon to switch the required heated seat on at the maximum setting. The three LED indicators in the button illuminate.

Touch a second time to set the heated seat at the medium setting. Two LED indicators illuminate.

Touch a third time to set the heated seat at the lowest setting. One LED indicator illuminates.

Touch a fourth time to switch off.

**Note:** The heated front seats are controlled via the lower touchscreen. See **257, CLIMATE SEATS**.

**Note:** On vehicles with rear climate seats, the rear heated seats are controlled in the same manner as climate seats. See **257, CLIMATE SEATS**.

### CLIMATE SEATS

**Note:** The climate seats only operate when the engine is running.

To access the **heated or climate seats** screen, touch the **seats** icon on the lower touchscreen. Touch the **heated or climate seats** icon. See **256, SEAT COMFORT AND ADJUSTMENT**.

1. Touch the respective seat **power** icon to switch the selected climate seat on or off.
2. Touch to select, or deselect, the respective **seat zone** icon: Top, base or both icons.
3. Rotate the outer part of the rotary control to adjust the seat temperature. See **256, SEAT COMFORT AND ADJUSTMENT**.

**Note:** The temperature status of the selected seat zone is displayed on the touchscreen. The status range is red for heated operation and blue for cooled operation.



## Climate and comfort

**Note:** The rotary control displays a numeric + or - status. The outline of the rotary control illuminates to display red for heated operation and blue for cooled operation.

### SEAT MASSAGE

**Note:** Seat massage only operates when the engine is running.

Seat massage does not operate when the vehicle's interior temperature is below 0°C or above 50°C.

To access the screen, touch the **seats** icon on the lower touchscreen, then touch the icon. See **256, SEAT COMFORT AND ADJUSTMENT**.

To switch on or off, touch or press the following screen icons or menu setting options:

1. **Power** icon.
2. **Seat zone** icon.
3. **Wave, Up, Down, Shoulder, or Lumbar** massage.
4. Rotate the outer part of the rotary control to adjust the seat massage intensity. See **256, SEAT COMFORT AND ADJUSTMENT**.

**Note:** The outline of the rotary control illuminates to display the level of seat massage intensity.

**Auto Massage** can be set in **Seat Settings**. See **258, SEAT SETTINGS**.

**Note:** The massage programs have a 10 minute cycle. Reselect for repeated use.


### SEAT SETTINGS


To view the seat settings menu: touch the **Settings** icon, then select **Seats**.

The following options can be selected:

- **Auto Massage:** Switch the automatic massage feature **On** or **Off**.
- **Time delay:** Touch to select the time delay options. A time delay for the seat massage can be set from the start of a journey.

### AUXILIARY HEATER

 **Do not operate the auxiliary heater when refuelling the vehicle. Doing so may cause fuel vapours to combust, potentially causing a fire or explosion.**


 **Do not operate the auxiliary heater while the vehicle is in an enclosed space. Doing so can cause a build-up of highly toxic fumes, which may cause unconsciousness or death.**


The auxiliary heater is powered by fuel drawn from the vehicle's tank. The auxiliary heater operates at low ambient temperatures and helps to boost the temperature of the engine's coolant. Raising the temperature of the engine's coolant improves cabin heating and engine starting performance. It can also be controlled by the timed climate control system or from the timed climate remote control.

When the auxiliary heater is operating, exhaust fumes from the heater may be visible exiting from under the front of the vehicle. Exhaust fumes from the auxiliary heater are normal and are not a cause for concern.

## Climate and comfort

### TIMED CLIMATE

 **Do not operate the timed climate system when refuelling the vehicle. Doing so may cause fuel vapours to combust, potentially causing a fire or explosion.**

 **Do not operate the timed climate system while the vehicle is in an enclosed space. Doing so can cause a build-up of highly toxic fumes, which may cause unconsciousness or death.**

The timed climate system, when in operation, provides a comfortable temperature inside the cabin in advance of using the vehicle. The timed climate system can also maintain a temperature when leaving the vehicle for a short period of time.

The timed climate system draws in fresh air to cool the cabin, or operates the auxiliary heater to heat the cabin. Heating or cooling of the cabin is selected by the timed climate system and is dependent on the external ambient temperature.

The timed climate system can be controlled via the touchscreen, or it can be operated using the timed climate remote. The touchscreen control has options for either timed or manual settings.

The timed climate system may not operate, or switches off automatically, in the following scenarios:

- If the fuel level is low.
- If the vehicle's battery charge is low.
- If the coolant temperature is at, or above, its required temperature.
- If the system has been in operation for 30 minutes.

### TIMED CLIMATE TOUCHSCREEN CONTROLS

The touchscreen can be used to either preset activation times or to operate the system manually.

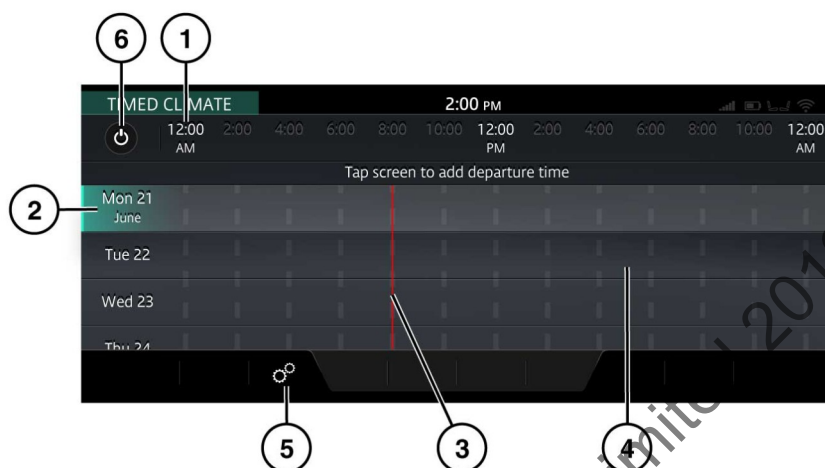
When the system is operating, an LED of the climate control system flashes. When the system is heating the cabin, the LED of the climate control Max defrost icon flashes. When the system is cooling the cabin, the LED of the climate control Max A/C icon flashes.

The choice of operation is automatically determined by the system, depending on the external temperature.

**Note:** *The system ceases operation if the engine is started.*



## Climate and comfort



E233333

To access the **TIMED CLIMATE** screen, select **Timed Climate** from the **EXTRA FEATURES** page. See **219, EXTRA FEATURES**.

To control the timed climate system via the touchscreen:

1. **Time.**
2. **Date.**
3. **Current time.**

4. **Departure times:** Touch to select a departure time within the calendar area.

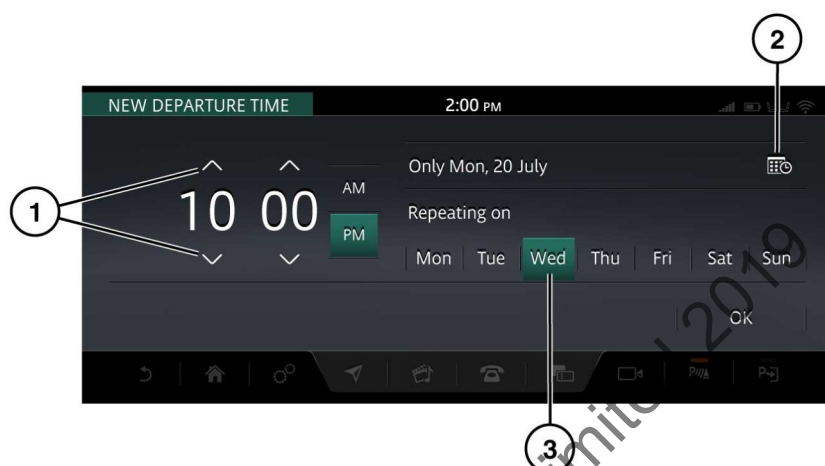
5. **Settings** icon: Touch to select timed climate settings. Select **Timed climate settings**.

- **Fuel heater for timed climate:** Touch to select **On** or **Off**.
- **Delete all departure times:** Touch to delete all current departure times.

6. **Power** icon: Touch to switch on or off.



## Climate and comfort



E233334

A departure time can be adjusted once an available departure time has been selected.

To set a single or repeated departure time:

1. **Time:** Up or down arrows.
2. **Calendar** icon: To access the calendar view.
3. **Weekday(s):** To select the preferred day(s) to repeat.

### USING THE TIMED CLIMATE REMOTE



E164037

1. **ON** button.
2. **OFF** button.
3. Light Emitting Diode (LED) operation indicator.
4. Antenna.



## Climate and comfort

**Note:** Avoid touching the antenna when operating the **ON** or **OFF** button.

The remote control has an approximate range of 100 m. There is no need to point the remote control at the vehicle.

Press and hold the **ON** button for approximately 2 seconds.

The LED operation indicator signals various states and conditions for the remote timed climate. When a button is pressed, the LED illuminates green and then indicates the following status:

- A series of short green flashes: Operation of the heater has been requested.
- 12 long green flashes: The heater is switched on.
- 12 long red flashes: The heater is switched off.
- 18 short red flashes (in groups of 3 flashes): No communication with the receiver.
- 12 short red flashes: There is an error.

If the LED operation indicator emits 6 short red flashes when a button is pressed, the battery in the remote needs to be replaced. See **262, REPLACING THE REMOTE BATTERIES**.

The remote timed climate program continues for 20-30 minutes, after which it switches off automatically to prevent the vehicle's battery from discharging. The remote timed climate program also switches off automatically if the engine is started.

**Note:** The timed climate remote only operates once per engine start to maintain battery condition.

### ADDITIONAL REMOTES

Additional remote controls can be programmed to operate the timed climate system. A maximum of four remote controls can be programmed to the vehicle. Contact a retailer/authorised repairer to purchase additional remote controls and have them programmed to the vehicle.

### REPLACING THE REMOTE BATTERIES



E164036

With the back of the remote control facing upwards, use a coin, or a similar implement, to rotate the battery cover. Lift the cover off to reveal the battery compartment. Remove the old battery and, making sure the correct polarity is maintained, insert a replacement 3.3 volt, CR1/3N battery. Replace the cover and rotate it to lock.

## Climate and comfort



Battery disposal: Used batteries must be disposed of correctly, as they contain harmful substances. Seek advice on disposal from a retailer/ authorised repairer and/or the local authority.

### TEMPERATURE DIFFERENTIATION

The temperature selected via the Climate Control system is 'perceived'. The system will endeavour to regulate the temperature to the selected values.

The actual temperature in the cabin may differ somewhat due to the effects of internal and external factors, including ambient temperature, sun load and direction.

Based on these factors, the system will automatically compensate the airflow level, direction and temperature which can give differences between the left and right hand air vents. This may result in some temperature differentiation within the cabin.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2019













## Parking features

### PARKING FEATURES SAFETY

Make sure the following warnings and cautions have been read and fully understood before driving the vehicle.

Failure to use the parking systems safely could result in damage to the vehicle, or an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

-  The sensors for the parking systems do not detect moving objects, such as children and animals, until the objects are dangerously close. The driver is responsible for driving with due care and attention during low speed manoeuvres.
-  The parking features are driving aids only. The driver is responsible for driving with due care and attention during parking manoeuvres.
-  The driver must maintain full control of the accelerator and brake pedals throughout the parking manoeuvres.
-  All sensors must be kept clean and free from debris or obstructions, e.g., leaves, mud, snow, ice, frost, or insects. Failure to keep the sensors clean may result in sensor miscalculation or false indications.
-  The parking features must not be used if a sensor is damaged, or the bumper is damaged sufficiently enough to affect a sensor mounting point. Failing to follow these guidelines may result in sensor miscalculation or false indications.
-  The parking features must not be used if a sensor is obstructed by items attached to the vehicle, e.g., bumper covers, a bicycle rack, or stickers. Failing to follow these guidelines may result in sensor miscalculations or false indications.
-  When using the park assist feature, the parking exit mode operates only when the vehicle has been parallel parked. Parking exit does not manoeuvre the vehicle from a perpendicular parking space. The driver is responsible and must not use parking exit mode to exit a perpendicular parking space.
-  When using the park assist feature, do not perform a parking exit manoeuvre until instructions display on the touchscreen.
-  Although the vehicle takes control during the parking or exiting manoeuvre, the driver must maintain full control of the accelerator and brake pedals throughout. When the manoeuvre is not as expected, take control of the steering and make any necessary adjustments.
-  Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before operating the touchscreen. See 209, TOUCHSCREEN SAFETY.

## Parking features

- ⓘ The parking features sensors may also be externally influenced by noise generated from air brakes, emergency vehicles, motorbikes, pneumatic drills, and high wind. The driver is responsible for driving with due care and attention during low speed manoeuvres.
- ⓘ The sensors for the parking systems may not detect some obstructions. For example, narrow posts or small objects close to the ground. Objects above sensor level may not be detected, e.g., when approaching a flatbed truck, the protruding part of the flatbed may not be detected. Additionally, the parking system operation may be limited, when manoeuvring the vehicle near wooden objects, e.g., a wooden post.
- ⓘ Do not aim a high pressure water jet directly at any of the sensors when washing the vehicle. Only use approved vehicle shampoo. Do not use abrasive materials, or hard or sharp objects, to clean the sensors. Failure to follow these guidelines may result in damage to the system or cause a system fault.
- ⓘ Particular care must be taken when using the parking features if accessories are fitted to the front or rear of the vehicle. For example, a bicycle rack mounted in a position where it obstructs operation of the parking sensor(s). If the affected sensor(s) is obstructed, the sensor(s) only indicates the distance from the bumper to the bicycle rack. Any obstacle beyond the detected accessory may not be indicated on the touchscreen display.
- ⓘ Park assist must not be used if a temporary spare wheel is in use.
- ⓘ Park assist must not be used if the vehicle is being used to transport a load that extends beyond the vehicle's perimeter.
- ⓘ When using the park assist feature, do not use parking exit when leaving a perpendicular parking space. Parking exit is programmed for leaving only a parallel parking space. Damage to the vehicle, or surrounding objects, may occur if parking exit is used when leaving a perpendicular parking space.

### USING THE PARKING AID

- ⚠ **Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before operating the parking features. See 264, PARKING FEATURES SAFETY.**

**Note:** The sensors must be kept clean to maintain accuracy and performance.

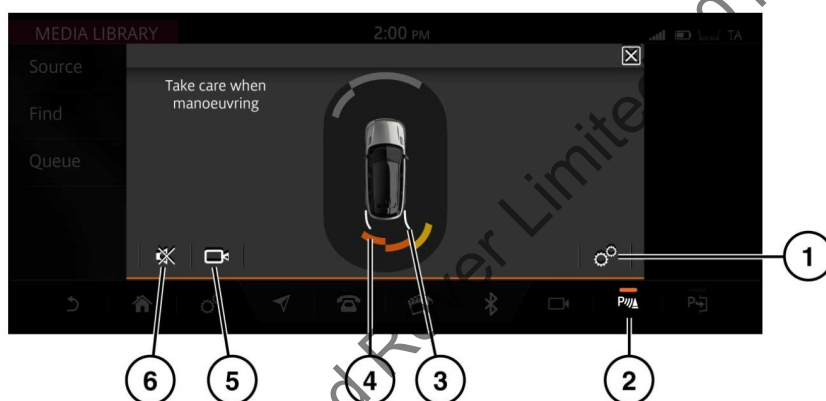


## Parking features

**Note:** If a trailer is connected to an approved trailer socket, the rear parking sensors are disabled. If the trailer's electrical plug is not connected to the socket, or a non-approved towing system is fitted, the parking sensors do not operate as intended.

**Note:** The parking aid pop-up screen is displayed when a possible threat is detected.

**Note:** The parking aid settings pop-up menu is only accessible when the parking aid feature is enabled, and the parking aid pop-up screen is displayed.



E203362

- 1. Settings icon:** Touch to select the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. Touch **Parking aid settings** to access the **PARKING AID SETTINGS** screen.
- 2. Parking aid icon:** Touch to activate the parking aid system.
- 3. Vehicle steering trajectory lines:** Projected reversing path, based on the current steering wheel position.
- 4. Parking aid sensor detection zones:**
  - Grey blocks indicate objects detected that do not pose a threat, i.e., not in a collision path with the vehicle.
  - Coloured blocks indicate objects detected that pose collision threats.
- 5. Camera icon:** Touch to select the cameras feature. See **275, REAR CAMERA** and **276, SURROUND CAMERA SYSTEM**.
- 6. Volume icon:** Touch to lower the volume of the warning tones for the current parking aid manoeuvre. See **268, PARKING AID VOLUME**.

## Parking features

The parking aid system assists the driver while manoeuvring the vehicle at low speed in confined spaces. The touchscreen displays object tracking along the front, sides, and rear of the vehicle, when active. The front, side, and outer rear sensors monitor a fixed distance around the vehicle. The inner rear sensors monitor a greater distance at the rear of the vehicle. The four side sensors provide 360° parking aid monitoring along the vehicle's sides, thereby, creating a virtual detection zone.

The parking aid system also detects low objects, e.g., kerbs in the front and rear detection zones. The kerbs are tracked as the vehicle approaches, even when the kerbs are no longer seen by the sensors.

**Note:** At vehicle start-up, the front sensors may not detect low objects, even if the objects were detected during the original parking manoeuvre.

While the vehicle is passing an object within its sensor range, the vehicle's integrated systems calculate its steering trajectory. The touchscreen displays the trajectory lines (3) in the parking aid monitored area. The steering trajectory lines indicate the projected path of the vehicle, based on the current steering wheel position.

To configure the appearance of the trajectory lines:

1. Select the **settings** icon (1) to access the **PARKING AID SETTINGS** pop-up menu.
2. Select **Trajectory lines ON** or **OFF**.

**Note:** The trajectory lines selection is retained after the vehicle's electrical system is restarted.

If a detected object is calculated to be a collision threat, it is displayed as coloured blocks. The distance from a collision threat is colour coded: yellow to amber to red, with red being the closest. Other detected objects that are not a collision threat are displayed as grey blocks.

**Note:** When the parking aid system is active, the system only provides information of obstacles when a threat is detected.

A warning tone sounds, which increases in speed as the vehicle approaches the object. The tone becomes continuous when the object is within 300 mm of the vehicle. The warning tone sounds from the area in which a collision threat has been detected.

While the vehicle is stationary, the sensors for the parking aid system do not detect objects or people approaching from the side. Also, at vehicle start-up, the vehicle has no sensor information about side objects or people. In these situations, ! is displayed on the touchscreen, in these virtual detection zones.

To manually enable the parking aid system:

1. Touch the **parking aid** icon (2). The icon illuminates while the parking aid system is enabled.
2. Touch the icon 2 again to disable the system. The LED extinguishes.

The parking aid system also activates if Reverse (R) or Neutral (N) is selected.

The parking aid system can be set to activate automatically for when:

- The vehicle's speed falls below 10 km/h (6 mph).
- Drive (D) is selected.



## Parking features

To enable the auto on feature:

1. Select the **settings** icon (1) to access the **PARKING AID SETTINGS** pop-up menu.
2. Select **Automatic PDC ON**.

**Note:** *The auto on feature selection is retained across all ignition cycles.*

### PARKING AID VOLUME

To adjust the volume of the parking aid warning tones, rotate the media volume control while the tones are active. See **224, MEDIA CONTROLS**.

Touch the **volume** icon, in the parking aid or camera features screen, to reduce the volume for that manoeuvre only. See **265, USING THE PARKING AID, 275, REAR CAMERA**, and **276, SURROUND CAMERA SYSTEM**.

### PARKING AID LIMITATIONS

The parking aid system is deactivated and cannot be reactivated if:

1. The vehicle's speed is greater than 16 km/h (10 mph).
2. Park (P) is selected.
3. Wade sensing is active.
4. All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC) is active.
5. There is a system fault.


If a parking aid system fault is detected, the touchscreen or instrument panel displays a warning message. If all of the sensors are clean and the fault is not rectified after an ignition cycle, contact a retailer/authorised repairer.

### PARKING AID SYSTEM FAULT

If a parking aid system fault is detected, a long, high-pitched tone sounds and the **parking aid** icon flashes. See **265, USING THE PARKING AID**.

The touchscreen or instrument panel displays a parking aid warning message. If all of the sensors are clean and the fault is not rectified after an ignition cycle, contact a retailer/authorised repairer.

### PARK ASSIST

 **Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before operating the parking features. See 264, PARKING FEATURES SAFETY.**

**Note:** *To cancel an active park assist manoeuvre, at any point, hold or turn the steering wheel. Alternatively, touch the **park assist** icon. See **270, SELECTING PARK ASSIST**.*

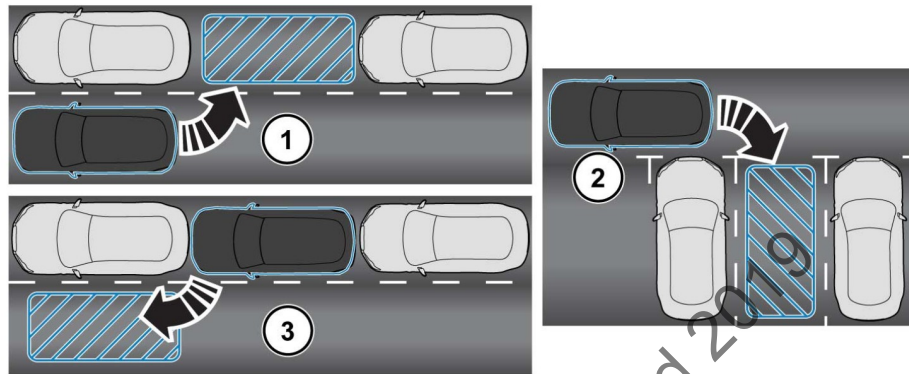
**Note:** *All of the doors and the tailgate must be securely closed when using park assist.*

**Note:** *During any park assist manoeuvre, the parking aid system remains active and emits a warning tone when objects are detected close to the vehicle.*

The park assist system is an aid to manoeuvre the vehicle in and out of a parallel parking space and into a perpendicular parking space only. Park assist takes control of the vehicle's steering system to manoeuvre the vehicle.



## Parking features



E174896

The park assist system comprises of three modes:

1. Parallel parking: For reversing into a parking space that is parallel to the vehicle.
2. Perpendicular parking: For reversing into a parking space that is at a 90° angle to the vehicle.
3. Parking exit: For exiting only a parallel parking space.


The touchscreen displays all park assist instructions.

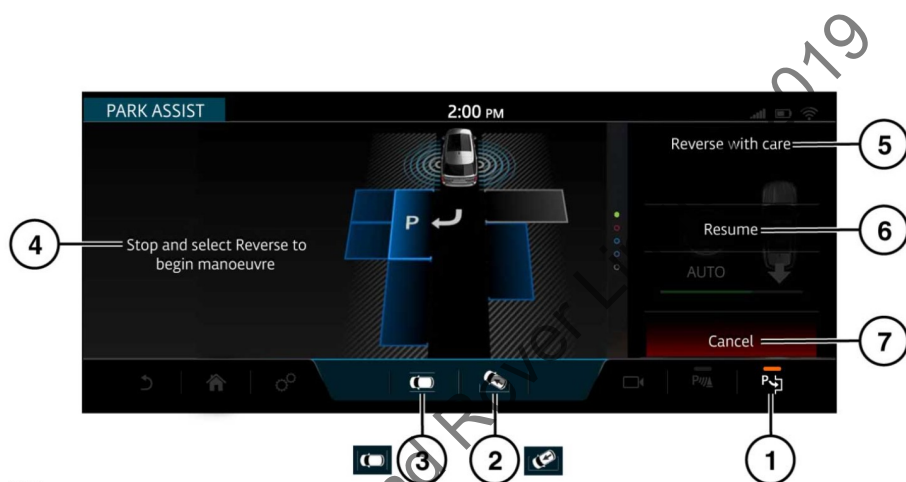
© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2019



## Parking features

### SELECTING PARK ASSIST

-  Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before operating the parking features. See 264, PARKING FEATURES SAFETY.



E205821

1. **Park assist** icon: Touch to select the **PARK ASSIST** screen.
2. **Parking exit** icon: Touch to select a parking exit manoeuvre. If a parking exit manoeuvre is selected, the icon changes to a **parking** icon.
3. **Parallel/perpendicular parking** icon: Touch to select a parallel or perpendicular parking manoeuvre.  
**Note:** The **parallel/perpendicular parking** icon only displays if the parking space can be offered as a parallel or perpendicular space.
4. Park assist manoeuvre main screen: Provides the driver with park assist instructions.
5. Park assist manoeuvre side panel: Provides the driver with step-by-step park assist instructions.
6. **Resume** soft key: If a park assist manoeuvre is interrupted by the driver's steering wheel intervention or over speeding, the driver can resume the manoeuvre. Touch **Resume** to continue with the manoeuvre.
7. **Cancel** soft key: If parking assistance is no longer required, touch **Cancel** to exit the selected park assist manoeuvre.

## Parking features

Touch the **park assist** icon (1) to activate the park assist system. The icon illuminates while the system is enabled. Touch the icon 1 again to disable the system. The LED extinguishes.

When the park assist system is active, the system automatically selects a parking space and the required parking manoeuvre. Touch icon 3 to change the selected parking space and manoeuvre.


For example, when a parallel parking space has been automatically selected by the park assist system, the parallel parking manoeuvre mode is selected. Touch icon 3 and select the perpendicular parking manoeuvre mode to change from a parallel parking manoeuvre.

Only when the vehicle is parallel parked, the driver can use the parking exit feature for the vehicle to exit the parking space. Touch the **parking exit** icon (2) for the parking exit manoeuvre to proceed.

**Note:** During a parking exit manoeuvre, the **parallel/perpendicular parking** icon (3) is not available.

The park assist system can be cancelled, at any time, by touching the **park assist** icon (1) or **Cancel** soft key (7).

### USING PARK ASSIST

 **Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before operating the parking features. See 264, PARKING FEATURES SAFETY.**

### For assistance when parking

**Note:** For park assist to search effectively for a space, the park assist system must maintain a distance of 0.5 m to 1.5 m. The distance of 0.5 m to 1.5 m is between the vehicle and the row of parked vehicles or obstacles.

As the vehicle is driven forward, the size of a potential parking space is assessed.

The park assist auto-searching feature becomes active when the vehicle's speed is less than 30 km/h (18 mph).

**Note:** When park assist auto-searching is active, the instrument panel menu displays a **park assist auto-search** icon<sup>1</sup>.

When park assist is selected and parallel parking/perpendicular parking is active, a space may already have been detected by the auto-searching feature. The park assist main screen (4) displays the detected parking spaces blue. An instruction message is also displayed. See **270, SELECTING PARK ASSIST**.

When a pre-selected parking space is found, a short confirmation tone is given.

**Note:** The park assist main screen displays any detected parking spaces that are too small or non-maneuvrable grey.

If more than one valid space is displayed in the park assist main screen, touch the preferred parking space to change from the pre-selected parking space.

The park assist system may determine that other vehicles are too close, on either side, to perform a parking manoeuvre. A detected space can be rejected, even if it is large enough for the vehicle. The driver retains the option to switch park assist off and attempt the manoeuvre manually.

## Parking features



**Park assist auto-search icon.**<sup>1</sup>

The purpose of the **park assist auto-search icon**<sup>1</sup> is to provide information to the driver that valid parking spaces are being searched for. In order to use park assist, the feature must still be activated via the touchscreen. See **270, SELECTING PARK ASSIST**.

The instrument panel only displays the **park assist auto-search icon**<sup>1</sup> when the vehicle is driven under 30 km/h (18 mph) and the park assist system is searching for spaces.

The following images display the different states of the icon in the instrument panel:

- 
 No valid parking slots.
- 
 Valid parking space on the right.
- 
 Valid parking space on the left.
- 
 Valid parking spaces on both sides.

### For assistance when exiting a parallel parking space

Select the **parking exit icon**. See **270, SELECTING PARK ASSIST**.

When the vehicle is parallel parked, the park assist system automatically determines the most appropriate side for a parking exit manoeuvre. Using the direction indicators, the driver can override the pre-selected side for a parking exit manoeuvre. The operated direction indicators notify the park assist system of which side the driver intends to leave the parking space.

For the parking exit mode to operate correctly, the vehicle must be parked in a space where other vehicles or objects are either:

- Parked in front of the vehicle.
- Parked in front and behind the vehicle.

**Note:** Sufficient space is required in front and behind the vehicle for parking exit mode to operate correctly.

### All park assist features

**Note:** During any park assist manoeuvre, the parking aid system remains active.

For all park assist modes, follow the instructions on the main screen (4) or side panel (5) until the manoeuvre is complete. See **270, SELECTING PARK ASSIST**.

A park assist manoeuvre cancels if:


- The **park assist icon** is touched. See **270, SELECTING PARK ASSIST**.
- The **Cancel** soft key (7) is selected. See **270, SELECTING PARK ASSIST**.
- The parking aid system's warning tone sounds for longer than 10 seconds.
- The Anti-lock Braking System (ABS) is operated.
- A parallel parking manoeuvre has exceeded the maximum of 9 shuffles.
- A perpendicular parking manoeuvre has exceeded the maximum of 7 shuffles.

## Parking features

- The park assist instructions are not followed.
- Park (P) is selected for more than 10 minutes.
- The vehicle's speed exceeds 7 km/h (4 mph).
- Wade sensing is enabled.

If a system fault is detected, a continuous tone sounds and the touchscreen or instrument panel displays a warning message. If all of the sensors are clean and the fault is not rectified after an ignition cycle, contact a retailer/authorised repairer.

### PARK ASSIST LIMITATIONS

 **Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before operating the parking features. See 264, PARKING FEATURES SAFETY.**

**Note:** *If an approved tow bar is fitted, park assist adjusts to compensate for the extra length.*

The park assist system is not available if:

- The vehicle's speed is greater than 30 km/h (18 mph).
- All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC) is active.
- Reverse (R) is selected.
- The suspension height is set to off-road.
- Wade sensing is active.
- There is a system fault.
- A trailer is connected.
- The size or shape of the parking space changes after it was measured.
- There is an irregular kerb alongside the parking space, or the kerb is covered with leaves, snow, etc.
- The vehicle is being used to transport a load that extends beyond the perimeter of the vehicle.
- The sensors are misaligned due to a minor collision or impact.
- The vehicle had a repair or alteration that was not approved by a retailer/authorised repairer.
- The vehicle is fitted with non-approved wheels or tyres.
- The vehicle's tyre pressures are not set to the vehicle's recommended specification.
- The vehicle's tyres have significant tyre wear.
- The vehicle is fitted with replacement tyres. After the normal running-in period, the system adapts to the replacement tyres.
- One of the parked vehicles has an attachment at a raised height such as a flatbed truck, snow plough, or cherry picker.
- The parking space is located on a corner or bend.
- The sensors are dirty or covered in mud, ice, snow, etc.
- The weather is foggy, raining, snowing, etc.
- The road surface is uneven or rutted.
- The vehicle encounters an obstruction that is thin or wedge shaped.


The park assist system may provide inaccurate results if:



## Parking features

- The vehicle encounters an obstruction that is elevated and/or protruding, such as ledges or tree branches.
- The vehicle encounters an obstruction with corners and sharp edges.
- A non-approved tow bar or trailer hitch is fitted.
- The sensors are in close proximity to hot exhaust gases from nearby vehicles.
- The sensors are in close proximity to noise generated from emergency vehicles, motorbikes, etc.
- The sensors have been damaged during vehicle cleaning.
- The space may not be large enough to accommodate the vehicle.
- There may not be enough space on the opposite side of the vehicle for the front to swing out during the manoeuvre.
- The vehicle may have been driven more than 1.5 m from the row of parked vehicles.
- The vehicle may have been driven within 41 cm to the row of parked vehicles.
- The vehicle may have been driven in Reverse (R). Park assist searches for a parking space only when the vehicle is in Drive (D).
- The approach angle may not be suitable.

### PARK ASSIST TROUBLESHOOTING

 **Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before operating the parking features. See 264, PARKING FEATURES SAFETY.**

The following may be a reason why the park assist system is not searching for a parking space:

- The system may not be activated.
- The vehicle may be travelling above 30 km/h (18 mph).
- The sensors may be covered or partly obscured by dirt, mud, ice, snow, etc.
- The approach angle may not be suitable.

The following may be a reason why the park assist system does not offer a certain parking space:

- The sensors may be covered or partly obscured by dirt, mud, ice, snow, etc.

The following may be a reason why park assist has not positioned the vehicle accurately within the space:

- One or more of the system limitations criteria may have been met. See 273, **PARK ASSIST LIMITATIONS.**

## Cameras

## REAR CAMERA

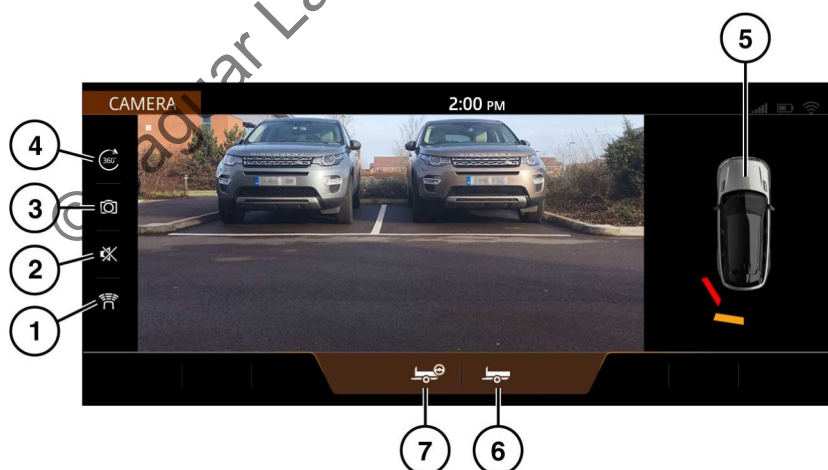
- ⚠ The driver is responsible for detecting obstacles and estimating the vehicle's distance from them when manoeuvring the vehicle. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.
- ⚠ The camera must be kept clean and free from debris or obstructions, e.g., ice, frost, snow, leaves, mud, or insects. Failure to keep the camera clean may result in miscalculations or false indications, which can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.

- ⚠ Do not attach stickers or objects to the rear bumper that may interfere with the camera. Failure to keep the camera clean may result in miscalculations or false indications, which can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.
- ⚠ Some overhanging objects or barriers, which could cause damage to the vehicle, may not be detected by the camera.

The rear camera is located above the rear number plate.

When Reverse (R) is selected, the touchscreen automatically displays a high definition, colour image from the rear of the vehicle.

**Note:** The rear camera display has priority over the parking aids display and many other touchscreen features. To cancel the rear camera display, at any time, touch the **home** icon or the **return** icon. See 210, TOUCHSCREEN HOME MENU.



E241553



## Cameras

1. **Parking aid graphics** icon: Touch to switch the parking aid graphics on or off.
2. **Volume** icon: Touch to lower the volume of the warning tones for the current parking aid manoeuvre.
3. **Camera** icon: Touch to select an alternative camera view.
4. **360° surround camera view** icon: Touch for a bird's-eye 360° view of the vehicle and its immediate surroundings, using all of the cameras.
5. **Parking aid plan view**: Touch to view the full screen view of the parking aid feature.
6. **Tow assist** icon: Touch for trailer profile setup. See **121, TOW ASSIST**.
7. **Advanced tow assist** icon: Touch for trailer profile setup. See **123, ADVANCED TOW ASSIST**.

The rear camera display discontinues automatically when either of the following apply:

- Drive (D) is selected for longer than 5 seconds.
- Drive (D) is selected and/or the vehicle's speed is greater than 18 km/h (11 mph).

Depending on the vehicle's market specification, a **clear sight** icon<sup>1</sup> displays on the **REAR CAMERA** and **SURROUND CAMERA** screens.

The **clear sight** icon<sup>1</sup> displays a view of the terrain ahead of the front bumper and under the bonnet. Further information on the **clear sight** icon<sup>1</sup> operation can be found in the relevant section of the Owner's Handbook. See **201, DRIVE ASSIST**.



Clear sight icon.<sup>1</sup>

### SURROUND CAMERA SYSTEM



The driver is responsible for detecting obstacles and estimating the vehicle's distance from them when manoeuvring the vehicle. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.



The cameras must be kept clean and free from debris or obstructions, e.g., ice, frost, snow, leaves, mud, or insects. Failure to keep the cameras clear may result in miscalculations or false indications, which can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.



Do not attach stickers or objects to the cameras. Failure to keep the cameras clear from obstructions may result in miscalculations or false indications, which can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.



The cameras may not detect some overhanging objects or barriers, which could cause damage to the vehicle.

**Note:** The cameras feature becomes inactive when travelling at vehicle speeds above 16 km/h (10 mph).

The surround camera system consists of four cameras, located as follows:

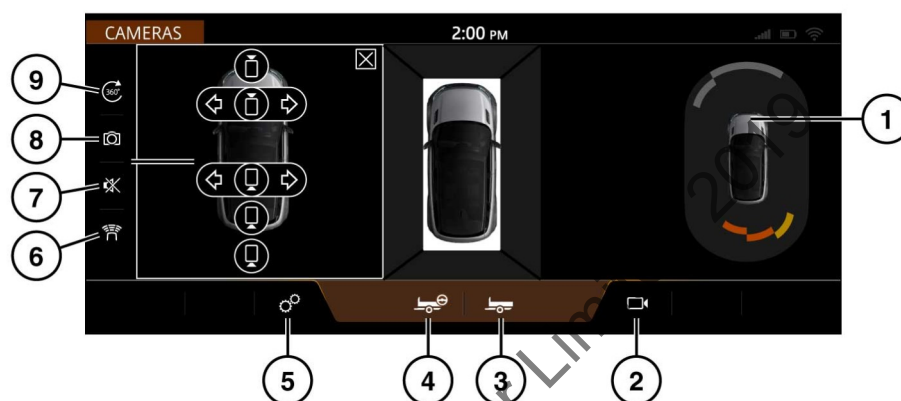
- One is located in the centre of the front lower grille.
- One is located underneath each of the exterior door mirrors.



## Cameras

- One is located just above the rear number plate.

**Note:** The quality of the camera views may vary in different lighting conditions.



E241550

1. **Parking aid plan view:** Touch to view the full screen view of the parking aid feature.
2. **Camera icon:** Touch to select the camera feature.
3. **Tow assist icon:** Touch for trailer profile setup. See **121, TOW ASSIST**.
4. **Advanced tow assist icon:** Touch for trailer profile setup. See **123, ADVANCED TOW ASSIST**.
5. **Settings icon:** Touch to select the **CAMERA SETTINGS** menu.
  - **Parking guidance:** Select **ON** or **OFF**.
  - **Parking aid graphics:** Select **ON** or **OFF**.
  - **Parking aid plan view:** Select **ON** or **OFF**.
  - **Default camera view selection:** Touch **List** to setup.
6. **Parking aid graphics icon:** Touch to switch the parking aid graphics on or off.
7. **Volume icon:** Touch to lower the volume of the warning tones for the current parking aid manoeuvre.
8. **Camera selection icon:** Touch to select an alternative camera view:
  - Front camera view.
  - T-junction view.
  - Door mirror camera view.
  - Rear junction camera view.
  - Rear camera view.

**Note:** Depending on the vehicle specification, the **CAMERA SETTINGS** menu may include further camera settings. When the list includes six or more feature settings, a scroll bar is displayed.



## Cameras

**Note:** When **camera selection icon (6)** is touched, a pop-out menu is displayed to select an alternative camera view.

9. **360° surround camera view icon:**  
Touch for a bird's-eye 360° view of the vehicle and its immediate surroundings, using all of the cameras.

Depending on the vehicle's market specification, a **clear sight icon**<sup>1</sup> displays on the **REAR CAMERA** and **SURROUND CAMERA** screens.

The **clear sight icon**<sup>1</sup> displays a view of the terrain ahead of the front bumper and under the bonnet. Further information on the **clear sight icon**<sup>1</sup> operation can be found in the relevant section of the Owner's Handbook. See **201, DRIVE ASSIST**.



**Clear sight icon**<sup>1</sup>

### Camera shortcuts



The function of the **camera icon** varies, depending on the selected gear and the vehicle's road speed. The camera function gives the following options:

- When in a forward gear, at speeds below 10 km/h (6 mph):
  - Press once to select the T-junction view.
  - Press twice to select the rear junction view.
  - Press a third time to return to the T-junction view.
- When in Neutral (N) or Park (P):
  - Press once to select the 360° surround camera view.

- Press twice to select the T-junction view.
- Press a third time to select the rear junction view.
- When in Reverse (R):
  - Press once to select the rear junction view.
  - Press twice to select the T-junction view.
  - Press a third time to return to the rear junction view.

### Pan and zoom tools

When in a full screen view of a camera image, touch the image to display the pan and zoom tools. The pan and zoom tools allow the image to be viewed at three levels of detail and can be manipulated left, right, up, and down. Double tap the image to jump to the middle level of zoomed detail and allow the same pan and zoom functionality.

## FORWARD VEHICLE GUIDANCE

**Note:** Forward vehicle guidance is only available with a surround camera system.

Forward vehicle guidance provides touchscreen views of the area directly ahead of the vehicle that may not be visible to the driver. The touchscreen displays the projected forward steering path, based on the current steering wheel position. Object detection ahead is also included when front parking aid sensors are active. The feature can be useful when manoeuvring through a narrow gap or around obstacles.

The projected steering path and object detection can be enabled or disabled via the **CAMERA SETTINGS** menu. See **276, SURROUND CAMERA SYSTEM**.

## Cameras

Forward vehicle guidance activates when the plan view, or front camera view, is selected from the **CAMERA** screen. The projected forward steering path and object detection ahead displays when the vehicle is in a forward gear or in Neutral (**N**). The vehicle must be travelling at less than 16 km/h (10 mph).

**Note:** *If a fault is detected with the front parking aid sensors, the touchscreen displays a warning message. If all of the sensors are clean, and after restarting the vehicle's electrical system the issue persists, contact a retailer/authorised repairer as soon as possible.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2019









## Phone


### PHONE SAFETY


Make sure the following warnings have been read and fully understood before using the phone features.

Failure to use the phone features safely could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

-  **Do not adjust the touchscreen controls, or allow the system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving.**
-  **Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before operating the touchscreen. See 209, TOUCHSCREEN SAFETY.**
-  **Switch off the phone in areas with a high explosion risk, e.g., filling stations, fuel storage areas, or chemical factories. Further high explosion risks are found where the air contains fuel vapour, chemicals, or metal dust. The phone could trigger an explosion or cause a fire.**
-  **Always store the phone securely. In an accident, loose items can cause injury.**
-  **The functioning of cardiac pacemakers or hearing aids may be impaired when the phone is in use. Check with a doctor or the device's manufacturer whether any such devices that the vehicle's occupants are using are sufficiently protected against high-frequency energy.**


 **Even when using the Bluetooth® wireless technology hands-free feature, using the phone while driving is dangerous. The use of a phone diverts the driver's attention from the traffic situation. When using the phone, stop at an appropriate place where other vehicles are not endangered or inconvenienced.**

 **Drivers should talk on the phone only when it is safe to do so and when such use does not distract the driver from the road.**

 **Drivers should never text message while driving. Texting while driving diverts attention from the road.**

The Health Industry Manufacturers' Association recommends that a minimum separation of 22 cm is maintained between a wireless phone antenna and a pacemaker. The recommendation is to avoid potential interference with the pacemaker. The recommendations are consistent with the independent research by, and recommendations of, Wireless Technology Research.

### PHONE SYSTEM OVERVIEW

 **Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before operating the phone features. See 280, PHONE SAFETY.**

**Note:** *The touchscreen displays the recent call list in the order that the calls were recorded. If this information is not available on the connected phone, the recent call list displays as sent from the phone. Some phones may arrange the list in another order.*

**Note:** The system removes duplicate entries of the same call type from the same caller. For example, multiple calls from the same caller are reduced to one call.

The phone system can be operated and viewed via the touchscreen or instrument panel. See **210, TOUCHSCREEN HOME MENU** and **69, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

To access the phone features, a phone must be paired with the vehicle. Further information on pairing a phone can be found in the relevant section of the Owner's Handbook. See **283, PAIRING AND CONNECTING USING THE PHONE**.

To access the **PHONE** screen, touch **Phone** on the touchscreen's **HOME** menu. See **210, TOUCHSCREEN HOME MENU**.

To access the **PHONE** screen in the instrument panel, press the **MENU** button to activate the instrument panel menu. Search **Phone** and press **OK**. For further information, please refer to the relevant section of the Owner's Handbook. See **69, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

The phone system can also be operated via voice commands. Further information on voice control can be found in the relevant section of the Owner's Handbook. See **307, USING VOICE CONTROL**.



## Phone

### Touchscreen phone menu



E210350

- Options:** Touch to access the following options:
  - **Voicemail.**
  - **Change phone.**
  - **Auto reject.**
- Messages:** Touch to display a list of received messages.

*Note: The availability and functionality of Messages depends on the specification of the vehicle and the market in which the vehicle is being used.*
- Keypad:** Touch to access the keypad dialling mode.
- Contacts:** Touch to view the downloaded contacts.
- Recents:** Touch to display a list of recently dialled, received, and missed calls. When a call is unanswered or missed, the number is displayed in the top right corner of the **Recents** soft key.
- Feature display:** The selected feature is displayed in this area.
- End call icon:** When a call is in progress, the **end call** icon is displayed. Press to end the call.
- Phone icon:** Touch to select the **PHONE** screen. When the **PHONE** screen is selected, the icon changes to an active icon. Touch the icon to select an alternative paired phone. Alternatively, when receiving an incoming call, an active green icon displays. Touch to answer the incoming call.


9. **Settings** icon: Touch to access the **PHONE SETTINGS** pop-up menu. Select one of the following options to manage the features: **Settings for all phones**, **Settings for 'name of phone'**, or **Bluetooth settings**.
10. **Scroll bar**: If more than five features are available, touch the scroll bar or arrows to move up or down the list. Alternatively, swipe the list in the direction required.

### PHONE COMPATIBILITY

Please refer to the **OWNERSHIP** section of the Land Rover website at: [www.landrover.com](http://www.landrover.com) for a list of compatible phones.

**Note:** The **Bluetooth®** wireless technology devices listed have been tested for compatibility with Jaguar Land Rover vehicles. Performance varies, based on the phone's software version, battery condition, coverage, and the network provider. Phones are warranted by the phone manufacturer, not by the vehicle manufacturer.

### PAIRING AND CONNECTING USING THE PHONE

 **Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before operating the phone features. See 280, PHONE SAFETY.**

**Note:** The process of pairing and connecting with the vehicle, from the phone, varies depending on the type of phone used.

Pairing and connecting a phone:

1. Switch the ignition on and make sure that the touchscreen is active.

2. When pairing a device for the first time, select **Tap to connect phone** from the **HOME** screen. Select **Pair new device**. The vehicle's **Bluetooth®** wireless technology device is now discoverable. See **210, TOUCHSCREEN HOME MENU**.

**Note:** When a phone is paired to the vehicle, **Tap to connect phone** becomes the name of the user's phone. See **210, TOUCHSCREEN HOME MENU**.

3. Using the phone, search for **Bluetooth** devices. On some phones, this is referred to as a new paired device. See the phone's operating instructions for further information. The vehicle's discoverable **Bluetooth** name is the same as the vehicle's name.
4. When the vehicle's name is discovered, follow the on-screen instructions. Select **Yes**, when prompted, to confirm the pairing. Alternatively, some older phones request a PIN to be entered. Either enter the PIN **1234**, or select **Yes**, to confirm that the PIN displayed on the phone matches the vehicle's PIN.
5. If there is a prompt for a **phonebook** or **contacts** download, accept it. See **286, CONTACTS**.  
**Note:** When prompted, select the **Remember this setting** option once the **Phonebook** or **Contacts** information has been downloaded.
6. Once the phone is paired and connected to the system, select the **return** icon or the **PHONE** screen. See **216, TOUCHSCREEN GLOBAL ICONS**.



## Phone

**Note:** Some phones require the **Bluetooth** device pairing to be set as authorised or trusted, in order to automatically connect. Refer to the phone's operating instructions for further information.


To select the paired phone's settings, make sure the following steps are followed:

1. Select the **settings** icon from the **PHONE** screen.
2. Select **Phone settings** from the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu.
3. A list of all paired phones is displayed. Touch the paired phone's name.

Paired phones have the option to be used as a phone, a media device, or both. To select a device type, make sure the following steps are followed:

1. Select the **settings** icon from the **PHONE** screen.
2. Select **All settings**.
3. Select **Connectivity**.
4. From the **CONNECTIVITY** screen list, select **Bluetooth**.
5. Select the **Paired devices** list to manage any devices.

### MANAGING TWO CALLS

 **Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before operating the phone features. See 280, PHONE SAFETY.**

**Note:** When more than two calls, e.g., a conference call, are active on the phone when connecting to the vehicle's phone system, the calls are maintained. However, a maximum of two call details are displayed. When more than two calls are in progress when connecting, any calls that are not active, i.e., on hold or incoming, are rejected.


Two calls can be taken on the same phone. Notification is given when a second call is received. When accepting a second call, the first call is automatically put on hold.

Alternatively, a second call can be dialled from the displayed screen options. From the screen options, select **Add call** and then **Contacts** to display the list of contacts. Select **Keypad** to enter the number.

When there are two separate calls, the **hold** icon changes to a **swap** icon. Touch the **swap** icon, or the contact's name or number, to swap between the current call and the call on hold. See **285, PHONE SYSTEM ICONS**.

Touch and hold the **end call** icon to end the current call and return to the remaining call. Touch the **end call** icon to end both calls.

### MERGE CALLS

 **Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before operating the phone features. See 280, PHONE SAFETY.**

If two calls are in progress on the same phone, both calls can be merged into one conference call. Select the displayed **Merge** option.












## Phone


While the calls are merged, touch the **hold** icon or the **mute** icon to mute both calls. Alternatively, touch the **end call** icon to end both calls.

**Merge** cannot be deselected. If one caller ends the call, the remaining call stays active. See **285, PHONE SYSTEM ICONS**.

### PHONE SYSTEM ICONS


Depending on the part of the phone system in use, the following icons display on the touchscreen:

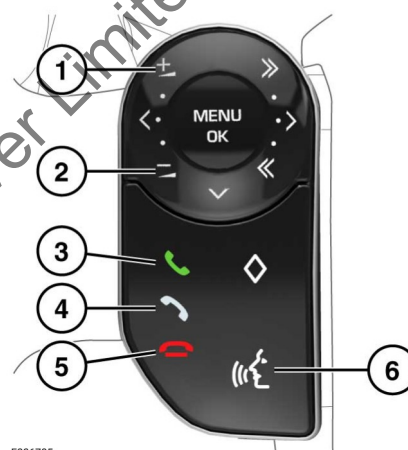
-  **Call icon:** Touch to send or accept a call.
-  **End call icon:** Touch to end or reject a call.
-  **Hold icon:** Touch to hold a call. Touch again to return to the call.
-  **Swap icon:** Touch to swap between connected calls.
-  **Handset icon:** Touch to switch the call to the phone handset.
-  **Mute icon:** Touch to mute the microphone and initiate privacy mode. While selected, the caller cannot hear the conversation.
-  Phone signal strength indicator.
-  Phone battery level indicator.
-  **Swap phone icon:** Touch to change the phone.

 **Search contacts icon:** Touch to search for contacts.

 **Recents icon:** Touch to view a list of recent calls.

### STEERING WHEEL PHONE CONTROLS

 **Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before operating the phone features. See 280, PHONE SAFETY.**



E236785

1. Press to increase the volume. Sweep clockwise to increase the volume during a call.
2. Press to decrease the volume. Sweep counter-clockwise to decrease the volume during a call.
3. Press to answer an incoming call. Press to access the recent calls list on the touchscreen. Press and hold to access the contacts list on the touchscreen.
4. Phone not in use.




## Phone

5. Press to end a call.
6. Press to make a call using voice control. See 307, USING VOICE CONTROL.

**Note:** The user must scroll through a contact list by using the touchscreen scroll bar.


### PHONE CALL VOLUME

 **Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before operating the phone features. See 280, PHONE SAFETY.**

While a phone call is active, rotate the media system's volume control to adjust the call volume. Alternatively, adjust via the steering wheel controls. See 285, STEERING WHEEL PHONE CONTROLS.

If the media system is in use when a phone call is active, the media system source is muted for the duration of the call.


### MICROPHONE VOLUME

 **Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before operating the phone features. See 280, PHONE SAFETY.**

To adjust the microphone's volume, make sure the following steps are followed:

1. Select the **settings** icon from the **PHONE** screen.
2. Select **Phone settings** from the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu.
3. From the **PHONE SETTINGS** pop-up menu, select **Microphone volume**.
4. Touch + or - to adjust to the required level.

### CONTACTS

 **Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before operating the phone features. See 280, PHONE SAFETY.**

Contacts stored in the memory of a paired phone can be automatically downloaded to the vehicle's **Contacts** list. The contact list is downloaded each time the phone is connected to the system. See 283, PAIRING AND CONNECTING USING THE PHONE.

Certain phones store the contacts in two different areas: the SIM card and the phone's memory. The vehicle's system accesses only those numbers stored in the phone's memory.

To access contacts via the touchscreen:

1. From the **PHONE** screen, select **Contacts**. See 280, PHONE SYSTEM OVERVIEW.
2. Use the scroll bar, or swipe the list, to search the list alphabetically.
3. Identify the required contact from the displayed list. Touch to call. When a contact has more than one number stored, select the required number from the list.

**Note:** To view the entire list, use the scroll bar.

To access contacts via the instrument panel:

1. Select **Phone** from the instrument panel menu. See 69, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU.
2. Select **Recents**.
3. Use the steering wheel controls to scroll through the displayed list. See 69, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU.

## Phone

- Identify the required contact from the displayed list. Press **OK** on the steering wheel controls to call.

If the phone supports contact cards, contact information can be viewed in the vehicle's **Contacts** list.

The order in which the **Contacts** list is displayed can be changed as follows:

- Select the **settings** icon from the **PHONE** screen. See **280, PHONE SYSTEM OVERVIEW**.
- Select **Phone settings** from the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu.
- Select the required phone. Select **First name** or **Last name** to change the display for the connected phone.


To delete the **Contacts** list:

- Select the **settings** icon from the **PHONE** screen.
- Select **Phone settings** from the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu.
- Select **Delete from car** for the connected phone.

Once the **Contacts** list is deleted, **Auto update contacts** is unavailable for selection until the paired phone's contact list is downloaded again.

**Note:** If a contact, or the **Contacts** list, is deleted, incoming calls display the number but no name.

### RECEIVING TEXT MESSAGES

-  **Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before operating the phone features. See 280, PHONE SAFETY.**

**Note:** The message feature is not compatible with all phones. For further information, please refer to the Land Rover website at: [www.landrover.com](http://www.landrover.com).

**Note:** The availability and functionality of **Messages** depends on the specification of the vehicle and the market in which the vehicle is being used.

**Note:** The **Messages** soft key does not display on the touchscreen if the user declines access via the mobile phone to download messages.

To access text messages via the touchscreen, a phone must be paired with the vehicle. For further information on pairing a phone, refer to the relevant section of the Owner's Handbook. See **283, PAIRING AND CONNECTING USING THE PHONE**.

When receiving an incoming text message, the touchscreen displays either a pop-up or banner notification.

A pop-up notification displays the following options:



**Call** icon: Touch to call the sender of the text message.

**Read out** soft key: Touch for the text message to be read out as an audio message.

Alternatively, a banner notification informs the driver when a new message is received. The received message can only be viewed in the **Messages** list.

To access the **Messages** list on the touchscreen:

- From the **PHONE** screen, select **Messages**. See **280, PHONE SYSTEM OVERVIEW**.
- Use the scroll bar to search the list.



## Phone

3. Identify the required text message from the displayed list and select.
4. The selected message allows for the following options:
  - **Call.**
  - **Read out.**
  - **Reply:** Provides a list of templates that the user can reply with, e.g., **Please give me a call** or **Can't talk right now**. Select the required reply. Alternatively, the user can edit and create a message template to reply with.

**Note:** The **Reply** option is only available when the vehicle is stationary.

The user can access received messages and send replies via voice commands. For further information, refer to the relevant section of the Owner's Handbook. See **307, USING VOICE CONTROL**.

To view the message settings from the **PHONE** screen:

1. Select the **settings** icon. See **280, PHONE SYSTEM OVERVIEW**.
2. Select **Phone settings** from the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu.
3. Select **Settings for all phones** from the **PHONE SETTINGS** pop-up menu.

The following options are available:

- **Sort order.**
- **Messaging.**
- **Message tones.**
- **Message alert.**
- **Edit message templates.**

## Bluetooth®

### BLUETOOTH® INFORMATION



**Bluetooth®** wireless technology is the name for short-range Radio Frequency (RF) technology that allows electronic devices to communicate wirelessly with each other.

**Note:** The **Bluetooth®** word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc and any use of such marks by Jaguar Land Rover Limited is under licence.

The vehicle's **Bluetooth** wireless technology system supports **Bluetooth** wireless technology Hands-Free Profile (HFP), Advanced Audio Distribution Profile (A2DP), Audio Video Remote Control Profile (AVRCP), and Message Access Profile (MAP).

**Note:** HFP, A2DP and AVRCP profiles can be connected independently. A phone can be connected via one profile, while a media device can be connected via the other, at the same time.

Before making use of the vehicle's **Bluetooth** wireless technology phone system, the **Bluetooth** wireless technology device must be paired and connected to the vehicle's system. The recommended method of connection is via the device to the vehicle. See **283, PAIRING AND CONNECTING USING THE PHONE.**

Each time the ignition is switched on, the vehicle's system attempts to connect with the last connected phone or media device.

Phones and media devices have a wide range of audio and echo characteristics. The vehicle's system may take a few seconds to adapt and deliver optimum audio performance. To achieve this, it may be necessary to reduce the media sound volume and also reduce the ventilation fan speed slightly.

**Note:** Some device's require the **Bluetooth** wireless technology device pairing feature to be set as authorised or trusted in order to automatically connect. Refer to the device's operating instructions for further information.





## Navigation


### NAVIGATION SAFETY


Make sure the following warnings and cautions have been read and fully understood before using the navigation system.


Failure to use the navigation system safely could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

 **The navigation system is not a substitute for driving safely with due care and attention, Road Traffic Regulations must always be observed. Drivers should not assume that a feature will correct errors in judgement when driving.**

 **The driver is responsible for staying alert, driving safely, and for being in control of the vehicle at all times, relative to the prevailing conditions. The driver is responsible for determining the safety of the route suggested by the navigation system. The navigation system may not function properly in all circumstances.**

 **Do not adjust the touchscreen controls, or allow the system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving.**

 **Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before operating the touchscreen. See 209, TOUCHSCREEN SAFETY.**

 During any map update, the USB drive must not be removed, or the ignition switched off, before the update is complete. Doing so cancels the map update and potentially leaves the system without any available map data.

**Note:** The speed camera alert feature is not available in certain markets.

**Note:** The speed camera alert feature can be enabled or disabled via the **NAVIGATION SETTINGS** menu. See 298, **NAVIGATION SETTINGS**.

### NAVIGATION OVERVIEW

Navigation instructions is by map and turn information displayed on the touchscreen, instrument panel, and in the Head-Up Display (HUD). Navigation instruction can also be complemented by voice guidance.

The touchscreen is used to control the navigation system via menus and map displays. See 291, **USING THE NAVIGATION SYSTEM**.

The navigation system uses a selection of **Connected Navigation Pro** features to enhance the navigation system. See 302, **CONNECTED NAVIGATION PRO**.

The vehicle's instrument panel can be set up to display navigation instructions and maps. See 67, **INSTRUMENT PANEL**.

The HUD can also be set up to display turn instructions. See 73, **HEAD-UP DISPLAY (HUD)**.

The navigation system can also be controlled via voice commands. See 302, **NAVIGATION VOICE CONTROL**.

## Navigation

### NAVIGATION PERFORMANCE LIMITATIONS

Under certain conditions, it is possible for the vehicle's position displayed on the map screen to be incorrect. Incorrect vehicle positioning may happen when:

- Driving on a spiral ramp in a building.
- Driving on or beneath elevated roads.
- Driving between tall buildings.
- Two roads are close and parallel.
- The vehicle is transported to another location.
- The vehicle has been rotated on a turntable.
- The vehicle's battery has been disconnected.

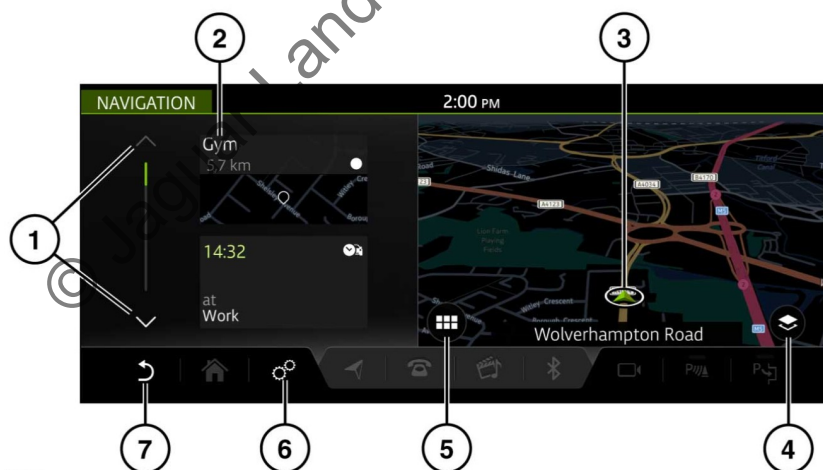
GPS signals may occasionally be interrupted due to physical barriers, such as roads under raised carriageways and tunnels.

### USING THE NAVIGATION SYSTEM

**⚠** Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before operating the navigation system. See 290, NAVIGATION SAFETY .

To access the navigation system, touch the navigation soft key on the touchscreen's **HOME** menu. Alternatively, select the **navigation** icon. See 210, TOUCHSCREEN HOME MENU.

**Note:** A first time user should set up personal preferences in the **NAVIGATION SETTINGS** menu. Personal preferences include settings for managing which **Pro Services** features can connect to the internet when on the home network or while roaming. The settings are applied whenever navigation is used. See 298, NAVIGATION SETTINGS .



E200805



## Navigation

When navigation is selected and the vehicle is stationary, the navigation system displays a map view of the current vehicle position. The touchscreen displays a side panel containing quick access tiles.

**Note:** The quick access tiles act as shortcuts, to allow quick access to certain navigation system functionality.

**Note:** The quick access tiles are hidden when the vehicle's speed reaches a predetermined level. The quick access tiles return only when the vehicle is stationary for a period of time, and a route is not set. If required, the options can be accessed via the **NAVIGATION SETTINGS** menu. See 298, **NAVIGATION SETTINGS**.

**Note:** If the navigation system is started when the vehicle's speed is already above the predetermined level, the quick access tiles do not display.


Control the navigation system as follows:

1. **Scroll bar:** Touch to scroll up or down the tile list.
2. **Quick access tile options:** Options include:
  - **COMMUTE MODE.** See 305, **COMMUTE MODE**.
  - **RECENT DESTINATIONS.**
  - **FUEL FINDER.** See 301, **FUEL FINDER**.
  - **HOME.**
  - **HELP TOPICS.** See 301, **HELP TOPICS**.
  - **LICENCE INFORMATION.** See 298, **NAVIGATION SETTINGS**.

3. The current vehicle position and direction.
4. **View options** icon: Touch to select the **2D**, **3D**, **Traffic**, **Compass**, **North facing**, or **Satellite** map views. When guidance is active, combination views based on **2D**, **3D**, **Traffic**, **Compass**, **North facing**, and **Satellite** map views become available, such as **Manoeuvres**, **Full route**, and **Route remaining**. See 299, **VIEW OPTIONS**.  
**Note:** Internet connectivity is required for **Traffic** and **Satellite** map views.
5. **Navigation menu** icon: Touch to select the **NAVIGATION MENU**. See 292, **NAVIGATION MENU**.
6. **Settings** icon: Touch to select the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. Select **Navigation settings** to view or adjust the settings. See 298, **NAVIGATION SETTINGS**.
7. **Return** icon: Touch to return to a higher menu level.

When the vehicle is in motion and no active route is selected, an assistance map is displayed.

### NAVIGATION MENU

 Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before operating the navigation system. See 290, **NAVIGATION SAFETY**.



When displayed, touch the **navigation menu** icon to access the **NAVIGATION MENU**.

**Note:** Some of the options listed are only available when a route has been selected.



## Navigation




E209467

1. **One box search:** Provides a choice of options to search for an address, destination, or a Point Of Interest (POI). See **303, ONE BOX SEARCH**.
2. **Search:** Type the required text into the search box. See **294, SEARCH**.
3. **Places:** Select from the Point Of Interest (POI) categories listed. See **295, PLACES**.
4. **Your Destinations:** Displays saved locations, e.g. home address, saved locations, most recent destinations, and stored favourites. See **300, FAVOURITES**.
5. **Address entry icon:** Touch to enter a full detailed address. See **294, ADDRESS ENTRY**.  
*Note: The address entry icon displays only, when the one box search bar or Search soft key is touched.*
6. **Mute:** Touch to mute the navigation system's voice guidance.
7. **Stop Guidance:** Cancels the current route guidance, if a route is selected.
8. **Edit:** Touch to edit the current route. See **298, EDIT ROUTE**.



## Navigation

### ADDRESS ENTRY

 **Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before operating the navigation system. See 290, NAVIGATION SAFETY .**



When displayed, touch the **address entry** icon to enter a detailed address.

1. Input the following information:
  - **Country**
  - **City, Town, or Postcode:** Previous entries and narrowed search results are displayed. Select the required entry and touch **OK**.
  - **Street name, Number, or Junction,** if applicable: Previous entries and narrowed search results are displayed. Select the required entry and touch **OK**.
2. The map displays the entered location as the address is entered. If the location displayed is correct, touch **Show place details** to confirm.
3. The navigation system calculates and displays a map with the entered location, destination address, and the most appropriate route.
4. Touch **Start** to begin navigation.
5. If the highlighted route is not the desired route, select **Route options** to change the route. The navigation system displays the ETA and route distance for each alternative route.

**Note:** The navigation system calculates all the routes, based on the selected route preferences, e.g., avoiding toll roads or ferries. The route preferences can be adjusted while setting the destination, if required, touch the **Route preferences** soft key, when displayed.

6. Select the alternative route. Touch **Start** to begin navigation.


**Note:** An address or a Point Of Interest (POI) can be added as a waypoint after a destination has been selected. See **298, EDIT ROUTE**.

**Note:** Previous entries, or search results as they are narrowed, are displayed on the touchscreen, behind the keyboard. If required, touch the **hide keyboard** icon<sup>1</sup> for better access to the displayed results.



**Hide keyboard** icon.<sup>1</sup>

### SEARCH

 **Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before operating the navigation system. See 290, NAVIGATION SAFETY .**

To search for a place name, category, or address:

1. Touch the **Search** soft key on the **NAVIGATION MENU** screen. See **292, NAVIGATION MENU**.
2. Input the required destination and select the required entry.

**Note:** Touch the **hide keyboard** icon<sup>1</sup> to view the search results. Touch the text box to continue typing.

## Navigation

- The navigation system calculates and displays a map with the entered location, destination address, and the most appropriate route.
- Touch **Start** to begin navigation.
- If the highlighted route is not the desired route, select the **Route options** soft key to change the route. The navigation system displays the ETA and route distance for each alternative route.

**Note:** The navigation system calculates all the routes, based on the selected route preferences, e.g., avoiding toll roads or ferries. The route preferences can be adjusted while setting the destination, if required, touch the **Route preferences** soft key, when displayed.

- Select the alternative route. Touch **Start** to begin navigation.

**Note:** An address or POI can be added as a waypoint after a destination has been selected. See **298, EDIT ROUTE**.

If a route is already active, the following list of search areas are available from the **drop-down menu** icon<sup>2</sup>:

- Along the route.
- Most relevant.
- Near the waypoint 1, 2, or 3, etc.

**Note:** The selected route must include one or more waypoints for this option to be available.

- Input the search choice into the text box. Touch the **hide keyboard** icon<sup>1</sup> to view the search results. Touch the text box to continue typing.
- Select the search result from the list provided.
- Touch **Start** to begin navigation.

**Note:** Previous entries, or search results as they are narrowed, are displayed on the touchscreen, behind the keyboard. If required, touch the **hide keyboard** icon<sup>1</sup> for better access to display results.



Hide keyboard icon.<sup>1</sup>



Drop-down menu icon.<sup>2</sup>

### PLACES



**Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before operating the navigation system. See 290, NAVIGATION SAFETY .**

To search for Points Of Interest (POIs):

- Touch the **Places** soft key on the **NAVIGATION MENU** screen. See **292, NAVIGATION MENU**.
- Select a search category from the list:
  - **Fuel Station**  
*Note: Fuel stations can be sorted by the price of the fuel.*
  - **Eat & Drink**
  - **Parking Facility**
  - **ATM/Bank/Exchange**
  - **Public Toilet/Rest Area**
  - **Shopping**
  - **Going Out**
  - **Leisure & Outdoor**
  - **Accommodation**
  - **Car Dealer/Repairer**
  - **Hospital or Healthcare Facility**
  - **Airport**
  - **Transport.**



## Navigation

3. Select the search result from the list provided.
4. The navigation system calculates and displays a map with the entered location, destination address, and the most appropriate route.
5. Touch **Start** to begin navigation.
6. If the highlighted route is not the desired route, select the **Route options** soft key to change the route. The navigation system displays the ETA and route distance for each alternative route.

**Note:** The navigation system calculates all the routes, based on the selected route preferences, e.g., avoiding toll roads or ferries. The route preferences can be adjusted while setting the destination, if required, touch the **Route preferences** soft key, when displayed.

7. Select the alternative route. Touch **Start** to begin navigation.

**Note:** An address or POI can be added as a waypoint after a destination has been selected. See **298, EDIT ROUTE**.

The following details and options may also be available:

- POI phone number: Touch to view the POIs phone number and to phone the POI, if required.
- Add to favourites: Touch to add the selected POI to favourites.
- Nearest car park: Touch to search for nearby car parks, if the selected destination or waypoint is not a car park.

- Extra information, e.g., postal address, opening times, reviews, website addresses (URLs), and photographic view of the POI.

**Note:** If the vehicle is connected to the internet, the search function can be performed using cloud-based information. The connected feature settings can be enabled and disabled via the **NAVIGATION SETTINGS** menu. See **298, NAVIGATION SETTINGS**.

If a route is already active, the following list of search areas is available from the **drop-down menu** icon<sup>1</sup>:

- **Along the route.**
- **Most relevant.**
- Near the waypoint **1, 2, or 3**, etc.

**Note:** The selected route must include one or more waypoints for this option to be available.


- **Near your destination.**

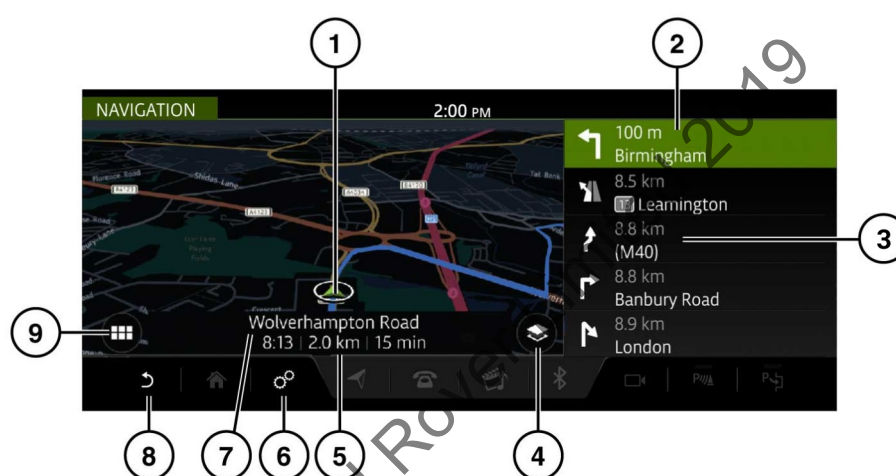


**Drop-down menu** icon.<sup>1</sup>

## Navigation

### MAP SPLIT SCREEN

-  Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before operating the navigation system. See 290, NAVIGATION SAFETY .



E200452

When a route has been selected, the navigation system displays a guidance map.

1. The current vehicle position and direction.
2. Active route: Next direction display.
3. Selected extra view option: **Manoeuvres**, **Full route**, or **Route remaining**. See 299, VIEW OPTIONS.
4. **View options** icon: Press to select the **2D**, **3D**, **Traffic**, **Compass**, **North facing**, or **Satellite** map views. See 299, VIEW OPTIONS.
5. Information bar: Displays information including the time, remaining route distance, and the ETA.
6. **Settings** icon: Touch to select the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. Select **Navigation settings** to view or adjust the settings. See 298, NAVIGATION SETTINGS .
7. Current location.
8. **Return** icon: Touch to return to a higher menu level.
9. **Navigation menu** icon: Touch to access the **NAVIGATION MENU**. See 292, NAVIGATION MENU.

### MAP AUTO ZOOM

When auto-zoom is enabled, the map automatically zooms in when the vehicle is travelling at slow speeds and zooms out when travelling at higher speeds.



## Navigation

**Auto-zoom** can be enabled and disabled via the **NAVIGATION SETTINGS** menu. See **298, NAVIGATION SETTINGS** .

### NAVIGATION SETTINGS

To view the **NAVIGATION SETTINGS** menu:

1. Select the **settings** icon. See **291, USING THE NAVIGATION SYSTEM**.
2. Select **Navigation settings** from the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu.

The following options are available:

- **Profile:**
  - **Edit profile:** Edit or set up a navigation profile. See **305, NAVIGATION PROFILE** .
  - **Connected feature settings:** Manage and configure the navigation connected features, mobile data, and roaming usage.
- **Map views:**
  - **Map features:** Enable or disable from the following:
    - POIs.
    - Landmarks.
    - Traffic flow.
  - **Auto-zoom:** Enable or disable auto-zoom. See **297, MAP AUTO ZOOM**.
- **Navigation:**
  - **Route options:** Select to avoid certain road features.
  - **Alerts:** Enable or disable from a list of alerts. See **299, ALERTS**.
- **Advanced:**
  - **Commute Mode:** Enable or disable the **Commute Mode** feature.

- **Keyboard layouts:** Select extra keyboard layouts.
- **Manage profile data:** Clear the search history or delete all profile data.

- **About:**

- **App details:** View details of the installed navigation system.
- **Installed maps and updates:** View the details of the maps currently loaded to the vehicle's navigation system, and check for any updates to installed maps. See **300, MAP UPDATES**.
- **Help topics:** Provides information on how to use the navigation system. See **301, HELP TOPICS** .
- **Connected services licences:** View connected services licence details.

### NAVIGATION SYSTEM VOLUME

To adjust the volume of the navigation voice guidance, rotate the media system's volume control while spoken guidance is given. See **224, MEDIA CONTROLS**.

**Note:** *The volume of the safety camera alert feature is linked to the voice guidance volume.*

### EDIT ROUTE



**Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before operating the navigation system. See 290, NAVIGATION SAFETY .**

A waypoint can be added or deleted, a route rearranged, or a round trip created for a selected route.

## Navigation

**Note:** Waypoints can also be added from the **Search, Places, or Your Destinations** soft keys on the **NAVIGATION MENU** screen. Alternatively, select a point on the map. See **292, NAVIGATION MENU**.

Touch the **Edit** soft key on the **NAVIGATION MENU** screen to edit a route. See **292, NAVIGATION MENU**.

The following options can be selected:


- **Add waypoint** soft key: Touch to add a waypoint to the current route.
- Remove waypoint: Touch the **bin** icon<sup>1</sup> to remove the waypoint from the current route.
- Change the order of the waypoints: Touch the up and down arrows to re-order the waypoints.
- **Return journey** selection box: Touch to make a selected destination into a round trip.

**Note:** The return journey does not include any of the selected waypoints. If waypoints are required, the waypoints must be added in the normal manner.



Bin icon.<sup>1</sup>

### VIEW OPTIONS

 **Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before operating the navigation system. See 290, NAVIGATION SAFETY .**

Touch the **view options** icon on the map to display the **VIEW OPTIONS** screen. See **291, USING THE NAVIGATION SYSTEM**.

The navigation map and guidance views can be adjusted as follows:

- **2D:** Flat two-dimensional view.
- **3D:** Three-dimensional perspective view.
- **North facing:** Map view displays in a two-dimensional view.
- **Satellite** view: Bird's-eye view of the surroundings.


**Note:** **Satellite** view requires an internet connection.

- **Traffic:** Displays any traffic delays on a selected route.

**Note:** **Traffic** view requires an internet connection.

- **Manoeuvres:** Displays a detailed view of the next junction or turn.
- **Full route:** Displays full route description.
- **Compass:** Displays a digital compass, with the vehicle's heading displayed in degrees.
- **Route remaining:** Displays the remaining route.

### ALERTS

 **Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before operating the navigation system. See 290, NAVIGATION SAFETY .**

**Alerts** can be selected from the **NAVIGATION SETTINGS** menu. See **298, NAVIGATION SETTINGS .**

The following options are available:

- **Show manoeuvre details:** A detailed junction map while approaching a manoeuvre.
- **Show traffic:** Notification of traffic incidents.




## Navigation

- **Junction view:** Active on multi-lane carriageways, when approaching a junction. Junction view displays the lane information for the next junction.

**Note:** Only available for motorway manoeuvres.

- **Safety camera:** Notification of safety cameras.
- **Low fuel:** Available online and offline. Fuel stations are listed by price. The preferred station name and type of fuel can be selected.

### FAVOURITES

 **Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before operating the navigation system. See 290, NAVIGATION SAFETY .**

When detailed information is displayed about an address or place, touch the **add favourite** icon<sup>1</sup> and the place is added to the list of favourites.

**Note:** The list of favourites is located via the **Your Destinations** soft key on the **NAVIGATION MENU** screen. See 292, **NAVIGATION MENU**.

Displayed information that is already a favourite displays the **edit favourite** icon<sup>2</sup>. Touch the **edit favourite** icon<sup>2</sup> to view information about the favourite location. The **edit favourite** icon<sup>2</sup> gives the option to change the icon and name, or to delete it from the list of favourites.

If no route is selected, select the required favourite to set it as a destination. If a route is selected, select the required favourite to add it as a waypoint.

**Note:** When signed in to an InControl navigation account, destinations can be automatically synchronised. Destinations are synchronised between the vehicle, the internet, and the **Route Planner** smartphone app. See 305, **NAVIGATION PROFILE** , 306, **INCONTROL NAVIGATION ACCOUNT** , and 304, **PLANNING ROUTES AND DOOR TO DOOR ROUTING** .




Add favourite icon.



Edit favourite icon.<sup>2</sup>

### MAP UPDATES

 **Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before operating the navigation system. See 290, NAVIGATION SAFETY .**

**Note:** Due to the map data file size, it is recommended that a USB 3.0 memory device is used to update the map data.

**Note:** The vehicle must be stationary to enable the map update to start. Once the update process has started, the vehicle may be driven.

**Note:** The navigation system cannot be interacted with until the map update is complete. If a route was active before the map update started, the navigation guidance is limited to voice guidance only.

**Note:** Internet connection is required when downloading online.

The map data in the navigation system can be updated by downloading the updated map data to a USB memory device.



## Navigation

To update the navigation system's map data, please visit [www.landrover.com](http://www.landrover.com) and search for 'Map Updates'.

To download to a USB memory device:

1. Download the map data from the website to a USB memory device.
2. Insert the USB drive into the USB socket.  
**Note:** Only the USB sockets in the centre console's cubby box can be used for map updates. See **109, AUXILIARY POWER SOCKETS**.
3. Follow the on-screen instructions to upload the map data to the navigation system.

Information on the installed maps is available in the **NAVIGATION SETTINGS** menu. See **298, NAVIGATION SETTINGS**.

For further information on updates to the navigation system's maps, visit [www.landrover.com](http://www.landrover.com) and search for 'Map Updates'. Alternatively, contact an authorised retailer/authorised repairer.

### FUEL FINDER

When the fuel level falls below a predetermined level, an alert is triggered and the navigation system searches for nearby fuel stations.

Preferred fuel stations can be stored in the **ALERTS** menu. See **299, ALERTS**.

The alert can be enabled and disabled via the **NAVIGATION SETTINGS** menu. See **298, NAVIGATION SETTINGS**.

### INSTRUMENT PANEL VIEW

**Note:** The availability and functionality of navigation maps displayed on the instrument panel depends on the specification of the vehicle.

The instrument panel can be set up to show a view of a full navigation map or a mini navigation map, depending on the instrument panel setup.

**Note:** In this view, essential information, e.g., vehicle speed, fuel level, range, etc., is displayed as an information bar.

Navigation turn instructions are also available to the user and are displayed on the instrument panel and Head-Up Display (HUD).

**Note:** Navigation turn instructions are only displayed if route guidance is active.

To display navigation map views in the instrument panel or HUD, please refer to the relevant section of the Owner's Handbook. See **69, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

### HELP TOPICS

The navigation system assists the user with help topics. Help topics provide the user with a short tutorial on how to use various navigation features.

Help topics can be accessed via the quick start tiles that are displayed on the **NAVIGATION** screen. Alternatively, help topics can be accessed via the **NAVIGATION SETTINGS** menu. See **291, USING THE NAVIGATION SYSTEM** and **298, NAVIGATION SETTINGS**.

The navigation system provides tutorials for the following features:

- How to set a destination.
- How to search by category.



## Navigation

- How to use commute mode.
- Understanding real-time traffic information.
- Creating and managing navigation profiles.
- How to sync, share, and keep up to date.
- How to use the **Route Planner** smartphone app.

**Note:** The navigation system may also provide further tutorials on different navigation features.

**Note:** The availability and functionality of navigation help topics depends on the specification of the vehicle.

### NAVIGATION VOICE CONTROL

**Note:** Navigation voice control is not available in all markets.

**Note:** When using voice control for the navigation system, information is used from the on-board navigation database. Online features are not available.

The user can command the navigation system to:

- Navigate to a saved home location.
- Navigate to a recent or previous destination.
- Enter an address.
- Navigate to Point Of Interest (POI).
- Navigate to a postcode.

**Note:** The navigate to a postcode voice command is not available in all markets.

- Cancel an active route guidance.

For assistance when operating the navigation system's voice control feature, please refer to the relevant section of the Owner's Handbook. See **307, VOICE TUTORIAL**.

### CONNECTED NAVIGATION PRO

**Connected Navigation Pro** uses a selection of features to enhance the navigation system.

**Connected Navigation Pro** features include:

- Real-Time Traffic Information. See **303, REAL TIME TRAFFIC INFORMATION**.
- Online Routing. See **303, ONLINE ROUTING**.
- One Box Search. See **303, ONE BOX SEARCH**.
- Planning Routes and Door to Door Routing. See **304, PLANNING ROUTES AND DOOR TO DOOR ROUTING**.
- Share ETA. See **304, SHARE ETA**.
- Satellite Views. See **304, SATELLITE VIEWS**.
- Street Level Imagery. See **304, STREET LEVEL IMAGERY**.
- Fuel Price Service. See **305, FUEL PRICES SERVICE**.
- Commute Mode. See **305, COMMUTE MODE**.
- Parking Service. See **305, PARKING SERVICE**.
- Safety Cameras. See **305, SAFETY CAMERAS**.

In order to benefit from the full range of **Connected Navigation Pro** features, the vehicle requires connection to the internet. Please complete the following steps:

## Navigation

1. Fit a SIM card. See **322, FITTING A SIM CARD**.
2. Create a navigation profile. See **305, NAVIGATION PROFILE**.
3. Create an InControl navigation account. See **306, INCONTROL NAVIGATION ACCOUNT**.

**Note:** User preferences are available in the **NAVIGATION SETTINGS** menu. The connected feature settings for managing which features can connect to the internet when on the home network or while roaming can also be applied. See **298, NAVIGATION SETTINGS**.

### REAL TIME TRAFFIC INFORMATION

Uses live traffic data feeds, allowing for better traffic information, planning, and rerouting, for the user to complete the journey more efficiently.

**Note:** Historical and internet traffic information are not available in all markets.

Traffic information is displayed as colour coded on the navigation map roads. The colour codes are:

- Red: Very heavy traffic or stationary traffic.
- Amber: Heavy traffic.
- Green: Free-flowing traffic.
- Black: Closed road.

Real-time traffic can be displayed with a route selected or with no route selected.

**Note:** Real-time traffic information does not automatically reroute journeys.

A traffic-enabled route can be selected. A traffic-enabled route displays improved and updated routes to the destination, avoiding traffic congestion and delays. An option can also be enabled to possibly find a route to the destination, avoiding an alerted incident or traffic flow issues.

**Note:** A live internet connection is required to receive updated traffic information during the journey.

For further assistance, please refer to the navigation help topics. See **301, HELP TOPICS**.

### ONLINE ROUTING

While on route to a destination, the navigation system monitors live traffic conditions and takes into account typical traffic patterns for that time of day, keeping the user on the optimum route.

**Note:** Online routing can be used in conjunction with commute mode.

### ONE BOX SEARCH

The one box search feature allows the user to search the surrounding area for places of interest. The system can access expert destination information, travel tips, and inspiration as well as online travel reviews of the local area.

**Note:** One box search is supplemented with data from the internet to provide more accurate results.

**Note:** A live internet connection is required.



## Navigation

### PLANNING ROUTES AND DOOR TO DOOR ROUTING

Before starting a route, the user can use the optional **Route Planner** smartphone app, one box online search, or saved destinations to set a destination. The smartphone app uses the Cloud to send the selected destination automatically to the vehicle's navigation screen.

Once parked, the **Route Planner** smartphone app guides the user to the selected destination, which includes public transport options.

**Note:** The **Route Planner** smartphone app is only available in selected markets.

For further assistance, please refer to the navigation help topics. See **301, HELP TOPICS**.

Downloading and installing the **Route Planner** smartphone app:

1. Search for and download the **Route Planner** smartphone app from the Apple App Store or Google Play Store.
2. When the installation is complete, open the launcher. Select the **Route Planner** smartphone app icon.

**Note:** To sign in to the **Route Planner** smartphone app, use the same email address and password used to set up the InControl navigation account. See **306, INCONTROL NAVIGATION ACCOUNT**.

**Note:** Apple and iPhone™ are registered trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the US and other countries. App Store is a service mark of Apple Inc.

**Note:** Google Play Store is a registered trademark of Google Inc.

### SHARE ETA

The user can share the ETA so selected contact(s) know exactly when arriving to destination, as calculated by the navigation guidance system.

If the user is running late to the destination, the share ETA feature can send automatic updates via text messages or email, without any further action from the user.

**Note:** Contacts need to be set up within the navigation profile.

To share the ETA, touch the information bar (5) on the touchscreen. Follow the on-screen instructions. See **297, MAP SPLIT SCREEN**.

For further assistance, please refer to the navigation help topics. See **301, HELP TOPICS**.

### SATELLITE VIEWS

The satellite views feature provides an overhead map view of the vehicle's surroundings.

**Note:** If the satellite view feature is used continuously, it may consume large amounts of mobile data. Check the data allowance is appropriately configured for providing high-data services.

### STREET LEVEL IMAGERY

The street level imagery feature provides a 360° panoramic street view in selected locations and markets only.

### FUEL PRICES SERVICE

When fuel station is selected during a POI search, the nearby fuel stations can be sorted according to the price of the fuel. Fuel prices are updated to the vehicle's database from the internet.

**Note:** Fuel pricing information may not be updated in real time and cannot be guaranteed to be accurate.

**Note:** In some markets, a relative price index is displayed instead of live fuel prices.

### COMMUTE MODE

Commute mode allows for the navigation system to learn regular commutes and automatically advises the user of the expected journey time based on live and historical traffic movements without the user having to input a destination.

The navigation system learns the routes the user takes for a set destination and advises which of those is the quickest.

**Note:** Commute mode can be enabled and disabled via the **NAVIGATION SETTINGS** menu. See **298, NAVIGATION SETTINGS**.

Commute mode displays a highlighted route on the navigation map and uses the learned routes, combined with live traffic information, to calculate the fastest of the previously used routes.

If more than one commute is available, the alternative commutes are available for selection.

**Note:** Commute mode displays a map on the touchscreen, but does not give voice guidance.

For further assistance, please refer to the navigation help topics. See **301, HELP TOPICS**.

### PARKING SERVICE

As the user approaches a destination, the navigation system displays available parking. Simply tap on the preferred car park. The navigation system updates to direct the user to it. Available parking and pricing information are also displayed for selected markets.

### SAFETY CAMERAS

The safety cameras feature provides the location of potential accident black spots, or areas that have been identified as a potential danger by the presence of safety cameras. Available in selected locations only.

**Note:** Safety camera information is not available in all countries.

### NAVIGATION PROFILE

A navigation profile enables personalised settings and information, e.g., favourite destinations, previous journeys and navigation settings to be stored.

**Note:** More than one navigation profile can be created.

On first use of the navigation system, the touchscreen prompts the user to create and name a profile.

When prompted, scroll to the bottom of the page and select **Turn on all** to enable all connected navigation features.

A navigation profile can also be edited, switched, and reset within the **NAVIGATION SETTINGS** menu. See **298, NAVIGATION SETTINGS**.



## Navigation

For further information on creating a navigation profile, please refer to the InControl section of the Land Rover website at: [www.landrover.com/navigation](http://www.landrover.com/navigation).

### INCONTROL NAVIGATION ACCOUNT

**Note:** An InControl navigation account must be created in order to use certain **Connected Navigation Pro** features.

Once a navigation profile has been created, an InControl navigation account can be created.

In the main navigation screen, select **Sign In**.

Follow the on-screen instructions to register a new account.

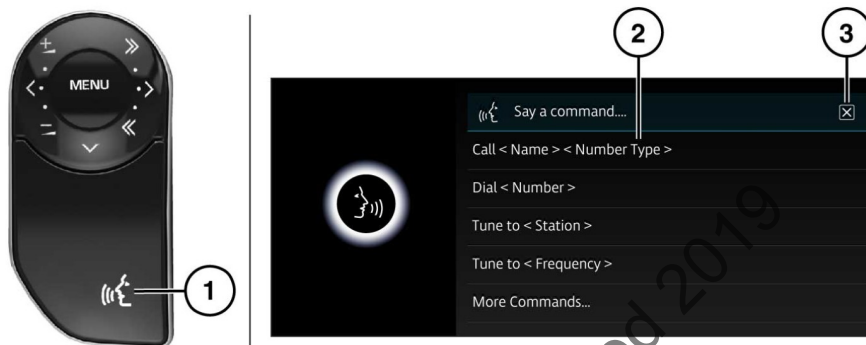
An InControl navigation account can also be set up within the **Edit profile** tab in the **NAVIGATION SETTINGS** menu. See **298, NAVIGATION SETTINGS**.

For further information on setting up an InControl navigation account, please refer to the InControl section of the Land Rover website at: [www.landrover.com/navigation](http://www.landrover.com/navigation).

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2019

## Voice control

### USING VOICE CONTROL



E218629

**⚠ In the interest of safety, only operate or adjust the system when it is safe to do so.**

1. Voice button: Press briefly to start a voice session. Press and hold to cancel a voice session.

**Note:** A voice session will cancel if a higher priority activity or warning appears on the touch screen or there is no user input for a sustained length of time.

2. Command list: Appears on the touch screen, providing feedback and some example commands at each stage of the voice session. Say or select an available command.

When spoken instructions are understood, the system will show a related screen, allowing the voice session to be continued either manually or by voice. Available commands at each stage of the conversation are shown at the top of the screen in the command bar.

3. Touch to cancel the current voice session and continue manually.

The following commands can be spoken at any time to assist in the operation of Voice control:

- Help
- Cancel
- Go back
- Replay.

**Note:** The Voice system has been designed to recognise a number of languages. However, it cannot be guaranteed that the system will be compatible with every accent group within those languages.

### VOICE TUTORIAL

To listen to a tutorial detailing the operation of the voice system:

1. Briefly press the **voice** button to start a voice session.
2. Wait for the tone to sound, then say voice tutorial.

Alternatively, from the **HOME** screen, select the **EXTRA FEATURES** screen. Select **Voice**. Select **Tutorial**. See **308, VOICE SETTINGS**.



## Voice control

The voice tutorial can be cancelled at any time. Cancel via the displayed pop-up, or press and hold the **voice** button.

Alternatively, briefly press the **voice** button and say cancel.

### VOICETAGS

Voicetags enable the user to personalise the voice system. A single name can be used to call up a phone number, radio station, or television channel.

To add a voicetag:

1. Briefly press the **voice** button to start a voice session.
2. Wait for the tone to sound and say **store phone voicetag**, **store radio voicetag**, or **store TV voicetag**.
3. For radio and television, the user must be listening to the station or channel they wish to create a voicetag for.

The voice commands to dial, tune, edit, and delete voicetags can be found in the voice command list. See **308, VOICE SETTINGS**.

### VOICE SETTINGS

The following features can be selected from the **Voice** option. See **219, EXTRA FEATURES**.

- **Commands:** View the categories and the example voice commands. Select the > icon to view alternative examples of saying the same command.
- **Voicetags:** View the categories. Select a category to manage the voicetags for the chosen system. Alternatively, select the tickbox, and then press the **delete** icon to delete all voicetags for a category. See **308, VOICETAGS**.

- **Tutorial:** Select for detailed instructions. Cancel via the displayed pop-up, or press and hold the **voice** button. Alternatively, briefly press the **voice** button and say **cancel**. See **307, VOICE TUTORIAL**.

Select **Voice settings** via the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. The following settings are displayed:

- **Voice Command Confirmation:** Select **On** or **Off**.
- **Voice Feedback:** Select **On** or **Off**.




Alternatively:

- Briefly press the **voice** button and say **voice confirmation on** or **voice confirmation off**.
- Briefly press the **voice** button and say **voice feedback on** or **voice feedback off**.



## INCONTROL SAFETY

Make sure the following warnings have been read and fully understood before using the InControl features on the vehicle or smartphone. Failing to do so could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

-  **Do not adjust the touchscreen controls, or allow the system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving.**
-  **Always store the phone securely. In an accident, loose items can cause injury.**
-  **Drivers should use the smartphone only when it is safe to do so and when such use does not distract the driver from the road.**

## INCONTROL OVERVIEW

InControl uses smartphone and in-vehicle technology to remotely connect the vehicle to a number of services and convenience features.

InControl features include:

- **InControl Remote** smartphone app: The app features allow the user to remotely find information about the vehicle's health and status on the smartphone. The smartphone app also displays vehicle information, including the fuel level, range, and the odometer value. For further information on the available app features, please refer to the InControl section on the Land Rover website at: [www.landrover.com/incontrol](http://www.landrover.com/incontrol). See **311, INCONTROL REMOTE SMARTPHONE APP**.
- **SOS Emergency Call**: If the vehicle is involved in an accident and the airbags deploy, SOS emergency call can send information to the emergency services, including location, as well as connecting the user by phone. See **313, SOS EMERGENCY CALL**.
- **ERA GLONASS**: Is an emergency response feature that is only applicable to Armenia, Belarus, Kazakhstan, Kyrgyzstan, and Russian Federation. See **314, ERA GLONASS TEST PROCEDURE**.
- **Optimised Land Rover Assistance**: If the vehicle breaks down, the user can make a direct call to the Land Rover assistance team by pressing the **Optimised Land Rover Assistance** button. Alternatively, the user can make a direct call from the **InControl Remote** smartphone app. See **315, OPTIMISED LAND ROVER ASSISTANCE**.
- **Secure Tracker**: Provides a stolen vehicle tracking service. In the event that the vehicle has been tampered with, or moved without the owner's consent, the account owner is contacted by the InControl stolen vehicle tracking call centre. See **315, SECURE TRACKER**.
- **Secure Tracker Pro**: Provides an enhanced level of security by integrating a secondary authentication between the smart key and the vehicle. See **316, SECURE TRACKER PRO**.



## InControl

- **Connected Navigation Pro:** A selection of features that are available to enhance the navigation system. For further information on **Connected Navigation Pro**, please refer to the navigation section the Owner's Handbook. See **302, CONNECTED NAVIGATION PRO**.
- **Live Apps:** Contains a range of embedded applications that are displayed as soft keys on the touchscreen. Live Apps does not require the connection of a smartphone to the vehicle and offers an expanding range of apps such as News, Weather, and Flight Tracker. See **316, LIVE APPS**.
- **Wi-Fi Hotspot:** Provides in-vehicle access to 4G internet, enabling up to eight wireless devices to be used simultaneously in the vehicle. For further information about **Wi-Fi Hotspot**, please refer to the connectivity section the Owner's Handbook. See **321, WI-FI HOTSPOT**.
- **Android Auto:** Allows for the vehicle's multimedia system to display and control the user's Android phone. See **318, ANDROID AUTO**.
- **Apple CarPlay:** Allows for the vehicle's multimedia system to display and control the user's iPhone. See **318, APPLE CARPLAY**.

### INCONTROL ACCOUNT SET UP

InControl features, such as the **InControl Remote** smartphone app, **Live Apps**, **Secure Tracker**, and **Secure Tracker Pro** require an InControl account.

Some InControl features are subscription services. The subscription for these features can be extended after the initial term has expired. For further information, please contact the retailer/authorised repairer.

An InControl account may have been registered by the retailer/authorised repairer. Please click on the link from the InControl email sent by the retailer/authorised repairer which takes the user to the InControl website and follow the on-screen instructions.

If no activation email has been received, please check the email spam folder. Alternatively, contact the retailer/authorised repairer.

To register, connect, and activate an InControl account, please refer to the My Land Rover InControl website at: <https://incontrol.landrover.com>. Follow the on-screen instructions.

**Note:** When an InControl account is set up, the user of the account creates a PIN. The PIN is required for certain InControl features.

**Note:** The owner is responsible for removing the vehicle from the InControl account when ownership of the vehicle is transferred.

For further information, please refer to the InControl section on the Land Rover website at: [www.landrover.com/incontrol](http://www.landrover.com/incontrol).

## DOWNLOADING AND INSTALLING SMARTPHONE APPS

**Note:** Not all smartphones are compatible. For compatibility information on Apple or Android smartphones, please refer to the relevant app download page from the Apple App Store or Google Play Store.

### InControl Remote smartphone app

To use the **InControl Remote** smartphone app, first download the app to a smartphone.

Downloading and installing the launcher app:

1. Search for and download the **InControl Remote** smartphone app from the Apple App Store or Google Play Store.
2. When the installation is complete, open the launcher. Select the **InControl Remote** smartphone app icon.
3. Sign in to the **InControl Remote** smartphone app using the InControl account created. See **310, INCONTROL ACCOUNT SET UP**.

**Note:** Apple and iPhone™ are registered trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the US and other countries. App Store is a service mark of Apple Inc.

**Note:** Google Play Store is a registered trademark of Google Inc.

## INCONTROL REMOTE SMARTPHONE APP

**Note:** The availability and functionality of the **InControl Remote** smartphone app depends on the specification of the vehicle and the market in which the vehicle is being used.

**Note:** For further information, refer to the InControl section on the Land Rover website at: [www.landrover.com/incontrol](http://www.landrover.com/incontrol).

In order to use the **InControl Remote** smartphone features, please make sure the following steps have been completed:

1. Create an InControl account. See **310, INCONTROL ACCOUNT SET UP**.
2. Download the **InControl Remote** smartphone app to a smartphone. See **311, DOWNLOADING AND INSTALLING SMARTPHONE APPS**.

Available features within the **InControl Remote** smartphone app:

### Vehicle Location

A map display of the vehicle's parked location and the user's current location.

### Vehicle Status

Displays the latest status of vehicle alerts such as a low engine oil level. Each status gives an indication of the health of each alert, as well as offering advice on how to resolve any alerts.

### Beep & Flash

Locates the vehicle by flashing the vehicle's lights and sounding an alert.

**Note:** The driver is responsible for complying with all regulations in force for a specific country, regarding the use of vehicle horns.



## InControl

### Vehicle Security

Displays the open and closed status of all the doors and windows, and the current alarm setting. **Vehicle Security** also displays the locked and unlocked status of the vehicle.

**Vehicle Security** allows the user to lock and unlock the vehicle remotely. If either lock or unlock cannot be performed, the phone screen displays an error message.

When the vehicle is locked remotely, it is secured to the maximum possible level allowed in the market in which the vehicle was intended for original sale.

**Note:** *If any window(s) is in an open position, the vehicle does not lock remotely, unless the window is closed. In some markets, remote closing of the windows is not permitted.*

When the vehicle is unlocked remotely, it relocks after 45 seconds if no door or aperture is opened.

Regardless of which screen is currently displayed, if the vehicle's alarm is sounding, a pop-up screen is displayed with an option to reset the alarm. The alarm may also be reset via the **Vehicle Security** section of the **InControl Remote** smartphone app.

**Note:** *The driver is responsible for knowing the location of the vehicle and for making sure that the vehicle is secured.*

### Remote Climate

**Remote Climate** allows the engine of an automatic transmission vehicle to be started remotely, and to run for up to 30 minutes. The **Remote Climate** feature provides a comfortable temperature inside the cabin in advance of the driver entering the vehicle. Press the **engine start** icon on the **Remote Climate** section of the **InControl Remote** smartphone app. A target temperature can be set.

**Remote Climate** does not function if any of the following conditions exist:

- The vehicle's fuel level is low.
- The vehicle's battery charge level is low.
- The vehicle is not locked and alarmed.
- A window, door, bonnet, or the tailgate is open.
- The engine has been manually started.
- A system error occurs with a required vehicle system.
- A theft has been reported to the stolen vehicle monitoring centre.
- The vehicle's alarm is sounding.
- A crash event has been detected.
- The hazard warning lights are switched on.
- The automatic transmission is not in Park (P).
- The brake pedal or accelerator pedal is pressed.

**Note:** *Some markets may prohibit the use of remote engine starting. The driver is responsible for knowing if this function can legally be used.*

**Note: Remote Climate** is also available for vehicles fitted with a timed climate system. When the vehicle specification does not support remote engine starting, the timed climate system may be used to support cabin pre-conditioning. The condition also applies if the vehicle originated in a market with legal restrictions on remote engine starting.

#### Journeys

Displays the most recently completed journeys over 1 km in distance.

**Note:** The **Journeys** feature can be enabled or disabled via the **Settings** section of the **InControl Remote** smartphone app, or on the My Land Rover InControl website at:

<https://incontrol.landrover.com>.

**Note:** Stored journeys can be viewed, deleted, or exported as a .csv file to assist with business expenses.

#### Assistance

Displays the vehicle's VIN and registration number. Direct calls can be made to the **Optimised Land Rover Assistance** call centre for breakdown assistance. In the event of a vehicle theft, direct calls can be made to the stolen vehicle tracking call centre, if **Secure Tracker** is fitted.

#### Settings

Provides the user access to the vehicle, account details, and journey preferences. The **Settings** screen also displays all of the vehicles associated with the account.

#### Wake Up Timer

The **InControl Remote** smartphone app features enter a low power mode 96 hours after the last engine stop. The low power mode action conserves vehicle battery life.

When the vehicle is parked for an extended period, e.g., when on vacation or on a business journey, the user can operate the **Wake Up Timer** feature. The feature wakes up the InControl Remote smartphone app features on a selected date. Battery power is then reserved for the wake up.

**Note:** Any date within a 31 day period can be chosen.

#### SOS EMERGENCY CALL

There are two states of SOS emergency call: Automatic and manual operation.

In a crash situation, where the airbags have deployed, an automatic emergency call is made to the emergency services. In a non-crash situation, when emergency assistance is required, the emergency call button can be used manually.

In both states, the button flashes yellow until the emergency services answer the call, at which point the flashing stops.

The vehicle's location, owner details, vehicle details, and the problem are automatically sent to the call centre. The appropriate emergency services are dispatched to the vehicle's location. Contact with the emergency services agent can be made, at any time, by pressing the SOS emergency call button.



The SOS emergency call button is located in the overhead console, on the right side. See **7, DRIVER CONTROLS**.

To make a direct call to the emergency services:

1. Press and release the button's cover.
2. A red LED illuminates in the button.



## InControl

3. Press the button for 3 seconds to make a direct call to the emergency services.
4. After use, push the button's cover back into place.

**Note:** If the vehicle is travelling in a different country, the SOS emergency call may still connect. However, the vehicle's location and the vehicle's details may not be automatically sent to the local provider.

There is a single battery that maintains full system operation in the event that the vehicle's battery is disconnected or disabled. The battery is guaranteed for the vehicle's warranty period. If the battery requires replacement, the instrument panel displays a warning message. Consult a retailer/authorised repairer for a replacement battery.

If a fault is detected with the SOS emergency call system, the instrument panel displays a warning message. If this occurs, the vehicle can still be driven, but consult a retailer/authorised repairer at the earliest opportunity.

### ERA GLONASS TEST PROCEDURE

**Note:** Only applicable to Armenia, Belarus, Kazakhstan, Kyrgyzstan, and Russian Federation.



In the event of a traffic accident, the terminal automatically collects data on the exact location of the accident, time, and severity. The terminal transmits the data, with a high-priority alert, to an ERA-GLONASS operator. Once verified, this information is passed on to the emergency response services. The vehicle's driver and passengers can also contact an ERA-GLONASS operator manually.

The test procedure determines if the system is working correctly.

Make sure that the following conditions are met before starting the procedure:

- The Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is applied.
- The vehicle is stationary for at least 1 minute.
- The ignition is switched on or the engine is running.
- An emergency response call is not in progress.
- Network reception is good.



Press the assistance call button for at least 3 seconds, but for less than 10 seconds.



After pressing the assistance call button for 3 seconds, also press the emergency call button for at least 3 seconds. The call button's LEDs flash amber as the test procedure starts and continue to flash until the test procedure ends.

The ERA GLONASS test procedure prompts the user with the following:

- Announce the start of test mode.
  - Announce lights check.
  - Announce microphone check.
  - Announce speaker check.
  - The results of test mode are pronounced and display in the instrument panel.
  - A call is made to the ERA GLONASS test centre to record the test results.
- The SOS backlight flashes red and the instrument panel displays a warning message if the system is faulty.
- If all of the preparation conditions are met and the instrument panel displays a message, contact a retailer/authorised repairer.
3. Press the button for 3 seconds to make a direct call to the **Optimised Land Rover Assistance** call centre.
  4. The button flashes until the call centre answers the call, at which point the LED changes to yellow.
  5. The vehicle's location, owner details, and vehicle details are automatically relayed to the call centre.
  6. The **Optimised Land Rover Assistance** call centre sends roadside assistance to the vehicle's location.
  7. When the light flashes, push the button for 3 seconds to answer the call.
  8. After use, push the button's cover back into place.

**Note:** A warning message is also displayed if there is no network reception. Move the vehicle to an area of good reception and retest.

The test procedure ends after 5 minutes if the ignition is switched off, or if the vehicle is driven more than 300 m.

**Note:** If the test procedure is repeated, make sure there is a time delay of at least 5 minutes before retesting.

## OPTIMISED LAND ROVER ASSISTANCE



The **Optimised Land Rover Assistance** call button is located in the overhead console, on the left side. See **7, DRIVER CONTROLS**.

In the event of a breakdown:

1. Press and release the button's cover.
2. A white LED illuminates in the button.

## SECURE TRACKER

**Secure Tracker** provide a stolen vehicle tracking service. In the event that the vehicle has been tampered with, or moved without the owner's consent, the account owner is contacted by the InControl stolen vehicle tracking call centre. Alternatively, use the **InControl Remote** smartphone app or the phone number on the InControl website to contact the stolen vehicle tracking call centre.

**Service Mode** and **Transport Mode** can be enabled and disabled by using the **InControl Remote** smartphone app, or via the InControl website. Enabling and/or activating **Service** or **Transport Mode** prevents stolen vehicle tracking alerts being raised while the vehicle is being transported or serviced.

If the vehicle is being serviced or repaired, **Service Mode** must be enabled.

If the vehicle is being transported, **Transport Mode** must be enabled.



## InControl

**Note:** The vehicle's alarm system is unaffected if **Transport Mode** is enabled.

**Note:** The vehicle's alarm system can be enabled or disabled if in **Transport Mode**, for one alarm cycle only. To disable the vehicle's alarm system from the instrument panel menu, select **Vehicle settings**. From the list, select **Security features**, followed by **Alarm Sensors**. See 69, **INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

**Note:** The owner is responsible for re-enabling or disabling **Service Mode** and **Transport Mode**. If the vehicle is in **Service Mode** or **Transport Mode** for a longer time period than originally set, the owner is required to re-enable the relevant **Service Mode** or **Transport Mode** option.

**Note:** The owner can select a pre-designated time period under 72 hours. The **InControl Remote** smartphone app allows for a maximum time period of 10 hours when selecting **Service Mode** or **Transport Mode**. The My InControl website allows for a maximum time period of 72 hours when selecting **Service Mode** or **Transport Mode**.


**Note:** For further information, please refer to the Land Rover website at: [www.landrover.com/incontrol](http://www.landrover.com/incontrol).

### SECURE TRACKER PRO

**Secure Tracker Pro** includes all the features of **Secure Tracker**, and in addition, provides an enhanced level of security by integrating a secondary authentication between the smart key and the vehicle. An alert is generated to the stolen vehicle tracking centre if the Owner's vehicle has been stolen without the authorised smart key(s).

Please refer to the **Secure Tracker** topic for further information. See 315, **SECURE TRACKER**.

### LIVE APPS

 **Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before operating the InControl features. See 309, INCONTROL SAFETY .**

**Note:** Live Apps requires a suitable, data-enabled micro SIM to be fitted to the vehicle. See 322, **FITTING A SIM CARD**.

**Note:** Live Apps are updated in real-time using data from the micro SIM Card.


To access the Live Apps feature:

1. Select **Live** from the **EXTRA FEATURES** screen. See 219, **EXTRA FEATURES**.
2. Select **Update**, if updates and new apps are available.

**Note:** A green down-arrow is displayed on the **Update** tile when updates are available.

**Note:** Live Apps features require an active InControl account to login and manage preferences. See 310, **INCONTROL ACCOUNT SET UP .**

### SMART SETTINGS

 **Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before operating the InControl features. See 309, INCONTROL SAFETY .**



When setting up a smart settings profile, the user can select the vehicle's smart key to identify the user when unlocking the vehicle. Additionally to the vehicle's smart key, the user can set up a profile to use a smartphone to confirm identity. Using the smartphone allows other users to use the vehicle smart key and not impact saved personal settings.

The smart settings profile automatically adjusts the vehicle settings to the user's preferences. For example, radio, climate, memory seats, Head-Up Display (HUD), language, and driver assistance settings adjust to how the user left all, regardless of who drove the vehicle last.

**Note:** Not all settings are covered in the above list and adjustable settings may vary depending on vehicle specification.

The smart settings feature also learns how and when the user adjusts the comfort and climate settings. For example, smart settings can learn that the heated seats and heated steering wheel are switched on below a certain temperature.

Additionally, smart settings can also learn the most commonly called contact at that point of time, displaying it at the top of the phone contact list.

**Note:** The smart settings feature only learns and saves usage patterns if a smart settings profile is created.

When the smart settings feature has learnt the usage pattern, the feature notifies the user. A notification is displayed on the touchscreen, requesting the user, if the learnt usage pattern is to be automatically activated, when a smart setting profile is detected.

### Smart settings profile

**Note:** The smart settings feature allows for a maximum of ten profiles only. The touchscreen notifies the user if the smart settings profile list is full and if a profile requires deleting.

**Note:** The user is recommended to add key and add phone when smart setting profile is set up.

**Note:** The user can skip the add key and add phone process for smart settings, and return another time using the **edit profile icon**<sup>1</sup>.

To create a smart settings profile, select the **smart settings icon**<sup>2</sup> from the touchscreen's **HOME** menu. See **216, TOUCHSCREEN GLOBAL ICONS**.

Alternatively, select **Smart Settings** from the **EXTRA FEATURES** menu. See **219, EXTRA FEATURES**.

From the **SMART SETTINGS** screen, select **Create new profile** and follow the on-screen instructions.

**Note:** Once a profile is created, and the smart settings profile identifies the user, the **smart settings icon**<sup>1</sup> changes to the user's personalised **profile icon**<sup>3</sup>.

**Note:** A smart settings profile uses the vehicle's smart key to identify the user and apply saved personal vehicle settings. The smartphone can also be used in conjunction with the smart key to confirm the user's identity.

The user has the option to edit the smart settings profile. The user can edit items such as, the profile name, the personalised profile icon, and setup user identification.

To edit a profile, select the **edit profile icon**<sup>1</sup> from the **SMART SETTINGS** screen.



## InControl

To delete a smart settings profile, select the **edit profile** icon<sup>1</sup> from the **SMART SETTINGS** screen. From the **PROFILE** screen, select **Delete profile**.



**Edit profile** icon.<sup>1</sup>



**Smart settings** icon.<sup>2</sup>



**Profile** icon.<sup>3</sup>

**Note:** The user can choose from a selection of personalised **profile** icons<sup>3</sup>.

### ANDROID AUTO

**Note:** **Android Auto™** is compatible with Android phones running v5.0 (Lollipop) and above.

**Note:** Google, Android, Android Auto, Google Play and other related marks and logos are trademarks of Google LLC.

**Android Auto** is a feature designed to give the user access to core phone features while driving, e.g., music, phone calls, Google voice support, messaging and navigation, with safety in mind. The feature is designed to minimise distraction so that the user can remain focussed on the road.

To access **Android Auto**, the user needs an Android phone running 5.0 (Lollipop) or higher. Connect a compatible device via the USB cable to the portable media interface. Follow the steps indicated on the vehicle's touchscreen. See **236, PORTABLE MEDIA CONNECTIONS**. See **238, CONNECTING A MEDIA DEVICE**.

**Android Auto** is designed to work using voice control as much as possible. A Google voice session can be started either from the **Android Auto** screen or through a long press of the steering wheel voice button.

**Note:** A short press of the voice button will start a vehicle native voice control session. See **307, USING VOICE CONTROL**.

For further information on **Android Auto** please visit [www.android.com/auto](http://www.android.com/auto).

### APPLE CARPLAY

**Note:** **Apple CarPlay** is only compatible with an iPhone 5 and above running iOS 7.1 and above.

**Note:** Apple and iPhone™ are registered trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the US and other countries. App Store is a service mark of Apple Inc.

**Apple CarPlay** is a feature designed to give the user access to core iPhone features while driving, e.g., music, phone calls, Siri, messaging, and navigation with safety in mind. The feature is designed to minimise distraction so that the user can remain focussed on the road.

To access **Apple CarPlay**, the user needs an iPhone 5 and above running iOS 7.1 and above. Connect a compatible iPhone via the USB cable to the portable media interface. Follow the steps indicated on the touchscreen. See **236, PORTABLE MEDIA CONNECTIONS**. See **238, CONNECTING A MEDIA DEVICE**.

**Apple CarPlay** is designed to work using voice control as much as possible. A Siri voice session can be started either from the **Apple CarPlay** screen or through a long press of the steering wheel voice button.

**Note:** A short press of the voice button will start a vehicle native voice control session. See **307, USING VOICE CONTROL**.

For further information on **Apple CarPlay** please visit the Apple website.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2019



## Connectivity

### CONNECTIVITY OVERVIEW

Internet connectivity requires a data-enabled micro SIM card or an in-range internal or external Wi-Fi network.

The following methods allow for internet connectivity:

- **Mobile data:** Allows for the vehicle to connect to the internet via a mobile network, using a data-enabled micro SIM card. See **320, MOBILE DATA CONNECTIVITY**.
- **Hotspot:** Creates a Wi-Fi hotspot in the vehicle, to allow internet connection of Wi-Fi equipped devices, e.g., a tablet, laptop, or a smartphone. Also allows sharing of media between the Wi-Fi equipped devices inside the vehicle. See **321, WI-FI HOTSPOT**.
- **Wi-Fi:** Allows for the vehicle to connect to the internet using an external Wi-Fi network. See **321, WI-FI CONNECTIVITY**.

**Note:** The availability of **Wi-Fi**, **Hotspot** and **Mobile data** depends on the specification of the vehicle.

### MOBILE DATA CONNECTIVITY

Mobile data requires the installation of a data-enabled micro SIM card. See **322, FITTING A SIM CARD**.

To enable **Mobile data**:

1. Select the **settings** icon to access the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu.
2. Select **All settings**.
3. Select **Connectivity**.
4. From the **CONNECTIVITY** menu screen, touch the **Mobile data** toggle.
5. When displayed, select **Agree** to agree to the terms and conditions.

**Note:** Mobile data connectivity is indicated by an icon at the top of the screen. See **322, CONNECTIVITY STATUS ICONS**.

Touch **Mobile data** to access the **MOBILE SETTINGS** pop-up menu.

The **MOBILE SETTINGS** pop-up menu displays **Network provider**, **Roaming**, **Usage limit**, **Usage**, and **SIM PIN**.

**Network provider:** The network provider of the inserted SIM is displayed. To change the APN settings, select the network provider's name to open the **NETWORK PROVIDER** screen. Set **Auto select** to **Off**. Add the **Network**, **Username**, and **Password**. Select **Connect**.

**Roaming:** Data roaming is set to **Off** as default. Select **On** to enable roaming.

**Usage limit:** The usage limit is set to **Off** as default. Select **On** to enable usage limit.

**Usage:** The usage counter displays the total data usage for the month. The usage counter resets on the 1st day of the month, as default. When the usage limit is set to **On**, the usage limit also displays.

Select **Usage** to change the usage limit and the monthly reset date. Use the reset counter to reset the current usage to zero.

**SIM PIN:** A PIN can be set or changed for the inserted SIM card.

Remember SIM PIN:

1. Select **On** to remember.
2. Select **Off** to forget the PIN.


**About:** From the **CONNECTIVITY** menu screen, select **About** to display the vehicle's MAC address and IMEI number.

To reset all connectivity settings to default:

## Connectivity

1. From the **CONNECTIVITY** menu screen, select **Reset**.
2. Select **Yes**.

### WI-FI HOTSPOT

 **Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions for touchscreen operation have been read and understood before using the Hotspot feature. See 209, TOUCHSCREEN SAFETY.**

**Note:** Hotspot requires a suitable data-enabled micro SIM card contract.

**Note:** 4G mobile connectivity cannot be guaranteed in all locations.

The Hotspot feature provides in-vehicle access to 4G internet, enabling up to eight wireless devices to be used simultaneously in the vehicle.

Before enabling Hotspot, please make sure that a data-enabled micro SIM card has been fitted. See **322, FITTING A SIM CARD**.

To enable Hotspot:


1. Select the **settings** icon to access the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu.
2. Select **All settings**, followed by **Connectivity**.
3. From the **CONNECTIVITY** menu screen, touch the **Hotspot** toggle.

Touch **Hotspot** to display the vehicle's Wi-Fi hotspot name and password. The Wi-Fi hotspot name is computer generated by the vehicle and cannot be changed to a password of choice.

**Note:** To change the password, touch the **refresh** icon. A new preset password is generated.

To connect a device to the vehicle's **Hotspot**, switch the device's Wi-Fi to **ON**. Select the vehicle's **Hotspot** name on the device. Insert the password.

### WI-FI CONNECTIVITY

 **Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions for touchscreen operation have been read and understood before using the Wi-Fi feature. See 209, TOUCHSCREEN SAFETY.**

Wi-Fi allows for the vehicle to connect to the internet using an external Wi-Fi network.

To enable Wi-Fi:

1. Select the **settings** icon to access the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu.
2. Select **All settings**, followed by **Connectivity**.
3. From the **CONNECTIVITY** menu screen, touch the **Wi-Fi** toggle.

Touch **Wi-Fi** to view any Wi-Fi networks in range.

To connect to an unknown network, select the network name. When the Wi-Fi network is password protected, a keyboard displays to allow entry of the password.

To connect to a known network, select the network and touch **Connect**, or to forget this network, touch **Forget**.

To connect to a hidden network:

1. Select **Add network** from the network list.
2. Enter the **Network name**.
3. Enter the **Security type**.
4. Enter the **Password**.
5. Select **Connect**.



## Connectivity

### CONNECTIVITY STATUS ICONS

The icons at the top of the screen display the type of cellular or Wi-Fi connection, as follows:



Connecting.



E (edge) mobile network connectivity.



2G mobile network connectivity.



3G mobile network connectivity.



4G mobile network connectivity.



No mobile network connection.



When the vehicle is connected to an external hotspot, a **Wi-Fi** icon is displayed instead of a **cellular** icon.

**Note:** Depending on the network connectivity, some features and services, including Wi-Fi, may not operate as expected, or at all. A strong 3G or 4G connection is required.

### FITTING A SIM CARD



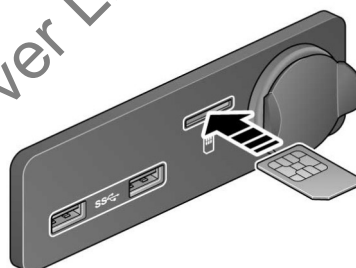
Make sure the micro SIM card is located correctly into the card holder. Failure to do so may damage the micro SIM card or SIM card reader.

**Note:** Some network operators may lock SIM cards to operate in specific devices only. Contact the network operator if the SIM card requires unlocking.

**Note:** Jaguar Land Rover advise using micro SIM cards only. Micro SIM card adaptors are not recommended.

A micro SIM card must be inserted into the SIM card holder. The SIM card reader utilises a SIM interface. If the current micro SIM card is a different size, e.g., a nano SIM, an adaptor or replacement SIM card is required.

The SIM card reader slot is located in the centre console's cubby box. See **109, AUXILIARY POWER SOCKETS**.



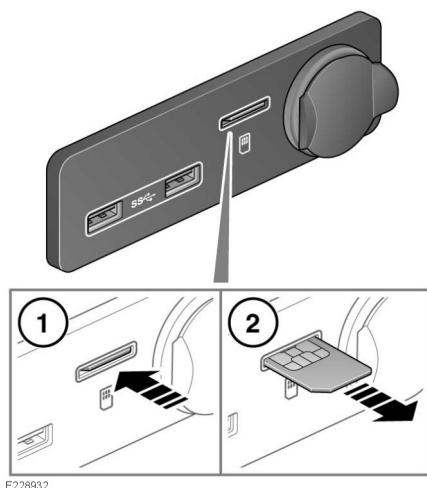
E228931

To fit a micro SIM card, insert the card with the contacts facing up and the shortest end facing out. The card should not be protruding once correctly inserted.

**Note:** Push the micro SIM card 2 mm further into the slot to firmly engage the latch.

Once the micro SIM card is fitted, enable mobile data connectivity. See **320, MOBILE DATA CONNECTIVITY**.

## Connectivity



To remove a SIM card, gently push in (1) and release (2).

### SOFTWARE UPDATES

The vehicle may support the download and installation of over-the-air software updates. Over-the-air software allows certain components of the vehicle to be kept up to date without the need to visit a retailer/authorised repairer.

The ability to perform an update is simple and intuitive from within the vehicle's infotainment system or via the **InControl Remote** smartphone app via a mobile device. To enable software updates, terms & conditions must be accepted via the **Software Updates** instrument panel menu or during vehicle handover. Software updates can be switched on and off at any point.

When a new software update is available, and depending on connectivity, the vehicle automatically begins the download process with no interruption to the vehicle usage. On completion of the download, a notification will display on the touchscreen when starting or switching off the vehicle, asking to begin the installation process.

Follow the on-screen prompt to start the install process or schedule for a preferred time. A preferred time can be set via the **Vehicle settings** and **Software Updates** menus in the instrument panel. See **69, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

**Note:** During installation you can access the vehicle at any time, but it will not be able to start the engine.

Upon successful completion of the update, an on-screen notification is given.

Following the update, current software version information is visible within the vehicle's infotainment system.

**Note:** It can take up to 35 minutes to complete the update process.

**Note:** For vehicles with an **InControl Remote** smartphone app, it is possible to set preferred times, receive notifications and track update status via a mobile app. See **311, INCONTROL REMOTE SMARTPHONE APP**.

To complete a software update observe the following conditions:

- The vehicle has to be locked and alarmed to start the installation process.

**Note:** Once the installation is initiated the vehicle may still be accessed, however it will not be possible to start the engine.



## Connectivity

- The vehicle has to be parked and stationary.
- The new software must be successfully downloaded to the vehicle.
- The vehicle needs cellular or Wi-Fi connectivity during the process of performing a software update. See **320, CONNECTIVITY OVERVIEW**. See **321, WI-FI CONNECTIVITY**.
- The terms and conditions for the installation must be accepted.
- The vehicle update must not be interrupted, either by the vehicle owner or by loss of connectivity.
- The hazard warning lights, emergency call, assistance call, or stolen vehicle tracking must not be active.
- The vehicle may need to be associated to an active InControl account. See **309, INCONTROL OVERVIEW**.

**Note:** Availability of over-the-air updates may vary, depending on market and vehicle specification.










© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2019






## Fuel and refuelling

### SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

Make sure that following warnings have been read and understood. Failure to observe the warnings could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

-  **Do not smoke, use an exposed flame, or cause sparks while refuelling.**
-  **Avoid exposing the fuel gases to any potential sources of ignition.**
-  **Switch off the engine when refuelling, as it is both a source of extreme temperatures and electrical sparks.**
-  **When refuelling, switch off any personal electronic devices such as mobile phones or music players.**
-  **Take note of all warnings and instructions given on the label affixed to the inside of the fuel filler flap.**
-  **The fuel system is designed to make sure that spillage does not occur. Do not attempt to fill the tank past its maximum capacity.**
-  **Make sure that the fuel filler nozzle is fully inserted into the filler neck. If the nozzle is inserted loosely, fuel spillage may occur.**
-  **When refuelling, make sure that all of the windows and doors are fully closed. Use extreme care and caution if young children or animals are in the vehicle.**
-  **Only use containers specifically designed for carrying fuel, and always remove them from the vehicle to fill them.**


### PETROL ENGINED VEHICLES

-  Use high quality fuel that meets the specification defined by EN228, WWFC5 cat. 5 or the national equivalent. Low quality fuel can damage the engine and reduce engine performance.
-  Do not use leaded fuels, fuels with lead substitutes, e.g. manganese-based, or fuel additives. The vehicle's emission control systems can be adversely affected, which may affect the vehicle's warranty coverage.
-  Fuel system cleaning agents should not be used, unless approved by the vehicle manufacturer. Inadequate cleaning agents may damage the fuel system.

### OCTANE RATING

The 2.0L (i4) petrol engine requires the use of premium unleaded fuel, with a minimum octane rating of 95 RON. Using the correct fuel specification helps to maintain the vehicle's performance, fuel economy, and driveability.

If premium unleaded fuel is not available, use unleaded fuel with a lower octane rating, down to a minimum of 91 RON. Using lower octane-rated fuel may reduce the engine's performance, increase fuel consumption, cause an audible engine knock, and other driveability problems.

-  Do not use fuels with an octane rating lower than 91 RON, as severe engine damage may occur.

**Note:** Occasional, light engine knock, experienced while accelerating or climbing hills, is acceptable.



## Fuel and refuelling

Consult a retailer/authorised repairer if a heavy persistent engine knock is detected, even if using fuel to the recommended octane rating. If an engine knock is detected while holding a steady speed on level roads, it is particularly important to contact a retailer/authorised repairer. Failure to do so is misuse of the vehicle, and not covered by the vehicle's warranty. If in doubt, seek advice from a retailer/authorised repairer.

Super Green Plus 98 RON unleaded fuel, where available, may be used as an alternative to the standard 95 RON unleaded fuel.

### ETHANOL

- ⚠ Do not use fuels containing more than 10% ethanol. Higher ethanol content can damage the vehicle's engine and fuel system.
- ⚠ Do not use E85 fuels with 85% ethanol content, as serious engine and fuel system damage can occur.

Fuels containing up to 10% ethanol may be used, e.g., E5 and E10.

Make sure that the fuel has octane ratings no lower than those recommended for unleaded fuel. Correct engine operation should not be affected with fuel containing the permissible amount of ethanol. If a difference is detected, the use of conventional unleaded fuel should be resumed.

### METHANOL

- ⚠ Wherever possible, avoid using fuel containing methanol. Using fuel containing methanol may cause serious engine and fuel system damage, which may not be covered by the vehicle's warranty.

### METHYL TERTIARY BUTYL ETHER (MTBE)

Unleaded fuel containing an oxygenate known as Methyl Tertiary Butyl Ether (MTBE) can be used. The ratio of MTBE to conventional fuel must not exceed 15%. MTBE is an ether-based compound derived from petroleum. MTBE has been specified by several refiners as the substance to enhance the octane rating of fuel.

### DIESEL ENGINED VEHICLES

- ⚠ If the fuel tank is inadvertently filled with petrol instead of diesel, do not attempt to start the engine. In this event, contact a retailer/authorised repairer immediately. Inadequate fuels may damage the fuel system and engine components.

**Note:** Any damage caused by running the vehicle with fuel other than that stipulated is not covered under warranty.

**Note:** If a diesel engine is difficult to start in extreme cold temperatures of  $-15^{\circ}\text{C}$  or less, consult a retailer/authorised repairer for assistance.

Use only high quality diesel fuel, according to the European standard EN590:2013+A1:2017, WWFC 5 cat. 5 or equivalent.

## Fuel and refuelling

- ⚠ Fuels containing a blend of up to 7% bio-diesel may be used, in accordance with the European standard EN590:2013+A1:2017. Using a higher blend of bio-diesel is not recommended. Inadequate fuels may damage the fuel system and engine components, or premature fuel filter blockage may occur.

The quality and specification of diesel fuel varies significantly, depending on geographical location. Using a premium fuel is recommended, or the highest quality of fuel available. High quality fuel promotes a longer life for the engine's components.

- ⚠ Lower grade fuel contains higher levels of sulphur, which is detrimental to the engine's components. If low quality fuel is used, light coloured smoke may be evident at the exhaust.

Prolonged use of additives is not recommended. Do not add paraffin or petrol to diesel fuels.

### SULPHUR CONTENT

- ⚠ Using an incorrect specification of fuel causes serious damage to the engine and the exhaust after-treatment system. The vehicle's warranty does not cover this. If in doubt, contact a retailer/authorised repairer for advice.

- ⚠ Most vehicles have a Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) exhaust after-treatment system. The maximum sulphur content of the diesel fuel must not exceed 0.005% (50 parts per million). The sulphur content is in compliance with the EN590-EU4 and the World Wide Fuel Charter (WWFC Category 3 or above) standards. Failure to comply with the standards may damage engine components and the exhaust after-treatment system.

- ⚠ The sulphur content of diesel fuel used in vehicles without a DPF should not exceed 0.2% (2 000 parts per million) in accordance with WWFC Category 1. Fuels with higher sulphur content may damage engine components and the exhaust after-treatment system.

In some countries, diesel fuel may contain higher levels of sulphur. If used, more frequent vehicle servicing is required, to help reduce the effects on the engine and the exhaust after-treatment components. If in doubt, contact a retailer/authorised repairer for advice.

### DIESEL EXHAUST FLUID (DEF)

- ⚠ **Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) must be kept out of children's reach, to avoid serious injury or death.**
- ⚠ **Read the label for safety precautions when using DEF, to avoid injury or death.**



## Fuel and refuelling

- ⓘ DEF must be stored in the original container, in a cool, dry, and well-ventilated area. Observe the manufacturer's storage and handling recommendations. If inappropriately stored, DEF may spill or be exposed to contamination.
- ⓘ DEF has a strong odour and can stain clothing or upholstery. Take care not to spill the fluid when performing a top-up procedure. In the event of spillage, rinse immediately with clean water.
- ⓘ When refilling, make sure that the correct specification of DEF is used. Use of the incorrect fluid can result in serious damage to the vehicle. In this situation, do not start the engine. Contact a retailer/ authorised repairer immediately.

**Note:** Do not overfill the DEF tank.

Vehicles with a diesel engine may have a tank containing DEF. DEF is used to make sure that correct exhaust emissions are achieved. DEF is also known as AdBlue™, AUS 32, and ARLA 32. AdBlue™ is a trademark of the Verband der Automobilindustrie e.V. (VDA).

Dependent on the current geographical location, correct use of the DEF system may be a legal requirement. Running the vehicle without the correct specification of DEF may be a criminal offence. Always use the correct DEF specification and the correct quantity of DEF. See **410, LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS** and **411, CAPACITIES**.

The consumption of DEF can vary greatly. An average consumption rate can be 800 km (500 miles) / 1 Litre. However, this consumption rate can be more than doubled, depending on driving style, and road and weather conditions.

The distance until the DEF tank is empty and the volume of DEF required for refill can be viewed in the instrument panel as follows:

1. Switch on the vehicle's ignition. See **139, SWITCHING ON THE IGNITION**.
2. Press the **MENU** button on the steering wheel control.
3. Use the steering wheel control to navigate to and highlight **Vehicle info**.
4. Press the **OK** button to confirm the selection.
5. Scroll down to highlight **Next service**.
6. Press the **OK** button to confirm the selection. The DEF range and refill volume is displayed.

The instrument panel displays a series of messages when the DEF level becomes low. The volume of DEF required for a refill also accompanies each message.

- The first message states that the DEF level is at a level where a top-up is advised.
- The second message is accompanied by an AMBER warning icon and states to refill the DEF tank.
- The third message starts a countdown of the distance remaining until the DEF tank is empty. After the countdown, vehicle start is inhibited.

## Fuel and refuelling

- The final message is accompanied by a RED warning icon and is displayed when the distance remaining is zero. The final message states that no further restarts are possible until DEF is added to the tank.

To perform a full DEF system refill, it is recommended to contact a retailer/ authorised repairer. If required, DEF can be added to the tank by following the top-up procedure.

The volume of DEF required to top-up or restart the engine is displayed in the instrument panel.

To perform a DEF top-up procedure, locate the DEF filler. See **349, FLUID FILLER LOCATIONS**.

Then, follow the steps below:

- Turn the tank filler cap counterclockwise to remove.
- Making sure not to exceed the required volume, top-up the tank following the instructions given on the DEF container.

**Note:** Non-drip bottles are the recommended method for top-up.

- Replace the tank filler cap and continually turn clockwise until hand tight.


If a DEF warning lamp or message illuminates with a red warning icon, seek qualified assistance at the earliest opportunity. The possible events for this include DEF system malfunctions, incorrect fluid, and poor fluid quality. See **78, DIESEL EXHAUST FLUID (DEF) (RED)** and **80, DIESEL EXHAUST FLUID (DEF) (AMBER)**.

**Note:** In temperatures below  $-10^{\circ}\text{C}$ , DEF may freeze in the tank, making refilling difficult. Move the vehicle into a warmer environment, e.g., a garage. Raise the ambient temperature, in order to thaw the DEF, before attempting to top up. In these conditions, it may take up to 1 hour of driving before the low DEF message extinguishes.

**Note:** When starting and stopping the engine, operation of the DEF pumps may be heard, but this is no cause for concern.

**Note:** The check engine amber warning lamp may illuminate after a refill. In this event, start the engine, run for approximately 30 seconds, and then switch off the engine. Do this three times in succession. See **80, CHECK ENGINE (AMBER)**.

### RUNNING OUT OF FUEL

 Avoid running out of fuel. Doing so can cause damage to the vehicle's engine, fuel, and emission control systems.

**Note:** If the vehicle does run out of fuel, seeking qualified assistance is advisable.

If the vehicle does run out of fuel, a minimum of 4 L is required to restart the engine. See **331, FUEL FILLER FLAP**.

The vehicle should be left with the ignition switched on for 5 minutes after refuelling, before attempting to restart the engine. The vehicle needs to be driven for a distance of 1.5 to 5 km in order to reset the engine management and monitoring systems.

## Fuel and refuelling



E173721

Vehicles with a diesel engine may be supplied with an active misfuelling device. A metal flap is visible in the filler neck when the fuel filler cap is removed. Use the emergency funnel supplied with the vehicle to refill the fuel tank with a fuel can. Insert the funnel into the filler neck, fully and squarely, to open the active misfuelling device. See **332, ACTIVE DIESEL MISFUELLING PROTECTION DEVICE**.

**Note:** Misfuelling devices are dependent on the market specification.

### WATER IN FUEL

- ⓘ If the instrument panel displays a warning message, an excessive amount of water has collected in the fuel system. In this event, consult a retailer/authorised repairer as soon as possible. Water in fuel can damage engine components or the fuel system.

### DIESEL ENGINES

- ⓘ Running out of fuel draws air into the fuel system and may cause serious damage to the fuel injection system. In this event, seek qualified assistance immediately.

If the fuel gauge indicates low fuel, or the low fuel warning lamp illuminates, refill the fuel tank as soon as possible. Refill with at least 4 L of fuel. See **81, LOW FUEL WARNING (AMBER)**.

After refuelling, use the following procedure to restart the engine:

1. While pressing and holding the brake pedal (automatic transmission) or clutch pedal (manual transmission), press and hold the engine **START/STOP**. Allow the engine to crank for 5 seconds. See **7, DRIVER CONTROLS**.
2. Release the engine **START/STOP** button.
3. Release the brake (or clutch) pedal.
4. Press and hold the brake pedal (automatic transmission), or the clutch pedal (manual transmission). Press and release the **START/STOP** button to crank the engine. The engine should start within approximately 5 seconds.

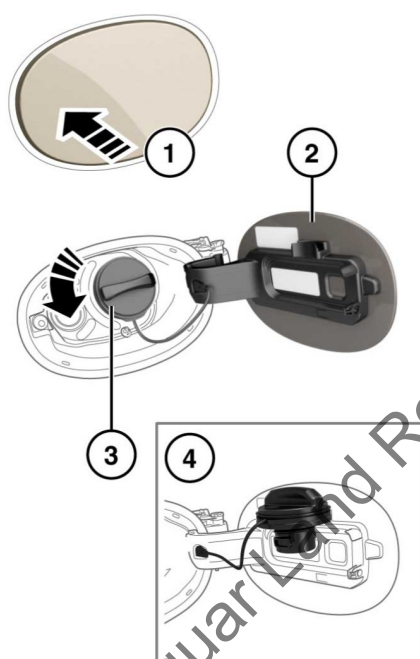
**Note:** If the engine does not start, leave the vehicle's ignition switched on for 10 seconds, then repeat the complete procedure.

- ⓘ Do not crank the engine for longer than 30 seconds continuously. Doing so may cause damage to the vehicle's engine.

## Fuel and refuelling

### FUEL FILLER FLAP

**⚠** Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before refuelling the vehicle. See 325, SAFETY PRECAUTIONS.



E194960

The fuel filler flap is located on the right side of the vehicle, at the rear. To operate, proceed as follows:

1. Press and release the rear of the fuel filler flap to unlatch.
2. Pull the flap open. The label on the inside of the flap indicates the correct fuel for the vehicle.
3. Turn the cap counter-clockwise to undo.

4. Use the securing clip to keep the filler cap out of the way while fuelling.

When replacing the filler cap, turn it clockwise until the ratchet clicks.

To close the filler flap, push the flap until it is securely latched.

### FUEL FILLER

**⚠** Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before refuelling the vehicle. See 325, SAFETY PRECAUTIONS.

**!** Check the fuel pump information carefully to make sure that the correct fuel is used to refuel the vehicle. Inadequate fuel can reduce engine performance and may cause permanent damage to engine components.

**!** If the vehicle is filled with the incorrect fuel, it is essential to seek qualified assistance before starting the engine. Inadequate fuel can reduce engine performance and may cause permanent damage to engine components.

Filling station pumps are equipped with automatic cut-off sensing, to avoid fuel spillage. Fill the tank slowly, until the filler nozzle automatically cuts off the supply. Do not attempt to fill the tank beyond this point.

**Note:** Filling station pumps used for commercial vehicles deliver fuel at a higher rate than normal. The higher fill rate can cause premature cut-off and may cause fuel spillage. Only the use of standard light vehicle fuel pumps is recommended.



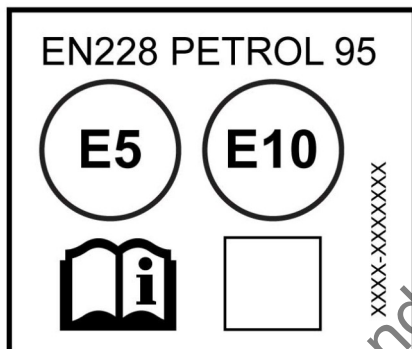
## Fuel and refuelling

### IDENTIFICATION OF CORRECT FUEL

The vehicle's fuel label displays information about the correct type and specification of fuel. The label is located on the fuel filler flap and may display the following:

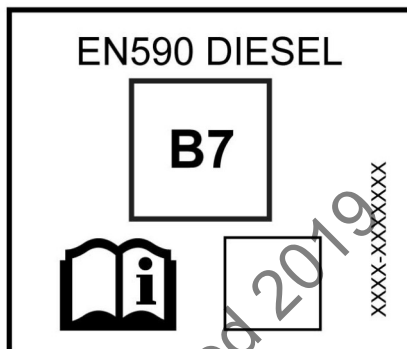
**Note:** Refuel only from the fuel pump displaying a similar label to that fitted on the vehicle.

#### Petrol vehicles



The above label identifies that unleaded petrol, meeting specification EN228, with a maximum ethanol content of 5% or 10% may be used.

#### Diesel vehicles



The above label identifies that diesel fuel, meeting specification EN590, with a maximum bio-diesel content of 7% may be used.

### ACTIVE DIESEL MISFUELLING PROTECTION DEVICE

- ⚠ Do not force an incorrectly sized fuel pump nozzle into the filler neck. Forcing an incorrectly sized fuel pump nozzle into the filler neck may result in damage to the vehicle.





## Fuel and refuelling

Vehicles with a diesel engine may have an active misfuelling protection device. A metal flap is visible in the filler neck when the fuel filler cap is removed. The active misfuelling protection device helps to prevent the fuel tank from being filled with the incorrect fuel, e.g., petrol. Automatic release occurs if a correctly sized, diesel fuel pump's filler nozzle is inserted, fully and squarely, into the vehicle's fuel filler neck, as illustrated.

**Note:** To refuel with a fuel can, use the emergency funnel supplied with the vehicle. See **329, RUNNING OUT OF FUEL**.

**Note:** Misfuelling devices are dependent on the market specification.

### PASSIVE DIESEL MISFUELLING PROTECTION DEVICE

**⚠** When the passive misfuelling protection device is activated, it may cause fuel to be discharged from the filler neck, which can cause fuel spillage. Fuel spillage could potentially lead to an accident, resulting in serious injury.

**Note:** The passive misfuelling protection device may not activate if an incorrect petrol fuel pump's nozzle is only partially inserted.

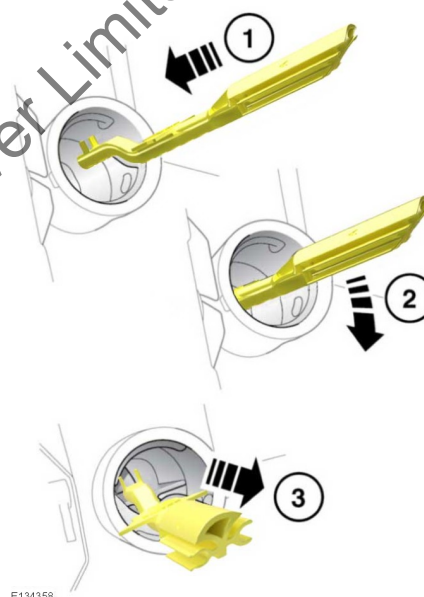
**Note:** The driver is responsible for filling the vehicle with the correct fuel. The passive misfuelling protection device only reduces the risk of filling the vehicle with an incorrect fuel.

**Note:** The passive misfuelling protection device may be activated by some fuel can filler spouts and older fuel pumps.

Vehicles with a diesel engine may have a passive misfuelling protection device incorporated into the fuel filler neck.

Using a smaller diameter, petrol fuel pump nozzle activates the passive misfuelling protection device. The vehicle's fuel filler neck is then closed to prevent the wrong fuel from being added to the fuel tank.

The yellow passive misfuelling protection device is visible in the fuel filler neck when activated. In this event, use the reset tool to deactivate the misfuelling protection device. The reset tool is stored in the vehicle's tool kit.



E134358

Use the following reset tool instructions:

1. Insert the reset tool, with the teeth uppermost, as far as it will go into the fuel filler neck.
2. Push down on the top of the reset tool to engage the teeth.



## Fuel and refuelling

- ⓘ Do not twist the device once the teeth have engaged. Doing so may damage the teeth.
- 3. Slowly pull the tool out of the fuel filler neck to reset the passive misfuelling protection device.

After use, replace the reset tool in the vehicle's tool kit.

**Note:** When reset, the yellow passive misfuelling protection device is no longer visible in the vehicle's fuel filler neck.

**Note:** Misfuelling devices are dependent on the market specification.

### FUEL TANK CAPACITY

Avoid the risk of running out of fuel. Never intentionally drive the vehicle when the fuel gauge indicates that the fuel tank is empty. When refuelling the vehicle after the indicated range reads zero, it may not be possible to add the maximum fuel quantity. The fuel tank retains a small reserve of fuel. See **411, CAPACITIES**.

### FUEL CONSUMPTION

Correct use, regular maintenance and driving technique, such as travelling at lower speeds and avoiding aggressive driving, may improve fuel consumption and reduce CO<sub>2</sub> emissions.



© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2019

## RUNNING-IN

The vehicle is built using high-precision manufacturing methods, but the moving parts of the engine must still settle in relative to each other. This running-in process occurs mainly in the first 3 000 km of operation.

During the running-in period of 3 000 km, observe and follow the instructions below:

- Do not fully press the accelerator pedal.
- Avoid high engine speeds (rpm) until the engine has reached its full operating temperature.
- Avoid operating the engine in too high a gear at low engine speeds ('labouring').
- Gradually increase engine and road speeds.
- Avoid extended operation at high engine speeds with abrupt stops.
- Avoid frequent cold starts followed by short-distance driving - where possible, allow the engine to reach operating temperature.
- Longer journeys are more helpful during the running-in period.
- Do not participate in off-highway driving, competition driving, track days, sports driving schools, or any similar events.

## AIR CONDITIONING (A/C)



**Under no circumstances should any part of the Air Conditioning (A/C) system be serviced, dismantled, or replaced by anyone other than suitably qualified and certified personnel. Make sure that the refrigerant is correctly contained at all times. Failure to adhere to the above may result in serious personal injury or death.**



**All replacement parts for the A/C system must be new and equivalent to the manufacturer's original equipment. All replacement parts must comply with the relevant SAE standard. Contact a retailer/authorised repairer for advice. Failure to comply with the standards could lead to serious injury or death.**

The A/C system contains HFO-1234yf (R-1234yf), which is a low Global Warming Potential (GWP) tetrafluoropropene refrigerant. The A/C system is sealed and has a leakage rate of less than 3% per year.

The following symbols may be used on an under-bonnet label. The symbols are relevant to the refrigerant fluid:



A/C symbol.



Lubricant symbol.



## Maintenance



Caution.



Flammable refrigerant.



Required registered technician to service the A/C system.

### OWNER MAINTENANCE



**Any significant or sudden drop in fluid levels, or uneven tyre wear, should be reported to a qualified technician without delay. Failure to do so may damage the vehicle and lead to accidents, potentially resulting in serious injury or death.**

In addition to the routine maintenance, a number of simple checks must be carried out more frequently. See **336, DAILY CHECKS** and **336, WEEKLY CHECKS**.

### DAILY CHECKS

Check the operation of the following every day:

- Exterior lights.
- Horn.
- Direction Indicators.
- Windscreen wipers.
- Windscreen washers.
- Warning lamps.
- Seat belts.
- Braking system.

Also check for fluid deposits underneath the vehicle that may indicate a leak.

**Note:** Water drips from condensation on the Air Conditioning (A/C) system are normal.

### WEEKLY CHECKS

Check the following every week:

- Engine oil level.
- Engine coolant level.
- Brake fluid level.
- Power steering fluid level.
- Screen washer fluid level.
- Tyre pressures and condition.
- The Air Conditioning (A/C) system.

**Note:** The engine oil level should be checked more frequently if the vehicle is driven for prolonged periods at high speeds.

### EXHAUST FILTER

Exhaust filters are also known as particulate filters. Vehicles fitted with these filters have more efficient emissions control. The particles in the exhaust gases are collected in the exhaust filter during normal driving.

Cleaning of the exhaust filter is also known as regeneration. The cleaning occurs automatically depending on driving conditions and that the engine has reached its normal operating temperature.

Self-cleaning takes place while driving, although the characteristics are different for diesel and petrol engine vehicles.

## Maintenance

### Diesel exhaust filter self-cleaning

Self-cleaning takes place when the vehicle is driven steadily at speeds between 60 km/h and 112 km/h (37 mph and 70 mph). The process normally takes 10 to 20 minutes. Self-cleaning can occur at lower vehicle speeds, but the process may take a little longer at a 50 km/h (30 mph) average speed.

Some driving conditions, e.g., frequently driving short distances in slow-moving traffic or in cold weather, may not provide sufficient opportunity to begin the exhaust filter self-cleaning automatically. When this occurs, a warning icon displays in the instrument panel, depending on status, as follows:



- Amber: Exhaust filter self-cleaning is required. Driving above 60 km/h (37 mph) for 20 minutes should clean the filter.

**Note:** Failure to follow the above driving approach, to enable filter self-cleaning, may result in reduced vehicle performance. The amber exhaust filter icon is eventually replaced by a red exhaust filter icon. The filter may need to be replaced.

- Green: Exhaust filter self-cleaning is complete.
- Red: The exhaust filter is full. Contact a retailer/authorised repairer as soon as possible.

**Note:** A small increase in fuel consumption may be noticed temporarily during exhaust filter self-cleaning.

**Note:** If diesel fuel with high sulphur content is used regularly, the exhaust may emit a cloud of smoke at the start of the self-cleaning process. The smoke is a result of the sulphur deposit being burnt off and is no cause for concern. If possible, only use low sulphur diesel fuel.

### Petrol exhaust filter self-cleaning

Self-cleaning takes place when the engine is at normal operating temperature and sufficient oxygen is present in the exhaust stream. In most situations, the exhaust filter will automatically self-clean without any driver intervention necessary.

Some driving conditions, e.g., repetitive cold starts or continuous full-load driving, may not provide sufficient opportunity to begin the exhaust filter self-cleaning automatically. When this occurs, a warning icon displays in the instrument panel, depending on status, as follows:



- Amber: Exhaust filter self-cleaning is required. Driving steadily below 80 km/h (50 mph) for up to 15 minutes should clean the filter.

**Note:** Failure to follow the above driving approach, to enable filter self-cleaning, may result in reduced vehicle performance. The amber exhaust filter icon is eventually replaced by a red exhaust filter icon. The filter may need to be replaced.

- Green: Exhaust filter self-cleaning is complete.
- Red: The exhaust filter is full. Engine power will be reduced. Exhaust filter self-cleaning is required.




## Maintenance


**Note:** If a restricted performance message is displayed, contact a retailer/authorised repairer as soon as possible.

**Note:** An increase in the idle speed may be noticed temporarily during exhaust filter self-cleaning.

### ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

 No modifications or additions should be made to the anti-theft system. Such changes could cause the system to malfunction.

### AIRBAG SYSTEM


 The components that make up the airbag system are sensitive to electrical or physical interference, either of which could easily damage the system and cause inadvertent operation or a malfunction of the airbag module. Airbags should only be repaired by an authorised repairer. If the airbags are not repaired correctly, they may not operate correctly during a collision, which may lead to a serious injury or death.


To prevent malfunction of the airbag system, always consult a retailer/authorised repairer before fitting any of the following:

- Electronic equipment such as a mobile phone, two-way radio, or in-vehicle entertainment system.
- Accessories attached to the front of the vehicle.
- Any modification to the front of the vehicle.

- Any modification involving the removal or repair of any wiring or component in the vicinity of any of the airbag system components. The components include the steering wheel, steering column, and instrument and fascia panels.
- Any modification to the fascia panels or steering wheel.

### PARTS AND ACCESSORIES

 The fitting of non-approved parts and accessories, or the carrying out of non-approved alterations or conversions, may be dangerous. Doing so could affect the safety of the vehicle and occupants, and also invalidate the terms and conditions of the vehicle's warranty.

 All replacement parts for the Air Conditioning (A/C) system should be new and equivalent to the manufacturer's original equipment, while complying with the SAE standards. Contact a retailer/authorised repairer for advice. Failure to adhere to the above may lead to serious injury or death.



The extremely flammable symbol may be used on an under-bonnet label. The symbol is relevant to the Air Conditioning (A/C) refrigerant fluid.

The symbol identifies extremely flammable chemicals that have an extremely low flash point and boiling point, and gases that catch fire when in contact with air.

## Maintenance





Jaguar Land Rover Limited will not accept any liability for death, personal injury, or damage to property, which may occur as a direct result of fitment of non-approved accessories or the carrying out of non-approved conversions to the vehicle.


### ROAD TESTING DYNAMOMETERS (ROLLING ROADS)


Any dynamometer testing should only be carried out by a qualified person, familiar with the dynamometer testing and safety procedures practised by retailers/ authorised repairers.


### SAFETY WHEN CARRYING OUT VEHICLE CHECKS


Make sure the following warnings have been read and fully understood before carrying out vehicle checks. Failure to follow the guidance given could affect vehicle safety, leading to serious injury or death.


-  Vehicle repairs should only be carried out by a suitably qualified technician.
-  If the vehicle has been driven recently, do not touch the engine, exhaust, or cooling system components until the engine has cooled.
-  Never leave the engine running when the vehicle is in a garage. Exhaust gases are poisonous and can cause unconsciousness and death if inhaled.
-  Do not work beneath the vehicle with the wheel changing jack as the only means of support.

 The jack is designed for wheel changing only. Never work beneath the vehicle with the jack as the only means of support. Always use correctly-rated vehicle support stands, before putting any part of the body beneath the vehicle.


 Keep hands and clothing away from drive belts, pulleys and fans. Some fans may continue to operate after the engine has stopped.

 Remove metal wristbands and jewellery before working in the engine compartment.

 Do not touch electrical leads or components while the engine is running, or with the ignition turned on.

 Do not allow tools or metal parts of the vehicle to make contact with the battery leads or terminals.

### POISONOUS FLUIDS


 Fluids used in motor vehicles are poisonous and should not be consumed or brought into contact with open wounds. Vehicle fluids may cause serious injuries or infection.

For safety, always read and obey all instructions printed on labels and containers.



## Maintenance


### USED ENGINE OIL

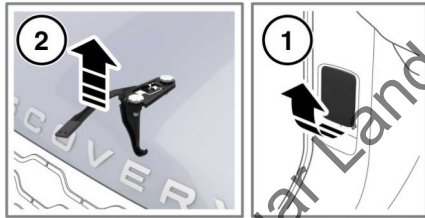
 **Prolonged contact with engine oil may cause serious skin disorders, including dermatitis and cancer of the skin. Always wash thoroughly after contact.**



Pollution of drains, watercourses, or soil is illegal. Use authorised waste disposal sites to dispose of used oil and toxic chemicals.

### OPENING THE BONNET

 **Before opening the bonnet, make sure that the vehicle's ignition is switched off and the smart key is removed from the vehicle. Failure to do so can potentially result in serious injury or death.**



E245517


To open the bonnet:


1. Pull the handle, located in the driver's side front footwell, to release the bonnet securing latch.


**Note:** *The driver's door must be open to access the release handle.*

2. Lift the bonnet safety catch, located below the centre point of the bonnet. Raise the bonnet.

### CLOSING THE BONNET

 **Before closing the bonnet, make sure that no-one is obstructing the closing area and that hands and clothes are clear. The closing bonnet may cause serious injuries.**

 **Do not drive with the bonnet secured by the safety catch alone. If the bonnet opens while driving, it may lead to a collision, which may cause serious injuries or death.**

 **When closing the bonnet, make sure to stand in front of the vehicle. Do not attempt to close the bonnet while standing at the side of the vehicle. Doing so may result in incorrect latching of the bonnet.**

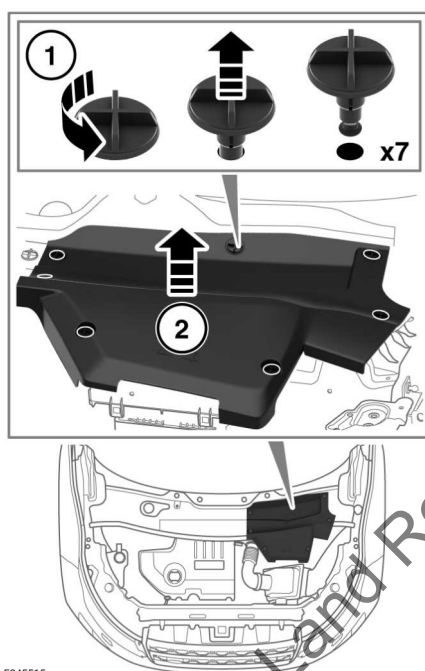
To close the bonnet:

1. Using both hands, lower the bonnet and let it drop from a height of between 20 to 50 cm.
2. Try to lift the front edge of the bonnet near both corners to check that it is securely engaged.
3. If the bonnet lifts slightly, it is not properly latched. Open the bonnet again, and with a little more force, try again to close it.



## UNDER-BONNET COVERS REMOVAL

### Left-side under-bonnet cover

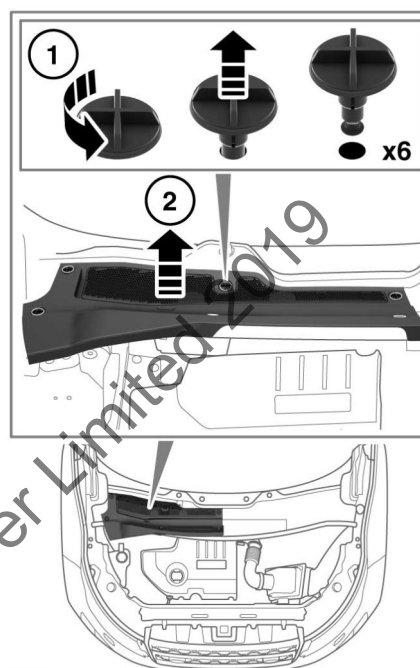


E245515

To remove the left-side cover:

1. Unscrew the turnbuckle clips counter-clockwise and remove.
2. Lift the front edge of the cover and slide it forward to remove.

### Right-side under-bonnet cover



E245516

To remove the right-side cover:

1. Unscrew the turnbuckle clips counter-clockwise and remove.
2. Lift the cover to remove.

## UNDER-BONNET COVERS REFITTING

⚠ Before refitting the under-bonnet cover, make sure no pipes, cables, or other items have been trapped between the cover and the casing. Trapped parts may damage vehicle components.


1. Place the under-bonnet cover over the casing. Make sure that all of the turnbuckle holes are aligned.





## Maintenance

2. Push the cover down firmly. Screw the turnbuckle clips clockwise to tighten.


### FUEL SYSTEM

 Under no circumstances should any part of the fuel system be dismantled or replaced by anyone other than a suitably qualified vehicle technician. If any parts are replaced by an unqualified person, this may cause interference in the operation of the vehicle, leading to serious injury or death.

 Make sure sparks and open flames are kept away from the engine compartment. A spark may cause an explosion, which may lead to serious injuries or death.

 Wear protective clothing, including, where possible, gloves made from an impervious material. Failure to do so may result in serious injury or death.

### EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM


 Exhaust fumes contain poisonous substances which can cause unconsciousness and may even be fatal.

Land Rover vehicles are fitted with emission and evaporative control systems. In many countries, it is unlawful to tamper, modify, or replace such equipment. Legal penalties apply if the laws are flouted.


Retailers/authorised repairers are properly equipped to perform repairs and to maintain these systems.

- Do not inhale exhaust gases.


- Do not start or leave the engine running in an enclosed, unventilated area.
- Do not drive the vehicle with the tailgate open.
- Do not modify the exhaust system.
- Exhaust leaks should be repaired immediately.
- If exhaust fumes are thought to be entering the vehicle, have it investigated immediately.

 Running out of fuel can result in a misfire, which may cause damage to the emission control system.

### CHANGING A BULB

 All lights are LED units and must only be replaced by a retailer/authorised repairer.

### WIPERS SERVICE POSITION

 To avoid damage to the bonnet, do not lift the wiper blades when they are in the normal parked position.

**Note:** The smart key must remain in the vehicle while the wiper blades are being replaced.

**Note:** Fit only replacement wiper blades that are identical to the original specification.

**Note:** Replace the wiper blades in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

Before changing a wiper blade, the wiper arms must be set in the service position as follows:

1. Make sure the vehicle's ignition is switched off.

## Maintenance

2. Switch the vehicle's ignition on and then off again.
3. Immediately press the wash/wipe control to its lowest position, as if to command a single wipe. Hold this position while switching on the vehicle's ignition again. The wipers move to the service position. See **93, WIPER OPERATION**.
4. When the new parts have been fitted, switch the vehicle's ignition off. The wipers return to the park position.

### PANORAMIC ROOF BLIND RESET

The roof blind needs to be reset if the battery is disconnected, becomes discharged, or the power supply is interrupted.

1. Start the engine.
2. With the roof blind in the closed position, press and hold the roof blind switch for approximately 30 seconds, until an audible double click sounds.
3. Release the switch. Within 3 seconds, press and hold the roof blind switch again. Hold until the blind completes a full open and close cycle.
4. Once the blind has stopped moving, release the switch. The blind can now be operated as normal.

### WINDOW RESET

The windows need to be reset if the battery is disconnected, becomes discharged, or the power supply is interrupted.

Reset as follows:

1. Close the window fully. See **104, ELECTRIC WINDOWS**.

2. Release the switch. Lift the switch to the close position and hold for 1 second.
3. Repeat the procedure on each window.

**Note:** Make sure that a minimum of 12 volts is available at all times. It is advisable to have the engine running while resetting the windows.

### FIRE EXTINGUISHER

For certain markets, fire extinguishers are fitted to comply with local legislation. Please note, it is the owner's responsibility to make sure the fire extinguisher is maintained in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

The owner is also responsible for making sure that the pressure is at a suitable operating pressure, as indicated on the pressure gauge. Only use fire extinguishers approved by the vehicle manufacturer.



## Vehicle cleaning

### THE EXTERIOR

- ⚠ To prevent damage to the vehicle when using a valeting service, make sure to advise of the cleaning instructions contained within the Owner's Handbook.
- ⚠ Remove any heavy deposits of mud and dirt with a hose, before washing the vehicle.
- ⚠ Some high pressure cleaning systems are sufficiently powerful enough to penetrate suspension joints, door and window seals, and damage trim and door locks.
- ⚠ Never aim the water jet directly at any cameras, the engine air intakes, heater air intakes, body seals. For example doors, sunroof, windows.
- ⚠ Never aim the water jet directly at any at any components which may be damaged. For example lights, mirrors, exterior trim, suspension seals and gaiters. Make sure the pressure washer nozzle is always at a distance of more than 300 mm from any component of the vehicle.
- ⚠ When lifting the wiper blades for cleaning, use the winter park position to avoid damage to the vehicle. See **96, WINTER PARK POSITION.**
- ⚠ Do not use a power wash system in the engine bay area. Doing so can cause damage of the engine.
- ⚠ After cleaning the vehicle's exterior, particularly with a pressure washer, the vehicle should be taken for a short drive to dry out the brakes.

- ⚠ Substances which are corrosive, such as bird droppings, can damage the vehicle's paintwork. Remove such substances as soon as possible.
- ⚠ Use only cleaning products approved for use on vehicles. Other cleaning product can damage the vehicle's surfaces.
- ⚠ Do not apply polish to any unpainted areas of bumper mouldings. It will become ingrained in the textured finish.

### SENSORS AND CAMERAS

- ⚠ When washing the vehicle, do not aim high pressure water jets directly at any of the sensors and cameras. High pressure water jets may damage the sensors and cameras.
- ⚠ Do not use abrasive materials, or hard or sharp objects, to clean the sensors and cameras. Such objects may cause damage to the vehicle's sensors and cameras.
- ⚠ Only use approved vehicle shampoo. Using unapproved cleaning products may damage the vehicle.

Keep the park assist and parking aid sensors clean to maintain accuracy and performance.

If required, clean the cameras using a cloth moistened with a small amount of glass-cleaning product.

### USING AN AUTOMATIC WASH

- ⚠ Commercially-operated, automatic car washes, jet washes, and power-operated mops are not recommended.

## Vehicle cleaning

### UNDER BODY MAINTENANCE

Regularly flush the vehicle's underbody with plain, clean water. Pay particular attention to areas where mud and debris collect.

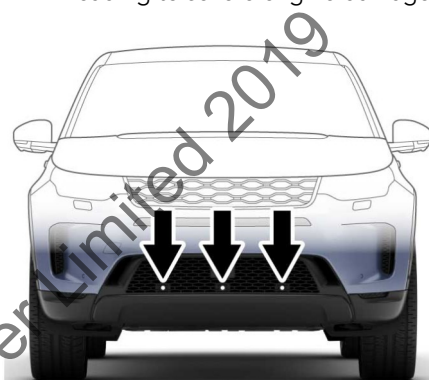
If damage or corrosion are detected, have the vehicle checked by a retailer/ authorised repairer as soon as possible.

### ENGINE COMPARTMENT

- ⚠ Do not use a high pressure washer or steam cleaner in the engine compartment. Pressure washing has the potential to cause damage to engine components.
- ⚠ Make sure that the brake fluid reservoir is kept dry at all times. Only use a clean, dry cloth to clean the brake fluid cap and reservoir. Using unapproved cleaning product may damage the components.

### AFTER OFF-ROAD DRIVING

- ⚠ Make sure the areas around air intakes and the front grille are clean and clear of debris. Pay particular attention to the lower grille and radiator. Failure to do so may cause the engine to overheat, potentially leading to severe engine damage.



E245514

Make sure the vehicle's underside is cleaned as soon as possible after driving off-road.

### ALLOY WHEELS

- ⚠ Only use approved wheel cleaning products. Using unapproved cleaning products may damage the vehicle.

### GLASS SURFACES

- ⚠ Mirror glass is particularly susceptible to damage. Wash with soapy water. Do not use abrasive cleaning compounds or metal scrapers to remove ice.



## Vehicle cleaning

- ⚠ To avoid damaging the protective coating, only clean the interior side of the sunroof glass with a soft cloth. Do not scrape the glass or use abrasive cleaning fluids.

### REAR SCREEN

- ⚠ To avoid damaging the heating elements when cleaning the inside of the rear screen, use only a soft, damp cloth or chamois leather. Do not use solvents or sharp objects to clean the glass.

### THE INTERIOR

- ⚠ **Some cleaning products contain substances that are harmful and can cause health problems if used incorrectly.**
- ⚠ Some cleaning products may cause damage to the vehicle's interior. Make sure to read the manufacturer's instructions carefully.
- ⚠ To prevent damage to the vehicle when using a valeting service, make sure to advise of the cleaning instructions contained within the Owner's Handbook.

### CLEANING SWITCHES AND CONTROLS

- ⚠ Use a soft, dry, lint-free cloth when cleaning switches or controls. Do not apply excessive pressure when doing so. Using not approved cleaning product may cause damage to the components.

- ⚠ Do not spray liquids directly onto the surface of switches and controls. Fluids leaking into the gaps around switches and controls can damage the electronics of the vehicle.

- ⚠ Do not use chemical agents, solvents, or domestic cleaning products. Using unapproved cleaning products may damage the vehicle.

- ⚠ When cleaning, do not allow sharp or abrasive objects to make contact with the components. Sharp or abrasive objects may damage the components.

### FABRIC UPHOLSTERY

- ⚠ Never use soap, ammonia, bleach, or other cleaners intended for use on hard surfaces.
- ⚠ Do not use printed absorbent cloths or paper. Doing so may transfer colour to the fabric.

### LEATHER UPHOLSTERY

- ⚠ Only use cleaning products specifically designed for use on leather. Do not use chemical, alcohol, or abrasive materials, as doing so will cause rapid deterioration of the leather. The use of non-approved products will invalidate the warranty.
- ⚠ If in any doubt as to which products to use, consult a retailer/authorised repairer. Using the wrong product can cause damage to the leather surfaces.
- ⚠ Dark clothing may stain leather seats, just like other upholstery products.

## Vehicle cleaning

- ⚠ Sharp objects, such as belts, zippers, rivets, etc., can leave permanent scratches and scratch marks on the leather surface.
- ⚠ Unless spillages, such as tea, coffee, or ink, are washed away immediately, permanent staining may have to be accepted. Leather should be cleaned and protected at least every 6 months.

To prevent ingrained dirt and staining, inspect the seat upholstery regularly.

Clean every 1 to 2 months as follows:

1. Wipe off fine dust from the seat surfaces using a clean, damp, non-coloured cloth. Avoid over-wetting the leather.
2. If this is not sufficient, use a cloth which has been dampened with warm, soapy water and then wrung out. Use only mild, non-caustic soap.
3. Use the vehicle manufacturer's leather cleaner for heavily soiled areas. Dry off and rub with a clean, soft cloth. Change surfaces regularly.

Use the vehicle manufacturer's leather cleaner several times a year to maintain the leather's suppleness and appearance. The cleaner nourishes and moisturises the leather, and helps to improve the surface's protective film against dust and substances.

If a valet service is used, make sure the specialist concerned is aware of, and follows, these instructions precisely.

- ⚠ Some materials and fabrics are prone to dye transfer, which can cause unsightly discolouration of lighter coloured leathers. Affected areas should be cleaned and re-protected as soon as possible.

### SEAT BELTS

- ⚠ **Do not allow any water, cleaning products, or fabric from cloths to enter the seat belt mechanism. Any substance which enters the mechanism may affect the performance of the seat belt in an impact. Damage to the seat belt can greatly reduce its effectiveness in reducing the risk of serious injury or death in the event of an accident.**

Extend the seat belts fully. Use warm water and a non-detergent soap to clean. Allow the seat belts to dry naturally while fully extended. Do not allow the belts to retract until fully dry.

**Note:** While cleaning the seat belt, take the opportunity to examine the webbing for damage and wear. Any wear or damage should be reported to, and be rectified by, a retailer/authorised repairer.

### AIRBAG MODULE COVERS

- ⚠ **Airbag covers should only be cleaned using a slightly dampened cloth and a small amount of upholstery cleaner. Some cleaning products may cause damage to airbag covers.**
- ⚠ **Any substance which enters the mechanism can prevent correct deployment of an airbag during an impact. An airbag system not operating correctly could result in serious injury or death in the event of an accident.**



## Vehicle cleaning

### CARPET AND MATS

- ⚠️ **Correctly secure the floor mats before driving. Never place mats on top of each other. Unsecured or incorrectly positioned mats can obstruct the brake and/or accelerator pedal and can lead to serious injury or death.**

Marks or stains can be removed by gentle scrubbing with a weak solution of soap and warm water.

For more stubborn stains, a commercially available carpet cleaner should be used.

### CLEANING SCREENS AND DISPLAYS

- ⚠️ Do not use upholstery cleaner on electrical equipment such as fascia switches.
- ⚠️ When cleaning around electrical equipment, such as switches, make sure fluids do not leak into any gaps around the components or between any panels or trim.

Observe the following points when cleaning screens and displays:

- Clean with a lightly moistened cloth.
- Do not use chemical agents or domestic cleaning products.
- Do not allow sharp, hard, or abrasive objects to make contact with the screens.
- Avoid exposing screens to direct sunlight for long periods.
- To prevent errors occurring, make sure only one finger at a time is in contact with the touchscreen.
- Do not use excessive pressure.

### WIPER BLADES

- ⚠️ Always lift the wiper by the wiper arm. To avoid damage to the wiper blade, do not lift the wiper by the wiper blade.
- ⚠️ Do not use excessive pressure. Excessive pressure on the wiper blades can damage the blades.

Heavy contamination on the wiper blades should be removed using a soft, damp sponge or cloth.

### BLOCKED WASHER JETS

- ⚠️ **Do not operate the washer jets during unblocking or adjustment. Windscreen washer fluid may cause irritation to the eyes and skin. Always read and observe the washer fluid manufacturer's instructions.**

If a washer jet becomes blocked, insert a thin strand of wire into the washer jet to unblock it. Make sure the wire is completely removed after unblocking.

### REPAIRING MINOR PAINT DAMAGE

**Note:** Any repairs should be carried out by suitably qualified personnel.

Regularly inspect the paintwork for damage. Any stone chips, fractures, or deep scratches in the paint or bodywork should be repaired promptly. Bare metal corrodes quickly and, if left untreated, can result in expensive repairs.



## Fluid level checks

### FLUID FILLER LOCATIONS

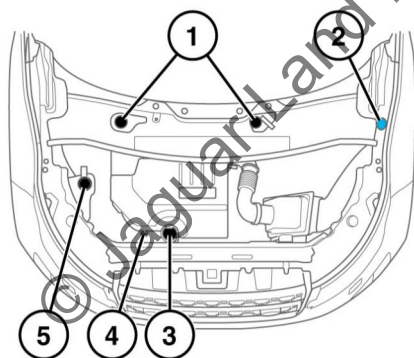
**⚠** While working in the engine compartment, always observe the safety precautions. See 339, **SAFETY WHEN CARRYING OUT VEHICLE CHECKS.**

**⚠** Do not start the engine, or drive the vehicle, if leaked fluid could possibly make contact with a hot surface. Any leaked fluid coming into contact with a hot surface, such as the exhaust, could result in combustion. Seek qualified assistance immediately.

**Note:** The brake fluid reservoir is always located on the driver's side.

A number of simple checks and routine maintenance must be carried out at regular intervals. See 336, **WEEKLY CHECKS.**

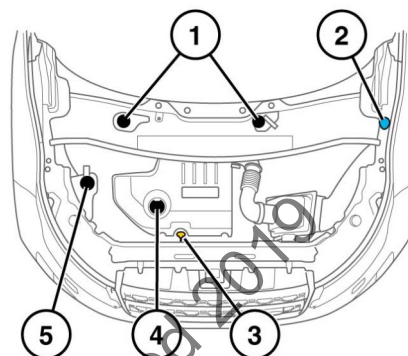
#### 2.0L petrol engine



E228751

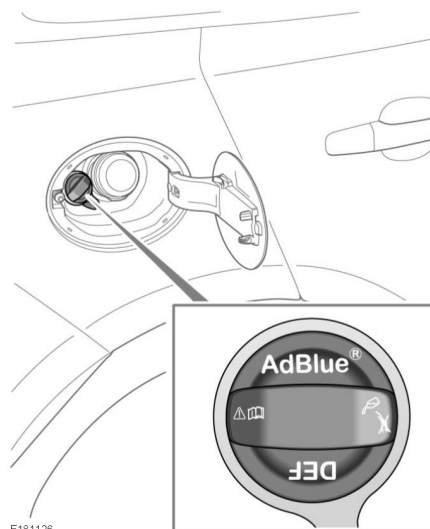
1. Brake fluid reservoir cap.
2. Washer fluid reservoir filler cap.
3. Engine oil filler cap.
4. Engine oil level dipstick.
5. Engine coolant reservoir filler cap.

#### 2.0L diesel engine



E228752

1. Brake and clutch fluid reservoir cap.
2. Washer fluid reservoir filler cap.
3. Engine oil level dipstick.
4. Engine oil filler cap.
5. Engine coolant reservoir filler cap.



E181126

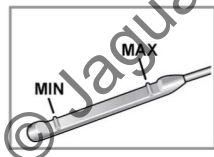
## Fluid level checks

The Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) tank filler cap is located inside the fuel filler flap, to the side of the fuel filler cap. See **327, DIESEL EXHAUST FLUID (DEF)**.

### CHECKING THE ENGINE OIL LEVEL

- ⓘ Check the engine oil weekly. If any significant or sudden drop in oil level is noted, seek qualified assistance.
- ⓘ Never allow the engine oil level to fall below the lower mark or notch on the dipstick.
- ⓘ If the instrument panel displays the message **ENGINE OIL PRESSURE LOW**, stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Allowing the engine to continue running with low oil pressure may cause the engine to seize. Seek qualified assistance immediately. Do not start the engine until the cause has been rectified.

Check the engine oil level frequently. Top up, as required, using the correct grade for the engine.



E181179

- ⓘ The dipstick on 2.0L petrol and diesel engines features a lug to aid correct fitment. Make sure the lug is correctly aligned with the groove in the dipstick tube. Failure to do this could result in the dipstick not fitting correctly and oil escaping from the engine.

Before checking the engine oil level, make sure that:

- The vehicle is stationary and the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is applied.
- The vehicle is on level ground.
- The engine oil is cold.

**Note:** *If it is necessary to check the oil level when the engine is hot, switch off the engine. Let the vehicle stand for 5 minutes to allow the oil to drain back into the sump. Do not start the engine.*

The oil level can then be checked as follows:

1. Withdraw the dipstick and wipe the blade clean with a lint-free cloth.
2. Fully reinsert the dipstick and withdraw again to check the oil level.

If the oil level is nearer to the upper mark on the dipstick, do not add any oil.

If the oil level is below half-way, add 0.5 L of oil. Recheck the level and add more oil, if necessary.

If the oil level is below the lower mark, add 1.8 L of oil.

Once the oil has reached the correct level on the dipstick, wait 5 minutes and recheck.

### TOPPING UP THE OIL

- ⓘ The vehicle's warranty may be invalidated if damage is caused by using oil that does not meet the required specification. See **410, LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS**.

## Fluid level checks

- ❗ Failure to use an oil that meets the required specification could cause excessive engine wear, a build-up of sludge and deposits, and increase pollution. A resultant cause could be engine failure.
- ❗ Overfilling with oil could result in severe engine damage. Oil should be added in small quantities and the level rechecked to make sure the engine is not overfilled.
- ❗ Use of the correct oil specification is essential. Make sure the oil is suitable for the climatic conditions in which the vehicle is to be operated.

To top up the engine oil:

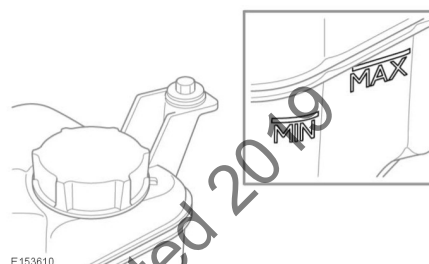
1. Turn the oil filler cap counter-clockwise to remove.
2. Add oil to maintain the level between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks on the dipstick.
 

*Note: The approximate quantity of oil required to raise the level from **MIN** to **MAX** on the dipstick is 1.8 L.*
3. Clean up any oil spilled during topping up.
4. Check the oil level again after 5 minutes.
5. To refit the oil filler cap, turn the cap clockwise until an audible click is heard.

### CHECKING THE COOLANT LEVEL

- ❗ Running the engine without coolant will cause serious engine damage.
- ❗ If persistent coolant loss is noticed, seek qualified assistance immediately.

The coolant reservoir level should be checked at least weekly. It should be checked more frequently in high mileage or arduous operating conditions. Always check the level when the system is cold.



Make sure the coolant level remains between the **MIN** and **MAX** indicator marks on the side of the expansion tank.


If the coolant level drops suddenly, or drops by a large amount, the vehicle must be examined by a retailer/authorised repairer as soon as possible.


### TOPPING UP THE COOLANT


- ⚠ **Never remove the coolant reservoir filler cap when the engine is hot. Escaping steam or scalding water could cause serious personal injury.**
- ⚠ **Unscrew the filler cap slowly, allowing the pressure to escape before removing completely.**
- ⚠ **Antifreeze is highly inflammable. Do not allow antifreeze to come into contact with open flames or other sources of ignition e.g., a hot engine. A fire may result.**





## Fluid level checks

 **Antifreeze is poisonous and can be fatal if swallowed. Keep containers sealed and out of the reach of children. If consumption is suspected, seek medical attention immediately.**

 **If the fluid comes into contact with the skin or eyes, rinse immediately with plenty of water.**

 When travelling in places where the water supply contains salt, always make sure to carry a supply of fresh (rain or distilled) water. Topping up with salt water will cause serious engine damage.

 The use of non-approved antifreeze will have an adverse effect on the engine's cooling system and, therefore, engine durability. See **410, LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS**.

 Antifreeze will damage painted surfaces. Soak up any spillage with an absorbent cloth immediately, and wash the area with a mixture of car shampoo and water.

Antifreeze contains important corrosion inhibitors. The antifreeze content of the coolant must be maintained at 50% to 60% all year round, not just in cold conditions. To make sure the anti-corrosion properties of the coolant are maintained, the antifreeze content should be checked once a year. The antifreeze should be completely replaced every 10 years, regardless of the distance travelled. Failure to do so may cause corrosion of the radiator and engine components. The specific gravity of a 50% antifreeze solution at 20°C is 1.068 and protects against frost down to -40°C.


To top up the coolant:


1. Rotate the coolant reservoir filler cap counter-clockwise and remove.
2. Top up to the **MAX** indicator mark on the side of the coolant reservoir. Use a mixture of 50% water and 50% antifreeze. See **410, LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS**.


**Note:** *In an emergency, and only if the approved antifreeze is unavailable, top up the cooling system with clean water. Be aware of the resultant reduction in frost protection. Do not top up or refill with conventional antifreeze formulations. If in doubt, consult a qualified technician.*

3. To refit the coolant reservoir filler cap, rotate the filler cap clockwise, until the cap's ratchet clicks at least three times.

## CHECKING THE BRAKE AND CLUTCH FLUID LEVEL

 **Seek qualified assistance immediately if brake pedal travel is unusually long, or if there is any significant loss of brake fluid. Driving under such conditions could result in extended stopping distances or complete brake failure.**

 **Brake fluid is highly toxic. Keep containers sealed and out of the reach of children. If accidental consumption of fluid is suspected, seek medical attention immediately.**

 **If the fluid comes into contact with the skin or eyes, rinse immediately with plenty of clean water.**

## Fluid level checks

**⚠ Brake fluid is highly flammable. Do not allow brake fluid to come into contact with open flames or other sources of ignition, e.g., a hot engine.**

**⚠ Do not drive the vehicle with the fluid level below the MIN mark.**

If the quantity of fluid in the brake reservoir drops below the recommended level, a red warning lamp in the instrument panel illuminates. See **77, BRAKE (RED)**.

**Note:** If the warning lamp illuminates while the vehicle is being driven, gently apply the brakes to stop the vehicle, as soon as safety permits. Check and top up the fluid level, if necessary.

With the vehicle on level ground, check the fluid level at least every week. Check more frequently in high mileage or arduous operating conditions.



E153612

To check the brake and clutch fluid level:

1. Remove the relevant under-bonnet cover. See **349, FLUID FILLER LOCATIONS** and **341, UNDER-BONNET COVERS REMOVAL**.

2. Clean the brake fluid reservoir and the filler cap before removing, to prevent dirt from entering the reservoir.
3. Rotate the reservoir filler cap counter-clockwise and remove.
4. Check the brake fluid reservoir level. The level should be between the **MIN** and the **MAX** marks.

**Note:** The fluid level may drop slightly during normal use, as a result of brake pad wear. The fluid level should not be allowed to drop below the **MIN** mark.

### TOPPING UP THE BRAKE AND CLUTCH FLUID

- ⚠** Always use brake fluid which has the correct specification. See **410, LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS**.
- ⚠** Brake fluid damages painted surfaces. Soak up any spillage with an absorbent cloth immediately. Wash the area with a mixture of car shampoo and water.
- ⚠** Only use new fluid from an airtight container. Fluid from open containers, or fluid previously bled from the system, will have absorbed moisture. Contaminated fluid will adversely affect performance, and must not be used.
- ⚠** Do not top up the brake fluid to the maximum mark unless the brake pads have been replaced. If unsure, seek qualified assistance.

To top up the brake and clutch fluid:


1. Rotate the reservoir filler cap counter-clockwise and remove.
2. Top up the reservoir to at least the minimum mark.





## Fluid level checks


3. To refit the reservoir filler cap, rotate the cap clockwise.
4. Refit the under-bonnet cover. See **341, UNDER-BONNET COVERS REFITTING**.


### CHECKING THE WASHER FLUID LEVEL

 Some windscreen washer products are flammable, particularly if high or undiluted concentrations are exposed to sparking. Do not allow windscreen washer fluid to come into contact with exposed flames or sources of ignition, as this can cause a fire or explosion.

 If the vehicle is operated in temperatures below 4°C, use a windscreen washer fluid with frost protection. In cold weather, failure to use a windscreen washer fluid with frost protection could result in impaired vision and increase the risk of a vehicle crash.

 Do not use an antifreeze or a vinegar and water solution in the windscreen washer reservoir. Antifreeze damages painted surfaces, while vinegar can damage the windscreen washer pump.

 Body panels may suffer discolouration as a result of windscreen washer fluid spillage. Take care to avoid spillage, particularly if an undiluted or high concentration is being used. If spillage occurs, wash the affected area immediately with water.

 Only use approved windscreen washer fluid.

The washer fluid reservoir supplies the windscreen, rear screen and headlight washer jets.

Check and top up the reservoir level at least every week. Always top up with screen washer fluid to prevent freezing.

Operate the washer controls periodically to check that the nozzles are clear and properly directed.

### TOPPING UP THE WASHER FLUID

*Note: National or local regulations may restrict the use of Volatile Organic Compounds (VOCs) which are commonly used as antifreeze agents in windscreen washer fluid. A windscreen washer fluid with limited VOC content should be used only if it provides adequate freeze resistance for all climates in which the vehicle is operated.*

Top up the windscreen washer fluid as follows:

1. Clean the washer fluid reservoir filler cap before removing, to prevent dirt from entering the reservoir. See **349, FLUID FILLER LOCATIONS**.
2. Remove the filler cap.
3. Top up the reservoir until the fluid is visible in the filler neck.
4. Replace the filler cap.

## Vehicle battery

### BATTERY WARNING SYMBOLS



Do not allow open flames or other sources of ignition near the battery, as the battery may emit explosive gases.



Make sure, when working near or handling the battery, that suitable eye protection is worn, to protect the eyes from acid splashes.



To prevent risk of injury, do not allow children near the battery.



Be aware that the battery may emit explosive gases.



The battery contains acid which is extremely corrosive and toxic.



Consult the Owner's Handbook for information before handling the battery.

### BATTERY CARE



If battery electrolyte comes into contact with eyes, skin, or clothes, remove the affected clothing.

Flush the skin and eyes with large amounts of clean water. Seek medical assistance immediately.



If swallowed, battery electrolyte can be fatal. Seek medical assistance immediately.



The cell plugs and vent pipe must be in place at all times when the battery is connected to the vehicle. Make sure the vent pipe is clear of obstructions and not kinked. Failure to do so may cause a pressure build-up in the battery, potentially resulting in an explosion.



Do not expose the battery to an open flame or spark, as the battery produces explosive, flammable gas.



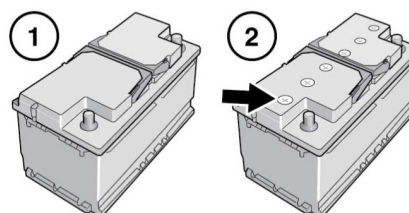
Never jump start (boost), charge, or try to start a vehicle with a frozen battery. Doing so can result in an explosion.



Remove all metal jewellery before working on, or near, the battery. Never allow metal objects or vehicle components to come into contact with the battery terminals. Metal objects can cause sparks or short circuits, potentially resulting in an explosion.



Do not allow the battery posts or terminals to come into contact with skin. The posts and terminals contain lead and lead compounds which are toxic. Always wash the hands thoroughly after handling the battery.



E151699





## Vehicle battery

The vehicle is fitted with either an Absorbed Glass Matt (AGM) battery (1) or a low maintenance battery (2).

**Note:** AGM batteries are sealed for life and require no maintenance.

- ⚠ Do not attempt to open or remove the top from an AGM battery.

In hot climates, more frequent checks of the low maintenance battery electrolyte level and condition are required. Contact a retailer/authorised repairer to have the battery checked.

### CONNECTING JUMP LEADS

- ⚠ Remove all metal jewellery before working on, or near, a battery or boost terminals. Never allow metal objects or vehicle components to come into contact with the battery or boost terminals. Metal objects can cause sparks or short circuits, potentially resulting in an explosion.

- ⚠ Do not allow the battery posts or terminals to come into contact with skin. Battery posts and terminals contain lead and lead compounds which are toxic. Always wash hands thoroughly after handling the battery.

- ⚠ Do not expose any battery to an open flame or spark, as the battery produces explosive, flammable gas.

- ⚠ Never jump start (boost), charge, or try to start a vehicle with a frozen battery. Doing so can result in an explosion.

- ⚠ Rotating parts of the engine can cause serious injury. Take extreme care when working near rotating parts of the engine.

- ⚠ Before attempting to start the vehicle, make sure that the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is applied, or suitably chock the wheels. Make sure that Park (P) or neutral is selected.

- ⚠ Suitable eye protection must be worn when working in the area of a battery.

- ⚠ During normal use, batteries emit explosive gas sufficient to cause severe explosions and capable of causing serious injury or death. Keep sparks and open flames away from the battery.

- ⚠ Make sure there is no physical contact between the donor and disabled vehicles, other than the jump leads.

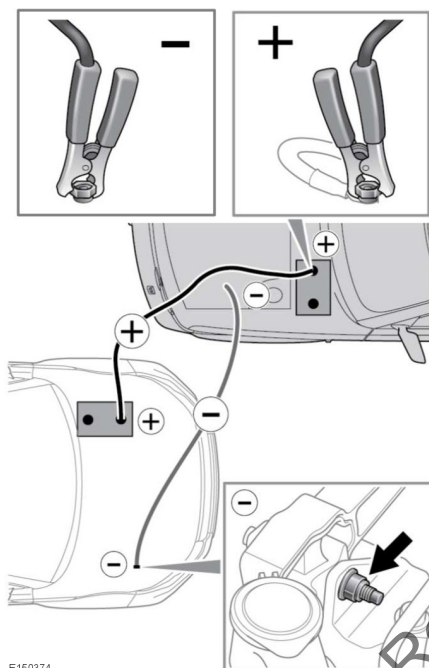
- ⚠ Make sure that any battery or starting aid is a 12V device.

- ⚠ Disconnect the jump leads before operating any electrical equipment.

**Note:** Before connecting the jump leads to the disabled vehicle's boost point terminals, make sure the donor vehicle's boost point connections are correct. Also make sure that all electrical equipment has been switched off.



## Vehicle battery



E150374

To connect the jump leads:

1. Connect the positive (red) jump lead to the recommended positive (+) boost terminal on the donor vehicle.

**Note:** Refer to the donor vehicle's Owner's Handbook for the recommended positive boost terminal.

2. Connect the other end of the positive (red) jump lead to the positive (+) battery terminal on the disabled vehicle.
3. Connect the negative (black) jump lead to the recommended negative (-) boost terminal on the donor vehicle.

**Note:** Refer to the donor vehicle's Owner's Handbook for the recommended negative boost terminal.

4. Connect the other end of the negative (black) jump lead to the earth point on the disabled vehicle, as illustrated.

**Note:** Check that all cables are clear of any moving components and that all four connections are secure.

5. Start the engine of the donor vehicle. Allow the engine to idle for a few minutes.

6. Start the engine of the disabled vehicle.

**Note:** Do not switch on any electrical circuits on the disabled vehicle until after the jump leads are removed.

7. Allow both vehicles to idle for 2 minutes.
8. Switch off the donor vehicle.
9. Disconnect the negative (black) jump lead from the previously disabled vehicle.
10. Disconnect the negative (black) jump lead from the donor vehicle.
11. Disconnect the positive (red) jump lead from the previously disabled vehicle.
12. Disconnect the positive (red) jump lead from the donor vehicle.

### CONNECTING A STARTING AID

To start the vehicle using a starting aid or a slave battery, carry out the following:






1. Connect the positive (red) jump lead to the positive (+) battery terminal of the discharged battery.
2. Connect the negative (black) jump lead to the vehicle's earth point.
3. Switch on the starting aid.
4. Start the engine and allow it to idle.
5. Disconnect the negative (black) jump lead from the vehicle's earth point.






## Vehicle battery

6. Switch off the starting aid.
7. Disconnect the positive (red) jump lead from the battery terminal of the vehicle.

### REMOVING THE VEHICLE BATTERY


-  Switch the ignition off before disconnecting battery terminals. Failure to do so may lead to an electrical shock, resulting in injury.
-  Always disconnect the negative terminal first and reconnect last. Failure to do so may lead to an electrical shock, resulting in injury.
-  Use caution when lifting the battery out of, or into, the vehicle. It is heavy, and may cause injury when lifting, or if dropped.
-  Do not tip the battery when lifting or moving it. Tilting the battery more than 45 degrees may damage the battery, and may cause the battery fluid to leak out. Battery fluid is highly corrosive and toxic, and may cause serious injury.
-  Battery disconnection, removal, and replacement should be carried out only by qualified personnel. Consult a retailer/authorised repairer. An unqualified person may cause damage to the vehicle.

### CHARGING THE VEHICLE BATTERY





-  Make sure to use the correct type and rating of charger. Using an unsuitable charger may damage the battery, and could cause the battery to explode. An explosion may lead to serious injury or death.
-  During charging the battery can produce a highly explosive and flammable gas. Always charge the battery in a well ventilated area away from any open flames, sparks or other ignition sources. Failure to do so may lead to an explosion, potentially resulting in serious injury or death.
-  Battery disconnection, removal, and replacement should be carried out only by qualified personnel. Consult a retailer/authorised repairer. An unqualified person may cause damage to the vehicle.

If the vehicle's battery should require charging, the battery must be removed from the vehicle. Consult a retailer/authorised repairer.

### REPLACING THE VEHICLE BATTERY

-  Battery disconnection, removal, and replacement should be carried out only by qualified personnel. Failure to do so may result in serious injury or death. Consult a retailer/authorised repairer.

## Vehicle battery


-  Only fit a battery of the same type and rating. Fitting an incorrect battery may result in a fire and injury, or damage to the electrical system. If in doubt when fitting a battery, seek qualified assistance.
-  When refitting the battery make sure that no metal objects, or vehicle components, come into contact with the battery terminals. Metal objects can cause sparks or short circuits, potentially resulting in an explosion.
-  Switch the ignition off before disconnecting the battery terminals. Failure to do so may lead to an electrical shock or an explosion, potentially resulting in serious injury or death.
-  Always disconnect the negative terminal first and reconnect last. Failure to do so may cause a pressure build-up in the battery, potentially resulting in an explosion. An explosion may cause serious injury or death.

If the vehicle's battery should require replacing, the battery must be removed from the vehicle. Consult a retailer/ authorised repairer.



Used batteries must be disposed of correctly, as batteries contain a number of harmful substances. Seek advice on disposal from a retailer/ authorised repairer or the local authority.


### EFFECTS OF DISCONNECTING

-  To avoid serious injury, use extreme caution when removing the jump leads as the engine will be running on the previously disabled vehicle. Components may move at high speed, carry high voltage, or may be hot.

Disconnecting the battery can affect a number of vehicle systems, especially if there is insufficient battery power before disconnection. For example, the alarm may trigger, depending on its state, when the battery is disconnected. If the alarm does sound, use the smart key to disarm the security system. The windows may need recalibrating to operate correctly.

**Note:** After reconnecting the battery, a number of systems may need to be reset.

### BATTERY MONITORING SYSTEM

-  Only start the engine if it is safe to do so. Failure to do so may lead to a collision, potentially resulting in serious injury or death.

The Intelligent Power System Management (IPSM) continuously monitors the condition of the main vehicle battery. If excessive battery discharge occurs, the system begins to shut down non-essential electrical systems, in order to protect the battery.

If the IPSM calculates that the battery's condition is not within the set parameters, there are two levels of action which can be taken. Both levels have an accompanying message on the touchscreen, and in the case of the low battery warning, in the instrument panel.



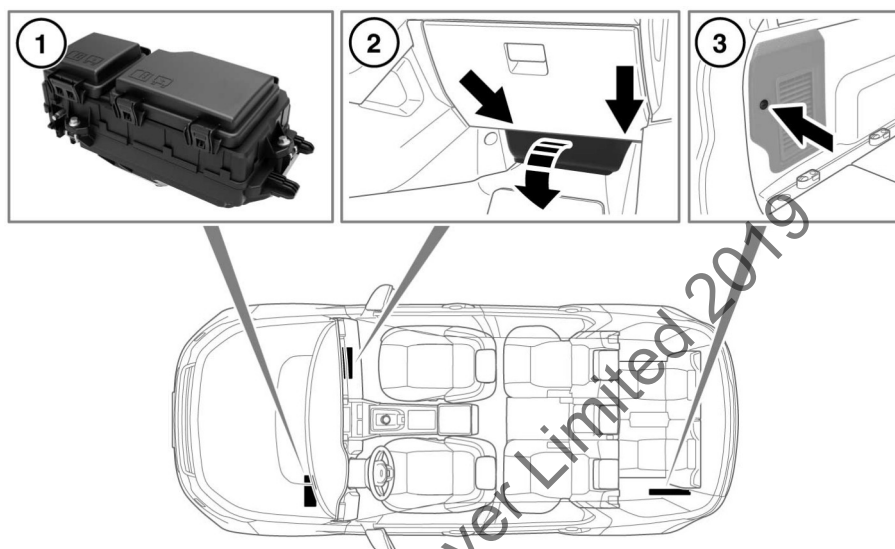
## Vehicle battery

- **Energy Management:** Is displayed in the instrument panel if the engine is not running and system features are causing excessive battery discharge. After 3 minutes, the IPSM begins shutting down the vehicle's systems. Normal system operation resumes when the engine is started.
- **Low battery - Please start engine:** Is displayed on the touchscreen and in the instrument panel, if the engine is not running. After 3 minutes, the IPSM begins shutting down the vehicle's systems. Normal system operation resumes when the engine is started.

**Note:** If the instrument panel displays **Low Battery - Please Start Engine**, drive the vehicle to allow the battery to recover to an acceptable level. Drive the vehicle for at least 30 minutes in temperatures above 0°C, or at least 60 minutes if the temperatures are below 0°C. If normal system operation does not resume when the engine is switched back off, the battery may not have been sufficiently charged. If safe to do so, restart the engine. If problems still exist, contact a retailer/authorised repairer.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2019

## FUSE BOX LOCATIONS



E245770

- ⚠ When a fuse box lid is removed, take care to protect the box from moisture. Refit the lid at the earliest opportunity. Failure to do so could potentially result in damage to the vehicle.

Access can be gained to the fuses as follows:

1. Engine compartment fuse box: Unlatch the tabs securing the fuse box cover. The fuse numbers and positions are displayed on the fuse box.  
**Note:** *The engine compartment fuse box has two covers as illustrated.*
2. Passenger compartment fuse box: Remove the lower access panel.

3. Loadspace fuse box: Rotate the latch and remove the panel from the left side of the loadspace. A label on the rear of the panel shows the circuits protected and the fuse locations.

## REPLACING A FUSE

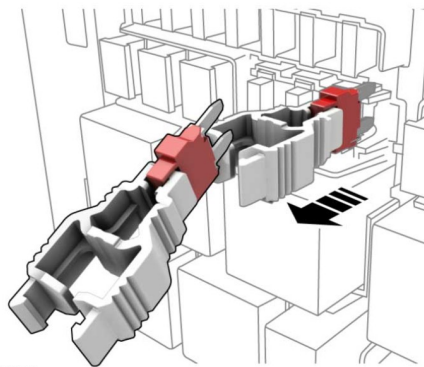
- ⚠ Always switch off the ignition system and the affected electrical circuit before replacing a fuse. Failure to do so could cause damage to the vehicle.
- ⚠ Fit approved replacement fuses of the same rating and type, or fuses of a matching specification. Using an incorrect fuse may result in damage to the vehicle's electrical system and can result in a fire.



## Fuses

ⓘ If the replacement fuse blows after fitment, the system should be checked by a retailer/authorised repairer. Further damage could be caused to the vehicle if ignored.

**Note:** Relays and fuses not detailed in the Owner's Handbook should only be replaced by qualified persons.



E199234

If an electrical system has stopped operating, the cause may be a blown fuse. The easiest way to check if a fuse has blown is to first remove it.

To check for a blown fuse:

1. Refer to the fuse box tables shown in this section to identify the correct fuse.
2. Gain access to the appropriate fuse box. See 361, FUSE BOX LOCATIONS.
3. Refer to the fuse box label to locate the correct fuse. Depending on the fuse box, the label is located on the underside of the lid.
4. Use the fuse removal tool to remove the fuse. See 361, FUSE BOX LOCATIONS.
5. Check for a break in the wire within the fuse. If the wire within the fuse is broken, the fuse has blown and needs replacing. If the wire is still intact, consult a retailer/authorised repairer.
6. Refit or replace the fuse, as appropriate. Make sure the fuse is pushed fully into its correct position.

### ENGINE COMPARTMENT FUSE BOX

Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse colour	Circuits protected
1	-	-	-
2	-	-	-
3	10	Red.	Engine management system.
4	-	-	-
5	15	Blue.	Engine management system.
6	15	Blue.	Engine management system.
7	10	Red.	Exterior sounder module.
8	10	Red.	Electrical power management.
9	15	Blue.	Intercooler water pump.

## Fuses

Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse colour	Circuits protected
10	15	Blue.	Battery.
11	5	Tan.	Steering wheel.
12	5	Tan.	Starter switch.
13	-	-	-
14	-	-	-
15	15	Blue.	Engine management system.
16	-	-	-
17	15	Blue.	Fuel system. Engine management system. Exhaust sensors.
18	-	-	-
19	40	Orange.	Engine control module.
20	40	Orange.	Brake control module. Battery.
21	-	-	-
22	40	Orange.	Blower motor.
23	10	Red.	Front fog lights.
24	10	Red.	Intercooler water pump. Engine cooling.
25	-	-	-
26	10	Red.	Fuel sensors.
27	10	Red.	Exhaust sensors.
28	25	Clear.	Fuel pump.
29	25	Clear.	Front screen washer.
30	-	-	-
31	25	Clear.	Rear screen washer.
32	-	-	-
33	10	Red.	Steering wheel rotary coupler.
34	25	Clear.	Right-side headlight.
35	25	Clear.	Left-side headlight.
36	5	Tan.	Spare.
37	15	Blue.	Horn.



## Fuses

Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse colour	Circuits protected
38	10	Red.	Spare.
39	20	Yellow.	4 Wheel Drive.
40	25	Clear.	Power wash pump.
41	-	-	-
42	15	Blue.	Spare.
43	-	-	-
44	40	Orange.	Right-side front heated screen.
45	40	Orange.	Engine management system.
46	-	-	-
47	40	Orange.	Left-side front heated screen.
48	40	Orange.	Starter motor.
49	30	Green.	Electric parking brake.
50	-	-	-
51	40	Orange.	Diesel motor.
52	30	Green.	Windscreen wiper motor.

### PASSENGER COMPARTMENT FUSE BOX

Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse colour	Circuits protected
1	30	Green.	Front passenger's seat.
2	30	Green.	Driver's seat.
3	25	Clear.	Passenger's door module.
4	25	Clear.	Driver's door module.
5	5	Tan.	Keyless entry.
6	-	-	-
7	-	-	-
8	-	-	-
9	5	Tan.	Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS).
10	5	Tan.	Battery back-up sounder.



## Fuses

Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse colour	Circuits protected
11	5	Tan.	Instrument panel.
12	20	Yellow.	Fuel system.
13	5	Tan.	Diagnostic socket.
14	5	Tan.	Vehicle immobiliser.
15	5	Tan.	Steering wheel.
16	20	Yellow.	Keyless entry.
17	5	Tan.	Brake pedal switch.
18	20	Yellow.	Front blind.
19	20	Yellow.	Front passenger's heated or climate seat.
20	5	Tan.	Mirror. Camera.
21	5	Tan.	Blind spot monitor.
22	5	Tan.	Camera.
23	-	-	-
24	-	-	-
25	10	Red.	Instrument panel.
26	20	Yellow.	Cigar lighter.
27	5	Tan.	Parking Aid.
28	10	Red.	Head-Up Display (HUD) and cooling fan.
29	5	Tan.	Adaptive cruise control.
30	20	Yellow.	Driver's heated or climate seat control.
31	5	Tan.	Air Ioniser. Braking system.
32	5	Tan.	Occupant monitoring. Powered tailgate.
33	10	Red.	Rear portable audio amplifier.
34	15	Blue.	Infotainment system.
35	15	Blue.	Infotainment system.
36	10	Red.	Audio video output.
37	15	Blue.	Seat switches and memory.
38	20	Yellow.	Cubby box auxiliary power socket.
39	5	Tan.	Electrochromic mirror.



## Fuses

Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse colour	Circuits protected
40	-	-	-
41	10	Red.	Heated steering wheel.
42	5	Tan.	Steering wheel.
43	20	Yellow.	Heating and ventilation system.
44	-	-	-
45	40	Orange.	Body control module.
46	2	Grey.	Singapore road pricing electronic toll (RHD vehicles only).
47	40	Orange.	Body control module.
48	-	-	-
49	40	Orange.	Infotainment system amplifier.
50	20	Yellow.	Amplifier module.

## LOADSPACE FUSE BOX

Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse colour	Circuits protected
1	15	Blue.	Rear wiper.
2	20	Yellow.	Deployable sidesteps.
3	5	Tan.	Telematics.
4	5	Tan.	Fuel burning heater. (FBH)
5	25	Clear.	Fuel pump.
6	30	Green.	Powered tailgate.
7	5	Tan.	Spare.
8	-	-	-
9	5	Tan.	Spare.
10	-	-	-
11	25	Clear.	Right-side rear door module.
12	20	Yellow.	Trailer.
13	5	Tan.	4 Wheel Drive.

## Fuses

Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse colour	Circuits protected
14	25	Clear.	Left-side rear door module.
15	-	-	-
16	-	-	-
17	-	-	-
18	-	-	-
19	30	Green.	Driveline.
20	-	-	-
21	20	Yellow.	Accessory socket.
22	5	Tan.	Spare.
23	20	Yellow.	Spare.
24	5	Tan.	Wade sensing.
25	5	Tan.	Battery sensor
26	20	Yellow.	Rear heated seat module.
27	-	-	-
28	5	Tan.	Fuel pump.
29	10	Red.	Wireless Charger.
30	-	-	-
31	-	-	-
32	-	-	-
33	20	Yellow.	Trailer socket.
34	10	Red.	Chassis control module.
35	30	Green.	Driveline.
36	20	Yellow.	Fuel pump.
37	-	-	-
38	5	Tan.	Spare.
39	20	Yellow.	Rear control spare.
40	10	Red.	USB charger.
41	20	Yellow.	Right-side heated rear seat.
42	20	Yellow.	Rear console accessory socket.

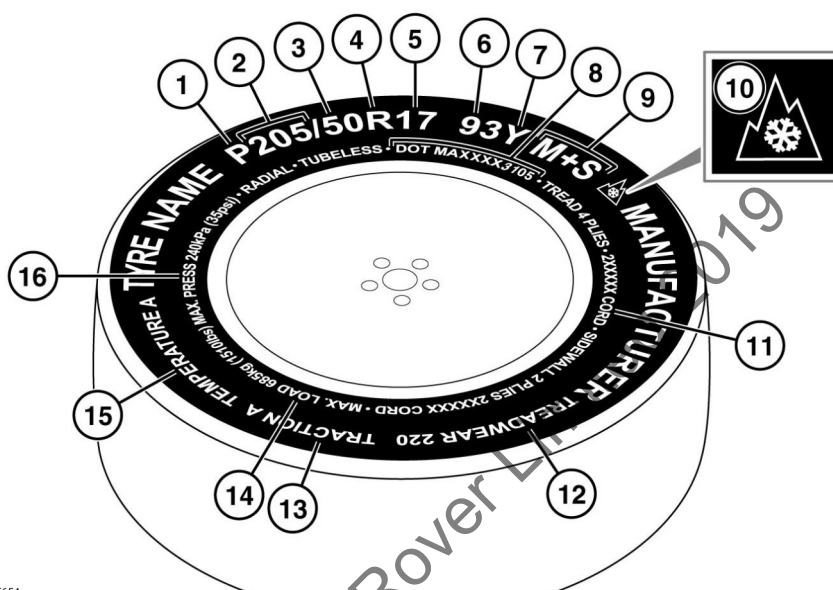


## Fuses

Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse colour	Circuits protected
43	-	-	-
44	30	Green.	Heated rear screen.
45	-	-	-
46	-	-	-
47	30	Green.	Driveline.
48	30	Green.	Deployable Tow Bar.
49	-	-	-
50	25	Clear.	Heater.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2019

## TYRE MARKINGS



E245654

1. **P** indicates that the tyre is for passenger vehicle use. The index is not always shown.
2. The width of the tyre from sidewall edge to sidewall edge, given in mm.
3. The aspect ratio, also known as the profile, gives the sidewall height as a percentage of the tread width. For example, if the tread width is 205 mm and the aspect ratio is 50, the sidewall height is 102 mm.
4. **R** indicates that the tyre is of radial ply construction.
5. The diameter of the wheel rim, given in inches.
6. The load index for the tyre. The index is not always shown.



The load index specifies the maximum load the tyre can carry at the speed indicated by the tyre's speed rating. The load index and speed rating on all replacement tyres must be, at least, the same specification as the original equipment tyres supplied with the vehicle, except for approved winter tyres, off-road tyres, and professional off-road tyres. Using incorrect replacement tyres could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death. If in doubt, consult a retailer/authorised repairer. See 376, USING WINTER TYRES.



## Tyres

- The speed rating denotes the maximum speed at which the tyre may be used for extended periods. See **370, SPEED RATING**.
- Tyre manufacturing standard information, which can be used for tyre recalls and other checking processes. Most of this information relates to the manufacturer, place of manufacture, etc. The last four numbers are the date of manufacture. For example, if the number is 3106, the tyre was made in the 31st week of 2006.
- M+S** or **M/S** indicates that the tyre has been designed with some capability for mud and snow.
- The winter tyres symbol identifies dedicated winter tyres. See **376, USING WINTER TYRES**.
- The number of plies in both the tread area and the sidewall area: Indicates how many layers of rubber-coated material make up the structure of the tyre. Information is also provided on the type of materials used.
- Wear rate indicator: A tyre rated at 400, e.g., lasts longer than a tyre rated at 200.
- The traction rating grades a tyre's performance when stopping on a wet road surface. The higher the grade, the better the braking performance. The grades, from highest to lowest are: **AA, A, B, and C**.

**Note:** The traction grade assigned to the tyre is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

- The maximum load which can be carried by the tyre.
- Heat resistance grading: The tyre's resistance to heat is grade **A, B, or C**, with **A** indicating the greatest resistance to heat. The grading is provided for a correctly inflated tyre which is being used within its speed and loading limits.
- The maximum inflation pressure for the tyre. The maximum inflation pressure should not be used for normal driving. See **375, AVOIDING FLAT SPOTS**.






**Note:** Approved tyres are generally identified by a brand mark **J, LR, or J LR**. Brand markings are specifically excluded for winter and professional off-road tyres.

### SPEED RATING

Rating	Speed km/h (mph)
Q	160 (99)
R	170 (106)
S	180 (112)
T	190 (118)
U	200 (124)
H	210 (130)
V	240 (149)
W	270 (168)
Y	300 (186)

### TYRE CARE

Make sure the following warnings have been read and fully understood before driving the vehicle. Failure to do so may result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.





-  Do not drive the vehicle if a tyre is damaged, excessively worn, or incorrectly inflated. A tyre in such a condition may catastrophically fail and cause an accident.
-  Avoid contaminating the tyres with vehicle fluids, as they may damage the tyre and cause tyre failure, which can result in an accident.
-  Avoid spinning the wheels. The forces released can damage the structure of the tyre and cause it to fail.
-  If wheel spin is unavoidable due to a loss of traction, e.g., in deep snow, do not exceed the 50 km/h (30 mph) point on the speedometer. Do not allow anyone to stand near or directly behind a tyre that might spin.
-  Do not exceed the maximum pressure stated on the sidewall of the tyre.

**Note:** Tyre condition should be checked after the vehicle has been used off-road. As soon as the vehicle returns to a normal, hard road surface, stop and check for damage to the tyres.

All of the vehicle's tyres, including the spare, should be checked regularly for damage, wear, and distortion. If in any doubt about the condition of a tyre, have it checked immediately by a tyre repair centre or a retailer/authorised repairer.

## TYRE PRESSURES

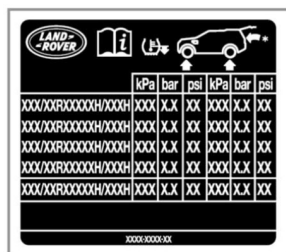
Make sure the following warnings have been read and fully understood before driving the vehicle. Failure to do so may result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

-  All tyre pressures, including the spare, should be checked regularly using an accurate tyre pressure gauge, when the tyres are cold. Failure to maintain the tyre pressures properly may increase the risk of tyre failure, resulting in the loss of vehicle control and potential personal injury.
-  Pressure checks should be carried out only when the tyres are cold and the vehicle has been stationary for more than 3 hours. A hot tyre at, or below, the recommended cold inflation pressure is dangerously under-inflated.
-  Never drive the vehicle if the tyre pressures are incorrect. Under-inflation causes excessive flexing and uneven tyre wear. This can lead to sudden tyre failure. Over-inflation causes harsh ride, uneven tyre wear, and poor handling.
-  Do not drive the vehicle with a leaking tyre. Even if the tyre appears to be inflated, it could be dangerously under-inflated and will continue to deflate. Replace the tyre or contact an approved repairer.

## Tyres

**⚠ Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tyre tread life and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability. Try to drive at reduced speed.**

**⚠ If the vehicle has been parked in strong sunlight, or used in high ambient temperatures, do not reduce the tyre pressures. Move the vehicle into the shade and allow the tyres to cool before rechecking the pressures.**



E166149

Information on the vehicle's tyre pressures may be found at the following locations:

1. Tyre placard: Recommended cold inflation pressures for all loading conditions are listed on the label located at the base of the driver's door opening.
2. Instrument panel menu: The instrument panel can display recommended cold inflation pressures. See **381, RECOMMENDED TYRE PRESSURE LOOK-UP.**

**Note:** The vehicle's actual tyre pressures and recommended inflation pressures for current ambient conditions may also be shown. See **381, TYRE PRESSURE CHECK.**

3. Tyre pressure table: See below.

Check the tyres, including the spare, for condition and pressure on a weekly basis and before long journeys.

If the tyre pressures are checked while the vehicle is inside a covered area, and subsequently driven in lower outdoor temperatures, tyre under-inflation could occur.

A slight pressure loss occurs naturally with time. If this exceeds 0.14 bar (2 psi, 14 kPa) per week, have the cause investigated and rectified by qualified personnel.

If it is necessary to check the tyre pressures when the tyres are warm, expect the pressures to have increased by up to 0.3 - 0.4 bar (4 - 6 psi, 30 - 40 kPa). Do not reduce the tyre pressures to the cold inflation pressure under these circumstances. Allow the tyres to cool fully before adjusting the pressures.

For vehicles with a Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) it is possible to adjust the pressure of a warm tyre, providing the warm inflation pressures are used. See **381, TYRE PRESSURE CHECK.**

**Note:** Not all vehicles have a Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) fitted.

The following procedure should be used to check and adjust the tyre pressures:



## Tyres

- ⚠ The loading of the vehicle should always be considered when checking and adjusting the tyre pressures. Failure to do so may lead to loss of driving control, potentially causing serious injury or death.**
- ⓘ** To avoid damaging the valves, do not apply excessive force or sideways force on the gauge and/or inflator.
- ⓘ** To avoid damage to the TPMS valves, it is recommended not to use rigid tyre inflation wands. Rigid tyre inflation wands increase the risk of excess leverage and sideways pressure on the valve.
- Remove the tyre's valve cap.
  - Firmly attach a tyre pressure gauge and/or inflator to the valve.
  - Read the tyre pressure from the gauge and add air, if required.
  - If air is added to the tyre, remove the gauge and re-attach it before reading the pressure. Failure to do so may result in an inaccurate reading.
  - If the tyre pressure is too high, remove the gauge and press the centre of the valve to allow air out of the tyre. Refit the gauge to the valve and check the pressure.
  - Repeat the process, adding or removing air as required, until the correct tyre pressure is reached.
  - Refit the valve cap.
- Note:** The full size spare tyre's pressure should always be maintained at the maximum pressure for heavy/full load conditions, as stated on the tyre placard.

Tyre pressures - 5 seat vehicles				
Tyre size	Normal (light) load setting - less than 4 occupants		Heavy load setting - 4 or more occupants	
	Front bar (psi, kPa)	Rear bar (psi, kPa)	Front bar (psi, kPa)	Rear bar (psi, kPa)
225/65R17 (106V)	2.4 (35, 240)	2.2 (32, 220)	2.6 (38, 260)	3.2 (46, 320)
235/65R17 (108V)	2.4 (35, 240)	2.2 (32, 220)	2.6 (38, 260)	3.2 (46, 320)
235/60R18 (107V)	2.4 (35, 240)	2.2 (32, 220)	2.6 (38, 260)	3.2 (46, 320)
235/55R19 (105W)	2.5 (37, 250)	2.3 (33, 230)	2.7 (40, 270)	3.3 (48, 330)
235/50R20 (104Y)	2.5 (37, 250)	2.4 (35, 240)	2.7 (40, 270)	3.4 (50, 340)
235/50R20 (104W)	2.5 (37, 250)	2.4 (35, 240)	2.7 (40, 270)	3.4 (50, 340)
245/45R21 (104Y)	2.5 (37, 250)	2.3 (33, 230)	2.7 (40, 270)	3.4 (50, 340)
245/45R21 (104W)	2.5 (37, 250)	2.3 (33, 230)	2.7 (40, 270)	3.4 (50, 340)
T155/85R18 (115M)	4.2 (60, 420)	4.2 (60, 420)	4.2 (60, 420)	4.2 (60, 420)



## Tyres


Tyre pressures - 7 seat vehicles				
Tyre size	Normal (light) load setting - less than 4 occupants		Heavy load setting - 4 or more occupants	
	Front bar (psi, kPa)	Rear bar (psi, kPa)	Front bar (psi, kPa)	Rear bar (psi, kPa)
225/65R17 (106V)	2.4 (35, 240)	2.2 (32, 220)	2.6 (38, 260)	3.2 (46, 320)
235/65R17 (108V)	2.4 (35, 240)	2.2 (32, 220)	2.6 (38, 260)	3.2 (46, 320)
235/60R18 (107V)	2.4 (35, 240)	2.2 (32, 220)	2.6 (38, 260)	3.2 (46, 320)
235/55R19 (105W)	2.5 (37, 250)	2.3 (33, 230)	2.7 (40, 270)	3.3 (48, 330)
235/50R20 (104Y)	2.5 (37, 250)	2.4 (35, 240)	2.7 (40, 270)	3.4 (50, 340)
235/50R20 (104W)	2.5 (37, 250)	2.4 (35, 240)	2.7 (40, 270)	3.4 (50, 340)
T155/85R18 (115M)	4.2 (60, 420)	4.2 (60, 420)	4.2 (60, 420)	4.2 (60, 420)

**Note:** Never exceed the total weight of the occupants and luggage while using the normal (light) load setting.

For the latest available information on the tyre pressures visit:

[www.ownerinfo.landrover.com](http://www.ownerinfo.landrover.com).

### TYRE VALVES

 Do not twist or bend the tyre valves when attaching a pressure hose or gauge as it may result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.


Keep the tyre valve caps screwed down firmly to prevent water or dirt from entering the valve. Check the valves for leaks when checking the tyre pressures.


Do not use metal valve caps as these can corrode onto the valve threads and be difficult or impossible to remove.

### REPLACEMENT TYRES

Make sure to read and fully understand the following warnings and cautions.

Failure to comply with the safety instructions could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

 Always fit replacement tyres of the same type and, wherever possible, of the same make and tread pattern. Failure to fit the same type, make, and tread pattern may reduce vehicle stability.

 The load and speed index ratings on all replacement tyres must be, at least, the same specification as the original equipment. If in doubt, consult a retailer/ authorised repairer.

**⚠** If the use of tyres not recommended by the vehicle manufacturer is unavoidable, make sure to read and fully comply with the tyre manufacturer's instructions. Failure to do so may lead to tyre failure due to incorrect fitting or use.

**⚠** If lower speed-rated specialist tyres are fitted, e.g., winter tyres, off-road, or professional off-road tyres, the vehicle must be driven within the speed limitations of the tyres. In markets that require a tyre's maximum speed label to be fitted, the label should be placed within the driver's field of vision. Where required, maximum speed labels can be obtained from the tyre retailer. Consult a retailer/ authorised repairer for further information.

**ⓘ** Tyre removal and fitting should only be carried out by a retailer/ authorised repairer.

**ⓘ** Make sure that the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) sensor is not damaged during a tyre change.

When the tread has worn down to approximately 2 mm, wear indicators start to appear at the surface of the tread pattern. Wear indicators produce a continuous band of rubber across the tread, as a visual reminder.

Tyres should be replaced in sets of four. If this is not possible, replace the tyres in pairs, both front or both rear. When the tyres are replaced, make sure to have the wheels re-balanced and the alignment checked.

Use the correct tyre specification and pressures. Alternatively, contact a retailer/ authorised repairer for advice. See **371, TYRE PRESSURES**.

### PRESSURE COMPENSATION FOR TEMPERATURE CHANGES

Daily ambient temperature variations may cause intermittent, minor tyre pressure changes, which is normal and should not indicate a tyre failure.

To mitigate this condition, check and adjust the tyre pressures before using vehicle.

**Note:** Make sure that the correct tyre pressures are maintained when moving to areas of differing ambient temperature.

### AVOIDING FLAT SPOTS

In areas of extended high ambient temperature, vehicle tyres can be affected by a softening of the tyre's sidewall. If the vehicle is stationary for long periods, the tyre deforms at the point where the standing surface meets the tyre.

The tyre deformation described is known as a flat spot and is normal tyre behaviour.

When the vehicle is subsequently driven, a vibration may be experienced from the flat spot. The condition steadily improves with extra mileage.

In order to minimise flat spotting, increase the tyre pressures to the maximum, as stated on the tyre's sidewall. The tyres must be returned to the specified running pressures before driving. See **371, TYRE PRESSURES** and **369, TYRE MARKINGS**.



## Tyres

### TYRE DEGRADATION

Tyres degrade over time, due to the effects of ultraviolet light, extreme temperatures, high loads, and environmental conditions. It is recommended that all tyres, including the spare tyre, are replaced at least every 6 years from the date of manufacture. However, the tyres may require replacement more frequently.

### USING WINTER TYRES

**Note:** **M+S** (*mud and snow*) tyres have a recognised level of winter performance, however, the **M+S** marking does not necessarily indicate that the tyre is a dedicated winter tyre.

The **M+S** marking on the sidewall of an all-season tyre indicates that it is designed for use all year round, including in cold temperatures, snow, and ice. The performance of all-season tyres is generally inferior to a dedicated winter tyre in conditions specific to winter.

In many countries, legislation exists that requires the use of winter tyres during specified periods of the year.

**Note:** A dedicated winter tyre often has a lower speed rating than the original equipment tyre. Consequently, the vehicle must be driven within the speed limitation of the tyre. Consult a retailer/authorised repairer for further information. In markets that require a tyre's maximum speed label to be fitted, the tyre's maximum speed label should be placed within the driver's field of vision. Where required, tyre maximum speed labels can be obtained from the tyre retailer.



The winter tyres symbol identifies dedicated winter tyres, which can be fitted if optimum winter traction is required, or the vehicle is to be used in more extreme winter conditions.

The tyre pressures indicated on the tyre information label are for use in all conditions on the original equipment tyres. If a reduced speed-rating tyre is fitted, the recommended pressures are only suitable up to the maximum speed indicated by the tyre speed rating and associated warning sticker for normal loading. Vehicle speed should be restricted to below 160 km/h (100 mph) when heavily loaded.

Winter tyres must be fitted to all four wheels.

For optimum traction, the tyres should be run-in for at least 160 kilometres on dry roads, before driving on snow or ice.

Use of dedicated winter tyres may require a change of wheel size, depending on the original choice of wheel. All four wheels must be changed.

If fitted with standard rubber valves, the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) warning lamp flashes for 75 seconds and then remains illuminated. The instrument panel also displays **TYRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM FAULT**.

When the original wheels and tyres are refitted, the vehicle needs to travel a short distance to reset the TPMS and extinguish the warning lamp.

## Tyres

Approved winter tyres				
Wheel size	Tyre size	Brand	Pattern	Type
17 in	225/65R17 106H	Pirelli	Scorpion Winter	Alpine
	225/65R17 106T	Nokian	Hakkapeliitta 9 SUV	Studded
	225/65R17 106R	Nokian	Hakkapeliitta R3 SUV	Studless
	235/65R17 108H/V	Continental	WinterContact TS850P SUV	Alpine
	235/65R17 108T	Nokian	Hakkapeliitta 9 SUV	Studded
	235/65R17 108T	Pirelli	Winter Ice Zero	Studded
	235/65R17 108T	Michelin	Latitude X-Ice 2	Studless
	235/65R17 108S	Bridgestone	Blizzak DM-V2	Studless
	235/65R17 108R	Nokian	Hakkapeliitta R3 SUV	Studless
18 in	235/60R18 107H	Pirelli	Scorpion Winter	Alpine
	235/60R18 107H	Pirelli	Winter Ice Zero	Studded
	235/60R18 107T	Goodyear	UltraGrip Ice Arctic	Studded
	235/60R18 107T	Nokian	Hakkapeliitta 9 SUV	Studded
	235/60R18 107T	Michelin	Latitude X-Ice 2	Studless
	235/60R18 107S	Bridgestone	Blizzak DM-V2	Studless
	235/60R18 107R	Nokian	Hakkapeliitta R3 SUV	Studless



## Tyres


Approved winter tyres				
Wheel size	Tyre size	Brand	Pattern	Type
19 in	235/55R19 105H	Pirelli	Scorpion Winter	Alpine
	235/55R19 105H/V	Continental	WinterContact TS850P SUV	Alpine
	235/55R19 105H	Pirelli	Winter Ice Zero	Studded
	235/55R19 105T	Nokian	Hakkapeliitta 9 SUV	Studded
	235/55R19 101T/105T	Bridgestone	Blizzak DM-V2	Studless
	235/55R19 105R	Nokian	Hakkapeliitta R8 SUV	Studless
20 in	245/45R20 103V	Pirelli	Scorpion Winter	Alpine


**Note:** Studded tyres are market dependent. If in doubt, or for further information, contact a retailer/authorised repairer. Alternatively, visit: [www.ownerinfo.landrover.com](http://www.ownerinfo.landrover.com).

**Note:** For information about the latest approved winter tyres, contact a retailer/authorised repairer. Alternatively, visit: [www.ownerinfo.landrover.com](http://www.ownerinfo.landrover.com).

### USING SNOW CHAINS

Make sure to read and fully understand the following warnings. Failure to comply with the safety instructions could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

 **Only use traction devices in heavy snow conditions, on compacted snow.**

 **Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) must be switched off when using traction devices.**



**Never exceed 50 km/h (30 mph) when traction devices are fitted.**



**Never fit traction devices to a temporary-use spare wheel.**

Traction devices approved by the vehicle manufacturer may be used to improve traction in heavy snow conditions, on compacted snow.

Traction devices should not be used in off-road conditions where there is no compacted snow.

If it becomes necessary to fit traction devices, the following points must be observed:

- Only vehicle manufacturer approved traction devices should be used on the vehicle. Only vehicle manufacturer approved traction devices have been tested to make sure the devices do not cause damage to the vehicle. Contact a retailer/authorised repairer for information.

- The wheels and tyres fitted to the vehicle must conform to the specifications of the vehicle manufacturer's original equipment. Tyres and wheels, matching with the original equipment's specification, help to enhance the performance of the traction devices. See **369, TYRE MARKINGS**.
- Only half chain traction devices can be fitted to the vehicles fitted with 17, 18, 19, and 20 in diameter wheels.
- Do not fit a traction device to a temporary-use spare wheel.
- Always read, understand, and follow the traction device manufacturer's instructions. Pay particular attention to the maximum speed and fitting instructions.
- Fit traction devices in pairs on the front axle only.
- Avoid tyre and/or vehicle damage, by removing the traction devices as soon as the conditions allow.

Contact a retailer/authorised repairer for details and availability of approved snow chains.

**Note:** When using snow chains, select grass gravel snow driving mode and switch DSC off. See **192, GRASS GRAVEL SNOW** and **152, SWITCHING DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) OFF**.


#### **TYRE DECLARATION (India only)**


All imported tyres meet the requirements of Bureau of India Standards (BIS) and comply with the requirements under Central Motor Vehicle Rules (CMVR) 1989. The tyres are the same as those tyres supplied as original equipment for Land Rover models which are fully Type Approved for the Indian market.





## Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

### TYRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM (TPMS)

 The Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) provides a low pressure warning and does not re-inflate the tyres. Tyre pressures should be checked regularly, using an accurate pressure gauge when the tyres are cold. Failure to do so could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

 The TPMS cannot register damage to a tyre. Regularly check the condition of the tyres, especially if the vehicle is driven off-road. Failure to do so could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

 When inflating tyres, care should be taken to avoid bending or damaging the TPMS valves. Always make sure that the inflation head is correctly aligned to the valve stem.

 To avoid damage to the TPMS valves, it is recommended not to use rigid tyre inflation wands. Using rigid inflation wands increases the risk of excess leverage and sideways pressure on the valve.

**Note:** Non-approved accessories may interfere with the TPMS. If this occurs, the instrument panel displays the message **Tyre pressure monitoring system fault**.

**Note:** Different types of tyres may affect the performance of the TPMS. Always replace the tyres in accordance with recommendations.

The TPMS constantly monitors the tyre pressure in each road wheel.

**Note:** A full size spare wheel is not monitored by the TPMS until it is fitted to the vehicle as a road wheel. See **382, FULL SIZE SPARE WHEEL AND TYRE CHANGE**.

**Note:** The TPMS does not monitor the pressure of a temporary-use spare wheel. See **383, TEMPORARY-USE SPARE WHEEL AND TYRE CHANGE**.

**Note:** As the spare wheel tyre pressure is not monitored by the TPMS, regular checks of the spare wheel tyre pressure are required.

1



2



E132513

Wheels fitted with a TPMS can be visually identified by the external metal lock nut and valve (1). All Jaguar Land Rover non-TPMS wheels have a rubber valve fitted (2).

**Note:** A special service kit is required when changing a tyre fitted with a TPMS valve.



## Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

The tyre pressures should be checked regularly when the tyres are cold, and adjusted as necessary. The presence of a TPMS does not remove the need to check the tyre pressures as part of a vehicle safety check.

The tyre pressure warning lamp illuminates when one or more of the tyres are significantly under-inflated. Stop and check the tyres as soon as possible. Inflate the tyres to the recommended pressure for the vehicle's loading condition. See **81, TYRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM (TPMS) (YELLOW)** and **371, TYRE PRESSURES**.

### TYRE PRESSURE CHECK

The vehicle's current tyre pressures can be displayed via the **Vehicle info** and **Tyre Pressures** menus. See **69, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

When selected, the instrument panel displays two tyre pressure values for each tyre. One value shows the actual tyre pressure, the other (in brackets) is the recommended inflation pressure.

The recommended inflation pressures change based on ambient conditions and as air temperature within the tyres fluctuates during use.

**Note:** *The recommended inflation pressures do not necessarily align with the vehicle's pressure label due to warming of the tyres through driving and changes in ambient conditions.*

**Note:** *Always inflate the tyres to the recommended inflation pressures illustrated in the **Tyre Pressures** menu. When inflating cold tyres, the placard pressure label may be used. See **371, TYRE PRESSURES**.*

**Note:** *If any of the wheels or tyres have been removed, the displayed tyre pressures may not be valid. Drive the vehicle for at least 15 minutes in order to re-calibrate the system.*

**Note:** *The tyre pressure units can be configured to display as either bar, psi, or kPa via the **Display** instrument panel menu.*

### RECOMMENDED TYRE PRESSURE LOOK-UP

**Tyre pressure adjustment while the tyres are cold**

The instrument panel can be used to display the recommended cold tyre pressures for the vehicle. The tyre pressure look-up table can be accessed via the **Vehicle info**, **Tyre information** and **Recommended pressures** menus. See **69, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

A number of different values may be displayed to reflect different driving conditions, e.g., high speed driving or for a heavily laden vehicle. The display of the different values is dependent on vehicle specification.

**Tyre pressure adjustment while the tyres are warm**

If it is necessary to adjust pressures when the tyres are warm, refer to the **Tyre Pressures** menu. See **381, TYRE PRESSURE CHECK**.

**Note:** *The recommended inflation pressures do not necessarily align with the placard pressure label due to the warming of the tyres through driving. The placard pressure label is located at the base of the driver's door opening.*



## Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

**Note:** Always inflate the tyres to the recommended inflation pressure illustrated in the **Vehicle info** display. When inflating cold tyres, the placard pressure label may be used. See **371, TYRE PRESSURES**.

**Note:** The tyre pressure units can be configured to display as either bar, psi, or kPa via the **Display** instrument panel menu.

### VEHICLE LOADING

The Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) can be adjusted for **Light** load and **Heavy** load. The TPMS can be adjusted via the **Vehicle info**, **Tyre information**, and **TPM load setting** instrument panel menus. See **69, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

**Note:** The vehicle's ignition must be switched on and the vehicle stationary.

**Note:** When the vehicle's ignition is switched on, the instrument panel displays a message to confirm that the light load setting is selected. No message is displayed if any other load setting is selected.

If the tyre pressures are adjusted to the **Light** load setting, the TPMS should be adjusted to suit the vehicle's load and associated recommended tyre pressures.

**Note:** The TPMS setting must correspond with the current tyre load.

The **Light** load setting should be used during normal use of the vehicle, e.g., up to four occupants.

The **Heavy** load setting should be used when the vehicle's load exceeds normal use, and up to the Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW), e.g., more than four occupants.

**Note:** Make sure that the tyre pressures are correct for the vehicle's current load. See **371, TYRE PRESSURES**.

The instrument panel menus, **Vehicle info** and **Tyre pressures**, can be used to check the vehicle's current tyre pressures.

### FULL SIZE SPARE WHEEL AND TYRE CHANGE

The TPMS automatically recognises any changes in wheel positions. The vehicle must be stationary for 15 minutes during the wheel and tyre change, to make sure that the system can detect the change. After driving above 25 km/h (16 mph), any deflation warning should clear within approximately 5 minutes.

**Note:** Re-inflate the tyre, within close proximity of the vehicle, following repairs to a full size spare wheel fitted with tyre pressure monitoring. The Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) warning lamp may illuminate if tyre inflation is not carried out within close proximity of the vehicle. Should this occur, re-inflate the tyre within 5 m of the vehicle. See **81, TYRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM (TPMS) (YELLOW)** and **371, TYRE PRESSURES**.

**Note:** The full size spare tyre's pressure should always be maintained at the maximum pressure for heavy load conditions, as stated on the tyre placard label. See **371, TYRE PRESSURES**.

## Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

### TEMPORARY-USE SPARE WHEEL AND TYRE CHANGE

If the temporary-use spare wheel is fitted, the system automatically recognises the change in wheel positions. After approximately 10 minutes of driving above 25 km/h (16 mph), the instrument panel displays the **Front (rear) right (left) tyre pressure not monitored** message, and the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) warning lamp illuminates. **81, TYRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM (TPMS) (YELLOW)**.

The warning lamp first flashes and then illuminates continuously. Extended use of the temporary-use spare wheel triggers the message **Tyre pressure monitoring system fault**.

The TPMS display sequence activates at every ignition cycle, until the temporary spare wheel is replaced by a full-size road wheel with a TPMS sensor fitted.

**Note:** *If in use, always replace the temporary spare wheel before having a TPMS fault investigated.*









© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2019








## Tyre repair system


### TYRE REPAIR SYSTEM SAFETY

Make sure the following warnings have been read and fully understood before using the tyre repair system. Failure to follow the guidance given could affect vehicle safety, leading to serious injury or death.

-  Some tyre damage may only be partially sealed, or may not seal at all, depending on the amount and type of damage. Any loss of tyre pressure can seriously affect vehicle safety.
-  Do not use the tyre repair system if the tyre has been damaged by driving while under-inflated.
-  Check the tyre's sidewall before inflating the tyre. If any cracks, damage, or deformities are apparent, do not inflate the tyre.
-  Watch the tyre's sidewall during inflation. If any cracks, bumps, or similar damage or deformities appear, switch off the compressor and deflate the tyre. Do not continue to use the tyre.
-  Do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph) when a repaired tyre is fitted to the vehicle.
-  The maximum distance that should be driven when a repaired tyre is fitted is 200 km.
-  When a repaired tyre is fitted, drive with caution. Avoid sudden braking or steering manoeuvres.
-  Only use the tyre repair system for the vehicle with which it was supplied.

-  Do not use the tyre repair system for any other purpose than tyre repair.
-  Only use the tyre repair system within the -30°C to +70°C temperature range.
-  Always keep children and animals at a safe distance from the tyre repair system when in use.
-  Always monitor the tyre repair system at a safe distance from the compressor. Do not stand directly beside the compressor when it is operating.
-  Never leave the tyre repair system unattended when in use.

### TYRE REPAIR SYSTEM

-  Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. 384, TYRE REPAIR SYSTEM SAFETY.

**Note:** If in any doubt regarding the ability to carry out the instructions or to comply with the warnings, seek assistance.

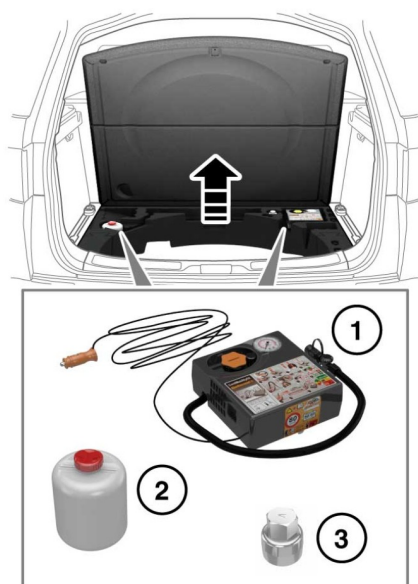
See 434, ROADSIDE ASSISTANCE.

**Note:** Vehicles supplied with a tyre repair system may not have a jack and wheel brace fitted as standard equipment.

A tyre repair system is supplied for vehicles without a spare wheel. The tyre repair system is stored under the loadspace floor panel. See 392, TOOL KIT.

Make sure to read the complete tyre repair system section of this handbook before attempting to repair a tyre.

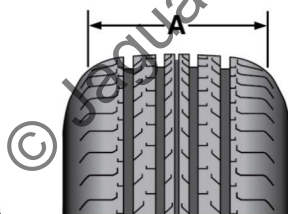
## Tyre repair system



E223638

1. Compressor.
2. Sealant bottle.
3. Locking wheel nut adaptor.

The tyre repair system can be used to repair one punctured tyre.



E149963

The tyre repair system seals most punctures with a maximum diameter of 6 mm, if the puncture is within the tread area (A).

- ⚠ **Only use the tyre repair system to seal damage located within the tyre tread area (A). Carrying out tyre repairs outside of the tyre tread area (A) could cause the tyre to fail, leading to serious injury or death.**

**Note:** The sealant used in the tyre repair system has a shelf life. The expiry date is shown on the sealant bottle. Make sure that the sealant bottle is replaced before the expiry date. Also make sure that the sealant bottle and inflation hose are replaced after each use.

### USING THE TYRE REPAIR SYSTEM











- ⚠ **Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 384, TYRE REPAIR SYSTEM SAFETY.**

Make sure the following warnings and cautions have been read and fully understood before carrying out a tyre repair. Failure to follow the guidance given could affect vehicle safety, leading to vehicle damage, serious injury or death.


- ⚠ **Avoid skin contact with the sealant, as it contains natural rubber latex.**
- ⚠ **Before attempting a tyre repair, make sure that the vehicle is parked safely, as far away from passing traffic as possible.**
- ⚠ **Vehicles with automatic transmissions: Make sure that the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is applied and Park (P) is engaged.**



## Tyre repair system

-  **Vehicles with manual transmissions: Make sure that the EPB is applied.**
  -  **While using the compressor, make sure that the hazard warning lights are switched on and that the smart key is removed from the vehicle.**
  -  **Do not attempt to remove foreign objects, such as nails, screws, etc., from the tyre.**
  -  **While using the compressor, make sure the engine is running and there is sufficient ventilation. Never start the engine or leave it running when the vehicle is in an enclosed space. Exhaust gases are poisonous and can cause unconsciousness and death if inhaled.**
  -  **All vehicle drivers and occupants should be made aware that a temporary repair has been made to a tyre fitted to the vehicle. All vehicle drivers and occupants should also be made aware of the special driving conditions imposed when using a repaired tyre.**
  -  To prevent overheating, do not operate the compressor continuously for longer than 10 minutes. Doing so could cause damage to the compressor.
- Make sure the following warnings and cautions have been read and fully understood before carrying out a tyre repair. Failure to follow the guidance given could affect vehicle safety, leading to vehicle damage, serious injury, or death.
-  **If in any doubt regarding the ability to carry out the instructions, or if the warnings in this section cannot be complied with, seek qualified assistance. See 434, ROADSIDE ASSISTANCE.**
  -  **If the tyre's inflation pressure does not reach 1.8 bar (26 psi, 180 kPa) within 7 minutes, the tyre may have suffered excessive damage. A temporary repair is not possible. Do not drive the vehicle until the tyre has been replaced.**
  -  **Do not exceed the maximum tyre pressure stated on the sidewall of the tyre.**
  -  When pumping the sealant through the tyre valve, sealant may leak from the puncture location. Remove any excess sealant immediately. Failure to do so may result in a surface residue that is difficult to remove.

### REPAIR PROCEDURE

-  **Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 384, TYRE REPAIR SYSTEM SAFETY and 385, USING THE TYRE REPAIR SYSTEM.**

## Tyre repair system

### Before carrying out a tyre repair procedure

1. Make sure the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is applied.
2. Automatic vehicles only: Make sure Park (P) is selected.
3. Remove the tyre repair system from the vehicle.
4. Remove the packaging from the compressor.
5. Peel the warning label off from the side of the compressor.
6. Attach the warning label to the windscreen in a visible location, but not obstructing the driver's field of vision.



**The speed and mileage recommendations for a repaired tyre are mandated and must be observed. The speed and mileage recommendations are stated on the warning label. Failure to adhere to the recommendations may cause a loss of vehicle control, leading to serious injury or death.**

7. Uncoil the inflation hose and power cable from the underside of the compressor.
8. Unscrew the orange cap from the compressor.
9. Unscrew the cap from the sealant bottle.
10. Screw the sealant bottle clockwise on to the compressor, until it is completely tight.

**Note:** Do not pierce the sealant bottle before fitting it to the receiver.

**Note:** The sealant bottle cannot be removed from the compressor once fitted.



## Tyre repair system

### To carry out a tyre repair procedure

1. Remove the valve cap from the damaged tyre.

**Note:** Make sure that the valve cap is stored in a known location for future use.

2. Remove the protective cap from the compressor's inflation hose.
3. Connect the inflation hose to the tyre valve.

**Note:** Make sure that the inflation hose is fully screwed on to the tyre valve.

4. Make sure that the compressor switch is in the off (0) position.
5. Insert the power cable connector into a power socket marked 12V. See **109, AUXILIARY POWER SOCKETS**.

**Note:** Do not use the cigar lighter socket for this purpose.

6. Start the engine. See **138, STARTING THE ENGINE**.
7. Switch the compressor to the on (I) position.
8. Run the compressor for no longer than 10 minutes

**Note:** Make sure to monitor the tyre pressure. When pumping the sealant through the tyre valve, the compressor's pressure gauge may rise up to 6 bar (87 psi, 600 kPa). The measurement at this point is the pressure within the compressor and not the actual tyre pressure, which is normal and should not cause alarm. The pressure drops again after approximately 30 seconds.

9. Switch off the compressor.

10. Check the inflation pressure on the compressor's pressure gauge.

- If the pressure is: Greater than 1.8 bar (26 psi, 180 kPa), continue with the repair procedure.

- If the pressure is: Less than 1.8 bar (26 psi, 180 kPa), do not attempt to drive the vehicle. Seek qualified assistance. See **434, ROADSIDE ASSISTANCE**.

11. Unscrew the inflation hose.

12. Replace the inflation hose cap.

13. Disconnect the power cable.

14. Store the tyre repair system securely in the vehicle.

15. Drive the vehicle within 1 minute of completing the tyre pressure check. Drive the vehicle between 3 and 10 km (2 and 6 miles) for 10 minutes. Do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph). When done, stop the vehicle in a safe place and carry out the following:

16. Connect the compressor's inflation hose to the tyre valve.


17. Check the repaired tyre's pressure. Refer to the table below.




## Tyre repair system

Tyre pressure	Action
Greater than 2.2 bar (32 psi, 220 kPa).	The vehicle can be driven for up to 200 km (120 miles) at a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph). It is recommended to drive to the nearest tyre repair centre or retailer/authorised repairer for a replacement tyre to be fitted. Be sure to make the repair centre aware that the tyre repair system has been used before the tyre is removed.
Less than 1.3 bar (19 psi, 130 kPa).	Do not attempt to drive the vehicle. Seek qualified assistance. See <b>434, ROADSIDE ASSISTANCE</b> .
Between 1.3 bar (19 psi, 130 kPa) and 2.2 bar (32 psi, 220 kPa).	Switch on the compressor, and run it for no longer than 10 minutes. Do not exceed the maximum tyre pressure stated on the sidewall of the tyre. If the pressure is above 2.2 bar (32 psi, 220 kPa), drive the vehicle 3 to 10 km (2 to 6 miles) or for 10 minutes. Do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph). If a tyre pressure of 2.2 bar (32 psi, 220 kPa) is not achieved, seek qualified assistance. See <b>434, ROADSIDE ASSISTANCE</b> .

### AFTER USING THE TYRE REPAIR SYSTEM

 When driving the vehicle, if vibrations, abnormal steering, or noises are experienced, reduce speed immediately. Drive with extreme caution, at reduced speed, to the first safe place to stop the vehicle. Visually examine the tyre and check its pressure. If there are any signs of damage or deformity to the tyre, or the tyre pressure is below 1.3 bar (19 psi, 130 kPa), do not continue driving. Doing so could lead to serious injury or death.

 Consult a tyre repair centre or a retailer/authorised repairer for advice concerning the replacement of a tyre after using a tyre repair system as soon as possible. Failure to do so could lead to serious injury or death.



## Tyre repair system



Only sealant bottles which are completely empty should be disposed of with normal household waste. Sealant bottles and the tyre inflation hose, which contain some sealant, should be disposed of by a tyre specialist or a retailer/ authorised repairer. Sealant bottles and the tyre inflation hose, which contain some sealant, should be disposed of in compliance with local waste disposal regulations.


© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2019


## Wheel changing

### WHEEL CHANGING SAFETY


Make sure to read and fully understand the following warnings. Failure to comply with the safety instructions could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

**Note:** *If in any doubt regarding the ability to carry out the instructions, or comply with warnings, seek assistance.*


 Always find a safe place to stop, off the carriageway, and away from traffic. Switch on the hazard warning lights to alert all traffic of the obstruction. Apply the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) and engage Park (P). Switch the engine off and remove the smart key from the vehicle.


 If available, place a warning triangle at a suitable distance behind the vehicle, facing toward oncoming traffic.


**Note:** *Different countries have different traffic laws, where carrying and/or using warning triangles may be required by law when stopping at the side of a carriageway. The driver is responsible for staying informed about road regulations, and for complying with local traffic laws.*


 In the case of an emergency or a breakdown, wear a reflective jacket when stopped at the side of the road and working around the vehicle.


**Note:** *Different countries have different traffic laws, where carrying and/or wearing reflective jackets may be required by law. The driver is responsible for staying informed about road regulations, and for complying with local traffic laws.*


 Make sure that all passengers, and animals, are out of the vehicle and in a safe place away from the carriageway.


 Disconnect any trailer or caravan from the vehicle.

 Make sure that the vehicle and jack are both on firm, level ground. Do not jack the vehicle if it is over a metal grating or manhole cover.

 Make sure that the front wheels are in the straight ahead position and engage the steering lock.








 Always use the complete jacking lever assembly throughout the wheel changing process, to minimise any chance of accidental injury. Position the jack from the side of the vehicle, in line with the appropriate jacking point. Never place anything between the jack and the ground, or between the jack and the vehicle. Do not attempt to raise the vehicle, unless the jack head is fully engaged in the jacking point. Only jack the vehicle using the approved jacking points.


 **WARNING - THAT NO PERSON SHOULD PLACE ANY PORTION OF THEIR BODY UNDER A VEHICLE THAT IS SUPPORTED BY A JACK.**

 The jack is designed for wheel changing only. Never work beneath the vehicle with the jack as the only means of support. Always use correctly rated vehicle support stands before putting any part of the body beneath the vehicle.




## Wheel changing

-  When jacking the vehicle, make sure that all precautions are taken to prevent vehicle movement. As an additional precaution, it is recommended that the wheels of the vehicle are chocked.
-  When one rear wheel is lifted off the ground, the transmission P position does not prevent the vehicle from moving. The vehicle can potentially slip off the jack, as the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) operates only on the rear wheels. Use a wheel chock when jacking the vehicle.
-  Always chock the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel to be changed. Chock the front of a front wheel, or the rear of a rear wheel.
-  If jacking the vehicle on a slight slope is unavoidable, place the chocks on the downhill side of the two opposite wheels. Two chocks must be used if this is the case.
-  Take care when loosening the wheel nuts. The wheel brace may slip off if not properly attached, and the wheel nuts may give way suddenly. Either unexpected movement may cause an injury.
-  Do not start or run the engine while the vehicle is supported only by a jack.
-  Remove the spare wheel before jacking the vehicle, to avoid destabilising the vehicle when raised. Take care when lifting the spare wheel and removing the punctured wheel. The wheels are heavy, and can cause injuries if not handled correctly.

-  After wheel changing, always secure the tools, jack and the replaced wheel in the correct storage positions. Such objects, if not properly stored, can become flying missiles in a crash or rollover, potentially causing injury or death.

### TOOL KIT

-  Before raising the vehicle, refer to all warnings at the beginning of this section of the Owner's Handbook.

Before changing a wheel, read and observe the warnings. See 391, **WHEEL CHANGING SAFETY**.

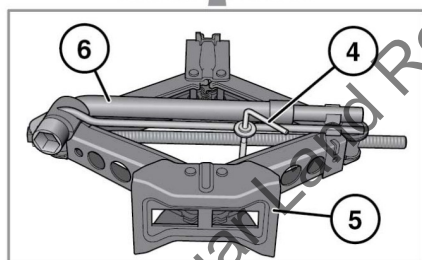
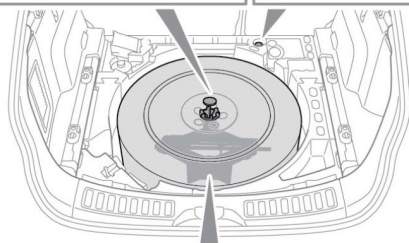
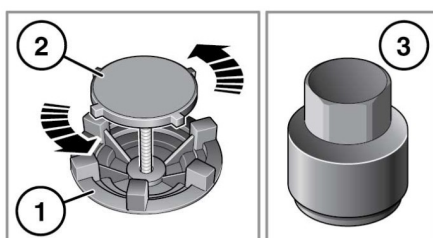
*Note:* Tool types and positions may vary from the illustration.

*Note:* Take careful note of the storage position for each tool, as it is important to return the tools to their correct position after use.

## Wheel changing

### 5 seat vehicles

Lift the loadspace floor to access the temporary-use spare wheel and tool kit.



E223830

The temporary-use spare wheel and tool kit contains the following:

1. Temporary-use spare wheel's locking ring.
2. Temporary-use spare wheel's securing bolt.
3. Locking wheel nut adaptor.
4. Tool kit securing bolt.
5. Jack.
6. Wheel brace.

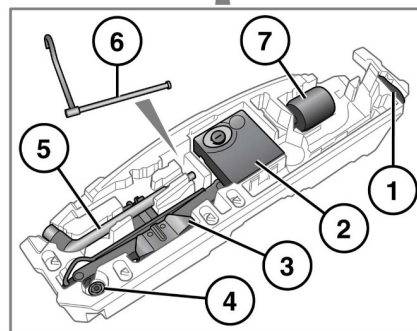
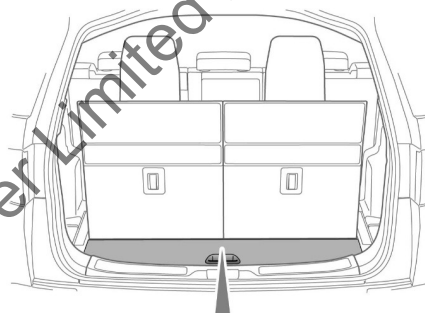


**Secure the spare wheel, or the removed wheel, in the correct position using the securing bolt. Failure to do so may result in personal injury or death.**

### 7 seat vehicles

**Note:** The 7 seat vehicles are available either with a temporary-use spare wheel and tool kit or a tyre repair system.

Lift the loadspace floor to access the tool kit.



E204519

The tool kit contains the following:

1. Rear bumper cover's removal tool.
2. Tyre repair system compressor.
3. Jack.
4. Locking wheel nut adaptor.





## Wheel changing


5. Wheel brace.
6. Winch handle.
7. Tyre repair system sealant bottle.


**Note:** Examine the jack occasionally. Clean and grease the moving parts, particularly the screw thread, to prevent corrosion.


### REMOVING THE SPARE WHEEL

 Make sure to read and fully understand the following warnings. Failure to comply with the safety instructions could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.


 Remove the temporary-use spare wheel before jacking the vehicle, to avoid destabilising the vehicle when raised.

 Wheels are heavy and, if handled incorrectly, may cause injury. Use extreme caution when lifting or manoeuvring the wheels.

 Do not store the wheel while the vehicle is raised on the jack.

 After wheel changing, always secure the tools, chocks, jack, and the replaced wheel in the correct storage positions. Such objects, if not properly stored, can become flying missiles in a crash or rollover, potentially causing injury or death.


#### 5 seat vehicles


 Always secure the temporary-use spare wheel, or the removed wheel, in the correct position using the securing bolt.


To remove the spare wheel:


1. Lift the loadspace floor to access the temporary-use spare wheel.
2. Turn the temporary-use spare wheel locking ring counter-clockwise to gain access to the securing bolt.
3. Turn the securing bolt counter-clockwise until it comes free.
4. Remove the temporary-use spare wheel.


#### 7 seat vehicles


 The wheels are extremely heavy. Always take care when operating the spare wheel winch while removing or storing the temporary-use spare wheel and the road wheel.

 When tensioning the winch cable by hand, take care not to trap any fingers.

 It is recommended that the road wheel is always stored underneath the vehicle following a puncture.

 Always store a road wheel and the temporary-use spare wheel with the outer face of the wheel facing upward.

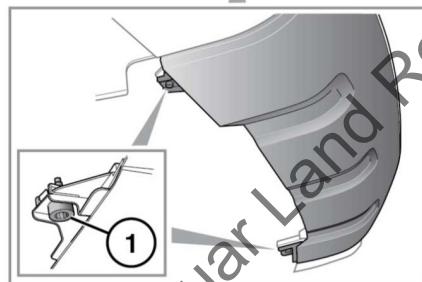
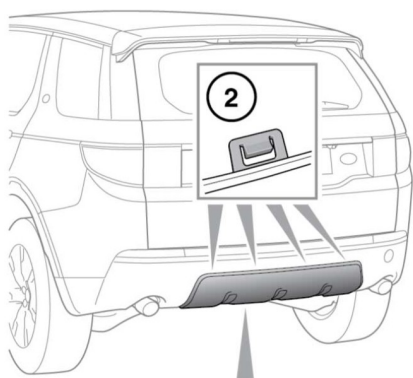
 Do not operate the winch, retracting or extracting the cable, without pre-tensioning the cable while it is in motion. Doing so may cause damage to the winch. Pre-tensioning can be achieved, either with the weight of a temporary-use spare wheel or a road wheel, or by maintaining tension by hand.

 Do not use power tools to lower the temporary-use spare wheel. Doing so may damage the winch mechanism.

## Wheel changing

The temporary-use spare wheel is located underneath the rear of the vehicle. The winch to lower the spare wheel is located in the loadspace, below the tool kit.

Before lowering the temporary-use spare wheel, remove the rear bumper cover.

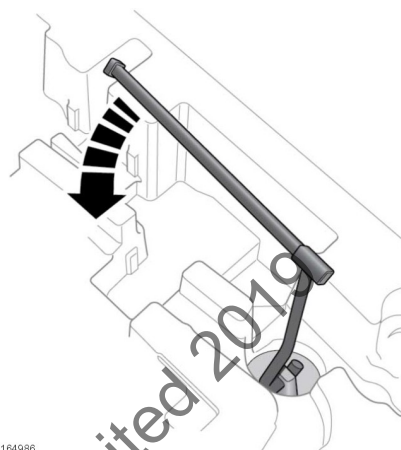


E166774

To remove the rear bumper cover:

1. Using the special tool located in the tool kit, remove the two fixings and store them in a safe place. See **392, TOOL KIT**.
2. Remove the rear bumper cover, easing it off the four securing clips.

**Note:** The rear bumper cover cannot be refitted after the full size wheel is stored under the vehicle. Store the rear bumper cover in the loadspace.



E164986

To remove the spare wheel:

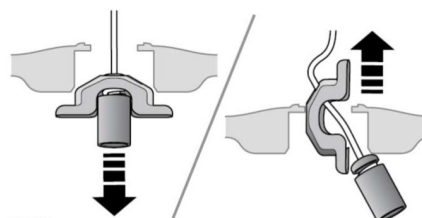
1. Remove the jack to allow access to the temporary-use spare wheel winch.
2. Fit the winch handle to the temporary-use spare wheel winch. Rotate counter-clockwise to lower the spare wheel.

**Note:** To avoid damage to the side trim and third row seats, if raised, slide the winch handle through the tube to shorten the handle.

3. Rotate the winch handle until the temporary-use spare wheel is on the ground and the winch cable is slack.

**Note:** Do not attempt to turn the winch beyond the physical stop.

To release the wheel from the winch:



E164987



## Wheel changing

1. Lift the temporary-use spare wheel.
2. Release the winch cable.
3. Pass the cable through the centre of the wheel, as shown.

To store the removed road wheel:

1. Remove the centre cap from the road wheel. Store the centre cap in a safe place.
2. Position the road wheel underneath the rear of the vehicle, with the outer face of the road wheel facing upward.
3. Pass the winch cable through the centre of the wheel.
4. Start to turn the winch handle clockwise to take the slack out of the cable. Make sure the cable end is located correctly before continuing to raise the wheel.
5. Continue to rotate the winch handle until the road wheel is in the stored position.
6. Remove the winch handle. Store all of the tools and the jack in the tool kit.

**Note:** The bumper cover cannot be refitted to the vehicle with a stored full-sized wheel stored under the vehicle.

### Operating the winch without a road wheel attached

Fit the winch handle to the winch. Rotate the handle counter-clockwise to lower the mechanism. When the winch is operated without a tyre fitted, pull on the end of the cable to allow the mechanism to lower.

- ⚠ If the winch feels tight or locks up, stop winding and wind backward, at least one full turn. If this fails to free the winch mechanism, do not continue, as damage may be caused to the winch.

### Refitting the bumper cover

When the temporary-use spare wheel is stored underneath the vehicle, refit the bumper cover as follows:

1. Locate the four securing clips on the cover into the slots in the rear bumper.
2. Locate the two fixing points on the underside of the cover to the bumper.
3. Fasten the cover to the bumper using the fixings.
4. Tighten the fixings with the special tool.

### IMPORTANT - USE OF SPARE TYRE

Make sure to read and fully understand the following warnings. Failure to comply with the safety instructions could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

- ⚠ **Adhere to the instructions on the temporary-use spare wheel's warning label, affixed to the wheel. Failure to do so may cause vehicle instability and/or tyre failure.**
- ⚠ **Where fitted, the temporary-use spare wheel is for temporary use only.**
- ⚠ **Drive with caution while the temporary-use spare wheel is fitted.**
- ⚠ **Make sure that an original size wheel and tyre are fitted as soon as possible.**
- ⚠ **Do not fit more than one temporary-use spare wheel at any one time.**



## Wheel changing

- ⚠ **Do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph) while the temporary-use spare wheel is fitted.**
- ⚠ **The temporary-use spare wheel must be inflated to 4.2 bar (60 psi, 420 kPa) and cannot be repaired.**
- ⚠ **Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) must be switched on while the temporary-use spare wheel is in use.**
- ⚠ **Traction devices, such as snow chains, cannot be used with a temporary-use spare wheel.**

**Note:** Before removing the spare wheel, take note of its storage position. The wheel to be changed must be correctly stored and secured in its place.

### USING WHEEL CHOCKS

Make sure to read and fully understand the following warnings. Failure to comply with the safety instructions could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

- ⚠ **Before raising the vehicle, always chock the wheels using suitable wheel chocks. Place the chocks on both sides of the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel to be changed.**
- ⚠ **If jacking the vehicle on a slight slope is unavoidable, place the chocks on the downhill side of the two opposite wheels. An extra chock is needed.**

A wheel chock is stored in the vehicle's spare wheel tool kit. See **392, TOOL KIT**.

**Note:** Not all vehicles have wheel chocks supplied as part of the tool kit. Wheel chocks are a useful addition to a vehicle's tool kit.

### LOCKING WHEEL NUTS

**Note:** Not all vehicles have locking wheel nuts as standard parts.

- ⓘ The locking wheel nut adaptor must be correctly aligned and fully fitted to the locking wheel nut before usage. Incorrect fitment can result in permanent damage to the locking wheel nut adaptor. If in doubt, contact a retailer/authorised repairer.
- ⓘ Do not use air tools or power tools to remove or to refit the locking wheel nut. Doing so may damage the locking wheel nut or the locking wheel nut adaptor.

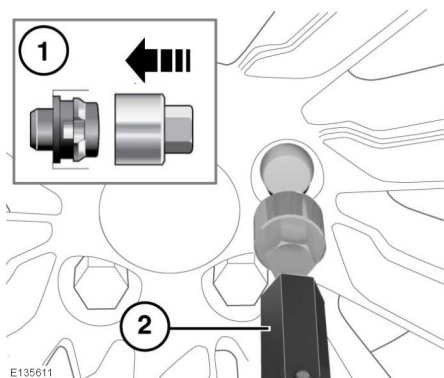


E224496

Depending on the vehicle specification, two different locking wheel nuts, (1) and (2), are fitted.



## Wheel changing



Locking wheel nuts can be removed and fitted using only the special adaptor provided. See **392, TOOL KIT**.

To release the locking wheel nut:

1. Fit the locking wheel nut adaptor onto the locking wheel nut. Make sure that the locking wheel nut adaptor fully engages.

⚠ If the locking wheel nut adaptor is forced on to the locking wheel nut, the adaptor may be damaged beyond repair.

2. Locate the wheel brace over the locking wheel nut adaptor. Unscrew the wheel nut half a turn counter-clockwise.
3. After raising the vehicle on the jack, remove the locking wheel nut.

**Note:** When the vehicle is first supplied, the wheel nut adaptor may be stored in the glovebox. If this is the case, the wheel nut adaptor must be moved to its correct storage position in the loadspace, as soon as possible. See **392, TOOL KIT**.

**Note:** Should a replacement locking wheel nut adaptor be required, consult an authorised retailer. Record the locking wheel nut adaptor code number in the table below to allow a replacement to be sourced, if required. Depending upon the specification of the locking wheel nut adaptor, the code may be stamped on the locking wheel nut adaptor or supplied on a separate card.

Locking wheel nut adaptor code number
---------------------------------------

### WHEEL CHANGING

⚠ Before raising the vehicle, refer to all warnings at the beginning of this section of the Owner's Handbook. Failure to comply with the safety instructions could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

⚠ Before changing a wheel, read and observe the warnings.

See **391, WHEEL CHANGING SAFETY**.

⚠ Remove the spare wheel before jacking the vehicle, to avoid destabilising the vehicle when raised.

⚠ Do not attempt to raise the vehicle, unless the jack head is fully engaged in the jacking point. Only jack the vehicle using the approved jacking points.

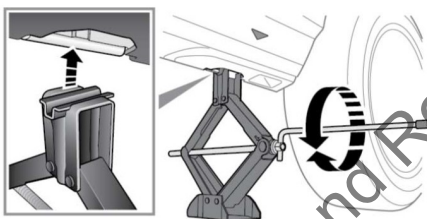
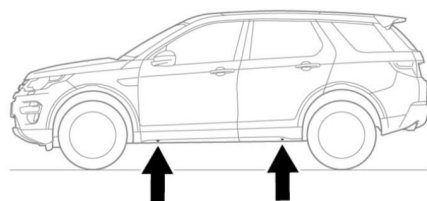
⚠ The jack is designed for wheel changing only. Never work beneath the vehicle with the jack as the only means of support. Always use correctly rated vehicle support stands, before putting any part of the body beneath the vehicle.

## Wheel changing

❗ If the vehicle is fitted with side steps or tubes, do not use them as jacking points.

❗ Only jack the vehicle using the jacking points described, as damage to the vehicle could occur.

**Note:** Before raising the vehicle, correctly position the wheel chocks. See **397, USING WHEEL CHOCKS**.



E164297

To change a wheel:

1. Use the wheel nut brace to loosen the wheel nuts of the wheel to be replaced. Turn half a turn counter-clockwise.

2. Locate the jack under the relevant jacking point.

❗ Do not allow the jack to contact the sill at any other point, as damage may result.

3. Unfold the handle from the stored position on the jack. Fit the wheel nut brace to the end of the cranking handle.

4. Rotate the handle clockwise to raise the jack, until the jack pin locates into the jacking point.

5. Raise the vehicle until the wheel is clear of the ground.

6. Remove the wheel nuts. Place the wheel nuts together where they cannot roll away.

7. Remove the wheel and place it to one side.

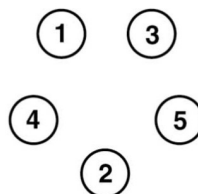
❗ Do not lay the wheel on its face, as this may damage the finish.

8. Fit the spare wheel to the hub.

9. Refit the wheel nuts. Lightly tighten the wheel nuts. Make sure the wheel is making contact with the hub evenly.

10. Make sure the area under the vehicle is clear of obstructions. Lower the vehicle slowly and smoothly.

11. With all of the wheels on the ground and the jack removed, fully tighten the wheel nuts. Tighten the wheel nuts, in the sequence shown in the illustration, to the correct torque of 133 Nm.



E153421



**If it is not possible to torque the wheel nuts when a wheel is replaced, set to the correct torque as soon as possible.**



## Wheel changing

If an alloy spare wheel is to be fitted, use a suitable blunt tool to knock the centre cap out of the removed wheel. Use hand pressure only to press the centre cap into the newly fitted spare.

Check and adjust the tyre pressure as soon as possible.

### Vehicles with fixed side steps, or side tubes

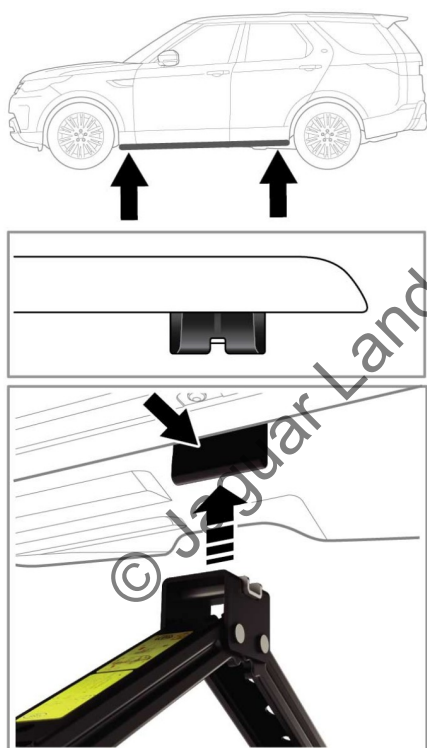
If the vehicle is fitted with fixed side steps, or side tubes, the standard vehicle jacking points are obscured.



**Do not jack the vehicle under the fixed side steps, or the side tubes. Doing so could result in injury or death.**

To raise the vehicle, use the jacking points located on the front and rear of the fixed side steps, or the side tubes.

In the event of a puncture, the spare wheel can be used on either side of the vehicle. Make sure that the original wheel is replaced in its correct location as soon as possible.



E189638

## Vehicle recovery

### RECOVERY METHOD

**⚠** Make sure that vehicle recovery and/or transportation is carried out by suitably qualified personnel, and the vehicle is secured correctly. Recovery and/or transportation carried out by unqualified personnel can result in serious injury or death.

**ⓘ** The recovery agent must activate the transmission park release before recovery commences. The procedure is covered in a separate publication for service personnel. Failure to activate the transmission park release can result in serious transmission damage.

**ⓘ** The vehicle should not be towed on all four wheels and should not be recovered with the front or rear wheels suspended. Doing so can result in serious transmission damage.

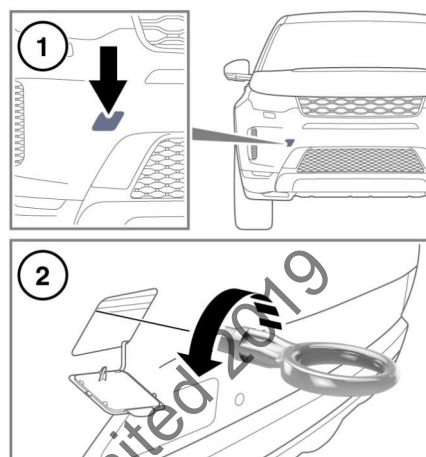
The method for recovery and/or transportation of the vehicle is on a transporter or trailer designed for that purpose.

### FRONT TOWING EYE

**⚠** The towing eye at the front of the vehicle is designed for on-road recovery only. If the towing eye is used for any other purpose, it may result in vehicle damage and serious injury.

**⚠** Use extreme caution when moving or towing the vehicle. Death or serious injury may occur.

**⚠** Use extreme caution when detaching towing equipment. Vehicle movement is possible, which can result in serious injury.



E245154

To access the towing eye:

1. Pop out the access cover by pressing the outboard edge to release the securing clip. The cover is secured on the bumper by its tether, but can be released for safe storage.
2. Locate the towing eye through the bumper. Fully screw the towing eye counter-clockwise into the towing point until secure.

To refit the access cover:

1. Make sure the tether is correctly located. Align the lug into the recess in the bumper.
2. Lightly press the inboard edge to engage the securing clip.

### REAR TOWING EYE

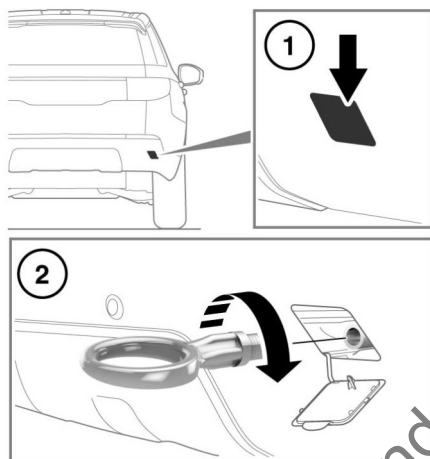
**⚠** The towing eye at the rear of the vehicle is designed for on-road recovery only. If the front towing-eye is used for any other purpose, it may result in vehicle damage and serious injury.



## Vehicle recovery

- ⚠ Use extreme caution when moving or towing the vehicle. Death or serious injury may occur.**

The towing eye must be screwed into the towing point, located behind the panel on the right-side of the rear bumper. The towing eye is located under the loadspace floor cover.



1. Pop out the access cover by pressing the lower edge to release the securing clip. The cover is retained on the bumper by its tether, but can be released for safe stowage.
2. Locate the towing eye through the bumper, and fully screw the towing eye clockwise into the towing point until secure.

To refit the access cover, make sure the tether is correctly located. Align the lug into the recess in the bumper. Lightly press the opposite edge to engage the securing clip.

- ⚠ Use extreme caution when detaching towing equipment. Vehicle movement is possible which can result in serious injury.**

### TRANSMISSION PARK RELEASE

- ⚠ Make sure that the vehicle is secured with wheel chocks. Apply the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) or firmly press the brake pedal. Two people are required for this procedure. Failure to do so can result in unexpected movement of the vehicle, potentially causing serious injury or death.**

- ⓘ** The recovery agent must activate the transmission park release before recovery commences. The procedure for activating the transmission park release is covered in a separate publication for service personnel. Failure to activate the transmission park release can result in serious transmission damage.

When recovering the vehicle, it is essential that the transmission park release mechanism is activated. Activating the transmission park release mechanism locks the transmission in Neutral (N) and prevents the transmission from automatically selecting Park (P).

When vehicle transportation is complete, make sure to deactivate the transmission park release mechanism.

### OFF-ROAD RECOVERY

If the towing eyes are to be used for off-road recovery, it is essential that off-road driver training, covering recovery techniques, is undertaken.

## Vehicle recovery

Further information on off-road driving  
can be found at: [www.landrover.com](http://www.landrover.com).

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2019



## After a collision

### BEFORE STARTING OR DRIVING

**⚠** If the vehicle is involved in a collision, it should be checked by a retailer/authorised repairer or suitably qualified personnel, before starting or driving. A collision can damage the vehicle and its systems, making the vehicle unsafe, which may lead to serious injury or death.

**Note:** Some vehicles have an SOS emergency call button and an optimised assistance call button. See 309, **INCONTROL OVERVIEW**.

### AFTER DEPLOYMENT OF THE PEDESTRIAN PROTECTION SYSTEM

**ⓘ** Do not attempt to open the bonnet if the pedestrian contact sensing system has been deployed. Opening the bonnet while its rear end is raised may damage the bonnet latches.

The vehicle must be stopped as soon as it is safe to do so.

The hazard warning lights activate and can only be switched off by pressing the engine **START/STOP** button to switch the engine off and on again.

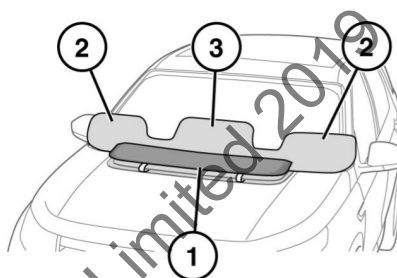
The instrument panel displays a warning message.

The vehicle should be transported to the nearest retailer/authorised repairer. The vehicle must not be driven when the bonnet has been deployed.

**Note:** If the instrument panel displays a warning message when the bonnet has not been deployed, take the vehicle to the nearest retailer/authorised repairer immediately. The vehicle can be driven.

If any significant damage occurs to the front bumper, it should be inspected by a retailer/authorised repairer as soon as possible.

### REPACKING THE PEDESTRIAN AIRBAG

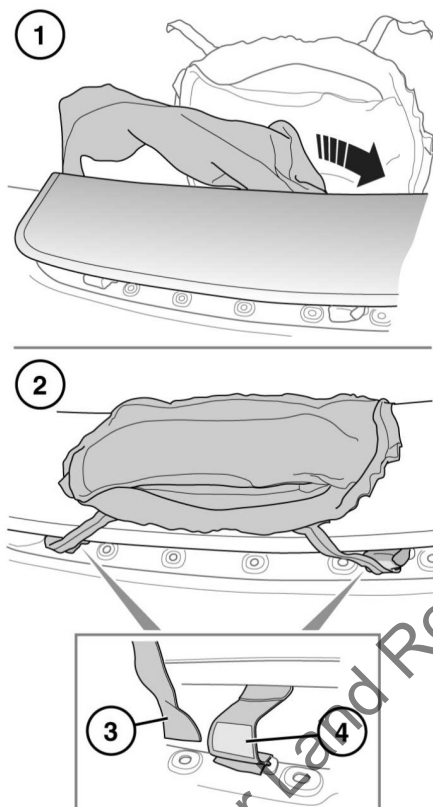


E168795

1. Airbag cover.
2. Airbag side panels inflated.
3. Airbag centre panel inflated.



## After a collision



E106796

Repack the pedestrian airbag, as follows:

**Note:** If the airbag is not fully deflated, fold and compress the airbag to release air, before starting to repack.

1. Fold both of the airbag side panels across the vehicle and underneath the airbag cover.
2. Pull the airbag's centre panel over the airbag cover.

3. On each side, pull the airbag's centre panel as tight as possible. Use the velcro panels to attach the straps on the centre airbag panel (3) to the airbag cover straps (4).

Following repacking, if safe to do so, drive the vehicle with caution to a retailer/ authorised repairer. Check for damage and the replacement of the pedestrian airbag should be carried out accordingly.

### EVENT DATA RECORDING

The vehicle is equipped with an Event Data Recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record data in certain circumstances that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. Such circumstances are crash or near crash-like situations e.g. an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle.

The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in the vehicle were operating.
- Whether or not the driver and passenger seat belts were buckled or fastened.
- How far, if at all, the driver was pressing the accelerator and/or the brake pedal.
- How fast the vehicle was travelling.

The collected data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.



## After a collision

**Note:** EDR data are recorded by the vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs. No data are recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions. No personal data, e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location, are recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, can read the recorded information. To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed.

### South Korea only

Please be advised that this vehicle incorporates an Event Data Recorder (EDR).

An EDR stores driving information at the moment of accident (driving speed, application of brake pedal and accelerator control etc.) and enables to confirm the information stored.

EDR information helps understanding the circumstances of accident more clearly.

### SERVICE DATA RECORDING

Service data recorders in the vehicle are capable of collecting and storing diagnostic information about the vehicle. Potentially, this includes information about the performance or status of various systems and modules in the vehicle. Such systems and modules are the engine, accelerator pedal, steering, or brakes.

In order to properly diagnose and service the vehicle, a retailer/authorised repairer may access the vehicle's diagnostic information. To access the information, a direct connection to the vehicle is required.

## Vehicle labels

### LABEL LOCATIONS

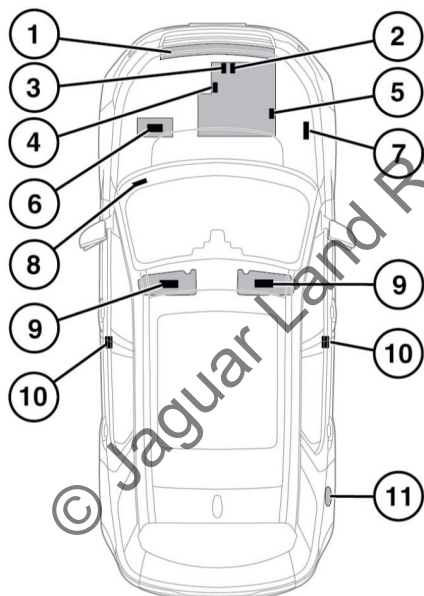


Warning labels attached to the vehicle bearing this symbol mean: Read the relevant instructions, before touching or adjusting components.



Labels showing this symbol indicate that the ignition system utilises very high voltages. Do not touch any ignition components while the ignition is switched on.

Additional information labels may also be found at the following locations:



E178067

1. Air Conditioning (A/C) label: Located on the bonnet locking platform.
2. Engine identification information (2.0L diesel): Stamped into the marking pad on the cylinder block.

3. Engine information label (2.0L diesel): Located on the intake manifold.
4. Engine identification information: Stamped into the engine mounting flange.
5. Engine information label: Located on the top right side of the engine cover.
6. Battery warning symbols: Located on the top of the battery.
7. Vehicle Identification Number (VIN): Stamped into the right-side, front inner wing.
8. The VIN is stamped onto a plate which is visible through the lowest part of the left side of the windscreen. The VIN can also be shown in the message centre via the **Vehicle Information** and **Vehicle VIN** instrument panel menus. See **69, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

**Note:** If need to communicate with a retailer/authorised repairer, you may be asked to quote the VIN number. The vehicle's built-date is shown on the VIN label.

**Note:** The vehicle's built-date is the calendar month and year in which the body and powertrain assemblies were conjoined and the vehicle was driven from the production line. The vehicle's built-date may also be shown on the tyre pressure label.

9. Airbag label and vehicle handling label: Located on the sun visors.
10. Tyre pressure and airbag warning labels. Left-side B pillar: VIN label.
11. Fuel specification label: Located inside the fuel filler flap.



## Vehicle labels

To make sure that the vehicle and its features are used safely, it is important to be familiar with these subjects.

### **COUNTRY OF MANUFACTURE**

The Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) can be used to determine the vehicle's location of manufacture.

The 11th character of the VIN designates build location as specified below:

- A = Solihull, United Kingdom
- C = Castle Bromwich, United Kingdom
- G = Changshu, China
- H = Halewood, United Kingdom
- L = Pune, India
- S = Oxford Road, United Kingdom
- T = Itatiaia, Brazil
- 1 = Gratz, Austria
- 2 = Nitra, Slovakia

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2019

## Technical specifications

### TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

Some technical specification information in the Owner's Handbook is not available at the time of print, or is subject to updates after printing. Please visit the online Owner's Handbook at:

[www.ownerinfo.landrover.com](http://www.ownerinfo.landrover.com), or contact a retailer/authorised repairer, for the latest data.

### ENGINE SPECIFICATIONS

Description	2.0L diesel	2.0L petrol
Number of cylinders.	4	4
Displacement (cc).	1 999	1 997

**Note:** For further information, contact a retailer/authorised repairer and quote the Vehicle Identification Number (VIN). See 407, LABEL LOCATIONS.

### PERFORMANCE DATA

Variant	Maximum power (PS (kW)) at engine speed (rpm)	Maximum torque (Nm) at engine speed (rpm)	Maximum vehicle speed (mph (km/h))
2.0L diesel, 150 PS.	150 (110) at 4 000.	380 at 1 750 - 2 500.	121 (194) - Front Wheel Drive (FWD) 5 seat. 120 (193) - FWD 7 seat. 118 (190) - All Wheel Drive (AWD) 5 seat. 117 (188) - AWD 7 seat.
2.0L diesel, 180 PS.	180 (132) at 4 000.	430 at 1 500 - 3 000.	126 (202) - AWD 5 seat. 125 (201) - AWD 7 seat.
2.0L diesel, 240 PS.	240 (177) at 4 000.	500 at 1 500 - 3 000.	137 (220) - AWD 5 seat. 136 (219) - AWD 7 seat.
2.0L petrol, 200 PS.	200 (147) at 5 500.	320 at 1 250 - 4 500.	129 (207) - AWD 5 seat. 128 (206) - AWD 7 seat.



## Technical specifications

Variant	Maximum power (PS (kW)) at engine speed (rpm)	Maximum torque (Nm) at engine speed (rpm)	Maximum vehicle speed (mph (km/h))
2.0L petrol, 249 PS.	249 (184) at 5 500.	365 at 1 400 - 4 500.	140 (225) - AWD 5 seat. 139 (224) - AWD 7 seat.
2.0L petrol, 290 PS.	300 (221) at 5 500.	400 at 1 600 - 4 500.	145 (233) - AWD 5 seat. 144 (232) - AWD 7 seat.

## LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS

Description	Variant	Specification
Engine oil.	Diesel.	SAE 0W-30 meeting Jaguar Land Rover specification STJLR.03.5007.
	Petrol.	SAE 0W-20 meeting Jaguar Land Rover specification STJLR.03.5006.
Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF).	Diesel.	AdBlue™ meeting ISO 22241 and ISO 22241-1. Diesel Exhaust Fluid is also known as DEF, AdBlue, AUS 32, and ARLA 32.
Brake and clutch fluid.	All vehicles.	It is recommended to use Land Rover brake fluid. If unavailable, non-petroleum based brake fluid meeting specification DOT4 ISO 4925 Class 6 may be used.
Washer fluid.	All vehicles.	Screen wash with frost protection, diluted with clean water, as specified on the bottle.
Engine coolant fluid.	All vehicles.	Mixture of 50% water and 50% antifreeze meeting Jaguar Land Rover specification STJLR.651.5003.

AdBlue™ is a trademark of the Verband der Automobilindustrie e.V. (VDA).

If in doubt about the required specification of a lubricant or fluid, contact a retailer/ authorised repairer.



E178576

## Technical specifications

**Castrol Edge Professional** exclusively recommended by Land Rover.

### CAPACITIES

Item	Variant	Capacity (litres)
Fuel tank (usable)	Diesel.	65
	Petrol.	67
Engine oil refill and filter change	Diesel, except 240 PS.	6.5
	Diesel 240 PS.	7.0
	Petrol, except 200 PS.	7.0
	Petrol 200 PS.	6.8
Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF)	Diesel vehicles with DEF.	17
Washer reservoir	All vehicles.	3.9

The quoted capacities are approximate and are only provided as a guide. All oil levels must be checked using the level plugs, the instrument panel information or the drain and refill procedure, as applicable.



Do not overfill the DEF tank, or damage to the vehicle may occur.

### WEIGHTS

Variant	Weight (kg)	Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW)* (kg)	Gross Train Weight (GTW)** (kg)
<b>Diesel (5 seats)</b>			
Diesel Front Wheel Drive (FWD)	1 769	2 440	4 240, EU, South Africa, and Australia only. 3 940, all except EU, South Africa, and Australia.
Diesel (150 PS) - All Wheel Drive (AWD) - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV).	1 873	2 590	4 790, EU, South Africa, and Australia only. 4 090, all except EU, South Africa, and Australia.



## Technical specifications

Variant	Weight (kg)	Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW)* (kg)	Gross Train Weight (GTW)** (kg)
Diesel (150 PS) - AWD.	1 841	2 590	4 790, EU, South Africa, and Australia only. 4 090, all except EU, South Africa, and Australia.
Diesel (180 PS) - AWD - MHEV.	1 873	2 590	5 090, EU only. 4 790, South Africa, and Australia only. 4 090, all except EU, South Africa, and Australia.
Diesel (180 PS) - AWD.	1 841	2 590	5 090, EU only. 4 790, South Africa, and Australia only. 4 090, all except EU, South Africa, and Australia.
Diesel (240 PS) - AWD - MHEV.	1 934	2 620	5 120, EU only. 4 820, South Africa, and Australia only. 4 120, all except EU, South Africa, and Australia.
<b>Diesel (7 seats)</b>			
Diesel FWD.	1 851	2 640	4 440, EU, South Africa, and Australia only. 4 140, all except EU, South Africa, and Australia.
Diesel (150 PS) - AWD - MHEV.	1 953	2 750	4 950, EU, South Africa, and Australia only. 4 250, all except EU, South Africa, and Australia.
Diesel (150 PS) - AWD.	1 921	2 750	4 950, EU, South Africa, and Australia only. 4 250, all except EU, South Africa, and Australia.



## Technical specifications

Variant	Weight (kg)	Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW)* (kg)	Gross Train Weight (GTW)** (kg)
Diesel (180 PS) - AWD - MHEV.	1 953	2 750	4 950, EU, South Africa, and Australia only. 4 250, all except EU, South Africa, and Australia.
Diesel (180 PS) - AWD.	1 921	2 750	4 950, EU, South Africa, and Australia only. 4 250, all except EU, South Africa, and Australia.
Diesel (240 PS) - AWD - MHEV.	2 015	2 750	4 950, EU, South Africa, and Australia only. 4 250, all except EU, South Africa, and Australia.

\* The maximum permissible weight of the vehicle including passengers and load.

\*\* The maximum permissible weight of the vehicle and braked trailer including their respective loads.

**Note:** For every additional 1 000 metres increase above sea level, the GTW must be reduced by 10%.

Variant	Weight (kg)	Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW)* (kg)	Gross Train Weight (GTW)** (kg)
<b>Petrol (5 seats)</b>			
Petrol (200 PS) - AWD - MHEV.	1 826	2 550	4 550, EU, South Africa, and Australia only. 4 050, all except EU, South Africa, and Australia.
Petrol (200 PS) - AWD.	1 794	2 550	4 550, EU, South Africa, and Australia only. 4 050, all except EU, South Africa, and Australia.



## Technical specifications

Variant	Weight (kg)	Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW)* (kg)	Gross Train Weight (GTW)** (kg)
Petrol (249 PS) - AWD - MHEV.	1 864	2 550	4 550, EU, South Africa, and Australia only. 4 050, all except EU, South Africa, and Australia.
Petrol (249 PS) - AWD.	1 832	2 550	4 550, EU, South Africa, and Australia only. 4 050, all except EU, South Africa, and Australia.
Petrol (290 PS) - AWD - MHEV.	1 882	2 570	4 570, EU, South Africa, and Australia only. 4 070, all except EU, South Africa, and Australia.
<b>Petrol (7 seats)</b>			
Petrol (200 PS) - AWD - MHEV.	1 904	2 700	4 700, EU, South Africa, and Australia only. 4 200, all except EU, South Africa, and Australia.
Petrol (200 PS) - AWD.	1 872	2 700	4 700, EU, South Africa, and Australia only. 4 200, all except EU, South Africa, and Australia.
Petrol (249 PS) - AWD - MHEV.	1 942	2 700	4 700, EU, South Africa, and Australia only. 4 200, all except EU, South Africa, and Australia.
Petrol (249 PS) - AWD.	1 910	2 700	4 700, EU, South Africa, and Australia only. 4 200, all except EU, South Africa, and Australia.
Petrol (290 PS) - AWD - MHEV.	1 961	2 720	4 720, EU, South Africa, and Australia only. 4 220, all except EU, South Africa, and Australia.

## Technical specifications

\* The maximum permissible weight of the vehicle including passengers and load.

\*\* The maximum permissible weight of the vehicle and braked trailer including their respective loads.

**Note:** For every additional 1 000 metres increase above sea level, the GTW must be reduced by 10%.

Variant	Maximum front axle load* (kg)	Maximum rear axle load* (kg)	Maximum roof rack load** (kg)
<b>Diesel (5 seats)</b>			
Diesel FWD.	1 290	1 230	75
Diesel (150 PS) - AWD - MHEV.	1 340	1 320	
Diesel (150 PS) - AWD.	1 340	1 320	
Diesel (180 PS) - AWD - MHEV.	1 340	1 320	
Diesel (180 PS) - AWD.	1 340	1 320	
Diesel (240 PS) - AWD - MHEV.	1 370	1 320	
<b>Diesel (7 seats)</b>			
Diesel FWD.	1 340	1 470	75
Diesel (150 PS) - AWD - MHEV.	1 340	1 510	
Diesel (150 PS) - AWD.	1 340	1 510	
Diesel (180 PS) - AWD - MHEV.	1 340	1 510	
Diesel (180 PS) - AWD.	1 340	1 510	
Diesel (240 PS) - AWD - MHEV.	1 370	1 510	

\* The front and rear axle maximum loads cannot be reached simultaneously as this will exceed the GVW limit.

\*\* This figure includes the weight of the roof rack.



## Technical specifications

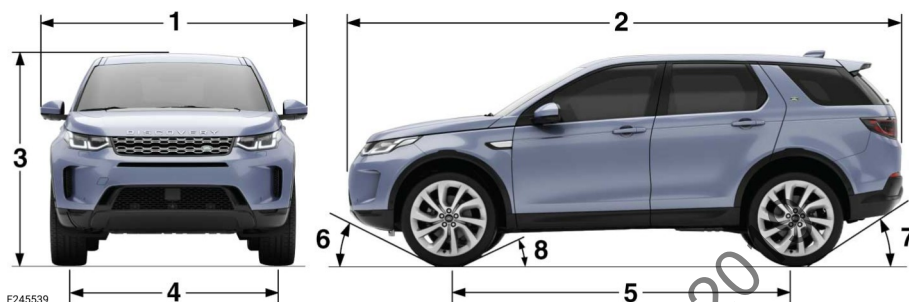
Variant	Maximum front axle load* (kg)	Maximum rear axle load* (kg)	Maximum roof rack load** (kg)
<b>Petrol (5 seats)</b>			
Petrol (200 PS) - AWD - MHEV.	1 340	1 290	75
Petrol (200 PS) - AWD.	1 340	1 290	
Petrol (249 PS) - AWD - MHEV.	1 340	1 290	
Petrol (249 PS) - AWD.	1 340	1 290	
Petrol (290 PS) - AWD - MHEV.	1 350	1 300	
<b>Petrol (7 seats)</b>			
Petrol (200 PS) - AWD - MHEV.	1 340	1 510	75
Petrol (200 PS) - AWD.	1 340	1 510	
Petrol (249 PS) - AWD - MHEV.	1 340	1 510	
Petrol (249 PS) - AWD.	1 340	1 510	
Petrol (290 PS) - AWD - MHEV.	1 340	1 510	

\* The front and rear axle maximum loads cannot be reached simultaneously as this will exceed the GVW limit.

\*\* This figure includes the weight of the roof rack.

## Technical specifications

### DIMENSIONS



Item	Description	(mm)
1	Width - mirrors extended.	2 173
	Width - mirrors folded.	2 069
2	Length.	4 597
3	Height.	1 727
4	Track - front.	1 625 – 17" and 18" wheels. 1 626 – 19" wheels. 1 635 – 20" and 21" wheels.
	Track - rear.	1 631 – 17" wheels. 1 632 – 18" wheels. 1 623 – 19" wheels. 1 642 – 20" and 21" wheels.
5	Wheelbase.	2 741
6	Approach angle - off-road height at mass 1 condition.	25° 22.8° - dynamic
7	Maximum departure angle - off-road height at mass 1 condition.	30.2° 28.2° - dynamic
8	Ramp angle - off-road height at mass 1 condition.	20.6°
-	Maximum wading depth at off-road height*. *Maximum wading speed is 7 km/h (4 mph).	600



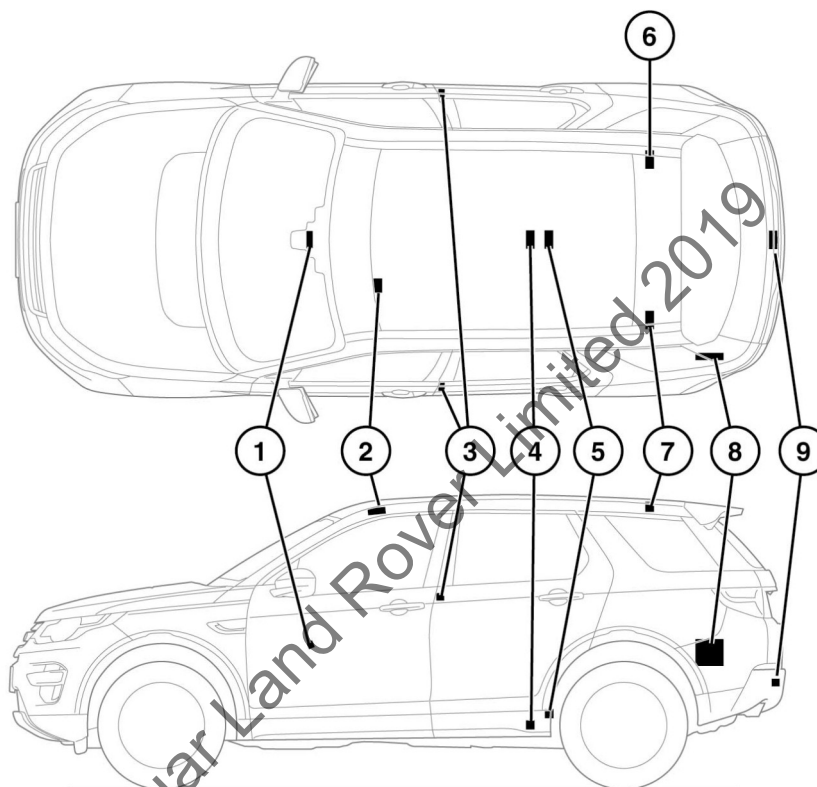
## Technical specifications

Item	Description	(mm)
-	Ground clearance - off-road height at mass 1 condition.	212
-	Turning circle - kerb to kerb.	11.8 metres

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2019

## Technical specifications

### SMART KEY TRANSMITTER LOCATIONS



E243727



**Any person fitted with an implanted medical device should make sure the device is kept at a distance of at least 22 cm away from any transmitter mounted in the vehicle. This is to avoid any possibility of interference between the system and the device.**

1. Cabin front transmitter.

2. Satellite transmitter.

3. Door transmitters.

4. Loadspace transmitter (5 seat vehicles).

5. Loadspace transmitter (7 seat vehicles).

6. Satellite transmitter.

7. Radio Frequency (RF) receiver.

8. RF transmitter.

9. Rear transmitter.



## Technical specifications

### RADIO FREQUENCY SPECTRUM REGULATION STATEMENTS

Service	Frequency band (MHz)	Max. Output (Watts)	Antenna position	Specific conditions
Short Wave	1.8-30	100 (RMS)	Anywhere on the metallic part of the roof.	Transmitter, harness and antenna installation to the requirements of ISO/TS 21609.
8 m	30-50	120 (RMS)	Anywhere on the metallic part of the roof.	Transmitter, harness and antenna installation to the requirements of ISO/TS 21609.
6 m	50-54	120 (RMS)	Anywhere on the metallic part of the roof.	Transmitter, harness and antenna installation to the requirements of ISO/TS 21609.
4 m	68-87.5	120 (RMS)	Anywhere on the metallic part of the roof.	Transmitter, harness and antenna installation to the requirements of ISO/TS 21609.
2 m	142-176	120 (RMS)	Anywhere on the metallic part of the roof.	Transmitter, harness and antenna installation to the requirements of ISO/TS 21609.
70 cm	410-470	120 (RMS)	Anywhere on the metallic part of the roof.	Transmitter, harness and antenna installation to the requirements of ISO/TS 21609.
TETRA TETRAPOL	380-390 410-420 450-460 806-825 870-876	20 (Peak)	Anywhere on the metallic part of the roof.	Transmitter, harness and antenna installation to the requirements of ISO/TS 21609.
4G	703-748	20 (Peak)	Mobile phone or tablet, using device antenna inside vehicle.	CE / FCC or equivalent marked device.



## Technical specifications

Service	Frequency band (MHz)	Max. Output (Watts)	Antenna position	Specific conditions
4G	832-862	20 (Peak)	Mobile phone or tablet, using device antenna inside vehicle.	CE / FCC or equivalent marked device.
GSM 850	824-849	20 (Peak)	Mobile phone or tablet, using device antenna inside vehicle.	CE / FCC or equivalent marked device.
GSM 900	876-915	20 (Peak)	Mobile phone or tablet, using device antenna inside vehicle.	CE / FCC or equivalent marked device.
23 cm	1200-1300	25 (RMS)	Mobile phone or tablet, using device antenna inside vehicle.	CE / FCC or equivalent marked device.
GSM 1800	1710-1785	2 (Peak)	Mobile phone or tablet, using device antenna inside vehicle.	CE / FCC or equivalent marked device.
GSM 1900	1850-1910	2 (Peak)	Mobile phone or tablet, using device antenna inside vehicle.	CE / FCC or equivalent marked device.
IMT-2000 (3G)	1885-2025	1 (Peak)	Mobile phone or tablet, using device antenna inside vehicle.	CE / FCC or equivalent marked device.
WiFi/ Bluetooth	2400-2500	1 (Peak)	Anywhere on the vehicle.	Transmitter, harness and antenna installation to the requirements of ISO/TS 21609.



## Technical specifications

Service	Frequency band (MHz)	Max. Output (Watts)	Antenna position	Specific conditions
4G	2496-2690	1 (Peak)	Mobile phone or tablet, using device antenna inside vehicle.	CE / FCC or equivalent marked device.
WiFi	4195-5825	1 (Peak)	Mobile phone or tablet, using device antenna inside vehicle.	CE / FCC or equivalent marked device.

### South Korea only

Omnidirectional transmission or point-to-multipoint transmission is prohibited according to the law.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2019

## ARRANGING A SERVICE

To make sure that the vehicle remains in first class order, visits to a retailer/ authorised repairer are required for routine servicing.

To help smooth this process:

- Arrange an appointment, unless it is an emergency. Give details of the vehicle and the nature of the work required. Where available, the retailer reviews the Online Service History (OSH) to determine the service required.

After arriving at the servicing premises:

- Give your name and address, and a phone number where you can be contacted during the day. Contact details are important if queries arise or additional work is found to be necessary.
- Explain, as fully as possible, the details of the service or repair required.

For information, it is also important to:

- Enquire whether the service or repair is chargeable and, if so, ask for details of any costs and confirm the preferred method of payment.
- Establish when the vehicle will be ready for collection. Alternatively, arrange a time and place for it to be delivered.

**Note:** Make sure that the retailer provides a copy of the latest OSH printout when the vehicle is returned. For markets where an OSH is unavailable, make sure the appropriate pages of the Service Record are correctly completed.

## SAFETY-RELATED DEFECTS (AUSTRALIA ONLY)

Motor manufacturers and distributors are bound by the uniform code of practice for the recall of motor vehicles and/or parts. They will check and repair, free of charge, any vehicles which are found to have a possible safety-related defect.

Jaguar Land Rover takes scrupulous care in making its vehicles safe for our roads. The chances of the vehicle being subject to a safety defect recall during its life are small.

However, should such an event occur that affects the model purchased, it is best to adhere to the advice given in any letter received from us. The advice given may involve a retailer carrying out a check on the vehicle. Contact a retailer and arrange an appointment as speedily as possible.

The retailer records the reference details of any work carried out on a decal. The decal is then affixed to the right-side, front A pillar, which forms part of the surround for the right-side front door aperture. Once fixed, this label must not be removed.

## ONLINE SERVICE HISTORY (OSH)

The Online Service History (OSH) system has been introduced to completely replace the stamping of 'Service Record' pages in owner literature. A vehicle's service history is now stored on a centralised system, which can be accessed and amended by a retailer/authorised repairer via the internet.



## Service

The OSH records every scheduled service event, and includes all those items that need to be inspected, or replaced, over extended periods.

Keeping to the recommended service intervals is important to help protect the on-going validity of the manufacturer's warranty. An up-to-date OSH provides the necessary proof of service should any warranty work be required.

After each scheduled and extended service visit, the retailer/authorised repairer updates the OSH for the vehicle. A printed copy of the complete record is also provided as proof that the required service has been performed.

As the OSH is securely stored for the life of the vehicle, it can be viewed online, at anytime. The OSH helps to enhance the vehicle's resale value and each subsequent owner will be able to obtain a service history they can trust. Any retailer/authorised repairer can produce an up-to-date OSH printout for the vehicle. The printout also contains details of how to register and view the vehicle's OSH.

For any questions regarding the OSH system, please contact a retailer/authorised repairer or the Land Rover distributor for the market. The distributor may also be contacted through the Land Rover internet site.

**Note:** OSH is not available in all markets. For these markets, a Service Record publication is provided. See **425, SERVICE RECORD**.

### SERVICE REQUIREMENTS

Routine services must be carried out throughout the life of the vehicle.

Traditionally, a service would be due after a vehicle has reached a certain mileage or elapsed time. The flexible service on your vehicle takes into account individual driving styles and conditions to determine when and what type of service is due.

The vehicle is fitted with a service interval indicator in the instrument panel. When a service is due, and when the ignition is switched on, the relevant service message and estimated distance or time to the next service is displayed. On completion of a service, the instrument panel countdown feature is reset.

The servicing schedules for arduous operating conditions are not displayed in the instrument panel. Refer to a retailer/authorised repairer for details.

### SERVICE CONTENT

The precise content of each service varies from model to model and also according to the age of the vehicle, the distance it has travelled, and whether an arduous service is applicable. The service operations applicable to the vehicle are listed on the maintenance check sheet used by the retailer/authorised repairer.

**Note:** Some service providers may use their own check sheet with differing levels of service operations. Usually the highest level matches Jaguar Land Rover Limited requirements.

### FLUID REPLACEMENT

Brake fluid and engine coolant (antifreeze and water solution) must be completely replaced at specific intervals. The retailer/authorised repairer replaces the fluids at the appropriate scheduled service.

**Note:** Replacement of fluids is subject to extra labour and material costs.

Some braking system components may also need to be replaced. The intervals are significantly longer than those in the interval plan and are indicated on the maintenance check sheet.

### ARDUOUS OPERATING CONDITIONS

When a vehicle is used in arduous conditions, more frequent attention must be paid to servicing requirements. Even daily attention may be necessary to make sure that continued safe and reliable operation of the vehicle is maintained.

Failure to adhere to the recommended service schedules may result in premature engine wear or damage, and may invalidate the warranty.

Some markets may have unique service requirements. Check with a retailer/authorised repairer or importer.

Arduous operating conditions include:

- No other use than short trips where the engine doesn't reach the normal operating temperature.
- Engine at idle for long periods and/or continuous low speed driving.
- Continuous operation at high vehicle speed and high engine load for long periods.
- Continuous operation at temperatures below -40°C or above +50°C.
- Frequent operation off-road or on rough roads at high engine speed and low vehicle speed.
- Frequent wading and/or driving on mud, snow and rocks.

- Frequent operation at high engine speed and low vehicle speed, such as heavy cargo transportation and towing.
- Continuous driving in mountainous conditions.
- Continuous operation under dusty or sandy conditions.

Contact a retailer/authorised repairer for advice.

### SERVICE RECORD

For markets where an Online Service History (OSH) is unavailable, the Service Record publication provides a record of the routine services carried out on the vehicle.

The information is important and could affect warranty entitlement. Always make sure that the appropriate record slip is stamped and signed on completion of each service.

### REPLACEMENT SERVICE RECORD

If the Service Record book is lost, and an Online Service History (OSH) is not available, a replacement publication can be ordered via the Internet at:

[www.jaguarlandroverliterature.com](http://www.jaguarlandroverliterature.com) or from a retailer/authorised repairer.



## Service

The replacement book is visibly different to the original version. The front cover and title page have the revised title. Page 2 explains why the replacement version is being used. Each internal page displays the caption **REPLACEMENT**. To counteract fraudulent attempts to recreate a vehicle's service history, original style books are not available for purchase. Remember to transfer the details recorded on the **Vehicle Details** page to the replacement book.

### END OF LIFE VEHICLE (ELV)

Within certain markets, Jaguar Land Rover has established a comprehensive plan to meet vehicle recycling requirements and End of Life Vehicle (ELV) legislation.

In accordance with applicable market directives and local legislation, Jaguar Land Rover takes back all on-sale vehicles and vehicle starter batteries, regardless of the date of a vehicle's first registration, at the end of their life. Items taken back are treated in an environmentally responsible manner.

To locate the nearest take back or recycling facility, and for information on terms and conditions, consult a retailer. Alternatively, visit: [www.landrover.com](http://www.landrover.com).

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2019

## Warranty

### OWNER'S RESPONSIBILITIES

Proper maintenance and use guard against major repair expenses.

Make sure to present the vehicle to an authorised repairer for any warranty repair as soon as possible after a defect is detected. This minimises the effect a defect has on the vehicle and the nature of the repair needed.

Make sure all documentation for completed maintenance or service works are retained with the vehicle.

### DATA PROTECTION STATEMENT

Jaguar Land Rover Limited respects the privacy of every individual. Information collected about you will be used to satisfy requests made by you, to fulfil contracts you have entered into, to inform you about new products and services, or to improve how we may serve you as a valued customer. The information will be treated in accordance with applicable data protection laws and the European Union EC Directive 95/46/EC. Information may be shared with Jaguar Land Rover and its affiliated or associated companies, its authorised retailers and repairers, agencies, and other companies providing services for your benefit.



We will not disclose your information to third parties, except as described above and as may be required by law. Should this happen, we will take steps to make sure that any third party companies who handle your information, comply with the relevant data protection laws. We may share generalised information about your behaviour patterns with partners or other parties on an anonymous basis and in such a way that neither you nor any individual customer can be identified.

Any personal information that you supply to Jaguar Land Rover Limited or its authorised retailers or repairers, will be held in encrypted electronic format on a secure computer server, to prevent unauthorised access by other people. We aim to make sure that the personal data stored will be up to date, relevant and not excessive, and that information is not retained longer than is necessary.

You have the right, at any time, to see what is held about you and to correct any inaccuracies or to withdraw from receiving any further communications from Jaguar Land Rover Limited and its affiliated or associated companies. Should you wish to do this, please contact a local retailer or (if different) the retailer from which the vehicle was purchased.

### QUALITY CHECKS

The vehicle has been quality checked throughout every stage of the manufacturing process. The final check was made by dedicated inspectors to make sure that the vehicle was built to the level of excellence required by Jaguar Land Rover Limited.



## Warranty

### WARRANTY AND CONSUMER LAW

This warranty is a manufacturer's supplementary warranty. It does not affect your legal rights under the vehicle purchase agreement with your selling authorised retailer. Nor does it affect your legal rights under applicable national legislation governing the sale of consumer goods.

#### Obtaining Warranty Assistance

Should the vehicle ever require attention under the warranty arrangements, simply contact the nearest authorised repairer.

#### Transfer of Warranty

Warranty benefits continue to apply regardless of any change of ownership.

### WARRANTY COVER WHEN TOURING

Jaguar Land Rover Limited has a comprehensive service network in most parts of the world. Any authorised repairer can carry out repairs under the Jaguar Land Rover warranty.

### MANUFACTURER'S WARRANTY

Should any part of the vehicle require repair or replacement as a result of a manufacturing defect, the part will be repaired or replaced completely free of charge by any Jaguar Land Rover authorised repairer, regardless of any change of vehicle ownership during the period of cover.

### REGIONAL WARRANTY

All new vehicles sold on or after 1st June 2018 will benefit from Jaguar Land Rover Regional Warranty. The vehicle is covered by the manufacturer's warranty terms in the region to which it was delivered by JLR for first sale as new through the JLR appointed network or other legally authorised sales outlet. Specifications and warranty may differ in other regions.

If the vehicle is to be registered or used in another region, further activation may be required, exclusions may apply and warranty conditions may be affected. For the purpose of warranty, regions are defined as USA, China, Europe & UK (excluding Turkey), Turkey, Russia, Overseas (including Japan), Australia & New Zealand, Africa, Middle East and North Africa, and Latin America. See a retailer/authorised repairer for further detail.

### MANUFACTURER'S WARRANTY TERMS

**Warranty Terms: 3 years or 100,000 km, whichever is sooner, or warranty period as advised at vehicle handover.**

In all cases of warranty repair carried out by a Jaguar Land Rover authorised repairer, genuine Jaguar Land Rover parts will be used. Any displaced parts become the property of Jaguar Land Rover Limited.

**Note:** Market legislation may overrule this.

All parts fitted during warranty repairs are covered for the balance of the original warranty period.



## Warranty

**Note:** Tyres are covered separately by the tyre manufacturer. A Jaguar Land Rover authorised retailer will, however, assist with any tyre issue.

### PAINT SURFACE WARRANTY

Should the paint surface of the vehicle body require attention due to a defect in material or applications, any necessary repairs will be performed completely free of charge by any Jaguar Land Rover authorised repairer, regardless of any change in vehicle ownership during the period of cover.

**Warranty Terms: as per the manufacturer's warranty but with no distance limitation.**

### CORROSION PROTECTION WARRANTY

Should any part of the bodywork of the vehicle be perforated by rust corrosion, the panel(s) affected by the perforation will be repaired or replaced by any Jaguar Land Rover authorised repairer, completely free of charge, regardless of any change in vehicle ownership.

**Warranty Terms: 6 years, unlimited distance.**

**Note:** The term perforation means a hole that penetrates through the bodywork, caused by corrosion from the inside to the outside or from the underside to the upper side, as a result of faulty manufacture or materials. For the purpose of this warranty, the term bodywork, is defined as metal panels, including doors, bonnet, engine and boot compartments, wings, sills, scuttles, roof, floor panel, frames and chassis members, but excluding attachments such as bright trim, bumpers, mouldings, hinges, and road wheels.

### PARTS AND ACCESSORIES WARRANTY

There is a separate parts warranty for genuine Jaguar Land Rover parts and accessories purchased. Should any genuine part or accessory require repair or replacement as a result of a material or manufacturing defect, the part or accessory will be repaired or replaced completely free of charge by any authorised retailer/repairer.

Where the part or accessory is being repaired or replaced under the terms of this warranty by an authorised retailer/repairer, no labour charge will be made for such repair or replacement. However, where the work is carried out by anyone other than an authorised retailer/repairer, no contribution will be made to labour charges.



## Warranty

**Note:** Genuine parts and accessories have been specifically designed to comply with Jaguar Land Rover safety and reliability standards. We, therefore, recommend that only genuine parts and accessories are used on the vehicle. Please be advised that non-genuine parts and accessories have neither been tested or approved by Jaguar Land Rover, and that, in spite of constant observation of the market, Jaguar Land Rover cannot evaluate their suitability and safety, neither isolated or when fitted to our vehicles.

### **Duration of the Genuine Jaguar Land Rover Parts and Accessories Warranty**

The warranty commences on the date of delivery of the part or vehicle accessory and is applicable for a period of 12 months or as per agreed local market legislation or the stated service life of the part or vehicle accessory, whichever occurs later. All parts or vehicle accessories fitted during warranty repairs are covered for the balance of the original warranty period.

**Note:** Genuine Jaguar Land Rover batteries are covered by a 3 year, unlimited distance warranty.

### **ACCESSORIES FITTED TO A NEW VEHICLE**

Genuine Jaguar Land Rover accessories, excluding gift items, fitted by an authorised retailer within 1 month or 1 600 km, whichever occurs first, of a new vehicle being sold will benefit from the same warranty terms and period of cover as the manufacturer's warranty.

### **EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM WARRANTY**

Jaguar Land Rover Limited warrants that its vehicles are designed, built, and equipped, so as to conform at the time of sale, with all emission standards applicable at the time of manufacture, and are free from defects in materials and workmanship that could cause them not to meet those standards.

During the emission control system warranty period, if the failure of any part covered by this emission control system warranty is not the result of a lack of maintenance or of misuse of the vehicle, it will be repaired, replaced, or adjusted without charge.

A retailer can advise warranty terms.

### **ACCIDENT DAMAGE REPAIR**

In the event of the vehicle requiring body repairs due to accident damage, a Jaguar Land Rover authorised repairer will make sure all repairs are carried out by a Jaguar Land Rover approved body repair centre. The body repair centre uses only Genuine Jaguar Land Rover approved parts, materials and repair techniques, making sure that warranty cover continues on the repaired body sections for the remaining period of the corrosion protection warranty.

### **ALUMINIUM BODY REPAIRS**

Some models incorporate the latest technology in aluminium body structure.

Specialist vehicle body and paint centres are provided with full technical support from Jaguar Land Rover.

## Warranty

The body and paint centres operate to high standards and have all the necessary tools and equipment essential to repair Jaguar Land Rover vehicles.

### WHAT IS NOT COVERED BY THE MANUFACTURER'S WARRANTY TERMS?

Jaguar Land Rover Limited offers no warranty and is **not** responsible for any repair or replacement to the vehicle, part or accessory that is required as a direct result of:

- Any modification to the vehicle, components, parts, or accessories, including any engine performance enhancement modifications, in particular, chip tuning, which are not authorised by Jaguar Land Rover Limited.
- Normal wear and tear. Includes brake pads, brake discs, and any other friction related components. The list is not exhaustive.
- Defects or damage caused as a result of the vehicle being used in motor sport events, or for any purpose other than normal, private, or commercial use.
- Damage resulting from neglect, accident, flooding, or improper use or fitting.
- Damage due to the failure of another part on the vehicle.
- Damage caused during maintenance.
- Failure to properly maintain the vehicle, part, or accessory, in accordance with Jaguar Land Rover maintenance schedules and service instructions.
- Failure to use Jaguar Land Rover specified parts, oils, lubricants, or fluids during a warranty repair, or parts of equivalent quality during an authorised retailer repair.

**Note:** Failure to use oils, lubricants, or fluids of the correct specification may result in mechanical failure and refusal by Jaguar Land Rover to pay for any resultant claims.

- The part or vehicle accessory covered by the parts warranty is damaged due to the failure of another part on the vehicle, except manufacturing defect.
- Failure of a non-approved part and/or the failure or misuse of a product or accessory not recommended by Jaguar Land Rover. Additionally, any consequential damage caused by the fitment or use of such parts, products, or accessories will not be covered by the Jaguar Land Rover vehicle or parts warranties.
- Any vehicle that has had its Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) altered or removed, or on which the odometer reading has been unlawfully changed.
- Refilling or topping up with the incorrect fuel, e.g., petrol used instead of diesel, or vice versa, or consequential damage from misfuelling.
- The vehicle, part, or accessory having been altered from Jaguar Land Rover specifications.
- Use of fuel specifications or alternative fuels which are not approved by Jaguar Land Rover for the vehicle.



## Warranty

- Use of supplemental additives and flushing agents for fuel or engine oil, unless specified as part of a Jaguar Land Rover service requirement.
- The vehicle, as manufactured, does not meet the operational specification of a market for which it was not specified, including any legal requirements or penalties imposed by Government or other authority.
- The effects of any vehicle modifications undertaken to comply with legal or local requirements of a market for which it was not specified, unless authorised by Jaguar Land Rover Limited.
- Factors beyond Jaguar Land Rover's control, such as environmental hazards, including but not limited to industrial fall-out, storm damage, acid rain, bird droppings, rodent damage, and damage including but not limited to stone chips, scratches, and use of unsuitable cleaning agents.
- Accident repairs using materials or methods of repair that have not been approved by Jaguar Land Rover Limited.
- Alterations of the vehicle from Jaguar Land Rover original specification.

**Note:** Where applicable, a Jaguar Land Rover authorised repairer may, at the customer's expense, carry out authorised modifications to meet legal or operational requirements of a market.

### WHAT IS NOT COVERED BY THE PAINT SURFACE WARRANTY AND CORROSION PROTECTION WARRANTY?

Jaguar Land Rover Limited is **not** responsible for any repair or replacement that is required as a direct result of the following:

- Failure to properly maintain paint and bodywork by regular cleaning in accordance with Jaguar Land Rover Limited instructions.
- Failure to promptly rectify any paint or corrosion damage.

### WHAT IS NOT COVERED BY SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE ITEMS?

During a normal scheduled service or maintenance operation, consumable items which are subject to adjustment or replacement are **not** covered by the warranty, unless work is required as a direct result of a manufacturing defect.

Parts that fall into this category for all models are:

- Lubricants.
- Oil filter.
- Fuel filter.
- Air filter.
- Pollen filter (where applicable).
- Drive belts.
- Spark plugs (petrol engines only).
- Smart key batteries. Not all models. Please check with an authorised retailer/repairer.

## Warranty

**Note:** *The Jaguar Land Rover warranty applies up to the first scheduled service change point of the particular item. The period of cover for any item will not exceed the time and mileage limitation of the manufacturer's warranty.*

### **Repair, replacements, and adjustments up to the first scheduled service**

Some parts that require repair, replacement, or adjustment, are recognised as having a limited service life. Such parts are warranted against manufacturing defects for a period of up to and including the first scheduled service or 12 months, whichever occurs first.

Parts and adjustments that fall into this category for all models are:

- Wiper blades.
- Smart key batteries. Check with an authorised retailer/repairer.
- All light bulbs, interior and exterior. Except for, xenon headlight bulbs and fascia and instrumentation illumination, which are covered for the full duration of the manufacturer's warranty.
- Adjustments, including but not limited to: headlight and hinged panel adjustments, suspension tightening, steering geometry adjustments, emission and fuel system checks, lubrication and Electric Parking Brake (EPB) cable adjustments, wheel alignment, and wheel balancing.

**Note:** *Brake pads, brake discs, and any other friction related components are covered against manufacturing defects for the duration of the manufacturer's warranty.*

### **OTHER EXCLUSIONS**

Jaguar Land Rover warranties exclude liability for any lost time, inconvenience, loss of transportation, or any other incidental or consequential damage that you (or anyone else) may incur as a result of a defect covered by the warranties.



## Roadside assistance

### ROADSIDE ASSISTANCE

The roadside assistance programme provides assistance in motoring emergencies, from immobilisation due to breakdown or accident, to minor emergencies such as punctures. The benefits of the roadside assistance programme are available throughout the Manufacturer's Warranty period.

#### Contact Numbers

To contact Land Rover Assistance, call the number corresponding to the country where the vehicle was first registered:

Country	Phone number
Australia.	1800 819 181.
Austria.	0800 500 806. If outside Austria +43 1 503 0 806.
Bahrain.	800 00212. If outside Bahrain +9714 332 2234.
Belarus.	882000 718081.
Belgium.	0800 92 291. If outside Belgium +32 3 253 6045.
Croatia.	0800 1002. If outside Croatia +385 1 4693 791.
Czech Republic.	+420 261 000 557.
Denmark.	+45 70 266 566.
Egypt.	0800 755 5555 / (02) 24047905. If outside Egypt +9714 332 2234.
Estonia.	+372 69 79 163.
Finland.	+358 800 13 700.

Country	Phone number
France.	+33 1 70 94 11 11.
Germany.	00800 15263 76837. If outside Germany +49 89 7676 3498.
Gibraltar.	900 314 195. If outside Gibraltar +34 915 949 383.
Greece.	+210 65 04 043!
Hungary.	+36 1 345 1754.
India.	1800 103 8545.
Italy.	800 557 999. If outside Italy +39 02 58 286 768.
Jordan.	0777 777 313. If outside Jordan +9714 332 2234.
Kazakhstan.	8800 2008081.
Korea (South).	080 337 9696.
Kuwait.	222 462 17. If outside Kuwait +9714 332 2234.
Latvia.	+371 67 11 22 10.
Lebanon.	(01) 806 690. If outside Lebanon +9714 332 2234.
Lithuania.	+370 52 499 006.
Luxembourg.	+32 3 253 6045.
Morocco.	0801 003 738. If outside Morocco +9714 332 2234.
Netherlands.	0800 555 0777. If outside Netherlands +31 592 390 558.
Norway.	+47 22 65 12 00.

## Roadside assistance

Country	Phone number
Oman.	800 73636. If outside Oman +9714 332 2234.
Poland.	0801 777 980. If outside Poland +48 61 83 19 980.
Portugal.	+351 219 429 116.
Qatar.	44 607 550. If outside Qatar +9714 332 2234.
Republic Of Ireland (R.O.I.).	1 800 456 999. If outside R.O.I +353 1 617 9560.
Romania.	+40 21 322 7535.
Russia.	8800 2008081. If outside Russia +74957 778536.
Saudi Arabia.	800 897 1431. If outside Saudi Arabia +9714 332 2234.
Slovakia.	+421 2 492 05 971.
Slovenia.	080 1 457. If outside Slovenia +386 1 5305 357.
South Africa.	0861 572 774 78. If outside South Africa +271 199 187 65.
Spain.	900 314 195. If outside Spain +34 915 949 383.
Sweden.	+46 771 99 54 00.
Switzerland.	+41 62 788 85 31.
Tunisia.	79 399 007. If outside Tunisia +9714 332 2234.

Country	Phone number
Turkey.	0850 755 0 557.
Ukraine.	+380 44 494 2951.
United Arab Emirates (UAE).	800 4647. If outside UAE +9714 332 2234.
United Kingdom.	0800 521 786. If outside UK +44 1926 320 003.
US Diplomatic and Military vehicles in Europe.	If inside Germany 0800 526 7687. If outside Germany +49 89 74 3285 427.

Please have the following information to hand:

- Name.
- Location.
- Registration number or Vehicle Identification Number (VIN).
- A brief description of the incident.
- A contact telephone number.

If the vehicle has been involved in a road traffic accident, describe the extent of the damage and provide details of any third parties involved.

### GENERAL CONDITIONS

Financial limitations may apply in some cases. Please refer to the owner section of [www.landrover.com](http://www.landrover.com) for further details.



## Roadside assistance

The participating countries in Europe are: Andorra, Austria, Belgium, Croatia, Czech Republic, Denmark (excluding the Faeroe Islands), Estonia, Finland (excluding Aland), France, Germany, Gibraltar, Greece, Hungary, Italy, Latvia, Liechtenstein, Lithuania, Luxembourg, Monaco, Netherlands, Norway, Poland, Portugal, Republic of Ireland, San Marino, Slovakia, Slovenia, Spain (including the Balearic Islands and Canary Islands), Sweden, Switzerland, and Turkey.

The participating countries in Middle East and North Africa (MENA) are: Bahrain, Egypt, Jordan, Kuwait, Lebanon, Morocco, Oman, Qatar, Saudi Arabia, Tunisia, and United Arab Emirates.

All calls to Land Rover Assistance are recorded to assist in confirming details of calls that may be incomplete or unclear. Recordings may be used for training purposes.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2019



## Index

- 2-stage unlocking.....12
- 4x4i
- 4WD information.....199
  - vehicle dimensions.....200
  - 4WD information drive assist.....201
  - 4WD information low traction launch.....200
  - 4WD information wade sensing.....202
  - 4WD off-road features and information.....198
  - off-road information
    - terrain response information.....199
- 4x4i 4 wheel drive information.....200
- 4x4i safety.....202
- A**
- About this handbook.....2
- ACC
- follow mode off.....169
  - performance.....167
- Accessories.....338
- tow ball.....132
- Activity key
- unlocking.....13
- Adaptive cruise control.....165
- adaptive cruise control gap change.....169
  - follow mode performance.....170
  - queue assist.....170
  - steering assist performance.....172
  - stop and go.....171
- Adaptive cruise control follow mode.....168
- Adaptive cruise control override.....168
- Adaptive cruise control with steering assist.....171
- Adaptive driving beam.....89
- Adaptive dynamics.....148
- Adaptive front lighting system.....89
- Adaptive headlamps.....89
- Adaptive speed limiter warning lamp...79
- AdBlue.....327
- Advanced tow assist
- trailer reverse.....123
- Aeb
- low speed.....176
- Age degradation (tyres).....376
- Airbag
- knee bolster.....64
  - pedestrian system.....65
  - safety locations.....63
- Airbags
- cover cleaning.....347
  - curtain.....64
  - deployment.....60–61
  - disability modifications.....62
  - disabling.....64
  - front.....63
  - introduction.....60
  - maintenance.....338
  - obstruction.....60
  - repacking the pedestrian airbag....404
  - safety.....60
  - service information.....62
  - side.....64
  - warning lamp.....61, 79
- Airbag safety labels.....52
- Air conditioning
- air quality sensor.....252
  - air vents.....256
  - automatic recirculation.....251
  - front.....249
  - remote control batteries.....262
  - using the remote control.....261
- Air conditioning (a/c)
- fluid top up.....335
- Alarm.....338
- automatic relocking and arming.....23
  - battery back-up sounder.....24
  - deactivating.....27
  - tilt sensor.....24
- All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC)
- descent control mode.....188
  - full function mode.....188
- All terrain progress control (ATPC)
- overview
  - settings.....186–188



## Index

- switching on and off.....186
  - Amber exhaust fluid warning lamp.....80
  - Anchor points (luggage).....114
  - Android auto
    - incontrol.....318
  - Anti-lock braking system
    - emergency stop signal.....151
  - Anti-lock braking system (ABS) warning lamp.....79
  - Anti-theft system.....338
  - Anti-trap protection
    - windows.....105
  - Apple CarPlay
    - incontrol.....318
  - ARLA 32.....327
  - Assistance 24.....434
  - Assistance contact numbers.....434
  - Assisted steering
    - adaptive cruise control.....171
  - ATPC
    - using.....186–188
  - Audio
    - AM/FM radio controls.....230
    - automatic station retune.....232
    - changing portable media device.....242
    - DAB radio
      - controls.....233
      - settings.....234
    - full screen view.....245
    - licensing.....227–228
    - media controls.....224
    - portable media connections.....236
    - portable media controls.....239
    - portable media pairing.....241
    - settings.....225
    - sound settings.....226
    - TV controls.....246
  - Audio settings.....225
  - AUS 32.....327
  - Auto lamps
    - wiper detection.....87
  - Automatic locking.....15, 23
  - Automatic speed limiter
    - warning lamp.....81
  - Automatic transmission.....145
    - gear shift warning lamp.....82
  - Auto program.....192
  - Auto start.....142
  - Auto stop.....142
  - Auto zoom (navigation).....297
  - Auxiliary device connection.....241
  - Auxiliary heater.....258
  - Auxiliary power sockets.....109
- ## B
- Battery
    - boost starting.....357
    - care.....355
    - charging.....358
    - connecting jump leads.....356
    - disconnection.....359
    - effects of disconnection.....359
    - maintenance.....355
    - monitoring system.....359
    - removing.....358
    - replacing.....358
    - using a starting aid.....357
    - warning lamp.....77
    - warning symbols.....355
  - Battery back-up sounder.....24
  - Belts
    - seat.....49
  - Blind
    - resetting the roof blind.....343
  - Blinds
    - rear window.....104
    - side windows.....104
  - Blind spot monitor
    - closing vehicle sensing.....180
    - closing vehicle sensing
      - performance.....180
  - Bluetooth
    - compatibility.....283
    - general information.....289
    - pairing
      - via the phone.....283

## Index

- phone  
   icons.....285  
   safety.....280  
 portable media  
   pairing.....241  
 Bluetooth phone  
   call volume.....286  
   overview.....280  
   steering wheel controls.....285  
 Bonnet  
   closing.....340  
   opening.....340  
 Booster seats for larger children.....51  
 Boost starting.....357  
 Brake assist.....83  
 Brakes  
   ABS warning lamp.....79  
   control with ABS.....149  
   electronic brake force distribution...150  
   emergency brake assist.....149  
   emergency stop signal.....151  
   fluid  
     specification.....353  
     top up.....353  
   fluid level.....352  
   handbrake.....150  
   important information.....149  
   parking brake warning lamp.....78  
   steep slope control.....149  
   warning lamp (amber).....79  
   warning lamp (red).....77  
   Brake temperature.....156  
 Braking  
   AEB.....174  
   engine stop on the move.....143  
   low speed aeb.....176  
   low speed aeb limitations.....177  
 Braking systems  
   AEB.....175  
   aEBA.....177  
   aEBA performance.....177  
   AEB performance.....176  
   collision avoidance.....173  
   high-speed emergency braking.....178  
   high-speed emergency braking  
     performance.....178  
 Bulbs  
   changing a bulb.....342  
**C**  
 Cameras  
   forward traffic detection.....182  
   forward vehicle guidance.....278  
   hitch assist.....121  
   proximity view.....276  
   rear camera.....275  
   reverse traffic detection.....183  
   touch screen menu.....276  
 Capacities.....411  
 Care points  
   driving aids.....204  
   speed limiter.....158  
 Cargo net  
   loadspace.....112  
 Carpets and mats.....348  
 Car-wash.....344  
 CD player  
   portable media pairing.....241  
 Cell phone  
   call volume.....286  
   icons.....285  
   overview.....280  
   steering wheel controls.....285  
 Changing a bulb.....342  
 Changing a fuse.....361  
 Changing a wheel  
   locking wheel nuts.....397  
   recommended process.....398  
   safety warnings.....391  
   spare wheel.....394  
   temporary spare wheel.....397  
   tool kit.....392  
 Charging the vehicle battery.....358  
 Chassis number.....407  
 Check engine warning lamp.....80  
 Child information safety.....52



## Index

Child safety	
booster seats.....	51
check list.....	51
ISOFIX installation.....	56
larger children on booster seats.....	51
lock and window inhibitor.....	52
positioning.....	50
recommended child seats.....	59
tether straps.....	57
Child safety tables.....	53
Child seats	
introduction.....	50
overview.....	50
Child seat tables.....	53
Cleaning	
after off-road driving.....	345
airbag covers.....	347
alloy wheels.....	345
automatic car wash.....	344
carpets and mats.....	348
engine compartment.....	345
exterior.....	344
glass.....	345
interior.....	346
leather.....	346
park assist sensors.....	344
parking aids sensors.....	344
rear screen.....	346
seat belts.....	347
sensors and cameras.....	344
under body.....	345
using a car-wash.....	344
washer jets.....	348
wipers.....	348
Cleaning the wiper blades.....	348
Clear exit detection.....	25
Climate	
temperature, differentiation.....	263
Climate and comfort	
fuel burning heater.....	258
remote control batteries.....	262
timed climate remote controls.....	262
using the remote control.....	261
Climate and comfort settings.....	251
Climate control	
air vents.....	256
automatic recirculation.....	251
climate seats.....	257
front.....	249
fuel burning heater.....	258
heated seats.....	257
rear.....	252
remote control batteries.....	262
seat comfort.....	256
timed climate remote controls.....	262
using the remote control.....	261
Climate settings.....	251
Clock	
setting the time and date	
general settings.....	221
Closing the bonnet.....	340
Clutch	
fluid level.....	352
Collision avoidance	
AEB.....	174–175
aEBA.....	177
aEBA performance.....	177
AEB performance.....	176
blind spot assist.....	181
blind spot assist performance.....	181
blind spot monitor.....	179
blind spot monitor performance.....	179
closing vehicle sensing.....	180
closing vehicle sensing	
performance.....	180
forward alert.....	174
forward alert sensitivity.....	174
forward traffic detection.....	182
high-speed emergency braking.....	178
high-speed emergency braking	
performance.....	178
reverse traffic detection.....	183
Comfort program.....	192
Commandshift.....	145, 147
Commute feature.....	305
Condensation (headlamps).....	88

- Configurable dynamics.....195
- Conformity declarations.....
- Connected navigation.....302
- Connected services.....302
- Connecting jump leads.....356
- Connectivity
- connecting a sim card.....322
  - mobile data connectivity.....320
  - overview.....320
  - status icons.....322
  - wi-Fi connectivity.....321
- Controls
- adaptive speed limiter.....160
  - speed limiter.....159
- Controls cleaning.....346
- Convenience mode.....15
- Coolant
- checking the level.....351
  - specification.....351
  - top up.....351
- Country of manufacture.....408
- Courtesy delay.....86
- Covers
- refitting.....341
  - removal.....341
- Critical warning messages.....77
- Cruise control.....162
- adaptive.....166
  - adaptive cruise control.....165
  - adaptive cruise control gap change.....169
  - stop and go.....171
  - warning lamp.....81
- Cruise control safety.....164
- Curtain airbags.....64
- D**
- DAB radio
- settings.....234
- DAB radio controls.....233
- Data recording.....405–406
- Daytime running lamps.....86
- DCM performance.....207
- Declarations of conformity.....
- DEF.....327
- DEF warning lamp.....78, 80
- Descent control mode
- ATPC operation.....188
  - steep descent driving.....188
- Descent driving
- HDC operation.....155
- Detachable tow ball.....125
- removing.....126
- Device charger
- wireless.....110
- Diesel
- anti misfuel device active.....332
  - fuel.....326
  - glow plugs
    - warning lamp.....81  - misfuel device passive.....333
  - sulphur content.....327
  - water in fuel.....330
- Diesel engines.....330
- Diesel particulate filter (DPF)
- sulphur content.....327
- Differentiation
- temperature, climate.....263
- Dimensions.....417
- Dipped beam
- warning lamps.....81
- Direction indicators.....85, 90
- warning lamp.....82
- Disability modifications
- airbags.....62
- Disabling the passenger airbag.....64
- Displays.....348
- Door mirrors.....97
- Door to door routing.....304
- Door transceiver
- assistance.....102
  - erase all programming.....102
  - programming.....100
  - programming a single button.....102
  - programming the garage door opener.....100
- Double locking.....22



## Index

- Downloading from the internet
  - InControl hotspot.....321
- DPF.....78, 80, 82, 336
- Drive assist
  - 4x4i 4 wheel drive information.....201
- Drive away locking.....15
- Driver drowsiness performance.....207
- Driver exit
  - deactivating intelligent stop/start....143
- Driver fatigue monitoring.....207
- Driver modes
  - comfort program.....192
- Driving
  - activating intelligent stop/start.....142
  - adaptive cruise control.....165
  - adaptive cruise control gap
    - change.....169
    - after a collision.....404
    - after deployment of the pedestrian protection system.....404
    - before starting.....404
  - brake control with ABS.....149
  - brakes important information.....149
  - daily checks.....336
  - deactivating intelligent stop/start....143
  - DSC active warning lamp.....80
  - DSC configurable modes.....195
  - electronic brake force distribution...150
  - emergency brake assist.....149
  - emergency stop signal.....151
  - follow mode.....168
  - fuel filler information.....331
  - gear shift warning lamp.....82
  - lane departure warning lamp
    - (green).....82
    - lane departure warning lamp (red)....78
  - low oil pressure.....78
  - overriding ACC.....168
  - queue assist (adaptive cruise control).....170
  - rain sensor.....95
  - running-in.....335
  - sitting correctly.....32
  - steep slope control with ABS.....149
  - switching follow mode off.....169
  - using cruise control.....162
  - weekly checks.....336
- Driving abroad
  - beam pattern.....88
  - headlamps.....88
- Driving aids
  - collision avoidance.....173
  - forward alert.....174
  - lane departure warning.....204
  - traffic sign recognition.....207
- Driving aids safety.....204
- Driving assist.....206
- Driving behaviour.....207
- Driving downhill
  - HDC.....155
- Driving downhill set speed
  - HDC.....156
- Driving icons
  - touchscreen.....215
- Driving programs
  - auto.....192
  - description applicability.....191
  - dynamic program.....194
  - grass gravel snow.....192
  - mud/ruts.....192
  - override options.....196
  - sand.....193
  - switching on and off.....191
  - system difficulties.....196
- Driving terrain conditions
  - program choice.....191
  - program switching on and off.....191
- Drowsiness monitoring.....207
- Dynamic program.....194
- Dynamic stability control (DSC).....152
  - configurable.....195
  - DSC active warning lamp.....80
  - DSC off warning lamp.....80
  - switching off.....152
  - switching on.....153

- E**
- Eco program
    - fuel saving.....193
  - Effects of battery disconnection.....359
  - Electric parking brake.....150
  - Electric seats.....31
    - position memory.....33
    - restricted front seat travel.....32
  - Electric windows
    - operation.....104
  - Electronic brake force distribution....150
  - Electronic data.....405
  - Electronic traction control (ETC).....154
  - Email
    - InControl hotspot.....321
  - Emergency brake assist.....149, 177
  - Emergency brake assist
    - performance.....177
  - Emergency braking.....175, 178
    - low speed.....176
  - Emergency braking limitations.....177
  - Emergency braking
    - performance.....176, 178
  - Emergency call.....313–315
  - Emergency key blade.....9
  - Emergency key locking.....27
  - Emergency stop signal.....151
    - hazard warning lamps.....151
  - Engine
    - antifreeze level.....351
    - coolant level.....351
    - diesel.....330
    - diesel fuel.....326
    - engine compartment
      - poisonous fluids.....339
    - oil level.....350
    - petrol fuels.....325
    - specifications.....409
    - switching off.....138
  - Engine compartment cleaning.....345
  - Engine pre-heater
    - antifreeze.....141
    - cold starting.....141
    - connecting to mains supply.....141
  - Engine starting.....138
    - failure to start.....140
  - Engine starting safety.....138
  - Engine stop on the move.....143
  - Engine temperature warning lamp.....78
  - Entering the vehicle
    - activity key.....13
    - global opening.....15
    - keyless entry.....13
    - passive entry.....13
    - smart key.....9
    - unlocking mode.....12
    - unlocking the steering column.....44
  - ERA glonass.....314
  - Ethanol.....326
  - Event data recording.....405
  - Exhaust emissions.....342
  - Exhaust filter.....78, 80, 82, 327, 336
  - Exhaust fluid
    - diesel.....327
  - Exiting the vehicle
    - arming the alarm.....27
    - clear exit detection.....25
    - closing mislock.....26
    - door locks and handles.....25
    - double locking.....22
    - emergency locking.....27
    - global closing.....24
    - interior locks.....25
    - keyless locking.....23
    - lock confirmation.....23
    - single locking.....22
  - Exterior cleaning.....344
  - Exterior lamps
    - bulb changing.....342
  - Exterior lights
    - overview.....84
  - Exterior mirrors
    - electric.....97
    - manual.....97
    - mirror dip when reversing.....98



## Index

External temperature	
warning lamp.....	80
Extinguisher.....	343
Extra feature.....	198
Extra feature 4x4i	
4WD off-road features and	
information.....	198
<b>F</b>	
Fatigue monitoring.....	207
Feature icons	
touchscreen.....	215
Filler locations.....	349
Fire extinguisher.....	343
Flat spots.....	375
Fluids	
air conditioning (a/c) fluid.....	335
brake	
check.....	352
specification.....	353
top up.....	353
capacities.....	411
clutch check.....	352
coolant	
specification.....	351
top up.....	351
engine oil	
check.....	350
filler locations.....	349
oil	
top up.....	350
specifications.....	410
washer fluid.....	354
check.....	354
specification.....	354
Fog lamps	
warning lamps	
front.....	82
rear.....	81
Following another vehicle.....	168
Follow mode	
gap change.....	169
gap changing.....	169
off.....	83
Follow mode off.....	169
Follow mode override.....	168
Forward alert sensitivity.....	174
Forward traffic monitor.....	182
Front airbags.....	63
Front climate control	
automatic recirculation.....	251
Front knee bolster airbag.....	64
Front towing eye.....	401
Fuel and refuelling.....	331
anti misfuel device active.....	332
consumption.....	334
diesel.....	326
diesel fuel sulphur content.....	327
ethanol.....	326
fuel filler.....	331
fuel filler flap.....	331
identification of correct fuel, Fuel	
label.....	332
methanol.....	326
methyl tertiary butyl ether (MTBE).....	326
misfuel device passive.....	333
octane rating.....	325
petrol.....	325
running out.....	329
safety precautions.....	325
tank capacity.....	334
water in fuel.....	330
Fuel burning heater.....	258
Fuel can.....	329
Fuel consumption.....	334
Fuel filler flap.....	331
Fuel filter information.....	331
Fuel label.....	332
Fuel saving	
eco program.....	193
Fuel system.....	342
Full function mode	
ATPC operation.....	188
low speed driving.....	188
Full screen view for video.....	245
Fuses	
changing.....	361



## Index

- engine compartment fuse box.....362  
 loadspace fuse box.....366  
 locations.....361  
 luggage compartment.....366  
 passenger compartment fuse box...364
- G**
- Garage door opener.....100  
   assistance.....102  
   erase all programming.....102  
   programming.....100  
   programming a single button.....102  
 Garage door transceiver.....100  
 Gearbox  
   automatic.....145  
   emergency park release.....402  
   gear shift warning lamp.....82  
   limp home mode.....147  
   manual.....147  
 Glass cleaning.....345  
 Global closing.....24  
 Global icons  
   touchscreen.....216  
 Global opening.....15  
 Glow plugs  
   warning lamp.....81  
 GPF.....78, 80, 82, 336  
 Gradient release control  
   ascent brake release.....156  
 Grass gravel snow.....192
- H**
- Handbook symbols.....2  
 Handbrake.....150  
 Hazard warning lamps  
   emergency stop signal.....151  
 HDC  
   select set speed.....156  
   switching on and off.....155  
 Headlamps.....85  
   adaptive.....89  
   adaptive driving beam.....89  
   auto high beam assist warning  
   lamp.....83  
   beam pattern.....88  
   bulb changing.....342  
   condensation.....88  
   courtesy delay.....86  
   daytime running lamps.....86  
   driving abroad.....88  
   high beam assist.....86  
   high beam assist warning lamp.....83  
   high beam warning lamp.....83  
   levelling.....88  
   washers.....96  
 Headlight  
   washers.....96  
 Head restraint overview.....41  
 Head restraints  
   front seats.....41  
   rear seats.....42  
 Head restraint warnings.....41  
 Head up display.....73  
 Heated steering wheel.....44  
 Heating and ventilation  
   air quality sensor.....252  
   air vents.....256  
   automatic recirculation.....251  
   climate seats.....257  
   front.....249  
   heated seats.....257  
   rear.....252  
 High beam assist.....86  
 Hill brake.....83  
 Hill descent control  
   brake release control.....156  
   brake temperature.....156  
   warning lamp.....82  
 Hill descent control (HDC)  
   switching on and off.....155  
 Hill descent control (HDC) settings  
   set speed adjustments.....156  
 Hitch assist  
   cameras.....121  
 Homelink.....100  
   assistance.....102  
   erase all programming.....102



## Index

- programming.....100
- programming a single button.....102
- programming the garage door opener.....100
- Hooks
  - removable.....113
- I
- Identification of correct fuel.....332
- IEB.....178
- Ignition
  - rolling restart.....139
  - switching on.....139
- Important points
  - engine starting.....138
- InControl
  - android auto.....318
  - apple CarPlay.....318
  - overview.....309
  - safety warnings.....309
  - secure.....315–316
- Incontrol
  - smart settings.....316
  - wi-fi hotspot.....321
- InControl live apps.....316
- InControl protect account.....310
- InControl remote account.....310
- InControl remote smartphone app.....311
- InControl smartphone apps.....311
- InControl warnings.....309
- Indicator lamps.....75, 90
- Indicators.....90
- Indicators warning lamp.....82
- Information
  - child safety.....52
- Information messages.....71, 81
- Infotainment
  - automatic station retune.....232
  - connecting a media device.....238
  - DAB radio
    - settings.....234
  - DAB radio controls.....233
  - full screen view.....245
  - importing/ripping media.....243
  - licensing.....228
  - lower touch screen
    - home menu.....212
  - media controls.....224
  - media player controls.....244
  - portable media
    - changing.....242
    - connecting multiple devices.....241
    - connections.....236
    - controls.....239
    - pairing.....241
  - radio controls.....230
  - settings.....225
  - sound settings.....226
  - touch screen
    - care.....218
    - extra features.....219
    - home menu.....210
    - my home screen.....214
    - operating.....218
    - TV controls.....246
  - instrument panel.....67, 348
  - head up display.....73
  - lamp test.....77
  - menu.....69
    - driving features.....69
    - instrument display.....69
    - trip computer.....69
    - vehicle set-up.....69
  - recommended tyre pressures.....381
  - service indicator.....72
  - tyre pressure check.....381
  - warning lamps.....76
  - warning messages.....71
- Instrument panel menu
  - navigation information.....301
- Intelligent emergency braking.....178
- Intelligent stop/start.....142
  - activating.....142
  - deactivating.....143
- Intelligent stop/start inhibit lamp.....83
- Intelligent stop/start warning lamp.....81, 83

## Index

Interior	
smart mirror.....	98
Interior cleaning.....	346
airbag covers.....	347
carpets and mats.....	348
Interior lamps.....	91
bulb changing.....	342
intensity.....	92
interior mood lighting.....	92
types.....	91
Interior locking.....	25
Internet browsing	
InControl hotspot.....	321
ISOFIX installation.....	56
<b>J</b>	
Jump starting	
connecting a starting aid.....	357
connecting jump leads.....	356
<b>K</b>	
Keyless entry.....	13
Keyless locking.....	23
Keyless start backup.....	139
Key transmitters.....	15
<b>L</b>	
Label locations.....	407
Labels	
warning safety.....	52
Lamps.....	85
auto lamps wiper detection.....	87
bulb changing.....	342
condensation.....	88
test.....	77
TPMS warning lamp.....	81
warning lamps.....	76
Lane departure warning.....	204
Lane departure warning lamp (green).....	82
Lane departure warning lamp (red).....	78
Lane drifting.....	206
Lane keep assist.....	171
LDW performance.....	205
Leather cleaning.....	346
Levelling	
headlamps.....	88
Licensing	
audio/video.....	227
Lighting	
interior lamps intensity.....	92
interior lamps locations.....	91
interior mood lighting.....	92
Limitations	
adaptive cruise control.....	167
adaptive speed limiter.....	161
AEB.....	176
aEBA.....	177
blind spot assist.....	181
blind spot monitor.....	179
closing vehicle sensing.....	180
cruise control.....	163
driver condition monitor.....	207
follow mode.....	170
high-speed emergency braking.....	178
IEB.....	178
lane departure warning.....	205
lane keep assist.....	206
low speed aeb.....	177
speed limiter.....	159
traffic sign recognition.....	208
Limiter performance.....	159
adaptive speed limiter.....	161
Limiting vehicle speed.....	159
Limp home mode.....	147
Live.....	316
LKA performance.....	206
Load carriers	
roof mounted.....	112
Load carrying	
removable loadspace hooks.....	113
securing a load.....	111
Loadspace	
partition.....	112
Load securing.....	114
Loadspace cover.....	111
Location of manufacture.....	408



## Index

- Locations  
airbag safety.....63
- Locking  
automatic relocking.....23  
confirmation.....23  
door locks and handles.....25  
double locking.....22  
drive away.....15  
emergency locking.....27  
global closing.....24  
in an emergency.....27  
keyless.....23  
mislock.....26  
single.....22  
transmitter effects on medical devices.....15  
with the emergency key.....27
- Locking the vehicle  
smart key.....9
- Locking wheel nuts.....397
- Low beam.....83
- Low fuel warning lamp.....81
- Low oil pressure warning lamp.....78
- Low speed cruise control  
switching on and off.....186
- Low traction launch  
4x4i 4 wheel drive information.....200
- Lubricants specifications.....410
- Luggage  
loadspace area.....111
- Luggage compartment  
anchor points.....114  
loadspace cover.....111
- M**
- Maintenance  
after off-road driving.....345  
air conditioning (a/c).....335  
brake fluid level.....352  
bulb changing.....342  
capacities.....411  
changing a fuse.....361  
checking tyre pressure after a repair.....389  
cleaning  
alloy wheels.....345  
exterior.....344  
glass.....345  
interior.....346  
leather.....346  
rear screen.....346  
seat belts.....347  
sensors and cameras.....344  
the engine compartment.....345  
under body.....345  
closing the bonnet.....340  
clutch fluid level.....352  
daily checks.....336  
engine compartment fuse box.....362  
engine coolant level.....351  
engine oil level.....350  
fuel system.....342  
fuse box (passenger compartment).....364  
jump starting.....357  
label locations.....407  
loadspace fuse box.....366  
lubricants and fluid specifications...410  
oil top up.....350  
paintwork repair.....348  
running-in.....335  
smart key battery.....20  
tyre repair procedure.....386  
tyre repair system.....384  
using a starting aid.....357  
washer fluid level.....354  
weekly checks.....336
- Maintenance safety.....339
- Manual seats.....30
- Map  
auto zoom.....297  
split screen.....297  
updates.....300
- Massage seats.....258
- Master PIN.....221
- Media  
automatic station retune.....232

## Index

- portable media
  - connecting a media device.....238
  - importing/ripping media.....243
- radio controls.....230
- safety.....223
- video media player controls.....244
- Media controls.....224
  - side panel.....211
- Media shortcut icons
  - touchscreen home.....216
- Memory seats.....33
- Methanol.....326
- Minor paintwork repairs.....348
- Mirrors
  - blind spot assist.....181
  - blind spot assist performance.....181
  - blind spot monitor.....179
  - blind spot monitor performance.....179
  - dip when reversing.....98
  - exterior mirrors.....97
  - interior mirror.....98
  - rear view mirror.....98
- Misfuel device active.....332
- Misfuel device passive.....333
- Monitor
  - blind spot.....179
  - seat belts.....49
- Monitoring driver behaviour.....207
- Mpg.....334
- Mud/ruts.....192
- My commute.....305
- N**
  - Navigation
    - address entry.....294
    - adjusting the volume.....298
    - alerts.....299
    - edit route.....298
    - favourites.....300
    - fuel finder.....301
    - fuel prices service.....305
    - instrument panel view.....301
    - main menu
      - places.....295
    - search.....294
    - map
      - auto zoom.....297
      - split screen.....297
      - updates.....300
    - menu.....292
    - online routing.....303
    - operating.....291
    - places.....295
    - real time traffic flow.....303
    - safety cameras.....305
    - satellite view.....304
    - search.....294
    - share.....304
    - side panel.....211
    - view options.....299
  - Navigation account.....306
  - Navigation assistance.....301
  - Navigation commute.....305
  - Navigation feature settings.....298
  - Navigation help.....301
  - Navigation introduction.....290
  - Navigation online search.....303
  - Navigation pro account.....306
  - Navigation safety warnings.....290
  - Navigation settings menu.....298
  - Navigation shortcut icons
    - touchscreen home.....216
  - Navigation street views.....304
  - Navigation system.....290
  - Navigation system features.....290
  - Navigation system limitations.....291
  - Navigation system performance.....291
  - Navigation troubleshooting.....291
  - Navigation tutorials.....301
  - Navigation user profile.....305
  - Navigation voice.....302
  - Navigation voice commands.....302
  - Navigation voicetags.....302
  - Navigation warnings.....290
  - News
    - side panel.....211



## Index

<b>O</b>	
Obstructing the airbag.....	60
Occupant safety	
airbag safety.....	60
child seat safety.....	50
child seat tether straps.....	57
cleaning seat belts.....	347
recommended child seats.....	59
seat belt checks.....	48
seat belt pre-tensioners.....	49
seat belt reminder warning.....	48
seat belt safety.....	46
seat belts warning lamp.....	79
Octane rating.....	325
petrol.....	325
Off-road driving	
auto program.....	192
cleaning after.....	345
comfort program.....	192
dynamic program.....	194
grass gravel snow.....	192
mud/ruts.....	192
override options.....	196
recovery.....	402
sand program.....	193
system difficulties.....	196
Off-road features and information	
4x4i extra feature.....	198
Off-road information	
4x4i.....	199
Oil	
engine oil specification.....	350
poisonous fluids.....	339
top up.....	350
used engine oil.....	340
Online live apps.....	316
Online search.....	303
Online service.....	303
Online service history (OSH).....	423
Online views.....	304
Opening the bonnet.....	340
Operation	
adaptive cruise control.....	166
seat belts.....	46
smart key.....	9
Optimised assistance.....	315
Optimised breakdown assistance.....	315
OSH	
online service history.....	423
Oversteer.....	152
Over the air	
software updates.....	323
Overview	
child seats.....	50
exterior lights.....	84
head restraints.....	41
InControl mobile technology.....	309
indicator lamps.....	75
warning lamps.....	75
Owner maintenance.....	336
<b>P</b>	
Paintwork	
repair.....	348
Pairing	
via the phone.....	283
Panoramic roof blind.....	104
resetting the roof blind.....	343
Park assist	
cleaning sensors and cameras.....	344
limitations.....	273
options.....	268
selecting.....	270
troubleshooting.....	274
using.....	271
Parking aid	
limitations.....	268
Parking aids	
adjusting the volume.....	268
cleaning sensors and cameras.....	344
rear camera.....	275
system fault.....	268
Parking brake.....	150
warning lamp.....	78
Parking features	
park assist.....	268
limitations.....	273

## Index

- selecting.....270  
 troubleshooting.....274  
 using.....271  
 using.....265  
 Parking features safety warnings.....264  
 Parking features warnings.....264  
 Park position emergency release.....402  
 Particle filter.....336  
 Particulate filter.....78, 80, 82  
 Partition  
   loadspace.....112  
 Parts.....338  
 Passenger compartment fuse box.....364  
 Passive entry.....13  
 Pedestrian  
   airbag system.....65  
 Pedestrian protection system  
   after deployment.....404  
   repacking the airbag.....404  
 Performance  
   adaptive cruise control.....167  
   adaptive speed limiter.....161  
   blind spot monitor.....179  
   closing vehicle sensing.....180  
   cruise control.....163  
   driver condition monitor.....207  
   follow mode.....170  
   lane departure warning.....205  
   lane keep assist.....206  
   speed limiter.....159  
   steering assist.....172  
   traffic sign recognition.....208  
 Performance data.....409  
 Petrol  
   fuel types.....325  
 Petrol consumption.....334  
 Phone  
   Bluetooth compatibility.....283  
   call volume.....286  
   compatibility list.....283  
   contacts.....286  
   icons.....285  
   managing two calls.....284  
   merge calls.....284  
   microphone volume.....286  
   overview.....280  
   pairing via the phone.....283  
   receiving text messages.....287  
   side panel.....211  
   steering wheel controls.....285  
 Phone charger.....110  
 Phone safety.....280  
 Phone shortcut icons  
   touchscreen home.....217  
 PIN number  
   master PIN.....221  
 Portable media  
   Bluetooth wireless technology.....289  
   changing device.....242  
   connecting a media device.....238  
   connecting multiple devices.....241  
   connections.....236  
   controls.....239  
   importing/ripping media.....243  
   pairing.....241  
   safety.....236  
 Powered tailgate.....17  
   opening height.....19  
   resetting the memory.....19  
 Powered tow ball.....126  
 Power sockets.....109  
 Pregnancy  
   using seat belts.....47  
 Pressure checking (tyres)  
   checking after a repair.....389  
 Pressures  
   tyres.....371  
 Profiles.....305  
 Progress control warning lamp.....79  
 Pro services.....302  
 Protect.....311  
 Pulling away  
   adverse terrain and conditions.....186  
 Puncture repair system.....384  
   instructions for use.....385  
   repair procedure.....386



## Index

- safety.....384
- Push button start backup.....139
- Q**
- Queue assist
  - adaptive cruise control.....170
  - stop and go.....171
- R**
- Radio
  - automatic station retune.....232
  - DAB
    - settings.....234
  - DAB controls.....233
- Radio frequency ID (RFID).....105
- Radio frequency regulations.....420
- Rain sensor.....95
- Rear camera
  - hitch assist.....121
- Rear fog lamps warning lamp.....81
- Rear screen cleaning.....346
- Rear seats
  - folding.....34
  - third row folding and raising.....39
- Rear side screens
  - rear climate.....252
- Rear towing eye.....401
- Rear traffic monitor.....183
- Rear window blind.....104
- Receiving text messages
  - phone.....287
- Recommended tyre pressures.....381
- Recording
  - event data.....405
  - service data.....406
- Recovery
  - off-road.....402
  - transmission park release.....402
  - transporting.....401
- Red exhaust fluid warning lamp.....78
- Refuelling
  - diesel.....326
  - diesel fuel sulphur content.....327
  - ethanol.....326
  - fuel filler flap.....331
  - methanol.....326
  - MTBE.....326
  - octane rating.....325
  - petrol.....325
  - running out of fuel.....329
  - safety precautions.....325
- Reminder (seat belt).....48
- Remote.....311
- Remote and protect.....311
- Remote and protect account.....310
- Remote control
  - care.....20
  - single locking.....22
  - smart key battery.....20
  - system transmitters.....419
- Removable loadspace hooks.....113
- Removing the spare wheel.....394
- Removing the vehicle battery.....358
- Repacking the pedestrian airbag.....404
- Repairing paintwork damage.....348
- Replacement tyres.....374
- Resetting the windows.....343
- Restarting the engine while moving...139
- Restricted front seat travel.....32
- Reverse gear
  - rear camera selection.....275
- Reverse parking aids
  - adjusting the volume.....268
  - parking aid system fault.....268
  - using.....265
- Reverse trailer.....121
- Reversing
  - parking aid limitations.....268
- Roadside Assistance.....434
- Road sign recognition.....207
- Roll back.....83
- Rolling restart.....139
- Rolling roads.....339
- Roof blind.....104
  - operation.....105
- Roof racks.....112
  - maximum weight.....112



- Route planner.....304  
 Route planning web portal.....304  
 Running-in.....335  
 Running out of fuel.....329
- S**
- Safety.....264, 290  
 adaptive cruise control.....164  
 AEB.....174  
 airbag locations.....63  
 child information.....52  
 child safety locks.....52  
 cleaning seat belts.....347  
 collision avoidance.....173  
 cruise control.....162  
 driving aids.....204  
 front seats.....29  
 fuel and refuelling.....325  
 media.....223  
 portable media.....236  
 reference tables.....53  
 seat belt checks.....48  
 seat belt pre-tensioners.....49  
 seat belt reminder warning.....48  
 seat belts.....46, 50  
 seat belts warning lamp.....79  
 seats for larger children.....51  
 sitting correctly.....32  
 speed limiter.....158  
 starting.....138  
 touchscreen.....209  
 TPMS pressure compensation.....375  
 tyre care.....370  
 tyre pressures.....371  
 used engine oil.....340  
 use seat belts during pregnancy.....47  
 using the phone.....280  
 wade sensing.....202  
 warning labels.....52
- Safety camera alert  
 adjusting the volume.....298
- Safety in the garage.....339
- Sand program.....193
- Satellite navigation  
 address entry.....294  
 alerts.....299  
 edit route.....298  
 favourites.....300  
 fuel finder.....301  
 fuel prices service.....305  
 instrument panel view.....301  
 map  
 auto zoom.....297  
 split screen.....297  
 updates.....300  
 menu.....292  
 online routing.....303  
 operating.....291  
 places.....295  
 real time traffic flow.....303  
 safety cameras.....305  
 satellite view.....304  
 search.....294  
 share.....304  
 view options.....299
- Satellite street views.....304
- Screen wash  
 check.....354  
 topping up.....354
- Seat  
 monitor.....49
- Seat belts.....347  
 checks.....48  
 operation.....46  
 pre-tensioners.....49  
 reminder warning.....48  
 safety.....46, 50  
 use during pregnancy.....47  
 warning lamp.....79
- Seats  
 child restraint check list.....51  
 child seat positioning.....50  
 child seat tether straps.....57  
 cleaning seat belts.....347  
 climate seats.....257  
 comfort and adjustment.....256



## Index

electric front.....	31	Service position	
front head restraints.....	41	wipers service position.....	342
heated.....	257	Servicing	
ISOFIX installation.....	56	airbags.....	62
manual front.....	30	data recording.....	406
position memory.....	33	Set speed	
raising the rear seat.....	34–35	HDC operation.....	156
rear head restraints.....	42	Settings.....	298
rear seat folding.....	34–35, 39	customisable.....	221
recommended child seats.....	59	general.....	221
remote seats		system.....	221
settings.....	258	Settings menu.....	69
restricted front seat travel.....	32	Setting the heating and ventilation.....	251
seat belts warning lamp.....	79	Side airbags.....	64
seat massage.....	258	Side lamps warning lamp.....	82
sitting correctly.....	32	Sign recognition.....	207
Seat safety		Silencing the alarm.....	27
front.....	29	Sim card	
Securing luggage.....	111, 114	connecting.....	322
Security		Sitting correctly.....	32
alarm.....	338	Smart key	
tilt sensor.....	24	battery changing.....	20
automatic relocking and arming.....	23	care.....	20
battery back-up sounder.....	24	single locking.....	22
closing mislock.....	26	transmitters.....	419
deactivating the alarm.....	27	Smartphone app.....	311
lock confirmation.....	23	Smart settings	
locking with the emergency key.....	27	incontrol.....	316
single locking.....	22	Snow chains.....	378
Sensitivity		Software	
forward alert.....	174	updates.....	323
Sequential shift.....	145, 147	Solar attenuating glass.....	105
Service		SOS call.....	313–314
arduous operating conditions.....	425	SOS emergency.....	313
arranging a service.....	423	Sound settings.....	226
end of life vehicle (elv).....	426	Spare wheel.....	394
fluid replacement.....	424	using wheel chocks.....	397
online service history (OSH).....	423	Specifications	
replacement service record.....	425	capacities.....	411
service content.....	424	dimensions.....	417
service record.....	425	engine.....	409
service requirements.....	424	ethanol.....	326
Service interval indicator.....	72	fluids.....	410

## Index

- fuel tank capacity.....334  
 label locations.....407  
 lubricants.....410  
 methanol.....326  
 MTBE.....326  
 updates.....409  
 weight.....411  
 Speed-dependent wipers.....95  
 Speed limiter  
   adaptive speed limiter.....160  
   automatic speed limiter.....158  
   intelligent speed limiter.....158  
   overview.....158  
 Speedometer.....67  
 Split screen map.....297  
 SRS  
   airbag warning lamp.....79  
 Stability control  
   DSC.....152  
     configurable.....195  
     switching on.....153  
     switching off.....152  
 Starting after a collision.....404  
 Starting the engine.....138, 142  
   engine pre-heater.....141  
   failure to start.....140  
   push button start backup.....139  
 Status icons  
   touch screen.....214  
 Steep descent or ascent control  
   switching on and off.....186  
 Steering column  
   lock.....15  
   vehicle recovery.....15  
 Steering column lock.....44  
 Steering correction.....206  
 Steering wheel  
   adjusting.....44  
   heated.....44  
 Stolen vehicle  
   InControl secure.....315–316  
 Stop/start  
   activating.....142  
   deactivating.....143  
 Stop on the move.....143  
 Stopping the engine.....142  
 Storage compartments.....106  
   cup holders.....106  
   front cubby box.....106  
   rear armrest.....106  
 Storage compartments areas  
   glove box.....106  
 Sun blind.....104  
 Sunroof  
   anti-trap protection.....105  
 Sun roof  
   roof blind.....104  
 Supplementary restraint system (SRS)  
   airbag deployment.....61  
   airbags maintenance.....338  
   airbag warning lamp.....61, 79  
   curtain airbags.....64  
   disabling passenger airbag.....64  
   front airbags.....63  
   side airbags.....64  
 Surround camera.....121, 123  
   forward vehicle guidance.....278  
 Surround cameras.....276  
   touch screen menu.....276  
 Suspension  
   adaptive dynamics.....148  
 Switch cleaning.....346  
 Switching off the engine.....138  
 Switching on the ignition.....139  
 System  
   pedestrian airbag.....65  
**T**  
 Tachometer.....67  
 Tailgate  
   opening and closing.....16–17  
   powered opening height.....19  
   resetting the powered tailgate  
   memory.....19  
 Technical specifications  
   capacities.....411  
   dimensions.....417



## Index

engine.....	409	Topping up fluids	
radio frequency regulations.....	420	filler locations.....	349
updates.....	409	Touch Pro navigation account.....	306
weights.....	411	Touch Pro navigation profile.....	305
Telephone		Touch screen.....	348
Bluetooth compatibility.....	283	changing portable media device.....	242
Bluetooth wireless technology.....	289	connecting multiple portable media	
call volume.....	286	devices.....	241
contacts.....	286	customisable settings.....	221
icons.....	285	DAB radio controls.....	233
managing two calls.....	284	Touchscreen	
merge calls.....	284	driving icons.....	215
microphone volume.....	286	eco-data.....	193
overview.....	280	editing screens.....	217
pairing		editing shortcuts.....	217
via the phone.....	283	editing widgets.....	217
steering wheel controls.....	285	extra features.....	219
Telephone safety.....	280	feature icons.....	215
Television		fuel burning heater.....	258
controls.....	246	fuel economy facts.....	193
Temperature		general settings.....	221
differentiation, climate.....	263	global icons.....	216
Terrain response		heated seats.....	257
description applicability.....	191	home menu.....	210
switching on and off.....	191	inhibited display.....	245
Terrain response information		lower home menu.....	212
4x4i.....	199	massage seats.....	258
Terrain response program		my home screen.....	214
adverse terrain and conditions.....	191	operating.....	218
description applicability.....	191	portable media	
Tilt sensor.....	24	controls.....	239
Time and date		portable media connections.....	236
general settings.....	221	portable media pairing.....	241
Timed climate.....	259	safety.....	209
additional remote controls.....	262	seat settings.....	258
remote control batteries.....	262	side panel.....	211
touch screen controls.....	259	status icons.....	214
using the remote control.....	261	surround cameras.....	276
Timed climate control.....	259	system settings.....	221
Tinted front screen.....	105	timed climate controls.....	259
Toll road payment.....	105	touch screen care.....	218
Tool kit.....	392	TV controls.....	246
		valet mode.....	219

## Index

deselecting.....	220	Traffic detection	
video player controls.....	244	forward.....	182
Touchscreen home		reverse.....	183
media shortcut icons.....	216	Traffic sign recognition.....	207
navigation shortcut icons.....	216	Trailer	
phone shortcut icons.....	217	electrical connections.....	128
Tow ball		sway.....	120
detachable.....	125–126	towing weights.....	116
powered tow ball.....	126	Trailer bulb check.....	126
Tow ball accessories.....	132	Trailer direction indicators warning lamp.....	82
Tow bar		Trailer rear view.....	121, 123
mounting points.....	132	Trailer reverse.....	123
options.....	118	Transmission	
Towing		automatic.....	145
a trailer.....	131	emergency park release.....	402
calculating weight.....	130	gear shift warning lamp.....	82
checks		limp home mode.....	147
breakaway cable.....	130	manual.....	147
lights.....	130	Transmission park release.....	402
nose weight limit.....	130	Transmitters	
tow ball.....	130	smart key.....	419
detachable tow ball.....	125–126	Transporting the vehicle.....	401
essential checks.....	130	Trip computer.....	71
hitch assist.....	121	TSR performance.....	208
powered tow ball.....	126	Turning adaptive cruise control follow mode off.....	83
stability assist.....	120	TV	
tow assist.....	121, 123	controls.....	246
tow ball accessories.....	132	Tyre pressure checking after a repair.....	389
tow bar dimensions.....	132	Tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS).....	380
tow bar mounting points.....	132	full size replacements.....	382
tow bar options.....	118	tyre care.....	370
trailer electrical connections.....	128	warning lamp.....	81
trailer hitch.....	120	Tyre pressures.....	382
trailer sway.....	120	Tyre repair system	
weights.....	116	checking pressures.....	389
Towing eyes		repair procedure.....	386
front.....	401	safety information.....	384
rear.....	401	using.....	385
Tracking your vehicle			
InControl secure.....	315–316		
Traction control.....	154		
switching off.....	152		
switching on.....	153		



## Index

- Tyres
- age degradation.....376
  - changing.....383
  - flat spots.....375
  - full size replacements.....382
  - important information.....396
  - Indian regulations.....379
  - pressure check.....381
  - pressures.....371
  - recommended tyre pressure look-up.....381
  - repair procedure.....386
  - repair system.....384
  - repair system use.....385
  - replacements.....374
  - snow chains.....378
  - speed ratings.....370
  - temporary use spare.....383
  - TPMS.....380
    - warning lamp.....81
  - TPMS pressure compensation.....375
  - tyre care.....370
  - tyre repair safety.....384
  - tyre wall markings.....369
  - use of spare tyre.....396
  - valves.....374
  - vehicle loading.....382
  - wall markings.....369
  - winter.....376
- U
- Under body cleaning.....345
  - Under bonnet covers.....341
  - Understeer.....152
  - Unlocking.....25
    - activity key.....13
    - clear exit detection.....25
    - global opening.....15
    - keyless entry.....13
    - multi point entry.....12
    - opening the tailgate.....16–17
    - passive entry.....13
    - single point entry.....12
    - steering column.....44
    - transmitter effects on medical devices.....15
- Updates
- software.....323
  - specifications.....409
- USB devices
- connecting multiple devices.....241
- Used engine oil.....340
- Using cruise control.....162
- Using seat belts.....46
- Using the spare tyre
- important information.....396
- Using wheel chocks.....397
- V
- Valet mode.....219
- deselecting.....220
- Valves
- tyres.....374
- Vehicle alarm.....338
- Vehicle battery
- battery monitoring system.....359
  - connecting jump leads.....356
  - effects of disconnection.....359
  - removing.....358
  - replacing.....358
  - warning symbols.....355
- Vehicle battery care.....355
- Vehicle cleaning
- after driving off-road.....345
  - airbag covers.....347
  - alloy wheels.....345
  - automatic car wash.....344
  - carpets and mats.....348
  - engine compartment.....345
  - interior.....346
  - rear screen.....346
  - under body.....345
  - washer jets.....348
- Vehicle data recording.....405
- Vehicle dimensions.....200
- Vehicle guidance.....278
- Vehicle loading tyre pressures.....382

- Vehicle location  
InControl secure.....315–316
- Vehicle recovery  
front towing eye.....401  
off-road.....402  
rear towing eye.....401  
steering column lock.....15  
transmission park release.....402  
transporting the vehicle.....401
- Vehicle testing on rolling roads.....339
- Video media player  
controls.....244  
full screen view.....245  
inhibited display.....245
- VIN  
build location.....408
- VIN number.....407
- Voice control.....307  
settings  
command list.....308  
operating guide.....308  
preferences.....308  
voicetags.....308  
voice training.....308  
tutorial.....307  
voicetags.....308
- W**
- Wade sensing  
4x4i 4 wheel drive information.....202
- Warning lamp  
AdBlue.....78, 80
- Warning lamps.....75–76, 81–82  
ABS.....79  
adaptive cruise control follow  
mode.....80, 83  
adaptive speed limiter.....79  
airbags.....61, 79  
auto high beam assist.....83  
auto lights.....83  
automatic speed limiter.....81  
battery charge.....77  
brake.....77, 79  
check engine.....80  
critical warning message.....77  
cruise control.....81  
diesel glow plugs.....81  
dipped beam.....81  
DSC active.....80  
engine temperature.....78  
external temperature.....80  
gear shift warning lamp.....82  
HDC.....82  
headlamp high beam.....83  
high beam assist.....83  
indicators.....82  
intelligent stop/start (green).....81  
intelligent stop/start (white).....83  
lamp test.....77  
lane departure (green).....82  
lane departure (red).....78  
low fuel.....81  
low oil pressure.....78  
parking brake.....78  
progress control system.....79  
rear fog lamps.....81  
seat belt.....79  
side lights.....82  
trailer direction indicators.....82  
tyre pressure monitoring system  
(TPMS).....81
- Warning messages.....71
- Warnings  
adaptive cruise control.....164  
driving aids.....204  
head restraints.....41  
media.....223  
portable media.....236  
speed limiter.....158  
touchscreen.....209
- Warranty  
accessories fitted to a new  
vehicle.....430  
accident damage repair.....430  
aluminium body repairs.....430  
corrosion protection warranty.....429  
data protection statement.....427



## Index

- emission control system warranty....430
- manufacturer's warranty.....428
- manufacturer's warranty terms.....428
- other exclusions.....433
- owner's responsibilities.....427
- paint surface warranty.....429
- parts and accessories warranty.....429
- quality checks.....427
- regional warranty.....428
- safety-related defects (australia only).....423
- warranty and consumer law.....428
- warranty cover when touring.....428
- what is not covered by scheduled maintenance items?.....432
- what is not covered by the manufacturer's warranty?.....431
- what is not covered by the paint surface warranty and corrosion protection warranty?.....432
- Warranty exclusions
  - other exclusions.....433
  - what is not covered by scheduled maintenance items?.....432
  - what is not covered by the manufacturer's warranty?.....431
  - what is not covered by the paint surface warranty and corrosion protection warranty?.....432
- Warranty information
  - owner's responsibilities.....427
  - warranty and consumer law.....428
  - warranty cover when touring.....428
- Warranty terms
  - accessories fitted to a new vehicle.....430
  - accident damage repair.....430
  - aluminium body repairs.....430
  - corrosion protection warranty.....429
  - emission control system warranty....430
  - manufacturer's warranty.....428
  - manufacturer's warranty terms.....428
  - paint surface warranty.....429
  - parts and accessories warranty.....429
  - regional warranty.....428
- Washer jets.....348
- Washers.....93
  - fluid specification.....354
  - fluid top up.....354
  - headlamps.....96
  - headlight.....96
- Washing
  - automatic car wash.....344
- Water in fuel.....330
- Weather
  - side panel.....211
- Web browsing
  - InControl hotspot.....321
- Weights
  - gross vehicle weights.....411
  - roof load.....411
  - roof rack weight.....411
  - tow ball/hitch.....116
  - towing.....116
  - vehicle weights.....411
- Wheel changing
  - important information.....396
  - locking wheel nuts.....397
  - recommended process.....398
  - safety warnings.....391
  - spare wheel.....394
  - temporary spare wheel.....397
  - tool kit.....392
  - use of spare tyre.....396
- Wheel chocks use.....397
- Wheels and tyres
  - age degradation.....376
  - changing a tyre.....383
  - checking the pressures after a repair.....389
  - flat spots.....375
  - full size replacements.....382
  - Indian regulations.....379
  - pressures.....371
  - puncture repair.....384
  - puncture repair safety.....384



repair procedure.....	386
repair system.....	384
repair system use.....	385
replacements.....	374
snow chains.....	378
temporary use spare.....	383
TPMS.....	380
TPMS pressure compensation.....	375
TPMS warning lamp.....	81
tyre care.....	370
tyre speed ratings.....	370
tyre wall markings.....	369
valves.....	374
winter tyres.....	376
Wheel spin.....	152
White auto stop/start lamp.....	83
Wi-Fi	
InControl hotspot.....	321
Wi-Fi connection icons.....	322
Windows	
anti-trap protection.....	105
operation.....	104
reset.....	343
resetting the roof blind.....	343
roof blind.....	104
solar attenuating.....	105
Winter tyres.....	376
Wipers.....	93
service position.....	342
Wipers and washers.....	93
drip wipe.....	95
fluid level.....	354
rain sensor.....	95
speed-dependent mode.....	95
winter park position.....	96
Wireless technology	
Bluetooth.....	289



## Type approval

### DECLARATIONS OF CONFORMITY

The following information is correct at the time of print. The digital handbook can be viewed at:

**[www.ownerinfo.landrover.com](http://www.ownerinfo.landrover.com)** and is updated with the latest available information.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2019





# Type approval

Lear Corporation  
 Electronics Systems Division  
 21557 Edwards Road  
 Southfield, MI 48033-4248  
 USA  
 Phone (248) 447-1500



**RKE Receiver**  
 Land Rover, Range Rover, Jaguar  
 FCC ID: KOBJLR09A  
 IC: 3521-JLR09A  
 Model #: AH42-15K602-A

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada.  
 Operation is subject to the following two conditions:  
 (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and  
 (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.  
**WARNING:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.  
 The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

### Passive Entry / Passive Start Module

Land Rover, Range Rover, Jaguar  
 FCC ID: KOBJBG10A  
 IC: 3521-JBG10A  
 Model #: AH42-19H440 (PEPS)  
 Model #: AH42-19H440 (Passive Start ONLY)  
 Model #: AH42-19H440 (Passive Start ONLY)  
 Model #: AH42-19H440 (Passive Start ONLY)

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada.  
 Operation is subject to the following two conditions:  
 (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and  
 (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.  
**WARNING:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.  
 The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

Lear Corporation  
 Electronics Systems Division  
 21557 Edwards Road  
 Southfield, MI 48033-4248  
 USA  
 Phone (248) 447-1500



Date: February 6, 2009

### INFORMATION TO BE INCLUDED IN THE END USER'S MANUAL

The following information must be included in the end product user's manual to ensure continued FCC and Industry Canada regulatory compliance. The ID numbers must be included in the manual if the device label is not readily accessible to the end user. The compliance paragraphs below must be included in the user's manual.

The following user's manual statements are provided by Lear Corporation to Jaguar Land Rover electronically after certification.

### Key fobs

Land Rover, Range Rover,  
 Land Rover, Range Rover,  
 Land Rover, Range Rover, Land Rover  
 FCC ID: KOBJTF10A (Range Rover, Land Rover)  
 FCC ID: KOBJTF10B (Jaguar)  
 IC: 3521A-JTF10A (Range Rover, Land Rover)  
 IC: 3521A-JTF10B (Jaguar)  
 Model #: AH42-15K601A (Range Rover)  
 Model #: AH22-15K601A (Land Rover)  
 Model #: AW63-15K601A (Jaguar)

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada.  
 Operation is subject to the following two conditions:  
 (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and  
 (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.  
**WARNING:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.  
 The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2019

EC Declaration of Conformity

EC Directive: 1999/5/EC  
 Manufacturer: Lear Corporation  
 Type Designation / FCC ID: KOB/JBG108  
 Model Numbers: 5E0770257, 5E0770357, 19H440, AH22-19H440, AH42-19H440, AH22-19H440-AD, AH42-19H440-AE  
 Description / Intended Use: Remote Function Actuator (RFA) / passive keyless entry and start system low frequency initiator  
 Trademarks: Land Rover / Range Rover / Jaguar  
 Applied Standards: European Commission Directive 2006/28/EC  
 ETSI EN 60950  
 ETSI EN 300 330  
 CEPT/ERC/REC 70-03  
 AS/NZS 4288  
 FCC Regulations 47 CFR Part 15  
 Responsible Person: Kevin Cotton  
 Lear Corporation  
 21557 Telegraph Road  
 Southfield, Michigan 48033  
 United States of America

Hereby, Lear Corporation declares that the product referenced above is in compliance with the essential requirements of Directive 1999/5/EC, on the approximation of the laws of the member states relating to Directive 1999/5/EC.

Signed: *Kevin Cotton*  
Kevin Cotton, Lear Corporation  
Date: 27 March 2009

EC Declaration of Conformity

EC Directive: 1999/5/EC  
 Manufacturer: Lear Corporation  
 Type Designation / FCC ID: KOB/JBG10A  
 Model Numbers: 5E0770237, 5E0770337, 19H440, AH22-19H440-AC, AH42-19H440-AD, AH22-19H440, AH42-19H440  
 Description / Intended Use: Remote Function Actuator (RFA), passive keyless entry and start system low frequency initiator  
 Trademarks: Land Rover / Range Rover / Jaguar  
 Applied Standards: European Commission Directive 2006/28/EC  
 ETSI EN 60950  
 ETSI EN 300 330  
 CEPT/ERC/REC 70-03  
 AS/NZS 4288  
 FCC Regulations 47 CFR Part 15  
 Responsible Person: Kevin Cotton  
 Lear Corporation  
 21557 Telegraph Road  
 Southfield, Michigan 48033  
 United States of America

Hereby, Lear Corporation declares that the product referenced above is in compliance with the essential requirements of Directive 1999/5/EC, on the approximation of the laws of the member states relating to Directive 1999/5/EC.

Signed: *Kevin Cotton*  
Kevin Cotton, Lear Corporation  
Date: 27 March 2009



# Type approval

E150391

466

## EC Declaration of Conformity

EC Directive: 1999/5/EC  
 Manufacturer: Lear Corporation  
 Type Designation: 5E0760127, 5E080127  
 Model Numbers: 5E0760127, 5E080127, AH42-15K602-B, AH42-15K602-BC  
 Description / Intended Use: RF Receiver (RRF), used in passive entry and passive start, remote keyless entry, and tire pressure monitoring systems.  
 Trademarks: Land Rover / Range Rover / Jaguar  
 Applied Standards: European Commission Directive 2006/23/EC, ETSI EN 60950, ETSI EN 300 220, CEPT/ERC/REC 70-03, ASINZS 4268  
 Responsible Person: Kevin Cotton, Lear Corporation, 21557 Telegraph Road, Southfield, Michigan 48033, United States of America

Hereby, Lear Corporation declares that the product referenced above is in compliance with the essential requirements of Directive 1999/5/EC, on the approximation of the laws of the member states relating to Directive 1999/5/EC.

Signed: *Kevin Cotton*  
 Kevin Cotton, Lear Corporation

Date: 27 March 2009

## EC Declaration of Conformity

EC Directive: 1999/5/EC  
 Manufacturer: Lear Corporation  
 Type Designation: 15K601  
 Model Numbers: 5E080127, 5E080127, 15K601-BB, AH42-15K601B, AH22-15K601B, AH42-15K601-BC, AH22-15K601-BC  
 Description / Intended Use: Passive Key (PK) / Customer Identification Device (CID), passive keyless entry system keyfob  
 Trademarks: Land Rover / Range Rover  
 Applied Standards: CEPT/ERC/REC 70-03, ETSI EN 60950, ETSI EN 300 220, ETSI EN 301 489, IEC EN 60950, ASINZS 4268  
 Responsible Person: Kevin Cotton, Lear Corporation, 21557 Telegraph Road, Southfield, Michigan 48033, United States of America

Hereby, Lear Corporation declares that the product referenced above is in compliance with the essential requirements of Directive 1999/5/EC, on the approximation of the laws of the member states relating to Directive 1999/5/EC.

Signed: *Kevin Cotton*  
 Kevin Cotton, Lear Corporation

Date: 26 March 2009

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2019



**QuieTek**

**快特電波股份有限公司**  
**低功率射頻電機型式認證證明**

一、申請者：Lear Corporation  
 二、製造廠商：Lear Corporation  
 三、器材名稱：Range Rover / SE0B60227  
 四、廠牌型號：Range Rover / SE0B60227  
 五、發射功率（電場強度）：315MHz; 84.1954dBuV/m(Peak)  
 六、工作頻率：315MHz

七、發證日期：98年06月02日  
 八、審驗合格標識式樣：

**說明：**

- 請依上列標識式樣自製標識，標貼或印鑄於器材本體明顯處，始得販賣或公開陳列。
- 標識式樣應符合之低功率射頻電機，其型號、設計、射頻性能如有變更，應重新申請型式認證。
- 違反低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法之規定，擅自使用或變更無線電頻率、電力者，除依電信法規定處罰外，驗證機關(構)並得停止其型式認證證明或型式認證標識。
- 違章廠商應供備適當警樣品供日後核對。
- 本型式認證證明及其合格標識使用權專屬取得本證明者，本證明持有入檢附同意書報請國家通訊傳播委員會備查後，得授權他人於同廠牌同型號之器材，使用其合格標識。

**備註：**

- 本器材符合低功率射頻電機技術規範 LP0002.3.4.2節之規定。
- 本驗證機關係經國家通訊傳播委員會委託，核發本型式認證證明。
- 本器材所使用之型式編號/型號如下：  
Lear Corporation / N/A

**QuieTek**

**快特電波股份有限公司**  
**低功率射頻電機型式認證證明**

一、申請者：Lear Corporation  
 二、製造廠商：Lear Corporation  
 三、器材名稱：RFA (Passive Start)  
 四、廠牌型號：LEAR / 5E0770337  
 五、發射功率（電場強度）：125KHz; 61.5dBuV/m(Average)  
 六、工作頻率：125KHz

七、發證日期：98年06月02日  
 八、審驗合格標識式樣：

**說明：**

- 請依上列標識式樣自製標識，標貼或印鑄於器材本體明顯處，始得販賣或公開陳列。
- 標識式樣應符合之低功率射頻電機，其型號、設計、射頻性能如有變更，應重新申請型式認證。
- 違反低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法之規定，擅自使用或變更無線電頻率、電力者，除依電信法規定處罰外，驗證機關(構)並得停止其型式認證證明或型式認證標識。
- 違章廠商應供備適當警樣品供日後核對。
- 本型式認證證明及其合格標識使用權專屬取得本證明者，本證明持有入檢附同意書報請國家通訊傳播委員會備查後，得授權他人於同廠牌同型號之器材，使用其合格標識。

**備註：**

- 本器材符合低功率射頻電機技術規範 LP0002.2.8節之規定。
- 本驗證機關係經國家通訊傳播委員會委託，核發本型式認證證明。
- 本器材所使用之型式編號/型號如下：  
Lear Corporation / N/A

E150392



# Type approval

**QuieTek**

**快特電波股份有限公司**  
低功率射頻電機型式認證證明

一、申請者：Lear Corporation  
 二、製造廠商：Lear Corporation  
 三、器材名稱：RFA (Passive Start & Start Module)  
 四、廠牌/型號：LEAR / SE0770237  
 五、發射功率 (電場強度)：125KHz; 63.3dBuV/m(Average)  
 六、工作頻率：125KHz

七、發證日期：98年06月02日  
 八、審驗合格標識式樣：

說明：  
 1. 請依下列標識式樣自製標識，標貼或印鑄於器材本體明顯處，倘得販賣或公開陳列。  
 2. 標識式樣應包含之低功率射頻電機，其型號、設計、射頻性能如有變更，應重新申請型式認證。  
 3. 違反低功率電波射頻性電機管理辦法之規定，擅自使用或變更無線電頻率、電功率者，除依電信法規定處罰外，驗證機關(構)並得停止其型式認證證明或型式認證標識。  
 4. 凡應照標識保留註銷標識品類日後相對。  
 5. 本型式認證證明及其合格標識僅供使用權專員取得本證明者，本證明持有入倘附同意書報請國家通訊傳播委員會備查後，得授權他人於同廠牌同型號之器材，使用其合格標識。

備註：  
 1. 本器材符合低功率射頻電機技術規範 LP0002.2.3.4.2之規定。  
 2. 本驗證機構係經國家通訊傳播委員會委託，核發本型式認證證明。  
 3. 本器材所使用圖式及標識牌/型號如下：  
 Lear Corporation / N/A

**QuieTek**

**快特電波股份有限公司**  
低功率射頻電機型式認證證明

一、申請者：Lear Corporation  
 二、製造廠商：Lear Corporation  
 三、器材名稱：Range Rover / SE0850257  
 四、廠牌/型號：Range Rover / SE0850257  
 五、發射功率 (電場強度)：315MHz; 84.195dBuV/m(Peak)  
 六、工作頻率：315MHz

七、發證日期：98年06月02日  
 八、審驗合格標識式樣：

說明：  
 1. 請依下列標識式樣自製標識，標貼或印鑄於器材本體明顯處，倘得販賣或公開陳列。  
 2. 標識式樣應包含之低功率射頻電機，其型號、設計、射頻性能如有變更，應重新申請型式認證。  
 3. 違反低功率電波射頻性電機管理辦法之規定，擅自使用或變更無線電頻率、電功率者，除依電信法規定處罰外，驗證機關(構)並得停止其型式認證證明或型式認證標識。  
 4. 凡應照標識保留註銷標識品類日後相對。  
 5. 本型式認證證明及其合格標識僅供使用權專員取得本證明者，本證明持有入倘附同意書報請國家通訊傳播委員會備查後，得授權他人於同廠牌同型號之器材，使用其合格標識。

備註：  
 1. 本器材符合低功率射頻電機技術規範 LP0002.3.4.2之規定。  
 2. 本驗證機構係經國家通訊傳播委員會委託，核發本型式認證證明。  
 3. 本器材所使用圖式及標識牌/型號如下：  
 Lear Corporation / N/A

E150393





Continental Automotive GmbH - Postfach 100 855 - 93089 Regensburg

Kolke Digmair  
AOL RRG 42  
Phone +49 (0)41 790-6069  
Fax +49 (0)41 790-136699  
digmar.kolke@continental-corporation.com

Date: July 29, 2008  
Your message dated: [blank]  
Our reference: [blank]  
Your reference: [blank]

**Declaration of Conformity in accordance with Directive 1999/5/EC (R&TTE Directive)**

Manufacturer: Continental Automotive GmbH  
Address: Siemensstrasse 12  
D-93056 Regensburg  
Germany

Product type designation: S180 052 U20 A  
Intended use: Tire Pressure System

The product mentioned above complies with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC, when used for its intended purpose.

Health and safety pursuant to §3.1 a: Applied standard(s): EN 60950-1:2006

Electromagnetic compatibility pursuant to § 3.1 b: Applied standard(s): EN 301 489 -1; V1.6.1 (2005-09)  
EN 301 489 -3; V1.4.1 (2002-08)

Efficacy of use of spectrum pursuant to § 3.2: Applied standard(s): EN 300 220 -1; V2.1.1 (2006-04)  
EN 300 220 -2; V2.1.1 (2006-04)

The following marking applies to the above mentioned product:



Continental Automotive GmbH  
Regensburg, 2008-07-29

Andreas Voll  
Executive Vice President  
Body & Security  
Nancy  
Director Product Group 3  
Body & Security

Continental Automotive GmbH  
Siemensstr. 12  
Postfach 100 855  
D-93089 Regensburg  
Germany  
Phone +49 941 79-0  
Fax +49 941 79-32009  
www.continental-corporation.com

© gijetek

快特電波股份有限公司  
低功率射頻電機型式認證證明

Lear Corporation  
Lear Corporation  
Jaguar Ibb  
JAGUAR / SE0B4P217  
315MHz; 83.225dBuV/m(Peak)  
315MHz

98年07月01日  
CCA1091P0830T1

一、申請者：  
二、製造廠商：  
三、器材名稱：  
四、廠牌/型號：  
五、發射功率（電場強度）：  
六、工作頻率：  
七、審驗日期：  
八、審驗合格標號式樣：

說明：  
1. 請就下列標號式樣自製標籤，標貼在印錄於器材本體明顯處，始得販售或公開陳列。  
2. 標號式樣應符合低功率射頻電機，其型號、設計、射頻性能如有變更，應重新申請型式認證。  
3. 違反低功率射頻電機管理辦法之規定，擅自使用或變更無線電頻率、電功率者，除依電信法規定處罰外，檢驗機關(構)並得廢止其型式認證標號及器式認證標籤。  
4. 違章廠商應保留違章產品自日後起銷。  
5. 本型式認證證明及其合格標號僅供申請人向內政部電信委員會其他人員查詢射頻器材使用型式認證標籤，並於次日起30天內，應依限「電信管制射頻器材審驗合格標籤及合格性聲明標籤印卷使用簡章表」送本會備查。  
備註：  
1. 本器材符合低功率射頻電機技術規範(LP002.3.4.2節)之規定。  
2. 檢驗機構僅能證明審驗通過並提供審驗委員會查考，無從本型式認證證明。  
3. 本器材使用固定式天線，廠牌/型號為：Lear Corporation / N/A。

E150394

Type approval

469



# Type approval

전자문서확인번호 NC10-121B-WTAV-1KRD

**방송통신기기인증서**  
Certificate of Broadcasting and Communication Equipment

형식등록번호(Type Registration)

인증의 종류  
Certification Type  
LEAR CORPORATION  
상호 또는 성명  
Trade Name or Applicant  
태아비전송용 부속기기  
기기의 명칭  
Equipment Name

기본모델명  
Basic Model Number  
GE085P127  
파생모델명  
Series Model Number  
GE085G.E08060

인증번호  
Certification No  
LER-5E08P127  
제조사/제조국가  
Manufacturer/Country of Origin  
Lear Automotive Electronics and Electrical/중국

형식기호  
Type Identification  
LARN2-DBL433.92T.O.12ER0.003F1D1  
인증연월일  
Date of Certification  
2009년(Year) 05월(Month) 22일(Date)

기타  
Others

위 기기는 「전기통신기기법」, 「전파법」에 따라 인증되었음을 증명합니다.  
It is certified that foregoing equipment has been certified under the Framework Act on Telecommunications and Radio Waves Act.

2009년(Year) 05월(Month) 28일(Date)

전파연구진흥국  
Korea Communications Commission  
Director General of Radio Research Laboratories  
Korea Communications Commission Republic of Korea

전자문서확인번호 NC10-121B-WTAV-1KRD

**방송통신기기인증서**  
Certificate of Broadcasting and Communication Equipment

형식등록번호(Type Registration)

인증의 종류  
Certification Type  
LEAR CORPORATION  
상호 또는 성명  
Trade Name or Applicant  
복제소음억제부속기기(태아비전송용 부속기기)  
기기의 명칭  
Equipment Name

기본모델명  
Basic Model Number  
SE0840  
파생모델명  
Series Model Number

인증번호  
Certification No  
LER-5E0840  
제조사/제조국가  
Manufacturer/Country of Origin  
Lear Automotive Electronics and Electrical/중국

형식기호  
Type Identification  
LARN2-K3L433.92T.O.12ER0.003F1D1  
인증연월일  
Date of Certification  
2009년(Year) 07월(Month) 18일(Date)

기타  
Others

위 기기는 「전기통신기기법」, 「전파법」에 따라 인증되었음을 증명합니다.  
It is certified that foregoing equipment has been certified under the Framework Act on Telecommunications and Radio Waves Act.

2009년(Year) 07월(Month) 15일(Date)

전파연구진흥국  
Korea Communications Commission  
Director General of Radio Research Laboratories  
Korea Communications Commission Republic of Korea

E150395



# Type approval



## Radio Equipment Type Approval Certificate

Radio Equipment Type Approval Number

TA-2009303

The Authority, in the exercise of the powers conferred upon it by sections 35 (1) of the Electronic Communications Act, 2005 (Act 36 of 2005), the applicable radio regulations which currently remain in force in terms of section 95 (f) of the Electronic Communications Act and subject to the terms and conditions set out in this document hereby certifies that a radio equipment type approval certificate to the company whose name and particulars are listed below.

### Company Particulars

Name : Jaguar Land Rover SA  
Street Address : Simon Vermoeten Road, Silverton  
Registration Number : 201102728007  
Facsimile Number : 012 845 1005  
Registration Number : 205102728007

### Description of Apparatus

Category : Remote Function Actuator (RFA)  
Model : KOBJ8510A  
Frequency Range : 400-470 MHz  
ITU Emission Code : 12K1G1D  
Modulation : BPSK  
Power Output : +40.7 dBm @ 3m  
Channel Spacing :  
Features :

Only the original or a certified copy of the radio equipment type approval certificate shall be considered valid.

*Philimon Molele*  
Senior Engineer: Engineering & Technology  
09 JUN 2009  
P. Molele (Chairperson), NA Buiyi, TLV Mahabane, R. Mousa, BB Ntshosha, FK Shange, Dr AM Sookava,  
Prof JCW van Rensburg SC, IMZ Zokwa (Councillors), BK Moriana (CEO)



## Radio Equipment Type Approval Certificate

Radio Equipment Type Approval Number

TA-2009302

The Authority, in the exercise of the powers conferred upon it by sections 35 (1) of the Electronic Communications Act, 2005 (Act 36 of 2005), the applicable radio regulations which currently remain in force in terms of section 95 (f) of the Electronic Communications Act and subject to the terms and conditions set out in this document hereby certifies that a radio equipment type approval certificate to the company whose name and particulars are listed below.

### Company Particulars

Name : Jaguar Land Rover SA  
Street Address : Simon Vermoeten Road, Silverton  
Registration Number : 201102728007  
Facsimile Number : 012 845 3274  
Registration Number : 205102728007

### Description of Apparatus

Category : Remote Function Actuator (RFA)  
Model : KOBJ8510B  
Frequency Range : 400-470 MHz  
ITU Emission Code : 12K1G1D  
Modulation : BPSK  
Power Output : +37.7 dBm @ 3m  
Channel Spacing :  
Features :

Only the original or a certified copy of the radio equipment type approval certificate shall be considered valid.

*Philimon Molele*  
Senior Engineer: Engineering & Technology  
09 JUN 2009  
P. Molele (Chairperson), NA Buiyi, TLV Mahabane, R. Mousa, BB Ntshosha, FK Shange, Dr AM Sookava,  
Prof JCW van Rensburg SC, IMZ Zokwa (Councillors), BK Moriana (CEO)



Independent Communications Authority of South Africa  
Postal Form 164 (November 2007, South African)  
Private Bag 110002, Sandton, 2146

### Radio Equipment Type Approval Certificate

Radio Equipment Type Approval Number

TA-20080304

The Authority, in the exercise of the powers conferred upon it by section 35 (1) of the Electronic Communications Act (No. 66 of 2005) and subject to the terms and conditions set out in this document (see cover sheet), hereby issues a radio equipment type approval certificate to the company whose name and particulars are listed below.

#### Company Particulars

Name : Jaguar Land Rover SA  
Street Address : Simon Vermooten Road, Silvertown  
Telephone Number : 012 842 3274  
Facsimile Number : 012 845 1005  
Registration Number : 20010272698/07

#### Description of Apparatus

Category : Low Frequency Initiator FET Receiver  
Model : SE0760137  
Frequency Range : 433.05 - 434.79 MHz  
Modulation : FSK  
Power Output : ASK, FSK  
Channel Spacing :  
Features :

Only the original or a certified copy of the radio equipment type approval certificate shall be considered valid.

*Philimon Mokoje*  
Philimon Mokoje  
Senior Manager: Engineering & Technology

09 JUN 2009

P. Mokoje (Chairperson), M.A. Balyi (TLV Makhoane), R. Nkomo, BB. Nombela, FK. Shupoko, D. M.M. Sotshela.



Independent Communications Authority of South Africa  
Postal Form 164 (November 2007, South African)  
Private Bag 110002, Sandton, 2146

### Radio Equipment Type Approval Certificate

Radio Equipment Type Approval Number

TA-20080305

The Authority, in the exercise of the powers conferred upon it by section 35 (1) of the Electronic Communications Act (No. 66 of 2005) and subject to the terms and conditions set out in this document (see cover sheet), hereby issues a radio equipment type approval certificate to the company whose name and particulars are listed below.

#### Company Particulars

Name : Jaguar Land Rover SA  
Street Address : Simon Vermooten Road, Silvertown  
Telephone Number : 012 842 3274  
Facsimile Number : 012 845 1005  
Registration Number : 20010272698/07

#### Description of Apparatus

Category : Key Fob Transmitter  
Model : 18K601  
Frequency Range : 433.05 MHz  
Modulation : FSK  
Power Output : ASK, FSK  
Channel Spacing : -14.4 dBm  
Features :

Only the original or a certified copy of the radio equipment type approval certificate shall be considered valid.

*Philimon Mokoje*  
Philimon Mokoje  
Senior Manager: Engineering & Technology

09 JUN 2009

P. Mokoje (Chairperson), M.A. Balyi (TLV Makhoane), R. Nkomo, BB. Nombela, FK. Shupoko, D. M.M. Sotshela.  
P. Mokoje (Chairperson), M.A. Balyi (TLV Makhoane), R. Nkomo, BB. Nombela, FK. Shupoko, D. M.M. Sotshela.





# Type approval

**ALPINE**  
 2D-1 Yamanashi-cho, Ina-shi, ALPINE ELECTRONICS, INC.  
 TEL: +81 (0)262-24-1111 FAX: +81 (0)262-24-2000

## DECLARATION of CONFORMITY

We, Alpine Electronics, Inc. of the above address, hereby declare, at our sole responsibility, that the following product conforms to the Essential Requirements of the Radio and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment Directive 1999/5/EC in accordance with the tests conducted to the appropriate requirements of the relevant standards, as listed hereewith.

- Product : Bluetooth Module
- Model/Type Number : IAM 2.1 BT FWD EU
- Directive and Standards used : Radio: EN 300 338 V1.7.1:200610  
EMC: EN 301 488-17 V1.3.2:2008-04  
 EN 301 488-1 V1.8.1:2006-04  
 ISO7837-2:2004  
Safety: IEC 60065 Ed.7:2001 + Amd.1:2005  
 EN 60065:2002 + Amd.1:2006

Year of affixing CE marking : 2009

Signature : *S. Aoi*  
 Name : Shiroshi Aoi  
 Date : September 13, 2009



E150389

The following information relates to Infotainment System Radio Type Approval Declarations.

The notices below apply to the following variants:  
 Model name: IMC1.0\_ROW and ISC1.0

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2019



## Type approval

Česky [Czech]	Jaguar Land Rover Ltd. tímto prohlašuje, že tento "IMC1.0_ROW", "ISC1.0" je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.
Dansk [Danish]	Undertegnede Jaguar Land Rover Ltd. erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr "IMC1.0_ROW", "ISC1.0" overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Deutsch [German]	Hiermit erkläre Jaguar Land Rover Ltd., dass sich das Gerät "IMC1.0_ROW", "ISC1.0" in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.
Eesti [Estonian]	Käesolevaga kinnitab Jaguar Land Rover Ltd. seadme "IMC1.0_ROW", "ISC1.0" vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.
English	Hereby, Jaguar Land Rover Ltd., declares that this "IMC1.0_ROW", "ISC1.0" is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
Español [Spanish]	Por medio de la presente Jaguar Land Rover Ltd. declara que el "IMC1.0_ROW", "ISC1.0" cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Ελληνική [Greek]	ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ Jaguar Land Rover Ltd. ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ "IMC1.0_ROW", "ISC1.0" ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.
Français [French]	Par la présente Jaguar Land Rover Ltd. déclare que l'appareil "IMC1.0_ROW", "ISC1.0" est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.
Italiano [Italian]	Con la presente Jaguar Land Rover Ltd. dichiara che questo "IMC1.0_ROW", "ISC1.0" è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
Latviski [Latvian]	Ar šo Jaguar Land Rover Ltd. deklarē, ka "IMC1.0_ROW", "ISC1.0" atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
Lietuvių [Lithuanian]	Šiuo Jaguar Land Rover Ltd. deklaruoja, kad šis "IMC1.0_ROW", "ISC1.0" atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.
Nederlands [Dutch]	Hierbij verklaart Jaguar Land Rover Ltd. dat het toestel "IMC1.0_ROW", "ISC1.0" in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
Malti [Maltese]	Hawnhekk, Jaguar Land Rover Ltd., jiddikjara li dan "IMC1.0_ROW", "ISC1.0" jikkonforma mal-htigijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.
Magyar [Hungarian]	Alulírott, Jaguar Land Rover Ltd. nyilatkozom, hogy a "IMC1.0_ROW", "ISC1.0" megfelel a vonatkozó alapvető követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb előírásainak.
Polski [Polish]	Niniejszym Jaguar Land Rover Ltd. oświadcza, że "IMC1.0_ROW", "ISC1.0" jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.
Português [Portuguese]	Jaguar Land Rover Ltd. declara que este "IMC1.0_ROW", "ISC1.0" está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Slovensko [Slovenian]	Jaguar Land Rover Ltd. izjavlja, da je ta "IMC1.0_ROW", "ISC1.0" v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.
Slovenský [Slovak]	Jaguar Land Rover Ltd. týmto vyhlasuje, že "IMC1.0_ROW", "ISC1.0" spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.
Suomi [Finnish]	Jaguar Land Rover Ltd. vakuuttaa täten että [type of equipment = laitteen tyyppimerkintä] tyypinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.
Svenska [Swedish]	Härmed intygar Jaguar Land Rover Ltd. att denna "IMC1.0_ROW", "ISC1.0" står i överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.
Íslenska [Icelandic]	Hér með lýsir Jaguar Land Rover Ltd. yfir því að "IMC1.0_ROW", "ISC1.0" er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.
Norsk [Norwegian]	Jaguar Land Rover Ltd. erklærer herved at utstyret "IMC1.0_ROW", "ISC1.0" er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

E182096

L

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2019